F-09A

ISSUE DATE: '09.5

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

NTT docomo

docomo PRIME series

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions
Before Using the Handset
Voice/Videophone Calls
Phonebook
Sound/Screen/Light Settings
Security Settings
Mail
i-mode/Full Browser
i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier
Camera
1Seg
Music
i-αppli/i-Widget
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
Map/GPS Function
Data Management
Convenient Functions
Character Entry
Network Services
Overseas Use
PC Connection
Appendix/Troubleshooting
Index/Quick Manual
简易手册

DOCOMO W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for purchasing "docomo PRIME series F-09A" mobile terminal.

Before and during use of your FOMA terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and instruction manuals that come with other optional devices to ensure you are able to correctly use you FOMA terminal. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual. F-09A is your capable partner. Please treat it with care and enjoy using it for years.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because your FOMA terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data (Phonebook, Schedule, Notepad, Recorded messages, Voice memos, Movie memo, etc.) you registered in your FOMA terminal. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of FOMA terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink, you can transfer and save phonebook, mail, schedule and other data to a PC.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS.
  Neither DOCOMO nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL/TLS. If the data should be erased, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
  Certifier : VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., Comodo CA Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.

Before using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (→P94). When changing the design of the menu screen using Kisekae Tool, the structure of some menus may be changed according to the usage frequency depending on the menu type. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applicable to some menu items.

Latest information about this manual can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website.

- User's Manual Download

http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html

* The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching this manual

This manual provides the methods below for necessary function's easy search.

Searching from Easy Search ▶P4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions by plain words.

Searching from Menu list ▶P380

Search from menu displayed on the display of F-09A.

Searching from thumb indices ▶Front cover

Search from the index on the front cover.

*See P2-3 for examples.

Searching from Contents ▶P6

Search from Contents categorized into chapters by functions.

Searching by main functions ▶P8

Search from featured functions or new functions of F-09A.

Searching from the Index ▶P438

Search from the function name, item keyword or service name.

Using the Quick Manual ▶P448

You can cut out Quick Manual from this manual and carry it with you anywhere.
"Quick Manual in Chinese version (simplified Chinese)", which corresponds to "Quick Manual" in English version and "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)" that is useful when you use FOMA terminal overseas, is appended.

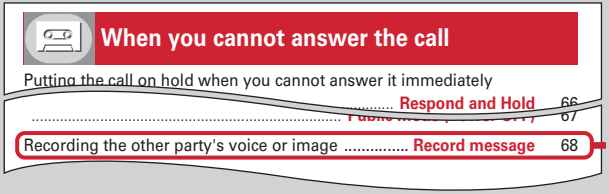
- In this "Manual for F-09A", "F-09A" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal". Please be forewarned.
- This manual explains functions performed with a microSD card. A microSD card is required separately.
  microSD card→P290
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- The icons and screens that appear on the display have been initialized to the default settings selected from the combinations prepared in FOMA terminal depending on FOMA terminal color.
  This manual mainly gives descriptions assuming that Kisekae Tool is set to "White".→P94
- In this manual, "i-αppli compatible with Osaifu-Keitai which supports IC card function" is referred to as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli".
- The description of "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering the terminal security code in 4-8 digits or performing fingerprint authentication.
  Terminal security code→P102
  Fingerprint authentication→P104
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching this manual

Methods to search pages are described, taking "Record message" for example.

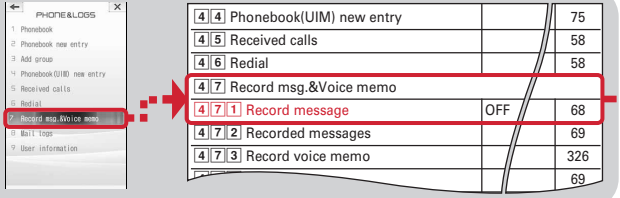
Searching from Easy Search

Functions frequently used and convenient functions are categorized by their purposes and with simple words.



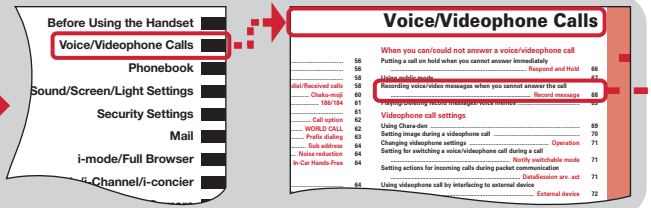
Searching from Menu list

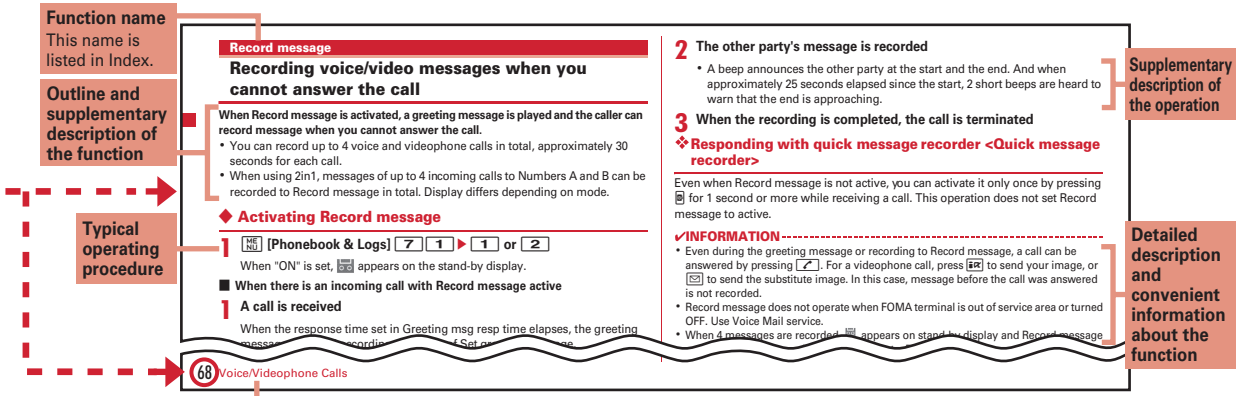
Functions can be searched from the words displayed on the FOMA terminal screen.



Searching from thumb indices

Functions can be searched by using indices in the order of the front cover, chapter top page and function description page.
The chapter top page also gives the list of detailed contents.





* The page shown here represents an example. Images may differ from actual page in this manual.

- In this manual, operation by pressing keys is represented by graphic symbols.→P22 "Part names and functions"
- The representations and meanings of operating procedures are as shown below.

Representation example	Meaning
MENU **(1 sec. or more)**	Press MENU for 1 second or more.
MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 7 2 ▶ 1-3	On the stand-by display, MENU, move the cursor to [Settings & NW services] and press ●. Successively, press 5 7 2, then press any of 1-3.

- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Multi-cursor key) and pressing ● (Enter key) is referred to as "select". Regarding an operation to enter characters in the entry field, the final step of pressing ● [OK] is omitted.
- This manual uses the default settings to describe operations. If the settings are changed, the displays or operations of FOMA terminal may differ from the ones described in this manual. For the default settings, see Menu List.→P380

Easy Search

Functions which you want to know can be searched for using friendly words.

Convenient functions for calls

Showing/Hiding your phone number ..... Caller ID notification 53
Putting the call on hold ..... On hold 57
Changing the volume of the other party's voice ..... Listen volume 57
Switching from voice call to videophone call ..... Switching to videophone call 58

When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately ..... Respond and Hold 66
Notifying the caller that you have to refrain from talking ..... Public mode (Drive mode) 67
..... Public mode (Power OFF) 67
Recording the other party's voice or image ..... Record message 68

Changing sound, lighting color and vibration

Setting different ring tone etc. for incoming calls from specific parties ..... Alert by contact 75
Changing ring alert ..... Ring alert 83
Changing loudness of ring tone ..... Adjust volume 84
Making vibration when there is an incoming call ..... Vibrate alert/effect 85
Muting keypad sound ..... Keypad/touch sound 86
Setting silent mode ..... Silent mode 87
Changing the color of keypad light ..... Keypad light 93
Changing color such as light ..... Light alert 98

Changing displays

Meanings of icons on display ..... Viewing display 26
Switching the menu display ..... Selecting functions from menu 30
Changing stand-by display ..... Stand-by display 89
Displaying a calendar on stand-by display ..... Info/calendar layout 90
Changing font size ..... Font size 99

Safety and security

Hiding contents of phonebook ..... Secret attribute 80
Locking FOMA remotely in case of misplacement etc. ..... Omakase Lock*1 107
Rejecting calls with no caller IDs ..... Anonymous caller 120
Rejecting calls from parties not saved in phonebook ..... Unregistered caller 121
Saving data such as phonebook in case of data loss ..... Data Security Service*2 121

Making full use of mail

Sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 130
Sending images and/or melodies ..... Attachment 134
Automatically sorting mails ..... Sort method 149

Making full use of camera

Saving shot still images to microSD card ..... Save to 190
Changing image size ..... Still image settings/Recording settings 194
Viewing shot still images ..... Displaying image 278

Making full use of 1Seg

Watching 1Seg ..... Activate 1Seg 206
Recording 1Seg ..... 1Seg recording 212
Reserving watching/recording 1Seg ..... Watching/Recording reservation 213
Changing settings of images and sounds ..... User setting 216

Other convenient functions

Reading QR and/or bar code ..... Bar code reader 200
Listening to music ..... MUSIC Player 222
Using GPS function ..... GPS function 266
Using microSD card ..... microSD card 290
Sending or receiving data via infrared communication ..... Infrared communication 302
Using alarm clock ..... Alarm clock 315
Using calculator ..... Calculator 328
Using a mobile phone overseas ..... International Roaming 364
Updating software ..... Software update 421
Keeping security software updated ..... Scanning function 425

*1 A charged service.
*2 A charged service requiring subscription.

● For procedures to search for other functions, see "Viewing/Searching this manual". →P1
● Quick Manual introduces you procedures for using convenient functions. →P448

Contents

■ Before using your FOMA terminal ..... Inside front cover
■ Viewing/Searching this manual 1
■ Easy Search 4
■ Main functions of F-09A 8
■ Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) 10
■ Handling precautions 17
■ Basic package and main options 20

Before Using the Handset 21

Part names and functions Available styles Viewing display Selecting menu Touch panel Pointing device Motion sensor Using UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/Removing battery pack Charging battery Battery level Power ON/OFF Select language Date & time Caller ID notification User information etc.

Voice/Videophone Calls 55

Making a call Redial/Received calls Chaku-moji 186/184 Touch-tone signal (DTMF) Call option WORLD CALL Receiving a call Any key answer Slide and answer Close settings Respond and Hold Public mode Recorded messages Using Chara-den Videophone settings Notify of switchable mode etc.

Phonebook 73

Phonebook new entry Alert by contact Group settings Search/Edit/Delete phonebook Secret attribute Quick dial etc.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings 81

Ring alerts & Sounds Adjust volume Vibrate alert/effect Silent mode Timed theme Stand-by display Call image Mail image Power saving mode Select startup menu Display Machi-chara Kisekae Tool Light alert Clock display format etc.

Security Settings 101

Security code Terminal security code change PIN code Fingerprint authentication All lock Omakase Lock Self mode Personal data lock Keypad dial lock Privacy mode Operation lock Security lock Touch lock Accept/Reject call Data Security Service Reset Delete all data Initializing remotely Remote customization etc.

Mail 127

Composing/Sending i-mode mail Deco-mail Decome-Anime Attachment Saving i-mode mail Quick mail Receiving i-mode mail Check new message Operating mailbox Mail settings MessageR/F Area Mail Composing/Sending SMS etc.

i-mode/Full Browser 161

Site display Change i-mode password Internet connection Bookmark Screen memo Downloading from site Uploading to site i-mode settings Operating certificate etc.

i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier 179

i-motion Movie i-Channel Show ticker i-concier etc.

Camera 185

Still camera Movie camera Sound recorder Advanced settings Setting for shooting Bar code reader etc.

1Seg 203

Setting channels 1Seg watching Program guide i-αppli Data broadcasting TVlink Multi window Recording Reserving Remote controller with microphone etc.

Music 217
Setting program Operating Music&Video Channel Saving music data Playing/ Managing music data BGM play Remote controller with microphone etc.

i-αppli/i-Widget.....231
Downloading Starting i-αppli i-αppli call i-αppli To i-αppli stand-by display Managing i-αppli i-Widget etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa.....255
iC transfer service Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli IC card lock Receiving ToruCa etc.

Map/GPS Function 265
Position location GPS compatible i-αppli Location request Notify location Loc. history Loc. history Map setting Setting GPS etc.

Data Management.....277
Displaying/Editing image Playing/Editing moving pictures/i-motion Displaying Machi-chara Displaying Chara-den Playing melody microSD card Managing data Infrared communication/iC transmission Displaying PDF Displaying Word, Excel, PowerPoint files Displaying recorded data of 1Seg etc.

Convenient Functions 311
Multiaccess Multitask Quick search Auto power ON/OFF Countdown timer Alarm clock Scheduler Shortcut icons Custom menu Slide and edit Turn-display option Search key shortcut Fake call Voice memo/Movie memo Call duration/Call cost Calculator Notepad Dictionaries Pedometer/ACT monitor Earphone/Microphone with switch Bluetooth® function etc.

Character Entry 339
5-touch input method Save phrase Copying/ Cutting characters KUTEN code input Save word Password manager DL dictionary 2-touch input Text input method Entering Chinese Touch entry etc.

Network Services..... 353
Voice Mail Service Call Waiting Call Forwarding Service Nuisance Call Blocking Service Caller ID Request Service Dual Network Service English guidance Service numbers Arrival call act Remote control Multi Number 2in1 OFFICEED Additional service etc.

Overseas use..... 363
Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) Services available Preparing and checking for overseas use Making/Receiving a call Network search mode PLMN setting 3G/ GSM setting Area service status Roaming guidance Bar calls at roaming Network services etc.

PC Connection..... 373
Data communication DOCOMO keitai datalink etc.

Appendix/Troubleshooting ... 379
Menu list Combination of Multiaccess/ Multitask functions Services available Introduction of options and related devices Error messages Warranty and After-Sales Service Software update Scanning function SAR certification information Intellectual Property Right etc.

Index/Quick Manual 437
Index Quick Manual in English version (Domestic use/Oversea use) Quick Manual in Chinese version (simplified Chinese) (Domestic use/Oversea use)

Main functions of F-09A

i-concier

i-concier is a service to use FOMA terminal conveniently in which a character on the stand-by display (Machi-chara) notifies you of useful information and you can download schedules/i-schedule from a site.
With i-concier, downloaded schedule or ToruCa is automatically updated with the latest information, and address information etc. of stores and companies are automatically added to the phonebook.→P183

i-αppli call

i-αppli call is a function allows a third party or content providers to prompt predetermined i-αppli to be activated and it is used for activating other party's applications to play a versus game etc.→P248

i-Widget

i-Widget is a function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (Widget Appli) such as calculator, clock, a TV program guide and stock price information. You can also check the latest information at a glance by activating i-Widget screen.→P252

1Seg

You can watch "1Seg", a terrestrial digital TV broadcast for mobile devices. You can also shoot still images and record video while watching 1Seg. Dubbing+10 (→P293) is supported for recording video.→P204

i-mode

In addition to the higher operability and more convenient use of website information, you can enjoy a greater variety of video contents now that Flash® Video and Windows Media® Video are supported.→P162, 180

International Roaming

While staying overseas, you can use the same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan (3G/GSM Areas are supported). You can check the current location with the GPS function overseas. You can also use 3G/GPRS compatible i-αppli in the 3G/GPRS areas.→P364
And, "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)", which interprets your Japanese into English or your English into Japanese, is preinstalled.→P238

Battery display

You can specifically display the remaining battery level in 100 levels.→P50

Slide YOKO-MOTION with touch-enabled 3.4-inch large screen

You can use the 3.4 inch large screen according to functions and usage scenes in 3 styles: A basic style (FOMA terminal is closed), slide style and YOKO-MOTION style. You can use intuitive touch operation in any of these styles. In the launcher menu that is designed for the touch operation, frequently-used menus/arrival information, Shortcut icons, etc. are displayed with large buttons so that you can easily touch them.→P25, 34

Operation lock and Security lock

You can lock the touch operation or side keys by pressing the dedicated lock key to hide display when FOMA terminal is closed. You can also set the lock to be activated each time FOMA terminal is closed. In addition, Security lock is provided so that the touch operation or keypad operation is locked when no operation is performed for the specified time after the display light turns off.→P116, 117

High-performance camera

FOMA terminal is equipped with a camera with approximately 8.1 million pixels (effective pixels) that offers functions such as auto scene detection to select the appropriate shooting mode by detecting scenes or people, smile finder to release a shutter by detecting people's smiles, skin tone enhancer to enhance the skin tone to beautifully shoot people, eye enhancer to enhance the people's eyes etc.→P186

Vicinity viewer

You can search for facilities around the current location and get guidance of airline distance and direction to the destination. You can also use it with Map Application to view directions to the destination.→P239

Quick search

On the stand-by display or while performing a function, search functions of i-mode, Full Browser, Vicinity viewer (Map), dictionaries, phonebook or mail can be used by pressing the search key.→P313

Shortcut icons

Only by selecting the icon pasted on the stand-by display for function, file or mail being created, you can start the target operation quickly. And, icon on the stand-by display can be changed freely.→P321

Pedometer/ACT monitor

You can check the number of steps, walking distance, consumed calories and burned fat on FOMA terminal. You can also measure "Brisk walk" that is a measure of your aerobic exercise and "Activity amount" that is calculated by exercise duration and exercise intensity of your physical activity.→P330
You can enjoy using the preinstalled stand-by display (Flash graphics) such as "スペースジム (Space gym)" and "ウォーキング×フラワー (Walking × Flower)" that work with the activity monitor and pedometer.

* In this manual, they are described as "Pedometer/ACT monitor" according to the menu name of FOMA terminal.

ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)

The number of steps, activity amounts, blood pressure, body compositions, etc. can be displayed with a graph. You can also set mail that tells the number of steps and activity amounts to be sent automatically, measure your pulse and use "からだカルテ (medical record)" that gives you health advice.→P243

Bluetooth

A wireless connection can be established between FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device. You can talk with handsfree or play 1Seg sound or music while keeping FOMA terminal in a bag etc.→P333

Entering Chinese character

You can enter Chinese characters (simplified Chinese) in the character entry screens of i-mode mail, SMS, fixed phrases, etc.→P348
Quick Manual in the Chinese version (simplified Chinese) is appended at the end of this manual.

Other functions

- Videophone call→P56
- Chaku-moji→P60
- Kisekae Tool→P94
- Security Settings→P102
- i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram→P128
- Chaku-uta full®*1/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel*2/MUSIC Player→P218
- i-αppli/Mega i-αppli/Chokkan Game→P232
- Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa→P256
- Map/GPS Function→P266
- Network services→P354
- High-speed communication compatibility→P374

*1 "Chaku-uta full" is registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
*2 A charged service requiring subscription.

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.

⚠DANGER	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
⚠WARNING	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
⚠CAUTION	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions.

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below.

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (common) 11
Handling FOMA terminal 12
Handling battery pack 14
Handling adapter 15
Handling UIM 16
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment 16

◆Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (common)

⚠DANGER



Do not use, store, or leave the equipment in hot areas such as near flames or in areas under strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.
May cause the equipment to be deformed or malfunction, and battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the capability or life to be reduced or shortened. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.



Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. Do not solder items onto the equipment.
May cause fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction. It may also cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not let the equipment get wet.
Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injuries. Take care of the place for use and treatment of the equipment.



Use the battery pack and adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for your FOMA terminal.
Use of equipment not specified by DOCOMO can cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

⚠WARNING



Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter or UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, may cause FOMA terminal or adapter to heat, smoke, ignite, or may damage circuits.



Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging jack or external connection jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.
May be subject to electrical short and could cause fire or malfunction.



Turn FOMA terminal OFF before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge the battery. The gas may catch fire.
When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it. (When IC card lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)



If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.

1. **Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**
2. **Turn FOMA terminal OFF.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from FOMA terminal.**

May cause the equipment to heat, burst or ignite or the battery pack to leak if you keep using the equipment.

⚠CAUTION


Don't

Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.
May cause malfunction or injuries.


Don't

Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.
May cause malfunction.


Do

Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.
May cause injuries.


Do

Store the equipment out of reach of small children.
May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.


Do

Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.
If you use i-αppli, a videophone call or 1Seg watching while charging the battery for a long time, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may be heated.
Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

◆Handling FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING


Don't

Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.
May affect your eyes. Faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.


Don't

Do not turn on the light by getting the lighting part closer to other person's eyes.
May impair eyesight. And may cause accidents like injury etc., by dazzling or astounding other people.


Don't

Do not put FOMA terminal in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.
When the air-bag explodes, FOMA terminal may hit yourself or others and could cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.


Don't

When you use electronic medical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.
Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.


Don't

Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into UIM or microSD card slot.
May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.


Don't

Do not turn on the light aiming directly at the driver of the car etc.
May disturb driving and cause an accident.


Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.
May cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction. If the function which automatically turns the power ON is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.
When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.


Do

When you talk by setting handsfree, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ear.
And, when connecting the earphone/microphone to FOMA terminal and play a game or music, adjust the volume moderately.
Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.

Do

If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the Vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.
Could affect heart function.

Do

If it starts thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn the power OFF immediately, and move to a safe location.
May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.
May cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid.
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment.
Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.

Do

When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of FOMA terminal.
Surfaces of display and camera lens are made of plastic panels and they are structured for the glass not to scatter, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not swing FOMA terminal by its strap.
May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.

Don't

When using the motion tracking or motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold FOMA terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.
The motion tracking and motion sensor are functions to operate by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing a serious accident or damage.

Don't

If you put a metal strap or the like to FOMA terminal, be careful not to let the strap hit people or objects around you when performing motion tracking or using motion sensor.
Accidents such as injury, malfunction or damage may result.

Don't

If the display part is accidentally broken and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin. If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
And, if the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, then wash with soap.
May cause loss of sight or skin problems.

Don't

Do not bring the speaker close to your ear when the ring alert is sounding or you are playing a melody with FOMA terminal.
May cause hearing loss.

Do

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.
In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.

Do

Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor. FOMA terminal contains metal in the parts below.

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Charging jack	Copper	Gold plating
Slide and swing module	SUS	Black coating
Widget key	PC-ABS	Metal evaporation
Lock plate of back cover	SUS	None
Screw to fix slide and swing module	Copper	Black nickel plating
Screw to fix a case	Steel	Zinc plating

Do

When opening or closing FOMA terminal, take care not to have your fingers or strap caught by the terminal.
May cause injuries or damages.

Do

When watching 1Seg, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.
May cause your eyesight to be impaired.

◆Handling battery pack

■ **Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.**

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

⚠DANGER

Don't

Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store FOMA terminal with objects like a metal necklace.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't

Do not try to force the battery pack onto FOMA terminal if you are having trouble installing it. Always install it after checking that it is correctly oriented.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't

Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do

If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.
May cause loss of sight.

⚠WARNING

Don't

If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to an external impact or falling, stop using it immediately.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

Do

If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do

If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.
The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.

Do

Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.
May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

Don't

Do not charge a wet battery pack.
May cause heat generation, ignition or rupture of the battery pack.

Do

If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.
May hurt the skin.

◆Handling adapter

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not use the adapter cord or power cord if it gets damaged.
May cause electric shock, heat or fire.

Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.
May cause electric shock.

Don't

Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.
May cause fire.

Don't

When it starts to thunder, do not touch FOMA terminal and adapter.
May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

Don't

Do not short the charging jack while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.
May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injuries.

Don't

Place the adapter and desktop holder in a stable location while charging. Do not cover or wrap the adapter and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket.
May cause FOMA terminal to be removed or the optional devices to be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.

Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord or power cord.
May cause electric shock or fire.

No wet hands

Do not touch the adapter cord or outlet with wet hands.
May cause electric shock.

Do

Only use with the specified power source and voltage.
If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire or failure. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use AC Adapter for global use.
AC adapter : AC100V
DC adapter : 12 or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)
AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)

Do

If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.
Using other fuses may cause fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.

Do

Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.
May cause fire.

Do

When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.
May cause electric shock, electrical short or fire.


Do

When you disconnect the adapter from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord or power cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the power plug to disconnect.
Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.


Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the outlet when not using the adapter for an extended period.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.


Unplug

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.
May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.


Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.
May cause electric shock.

◆Handling UIM

⚠CAUTION


Do

Be careful of the cut surface when removing UIM (ICs).
May hurt hands or fingers.

◆Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

■ **These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.**

⚠WARNING


Do

Obey the following rules inside medical facilities.

- Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical equipment could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
- If the function to automatically turn ON the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.


Do

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.


Do

Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.


Do

When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

Handling precautions

◆ General

- Do not get FOMA terminal etc. wet
  - FOMA terminal, battery back, adapter and UIM are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid places such as a bath, and do not expose them to rain. When you carry the terminal close to your body, dampness from sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction. Malfunctions deemed to have been caused by water are not covered by the warranty, and repairs may not be possible. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
  - The display of FOMA terminal may have been applied special coating to improve clearness of the color LCD. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and clean it with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
  - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab etc.
  - If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc.
    Also, be careful never to damage the jack when cleaning it.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
  - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.
- When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to FOMA terminal or the battery.
  - If FOMA terminal is crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, display, internal PCBs or battery pack may be damaged or malfunction. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack), the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.
- Carefully read the separate instructions that come with FOMA terminal, adapter and desktop holder.
- Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece etc.
  - It may scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.
- Do not press the surface of the touch panel strongly or operate it with sharp objects such as a nail, a ballpoint pen and a pin.
  - It may damage the touch panel.

◆ FOMA terminal

- Avoid extreme temperature.
  - Use FOMA terminal where the ambient temperature ranges between 5 and 35℃ and humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in your FOMA terminal.
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- Do not drop FOMA terminal or subject it to shocks.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not plug external devices into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack) at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not close FOMA terminal with the strap etc. held inside.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.
- Do not leave FOMA terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.
  - May cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- FOMA terminal should normally be used with the external connection jack cap and the microSD card slot cover closed.
  - Dust and/or water brought into FOMA terminal cause troubles.
- Do not use FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.
  - It may cause the battery to come off, or may cause a malfunction or damage.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the exposed rear side of the FOMA terminal display.
  - Labels or stickers may get stuck when FOMA terminal is opened/closed causing malfunction or damage.
- Do not put strong impact on the fingerprint sensor or scratch its surface.
  - It may cause malfunction of fingerprint sensor and disable authentication operation and pointing operation.

- Clean the fingerprint sensor with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
  - If the fingerprint sensor is dirty or water is sit on its surface, the sensor does not read fingerprints, decreases its authentication performance, erroneously operates authentication function with no finger on it, disables pointing operation.
- While microSD card is being used, do not take the card out and do not turn off FOMA terminal.
  - It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not bring magnetic cards etc. close to FOMA terminal.
  - Magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- Do not bring magnetized objects close to FOMA terminal.
  - Bringing strong magnetism close may cause a malfunction.

◆ Battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable part.
  - Replace the battery pack if FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35℃).
- Always charge before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- Be careful especially about the following points when preserving or leaving the battery pack for a long time.
  - Keeping under the state of the full charge (right after charging ends)
  - Keeping under the state of the empty charge (too exhausted to turn on FOMA terminal)

  They may cause the battery pack performance to be degraded or its lifetime to be shortened.

  For necessary battery level to keep for a long time, the display of battery icon is a state of approximately 2 or 3 cells.

◆ Adapter

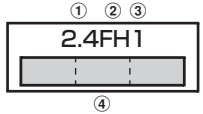
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35℃).
- Do not charge the battery in the areas below.
  - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
  - Near land-line phones or TVs/radios
- It is normal for the adapter to become hot while charging. Continue to use it.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
  - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging jack.
  - May cause malfunction.

◆ UIM

- Do not use excessive force to install/remove UIM.
- It is normal for UIM to become warm during use. Continue to use it.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep UIM ICs clean.
- Clean UIM with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in UIM.
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.
- Avoid extreme temperature.
- Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop UIM or subject it to shocks.
  - May cause malfunction.
- Do not bend UIM or place heavy objects on it.
  - May cause malfunction.
- Do not install UIM into FOMA terminal with a label or sticker put on UIM.
  - May cause malfunction.

◆ Bluetooth devices

- This FOMA terminal is equipped with the security features, that are compliant with Bluetooth standards for communication via Bluetooth. However, depending on the settings, there may not be enough security. Be aware of security risks when using Bluetooth.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any information which may be leaked during communication via Bluetooth.
- You can use handsfree, headset, audio, dial-up connection, object push and serial port devices with FOMA terminal. An audio/video remote control may be available with an audio device (only Bluetooth compatible devices).
- Frequency bands
  Frequency bands used by FOMA terminal Bluetooth function are as below.



① 2.4 : Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.
② FH : The modulation is the FH-SS method.
③ 1 : The expected interference distance is 10 m or shorter.
④ : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices cannot be avoided.

Cautions on using Bluetooth devices
In the bandwidth used by this handset, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations used to identify mobile objects used in production lines of a factory that require a license, specified low power radio stations, or amateur radio stations that do not require a license (hereafter "other radio stations") can be in operation.

1. Before using this terminal, check whether other radio stations are in operation in your neighborhood.
2. If radio wave interference occurs between the terminal and "other radio stations", use the terminal in a different location or "Turn the power OFF" to avoid the radio wave interference.
3. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual.

◆ FeliCa reader/writer

- FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep FOMA terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

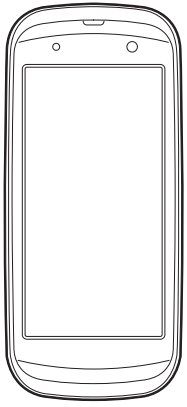
◆ CAUTION

- Do not use a remodeled FOMA terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law.
  FOMA terminal is certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark ㊣" is depicted on the engraved sticker of FOMA terminal.
  If you remodel FOMA terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.
  Do not use FOMA terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law.
- Be careful when you use FOMA terminal while driving a car etc.
  Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations.
  If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.
- Use the Bluetooth function only in Japan.
  The Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal is compliant with wireless standards and is authorized for use only in Japan.
  If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.
- Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.
  FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards.
  If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

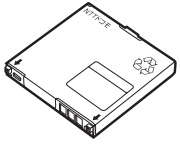
Basic package and main options

<Basic package>

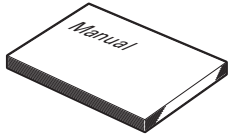
F-09A
(including Back Cover F40 and the written warranty)



Battery Pack F10

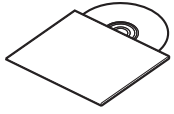


Instruction manual



* Quick Manual is appended on P448.

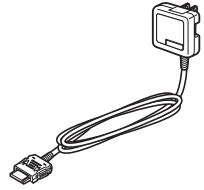
CD-ROM for F-09A



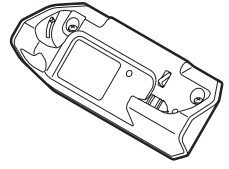
* The PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" are contained in the CD-ROM.

<Main options>

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(including written warranty and operation manual)



Desktop Holder F31
(including operation manual)

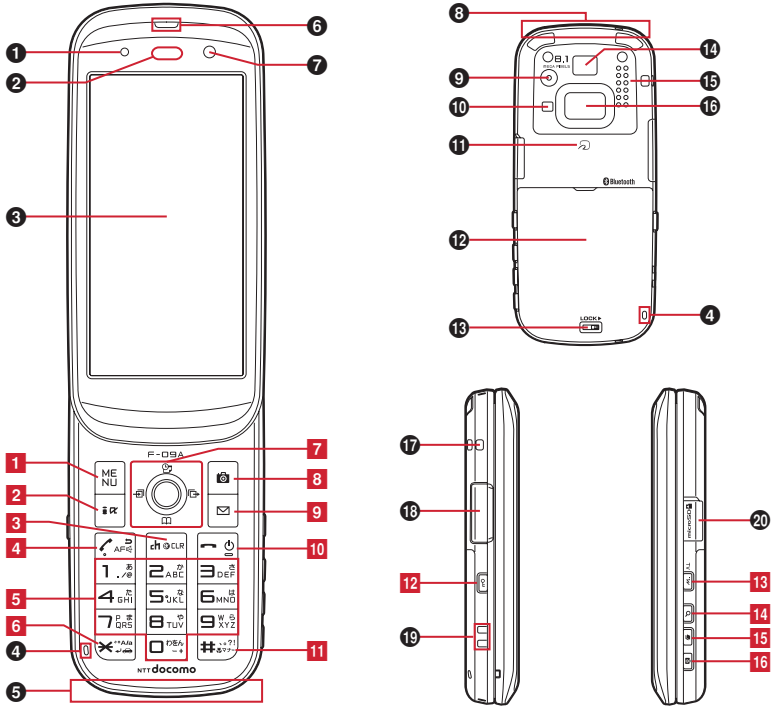


Other options→P409

Before Using the Handset

Part names and functions 22
Available FOMA terminal usage styles 25
Viewing display 26
Selecting functions from menu 30
Selecting functions using touch operation ..... Touch panel 34
Using fingerprint sensor for pointing operation ..... Pointing device 42
Using motion sensor 43
Using UIM (FOMA card) 44
Attaching/Removing battery pack 46
Charging 48
Checking battery level ..... Remaining battery level 50
Turning power ON/OFF ..... Power ON/OFF 51
Changing screen display to English ..... Select language 52
Setting date and time ..... Date & time 52
Notifying the other party of your phone number ..... Caller ID notification 53
Checking your own phone number ..... User information 53

Part names and functions

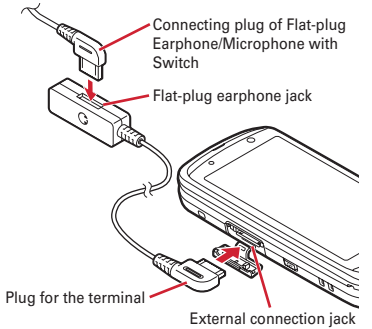


<Using Earphone>

Connect an optional external connection jack compatible earphone.

When using an earphone that is non-compliant to external connection jack, connect an optional plug adapter to use it.

Example of connecting Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (optional)



<Functions of parts>

❶ Light sensor

Sense the ambient luminance (automatic adjustment of the brightness of the display).

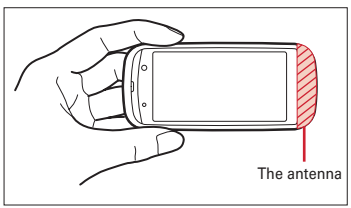
* Blocking the light sensor may disable correct adjustment of the brightness.

❷ **Light**
Turn on or blink when receiving a call, mail/i-concier information, calling, obtaining ToruCa, accessing IC card, GPS positioning (Position location, Notify location and Location request), shooting an image/moving picture, operating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player, sounding tone of Alarm clock (Snooze), Schedule reminder or Countdown timer, and transmitting iC, or operate according to the settings of Indicator light or Light alert.

❸ **Display (touch panel) → P26, 34**

❹ **Microphone**
Send your voice from here.
* Do not cover the microphone during a call or sound recording.
* Rear microphone does not pick up your voice because it is to cut noise.

❺ **1Seg antenna → P204**
* The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna. For better signal reception, do not cover the antenna with your hand.
* When you watch 1Seg with FOMA terminal held sideways, it is recommended that you hold the opposite side of the antenna section.



❻ **Earpiece**
Hear other party's voice from here.

❼ **In-camera**
Shoot your own image, or send your image via videophone.

❽ **FOMA Built-in antenna**
* The terminal has a built-in FOMA antenna. For better voice quality, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

❾ **Out-camera**
Shoot still images or moving pictures, send images over a videophone call.

❿ **Light/Shooting indication light → P70, 196, 324**
Camera light for videophone calls, still image/moving picture shooting, simple light, or it turns on or blinks for still image/moving picture shooting.

⓫ **Mark → P256, 302**
Installation of IC card.
* You can use Osaifu-Keitai by placing mark over IC card reader or send/receive data by iC transmission. The IC card cannot be detached.

⓬ **Back cover**

⓭ **Back cover lever → P46**

⓮ **Infrared data port → P302, 305**
Infrared communication, Infrared remote control.

⓯ **Speaker**
Hear ring alert or voice of the caller using the speakerphone etc. from here.

⓰ **Fingerprint sensor → P42, 104**

⓱ **Strap opening**

⓲ **External connection jack**
An integrated connection jack for charging or connecting earphone etc.
* Available to connect an optional AC adapter, DC adapter, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function, Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal etc.

⓳ **Charging jack**

⓴ **microSD card slot → P290**

<Functions of keys>

The functions available by pressing keys are as follows.

● : Press ■ : Press for 1 second or more

1 **MENU key**
● Display menus, perform the operation shown at the upper left of the guide area.

2 **i-mode/i-αppli/Scroll (▲)/Character**
● Establish i-mode connection and display iMenu.
● Scroll upward the mail screen or site/website display by pages.
● Perform the operation shown in the lower-left corner of the guide area, switch character entry modes.
■ Display i-αppli folder list.

3 **CLR ch/α/Clear key**
● Display i-Channel list, switch i-αppli stand-by display and i-αppli activation.
● Delete characters or return to previous screen.
■ Start/Cancel Self mode.

4 **Start a voice call/ /Speakerphone/AF key**
● Make/Receive a voice call, return to the previous character while entering characters.
● Switching the speakerphone function, start/cancel auto-focus.
■ Make a voice call using the speakerphone function.
■ Restore the character string to its previous state.

5 **Keypads**
1-9
● Enter phone numbers (1-9) or characters, select menu/items.
■ Perform the function registered in Custom menu.
0

● Enter phone number (0) or characters, select menu/items.
■ Use Auto switch of Int'l call assist when making international calls.

6 ＊/A/a/Line feed/Public mode (Drive mode) key
● Enter "＊", "゛", "゜", etc., switch upper/lower case.
● Line feed while entering characters, select menu/items.
● Switch display/hide of guide area when shooting a still image.
● Display/Hide menu button for touch operation while playing moving picture/i-motion or Music&Video Channel in YOKO-MOTION style.
■ Start/Cancel Public mode (Drive mode).

7 Multi-cursor key
●Enter key
● Perform the operation, activate Focus mode.
■ Start i-αppli registered for one-key shortcut.
Schedule/↑ key
● Display Scheduler.
● Adjust volume, move the cursor upward.
■ Display alarm list
Phonebook/↓ key
● Display phonebook.
● Adjust volume, move the cursor downward.
■ Add to the phonebook.
Received calls/← (previous) key
● Display Received calls, switch displays, move the cursor leftward.
■ Start/Cancel privacy mode when "Activate/Deactivate" of Activation option is set to "Hold L-cursor key".
Redial/→(next) key
● Display Redial, switch displays, move the cursor rightward.
■ Start/Cancel IC card lock.
＊ May be described as .

8 Camera key
● Start still image shooting, perform the operation shown at the upper right of the guide area.
■ Start moving picture shooting.

9 Mail/Scroll (▼) key
● Display mail menu, perform the operation shown at the lower right of the guide area.
● Scroll downward the mail screen or site/website display by pages.
● Pressing twice : Check new message
■ Display mail creation screen

10 (Power)/End key
● Terminate on-hold, calling/operating function (return to stand-by display), display/hide Layout on stand-by display.
■ Press for 2 seconds or more : Turn power ON/OFF.

11 #/Macro shooting/Silent mode key
● Enter "＃", "、", "。", "?", "!", "・", select menu/items.
● Turn Macro mode on or off while using the camera.
■ Start/Cancel Silent mode.

12 Lock key
● Activate Operation lock when FOMA terminal is closed.→P116
● Hide the screen display when FOMA terminal is opened.→P116
■ Cancel/Restart touch lock during a call with FOMA terminal closed.→P119

13 i-Widget/TV key
● Start/Exit i-Widget
■ Watch 1Seg or switch Multi windows.

14 Search key
● Enter the target word, place or name and search.→P313
■ Start/Cancel Silent mode*
＊ The setting of Search key shortcut is the operation in the default state.

15 Multitask key
● Perform another function while talking or operating (Multiaccess/Multitask).
■ Activate/Cancel the auto rotation lock when FOMA terminal is closed.

16 Camera key
● Start/End/Save shooting when a camera is active, or save a still image during 1Seg watching, when FOMA terminal is closed.
● Stop ring alert (except for reception of mail, messages and SMS), alarm sound or vibrator.
■ Activate still image shooting
■ Activate quick message recorder while receiving a call, activate/stop voice memo or moving picture memo during a call.
■ Start/Stop recording video during 1Seg watching

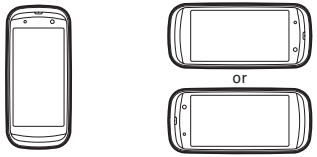
Available FOMA terminal usage styles

You can use functions of this FOMA terminal with keypad operation and touch operation.

- This manual gives descriptions assuming that FOMA terminal is open unless otherwise noted.

■ Basic style (closed state)

It supports touch operation. Auto rotation function realized by motion sensor switches the vertical/horizontal display.

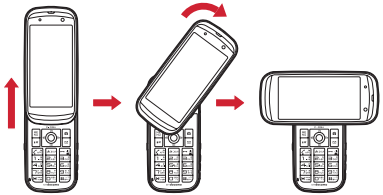


Basic style (vertical)　Basic style (horizontal)

- Keep this state when you carry FOMA terminal.
- While a camera is used, horizontal display is always applied even in the basic style (vertical).

■ Slide style (opened state (vertical))/YOKO-MOTION style (opened state (horizontal))

It is the basic operation style that corresponds to keypad operation and touch operation.



Slide style (opened state (vertical))　YOKO-MOTION style (opened state (horizontal))

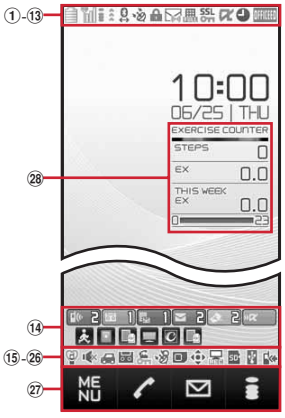
- Slide up the display section to use the terminal in the slide style. Additionally rotate the display 90 degrees clockwise to use the terminal in the YOKO-MOTION style.
- To close, rotate or slide in the opposite direction.
- When Slide and edit is set to "ON", the edit screen for mail, schedule or notepad can be displayed in the slide style.→P323
- When Slide and answer is set to "ON", you can answer a voice call by switching to the slide style.→P65
- Use Turn-display option to set functions such as the one activated by rotating the terminal 90 degrees clockwise etc.→P324
- When Close settings is set to "End the call" or "Hold", a call is disconnected or on hold by changing from slide style or YOKO-MOTION style to basic style.

✔INFORMATION

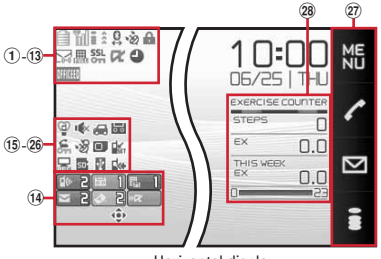
- When you use the slide style or YOKO-MOTION style, do not rotate the display counterclockwise nor more than 90 degrees clockwise.
- i-Widget, i-concier information and i-schedule are unavailable in the basic style (horizontal) and YOKO-MOTION style.
- Do not forcibly open/close or rotate FOMA terminal. It may cause malfunction or damage to the keys and display.
- Do not close FOMA terminal with the strap held inside. It may cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the rear side of the display or the key side. It may cause malfunction, damage, etc.
- When you carry FOMA terminal, activate Operation lock to prevent inadvertent operations of the touch panel or to save battery power consumption.
- When you open/close or rotate FOMA terminal, avoid touching the touch panel with your finger to prevent inadvertent operations.
- Keep magnetic materials such as a magnet away from FOMA terminal. It may cause failure or malfunction.
- Do not place the terminal with the display side down on a desk. It may scratch the display surface.
- When carrying this terminal in a bag, do not allow a hard object to hit the display. It may scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.

Viewing display

The current state can be checked by the icon appearing on the screen.



Vertical display



Horizontal display

① : Battery icon→P50

② : Antenna icon→P51
圏外 : Out of service area→P51
SELF : Self mode ON→P108
: Data transfer mode ON*1→P115, 290, 302, 336

③ / : In i-mode (during i-mode connection)/(during packet communication)→P162

*2 ④ : Infrared communication in operation→P302
Infrared remote control in operation→P305
(blue)/ (gray) : Bluetooth power ON/Power saving mode activated→P335
: The total calls cost exceeds the limit→P328

*2 ⑤ : Bluetooth connection established→P335
: Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress→P64
: Communication using a Bluetooth handsfree device in progress→P335
: Communication using a Bluetooth headset in progress→P335
: Speakerphone function in use→P57
(blue)/ (red)/ / : Network in use→P366
: Power saving mode activated→P93

*2 ⑥ : Positioning with GPS→P267
(blue)/ (gray) : Location request setting with GPS/Out of permission period→P271

*2 ⑦ : Security lock ON→P117
: A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute→P80, 320
: Auto rotation lock is activated→P44

*2 ⑧ Unread Area Mail, mail, i-concier information or MessageR/F state→P137, 153, 155, 158, 184
: Unread Area Mail
: Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full on UIM
: Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full
: SMS storage space is full on UIM
: Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist
: Unread i-mode mail exists
: Unread SMS exists
: Arrival i-concier information exists
R (red)/ R (blue) : Unread MessageR storage space is full or unread MessageR exists
: Unread mail and unread i-concier information exist
F(red)/ F(green) : Unread MessageF storage space is full or unread MessageF exists

*2 ⑨ Storage state in i-mode Center, Browser screen display→P137, 153, 165, 174
: i-mode mail and MessageR/F storage are full or one of these spaces is full and unreceived mails exist in Data Center
/ / : i-mode mail or MessageR/F storage space is full in Data Center
: Unreceived i-mode mail and MessageR/F exist in Data Center
/ / : Unreceived i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF exists in Data Center
: Scrolling Browser screen by tilting the terminal
: Browser screen is displayed (Keitai mode)
: Browser screen is displayed (PC layout mode)

*2
⑩ : Displaying SSL/TLS page/Executing SSL/TLS session with i-αppli, using i-αppli downloaded from SSL/TLS page→P163
: Frame of SSL/TLS page is enlarged→P167
: Mail failed to Auto-send exists→P136
: Auto-send mail exists→P136
: Frame is enlarged→P167
: Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists→P219
⑪ i-αppli/i-αppliDX/i-αppli call state→P233, 249, 250
: During i-αppli operation
(gray) : i-αppli stand-by display ON
(orange) : i-αppli is being started from the i-αppli stand-by display
: i-αppliDX is running
(gray) : i-αppliDX stand-by display ON
(orange) : i-αppli is being started from the i-αppliDX stand-by display
: i-αppli call received while i-αppli is running
(gray) : i-αppli call received while displaying i-αppli stand-by display
(orange) : i-αppli call received while i-αppli is being started from i-αppli stand-by display
: i-αppli call received while i-αppliDX is running
(gray) : i-αppli call received while displaying i-αppliDX stand-by display
(orange) : i-αppli call received while i-αppli is being started from i-αppliDX stand-by display
: i-αppli call received

*3
⑫ : Alarm clock ON→P315
: 1Seg watching/recording reservation, schedule reminder ON→P213, 317
: Schedule reminder or 1Seg watching/recording reservation and alarm clock are simultaneously ON→P213, 315, 317
*3
⑬ : Inside OFFICEED area→P361
⑭ : Arrival information→P33
: Shortcut icons→P321
⑮ : Silent mode ON→P87
: Personalized silent mode ON→P88
⑯ : Call alert volume is Silent→P84
: Vibrator for voice call ON→P85
: Call alert volume is Silent and vibrator for voice call ON→P85
⑰ : In Public mode (Drive mode)→P67
⑱ / : Record message ON/recorded messages full→P68
⑲ : Keypad dial lock ON→P110
*2
⑳ / / : Location request of GPS success/failure/end as unanswered→P270
: Personal data lock ON→P109
/ : Music&Video Channel obtaining failure/success→P219
/ : 1Seg recording reservation completed/failed→P215

*2
㉑ : Reading UIM→P44, 51
(key is yellow) : IC card lock ON→P258
: Individual IC card lock→P258
㉒ / : Displaying available multi-cursor key in Focus mode→P33
: Remote customization ON→P125
㉓ : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)→P212, 214
: i-αppli Auto start failed→P248
㉔ State of USB mode settings and microSD card→P290, 297
: microSD card installed during Communication mode
(blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during microSD mode
(blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during MTP mode
*2
㉕ : Connected to external device using USB cable→P72, 297
: Pedometer/ACT monitor is set→P331
*2
㉖ : Software update notice→P422
: Software update pre-specified→P423
: Update notification icon→P422
/ : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition failed/succeeded→P425
㉗ Stand-by touch button→P35
㉘ Pedometer/ACT monitor→P331

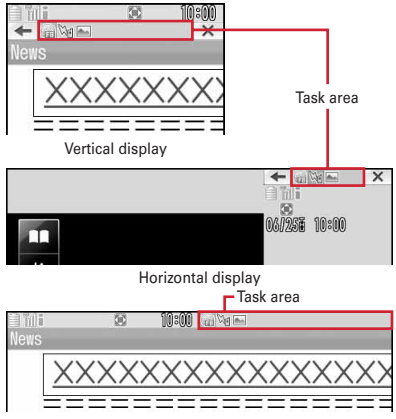
*1 When data transfer mode is activated, the terminal is in the same state as out of service area and Multitask becomes unavailable.
*2 The current highest-priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in descending order of the priority from the top.
*3 Time appears on a screen other than the stand-by display.

✔INFORMATION

- Depending on the displayed function, an icon may be displayed at a different position, or some or all icons may not be displayed.

◆ Task area

The icon indicating the function (task) in progress appears in the task area. During Multiaccess or Multitasks, the icons show which functions are running.



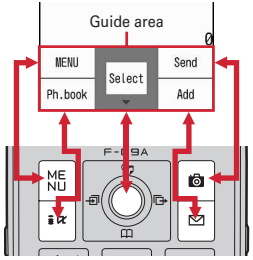
❖Icons indicated on the task area

: Voice call
: Received calls
: Redial
: Record message/Voice memo
: Videophone call
: Videophone using an external device
: Call (switching)
: Call (disconnecting)
: FOMA terminal phonebook
: Contact setting of Privacy mode
: Kisekae Tool
: Mail/MessageR/F
: Area Mail
: Receiving i-mode mail
: Checking new message/SMS
/ : Sent msg. log/Received msg. log
: Receiving SMS
: Displaying i-mode (including during the list of Last URL/Screen memo)/PDF data (except data saved from Full Browser to FOMA terminal)
: Displaying Full Browser/PDF data (data saved from Full Browser to FOMA terminal)
: Displaying bookmarks/access shortcuts of i-mode or Full Browser
: i-concier
: Still camera
: Movie camera
: Bar code reader
: 1Seg
: Activating Music&Video Channel
: Music&Video Channel program obtaining
: MUSIC Player
: i-αppli
: ToruCa
: Position location of GPS
: Location request of GPS
: Notify location of GPS
: Location history (GPS)
: My Picture
: Moving picture/i-motion
: Chara-den
: Melody
(blue)/ (gray) : Accessing microSD card/Standing by for accessing
: Sound recorder
: Displaying a folder of My Document (PDF data) or data list
: Other (Word, Excel, PowerPoint file)
: Adjusting volume by Multitask
: Countdown timer

: Alarm clock
: Scheduler/Schedule reminder ringing (including activation notification of 1Seg)
: Fake call
: User information
: Calculator
: Pedometer/ACT monitor
: Search engine
: Notepad
: Dictionaries
: Bluetooth function
/ : Packet transmission or communication/Sending or receiving packets in progress via Bluetooth function
: 64K data communication via Bluetooth function
: Accessing Data Center
: Displaying synchronization log
: Network services set
/ : Calling or communicating packets via USB/Sending or receiving packets via USB
: 64K data communication
: Accessing external data
/ : Updating software/Software update notified
: Updating pattern definition/Displaying version
/ (gray) : Each function set or on hold

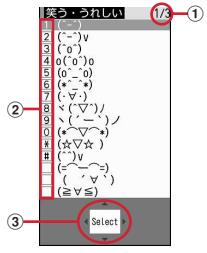
◆ Guide area

Operations that can be performed by pressing [MENU], [▤], [●], [📷] and [✉] are displayed in the guide area. Displayed operations vary by the screen.
Display locations and keys correspond as shown in the figure.



- ✣ on the guide area corresponds to multi-cursor keys ✣ (It may be different depending on the function you are using or how the site or website is made).

◆ List screen



① When a list extends to multiple pages, the currently displayed page number and the total number of pages appear.
② When numbers or symbols are assigned to items, you can select them by pressing the corresponding keys ([1]-[9], [0], [✂], [#]). When numbers or symbols are not assigned to items, move the cursor to the item and press [●].

③ ▲▼ indicates that there are items that can be selected above and below the cursor position. Press [▲▼] to move the cursor. When [▼] is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, when [▲] is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.
◀ ▶ indicates that there are items that can be selected over the multiple pages. Press [◀▶] to change the page. Some screens such as an icon selection screen cannot be switched.

◆ i-Widget screen



e.g. : i-Widget screen

- While i-Widget is running, operations that correspond to [MENU], [iα], [●], [📷], [✉] and [▲▼◀▶] are displayed on the screen as in the guide area. Displayed operations differ depending on screens.
- Using i-Widget→P253

Selecting functions from menu

- This manual mainly gives descriptions assuming that Kisekae Tool is set to "White".
- Menus are categorized by function.→P380

◆ Menu screen and switching method

❖Menu screen

The following menu screens are available.

Kisekae menu : A menu that you can change the design using Kisekae tool.
In addition to menus compatible with moving pictures, "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" that is easy to view with large font and "Simple Menu" are available. A Kisekae menu matched with the color of FOMA terminal is set by default.

- Some Kisekae menu changes the menu structure according to usage frequency.
In the Kisekae Tool stored by default, "切替メニュー (Switch menu)" and "ダイレクトメニュー (Direct menu)" in the "Preinstalled" folder support this function.
- Some Kisekae menu does not support English display when setting バイリンガル (Select language) to "English".

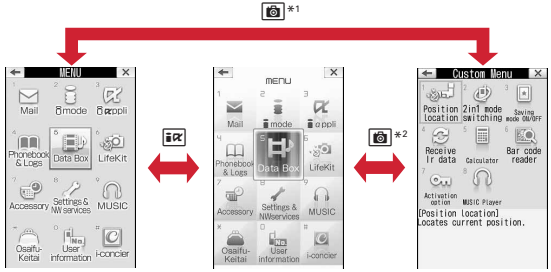
Basic menu : A basic menu that the menu structure and menu numbers are fixed.

- Menu icons or background design can be changed by customizing Kisekae Tool or menu.→P94, 97
- The font size of the menu changes synchronized with Kisekae Tool.

Custom menu : A menu that menu items can be freely registered.→P322

❖To switch the menu screen temporarily

In each menu screen, you can temporarily switch to a different menu screen by the following operations. You can also set which menu to display when pressing MENU on the stand-by display.→P94



Basic menu　Kisekae menu　Custom menu

*1 Cannot be switched when Kisekae menu or Shortcut menu is set as Select startup menu.

*2 Cannot be switched when Basic menu is set as Select startup menu.

✔INFORMATION

- Some types of Kisekae menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.

◆ Selecting a function

Press MENU in stand-by and select and perform the functions from the menu displayed.

There are 2 ways. One method involves using the keypad corresponding to the menu items (Shortcut operation). In the other method, the multi-cursor key is used to select from among the menu items.

- If any function is restricted by lock functions or no UIM is installed, 🔒 icon appears or the font color changes indicating that the function is disabled. Note that the display does not change for Kisekae menu. When a function is selected, the reason that the function cannot be performed etc. is displayed.
- Function description about the menu item at the cursor position may appear for some types or levels of the menu. The current setting may also displayed in some menu items.

❖Selecting menu items by keypad (Shortcut operations)

When numbers (item number) are assigned to menu items, a menu item can be selected by pressing the corresponding keypad ([1]-[9], [0], [*], [#]).

- Press the item number displayed with the preferred menu item.
- Item numbers differ when "Simple Menu" is set by Kisekae Tool.→P393
- Item number of the menu→P380

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

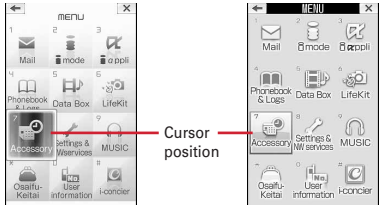
1 MENU 7 4



❖Selecting menu items by multi-cursor key

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1 MENU ▶ **Move the cursor to "Accessory"** ▶ ●



Kisekae menu　　Basic menu

- If you press ⊠ to move the cursor, the color and/or design of the cursor position change. Moving by ⊠ is unavailable for some menus.
- When "Simple Menu" is set for Kisekae menu, you can also move the cursor and press ⊠ to select a menu (second level or upper).

2 **Move the cursor to "Calculator"** ▶ ●

❖To return to stand-by display or previous menu

After selecting a menu item, you can return to the stand-by display or previous menu by pressing the following keys.

[⏎] : Return to the stand-by display.

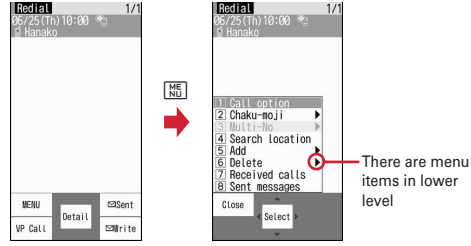
[CLR] : Return to the previous menu. Depending on the menu, you can return to the previous menu also by pressing ⊠.

◆Selecting method of submenu

When "MENU" is displayed at upper-left of the guide area, various operations can be performed with submenus.

<Example> Selecting the redial submenu

1 **On the redial list screen,** MENU ▶ **Press a keypad for the submenu item number**



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to and pressing ● or ⊠.
- Item numbers of the submenu with the same functions may vary by the operating screen.
- Pressing MENU or CLR closes the submenu.

◆ Operating procedure of each item

■ Selection of an item

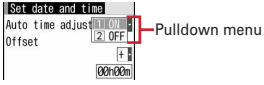
When numbers or [*] [#] is displayed, press the corresponding keys. You can also select an item by moving the cursor with [▲▼◀▶] and press [●]. When moving the cursor, the item at the cursor may be framed or change in color.



- Depending on the function, you can check vibration pattern of the vibrator, color or lighting pattern of light alert, the color scheme of screen settings or brightness of the display by moving the cursor to an item.

■ Pulldown menu operation

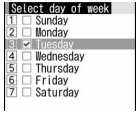
Move the cursor to the item to set and press [●], and then press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing [●].

■ Check box operation

Press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing [●].
- Pressing keypad for the item number or pressing [●] after placing the cursor, the check box switches [☑] (Select) and [☐] (Cancel).
- For some functions, you can select or cancel all items by pressing [ME NO].

■ Confirmation screen operation

If a confirmation screen for performing functions appears while deleting, setting data, etc., move the cursor to "Yes" or "No" and press [●].



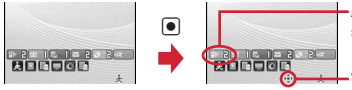
- For some functions, items other than "Yes" or "No" may appear.

◆ Displaying information quickly <Focus mode>

When [●] is pressed on the stand-by display with arrival information icon or i-concier information displayed, or with Info/calendar layout or Shortcut icons set, the display is changed to Focus mode that allows you to quickly display the related information.

- Focus mode is not available when FOMA terminal is closed.
- i-concier information→P184
- Shortcut icons→P321
- When i-concier information is displayed with Info/calendar layout set, the cursor cannot be moved to Info/calendar layout.

1 [●] ▶ Move the cursor to an icon ▶ [●]



- A screen matched for the selected icon appears.
  - (Missed calls) : Received call list appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode, appears when there is a missed call only to Number B and appears when there are missed calls to both Number A and B.
  - (Recorded messages) : The recorded message list appears.
  - (Voice messages in Voice Mail service) : A confirmation screen for playing message appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode, appears when there is a message only to Number B and appears when there are messages to both Number A and B.

(Unread messages) : The folder list of Inbox appears.
(Unread ToruCa) : The ToruCa list of the folder containing the latest unread ToruCa appears.
(i-αppli call) : i-αppli call log appears.

- You can perform the same operations when following icons appear.
  - : Connect to external device using USB cable
  - / : Software update advance notice/notification
  - / : Auto-update of latest pattern definition success/failure
  - / / : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered
  - / : Music&Video Channel program obtaining success/failure
  - / : 1Seg recording reservation completion/failure
  - : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopping)
  - : Pedometer/ACT monitor

Canceling Focus mode : CLR **or**

✔INFORMATION

- When moving the cursor to the icon for arrival information and press CLR for 1 second or more, the icon disappears temporarily. For a voice message icon of Voice Mail service, a confirmation screen appears asking you to delete the display. Select "Yes" to delete the display. It reappears when the number of items is changed by accumulating new information or viewing existing information.
- In Focus mode, you cannot display the menu by pressing MENU.

Touch panel

Selecting functions using touch operation

You can use the display as touch panel.

◆ Using touch panel

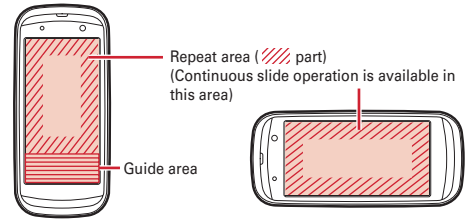
You can operate the touch panel by directly touching the display with your finger.

- When the display does not appear (screen off) or Pointing device is Valid with FOMA terminal opened, touch panel cannot be operated.
- When FOMA terminal is opened, keypad operations are disabled during a touch operation or when a finger or cheek is on the touch panel.

■ Effective area of the touch panel

The effective area of the touch panel is the entire display surface (part), however, the effective area varies depending on the operation or function to perform.

- Touch operation except selecting menu or items is disabled on some operation screens. Touch operation on some parts of the screen may not be available depending on the function in use.



e.g. : Vertical display　　e.g. : Horizontal full-screen

■ Types of touch operations

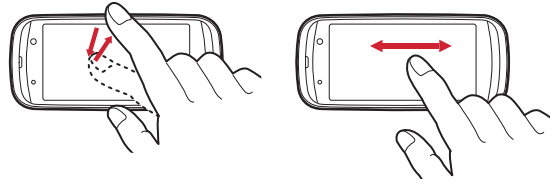
Touch : Touch the display lightly once and release the finger. The operation becomes effective when you release your finger from the display. This operation is mainly for selecting menus, items, etc.

Double-touch : Touch the display lightly twice and release the finger. The operation becomes effective when you release your finger from the display. This operation is mainly for zooming in/out or switching the display.

Slide : Keep touching the display, move your finger up, down, right or left.

- When sliding your finger into the repeat area, you can perform the operation continuously until you release your finger. It can be used during a moving picture/i-motion play, or for rewinding/fast-forwarding MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel player.

Slide quickly : Touch the display lightly and flick your finger up, down, right or left.



e.g. : Touch　　e.g. : Slide

❖Precautions on using touch panel

- Do not forcibly open/close or rotate FOMA terminal. It may cause malfunction or damage to the keys and display.
- Touch panel is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects such as a nail, ballpoint pen and pin.
- Touching the touch panel may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
  - Operation with gloved hands
  - Operation with tip of fingernail
  - Operation with a foreign object on the display
  - Operation with protective sheet or seal on the display
- Do not forcibly press the frame part around the display. Touch panel malfunction may occur.

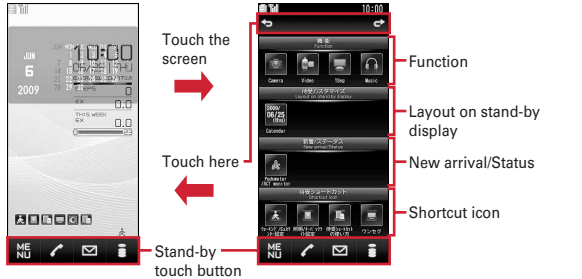
◆Touching menu to operate

You can use the touch operation by directly touching menu/items on the screen or the guide area to perform the same operations as you use the keypad operation. Moreover, you can operate some functions with menu buttons for touch operation.

- For small menus, items, buttons, etc., touch the center of the touch operation area with your finger.
- The following operations are unavailable with the touch operation.
  - Entering characters (except the entry in i-mode site/on Full Browser screen, password entry, terminal security code entry, PIN code entry)
  - Entering 1-9 and 0 by using calculator on the horizontal display
  - Playing/Stopping the moving picture/i-motion or animation set to the stand-by display
  - Turning power OFF, activating/canceling Self mode or Privacy mode
  - Activating the multitask menu or quick search
  - Activating one-key shortcut
  - Displaying information in Focus mode
- If any function is restricted by lock functions or no UIM is installed, the operation is unavailable.
- Touch panel is available in any styles. Either touch operation or keypad operation is available when FOMA terminal is opened. However, only keypad operation is available for operating some functions.

❖Selecting function from stand-by display

You can select a function by touching a stand-by touch button or stand-by launcher button on stand-by display.



■ Stand-by touch button

You can use the following 4 buttons.

- Touching other than buttons switches to stand-by launcher.

MENU : Display a menu (the first level) (same as [MENU])
: Display the outgoing call screen (same as [ ])
: Display the mail menu (same as [ ])
: Connect to i-mode and display iMenu* (same as [i-mode])

* i-mode button is the operation set by default.

■ Stand-by launcher

You can use each button from the following 4 categories. Except for "Function", other category is displayed only when there is an available touch button.

- When the title section is touched, all of buttons for the category can be displayed.
- Touching the bar on the top of the display switches to the stand-by display.

Function : Still camera, Movie camera, 1Seg, Music (Data Box), i-Channel, i-concier, i-Widget, i-αppli list, Phonebook, Scheduler, Received calls, Redial, Alarm clock, activating/canceling Silent mode, activating/canceling Public mode, activating/canceling IC card lock are available.

Layout on stand-by display : Arrival information, Scheduler, Calendar, List of notes, Note content and Recorded message are available.

New arrival/Status : The operation is available when there is information such as arrival information, GPS location request, Music&Video Channel programs downloading, result of 1Seg reserved recording etc., Pedometer/ACT monitor, automatic update of the latest pattern definitions, external device connection using USB cable, etc.→P33

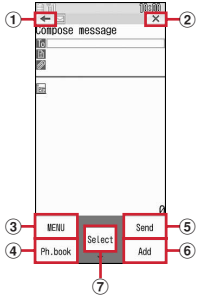
Shortcut icon : Available when shortcut icons are set.→P321

❖Guidance button and menu button for touch operation

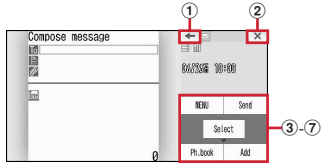
■ Guidance button

You can touch guidance buttons to return to the previous screen, exit a function, or operate a function displayed in the guide area.

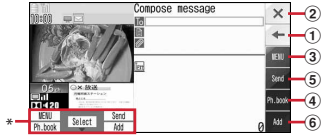
- ✥ part in the guide area cannot be touched.



Vertical display



Horizontal display



Screen to use 2 functions concurrently

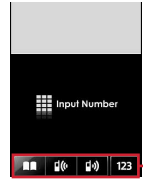
* This guide area cannot be touched.

① **Return to the previous screen (same as [CLR])**
② **Terminate function (same as [⌐])**
③ **Perform the displayed function (same as [MENU])**
④ **Perform the displayed function (same as [i-α])**
⑤ **Perform the displayed function (same as [📷])**
⑥ **Perform the displayed function (same as [✉])**
⑦ **Perform the displayed function (same as [●])**

■ Menu button for touch operation

You can use the menu buttons for touch operation or other touch operations to use the following functions. Available buttons differ depending on functions.→P40

- Outgoing call screen, screen while talking or playing screen of recorded message/ voice memo
- Still image shooting, moving picture shooting
- 1Seg watching, 1Seg video playing
- i-mode Browser screen, Full Browser screen
- Displaying images in My Picture
- Playing a moving picture/i-motion, MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel player
- My Document (PDF files), Other (Word, Excel and PowerPoint files)
- While alarm clock, schedule reminder or countdown timer is activated



Menu button for touch operation

e.g. : Outgoing call screen



e.g. : My document

■ Displaying/Hiding guidance button or menu button for touch operation

When a camera is on stand-by for shooting a still image with FOMA terminal closed, you can display/hide the guidance button each time you press [📷]. Also, on the horizontal display of i-mode Browser or on the vertical display with no guides, you can display/hide the guidance button by touching the area other than menus, items, the direction/determination button.

For the function for which the menu button for touch operation is available, you can display/hide the menu button for touch operation, [✕] or [←] by touching the area other than menus or items on the display.

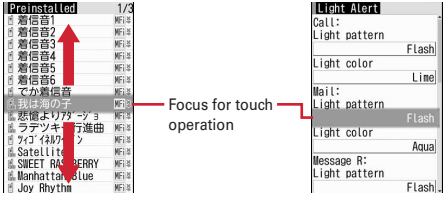
- Menu buttons on the outgoing call screen are fixed and cannot be hidden.
- Buttons on some screens automatically disappear if no operation is performed for a certain period of time after the buttons appear.

❖Selecting menu/item and operating screen

You can perform the same operation by touch operation as on the screen to move the cursor with key operation of ⊠ and select menus or items with ●.

■ Moving focus and selecting menu/item

To select a menu or item, touch a menu or item to select, move the focus for touch operation, then touch the menu or item again.

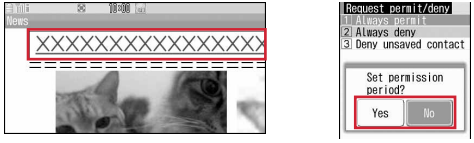


Slide on the list　　Touch an item directly

* The focus for touch operation becomes the normal cursor by pressing keys, but the focus for touch operation reappears by touching items again or if no operation is performed for a certain period of time.

■ Operation of link item or confirmation screen

For a link item, confirmation screen, etc., touch the item directly.



e.g. : Link item　　e.g. : Confirmation screen

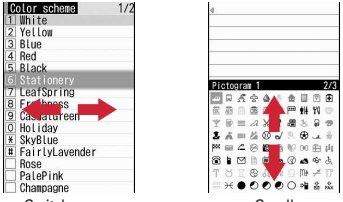
■ Pulldown menu



Select an item (Touch twice)　　Select an item (Touch twice)

■ Switching and scrolling page

Switching or scrolling pages is available by sliding to the left or right for multiple pages of list or sliding up or down for multiple pages of icons or pictograms.



Switch pages　　Scroll

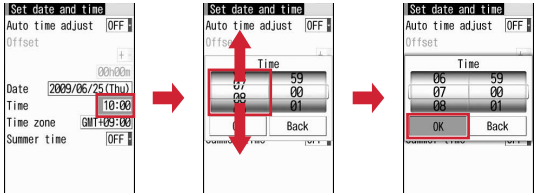
■ Switching and scrolling the tab screen



Touch a tab directly　　Slide to scroll

❖Numeric value setting roller

When you select an item to set numeric values such as date and time, you can rotate the roller by slide operation to set it.



Touch an item　Slide up or down to set a numeric value　Touch [OK]

- To set numeric values, slide up on the screen to rotate the drum upward or slide down to rotate the dram downward. Even when you move your finger out of roller while sliding, the roller keeps rotating until you release your finger. The speed of rotation changes in proportion to the speed of slide operation. Touch the rotating part to stop the rotation.
- Touch [OK] to determine the numeric value, or touch [Back] to cancel the operation and return to the previous screen.

❖Direction/Determination button

You can operate menus or items on the displayed screen using the direction/determination button to use i-mode Browser with FOMA terminal closed.



① Move the cursor leftward item (same as ◁)
② Move the cursor downward item (same as ▽)
③ Move the cursor upward item (same as △)
④ Move the cursor rightward item (same as ▷)
⑤ Select an item at cursor position (same as ●)

❖Slider

When slider (horizontal or vertical) appears, you can touch or slide it to adjust a value (volume, brightness, zooming in/out, etc.).

- The value to adjust differs depending on functions.

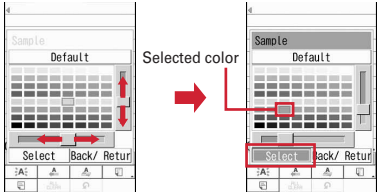


Slide a tab　Touch the position to move to

❖Color selection panel

You can use it to select a font color or background color from "Other color" for decoration on the mail creation screen.

- Use vertical/horizontal sliders to select a color position and touch [Select]. Touching [Back/Return] cancels the operation.



❖Channel switch/Volume adjust/Zoom adjust panels

- While watching 1Seg, you can slide to the right or left on the screen to display the channel switch panel. Touch ◀ or ▶ to switch channels.
- For the function for which you can adjust volume, you can slide up/down on the screen or touch the volume adjust button of the menu button for touch operation to display the volume adjust panel.
  Sliding up or down on the volume adjust panel to change the volume.
- The panel disappears when there is no operation for a certain period of time after you touch the screen or perform key operation or display the panel.
- Zoom adjust panel is used for camera.→P195



Channel switch panel



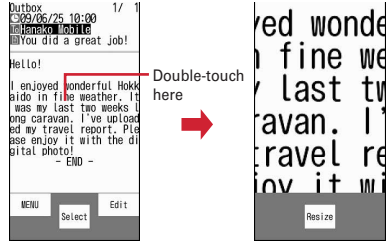
Volume adjust panel

❖Temporary enlargement and resize by double-touch

When the mail creation screen, mail details screen, MessageR/F details screen, Full Browser screen or ToruCa (Details) is displayed or for 1Seg data broadcasting, double-touch the screen to temporarily enlarge the touched point. On some screens, you can scroll or select link items even when the display is enlarged.

- Double-touch the screen or touch [Resize] of the guidance button on some screens to resize the screen.

<Example> Mail details screen



❖Authentication and character entry by touch operation

When FOMA terminal is closed, you can enter characters by touch operation only on the i-mode Browser screen, Full Browser screen, authentication screen for user name, password, etc., terminal security code entry screen or PIN code entry screen. →P350

- When the terminal security code entry screen or fingerprint authentication screen appears, you can authenticate with FOMA terminal closed.
- Fingerprint authentication→P106
- Entering terminal security code by touch entry→P352

◆ Available touch operation for each function

The following are the menu button for touch operation and other touch operations available in each function.

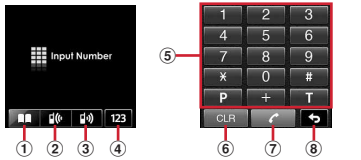
- Double-touch or slide operation is available only when the menu button for touch operation is not displayed.

■ Common button operation

[MENU] : Display submenu (as MENU in the keypad operation).
[Close] : Close the displayed confirmation screen.

■ Outgoing call screen/Incoming call screen/Screen while talking/Playing screen of recorded message or voice memo

- You can press the call key of the stand-by touch button to display the outgoing call screen and make a call by using the following buttons.



Outgoing call screen　Phone number entry screen

① Phonebook
② Received calls
③ Redial
④ Display the phone number entry screen
⑤ Enter 1-9, 0, *, #, P, +, T
⑥ Return to the previous state (same as CLR)
⑦ Make a call (same as call key)
⑧ Hide the phone number entry screen

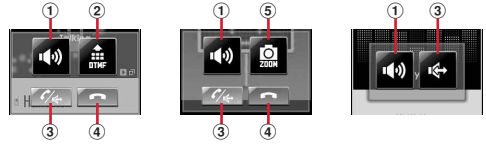
- Touch the display to display the following buttons while receiving a call. You can also answer a call by touching [Call] of the guidance button.



Incoming call screen

① Set call alert volume
② Answer a call
③ Put a call on hold

- Touch lock is activated while talking after you make/receive a call. To end a call by touch operation, press * for 1 second or more to cancel the touch lock, touch the display once to display the menu button for touch operation and then operate.
- The following buttons are available on the screen while talking or while recorded messages or voice memos are played.



Voice call screen　During a videophone call　During recorded message playback

① Set listen volume or play volume
② Send tone signals
  - Touch the numeric value entry panel for entry.
③ Turn on/off the speakerphone
④ End a call (same as end key)
⑤ Switch image zooming of a videophone
  - Use W and T to adjust.

■ **Shooting still image/moving picture**

Touch operations→P188, 193

■ **Activate 1Seg**

Touch operations→P208, 212

■ **i-mode Browser screen**

- Menu button for touch operation : Display the direction/determination button when FOMA terminal is closed→P38
- Scroll : Slide (or slide quickly) on the display
- Display linked pages : Touch link item
- Enlarge a frame : Touch a frame

■ **Full Browser screen**

- Menu button for touch operation : [🔍] (zoom in), [MENU2] (same as [📷] of the keypad operation)
- Scroll : Slide (or slide quickly) on the display
- Zoom in (Zoom)/Zoom out : Double-touch on the display
- Display linked pages : Touch a link item
- Enlarge a frame : Touch a frame

■ **Displaying images in My Picture**

- Menu button for touch operation (only for horizontal display) : [Previous], [Normal], [Zoom -], [View], [Zoom +] (Zoom -/Normal/Zoom + are available only for images larger than the screen size, and you can zoom in/out by 20% per touch)
- Scroll : Slide (or slide quickly) on the display
- Display the previous or next screen : Slide quickly to the right or left on the display
- Zoom -/View/Zoom + : Double-touch on the display

■ **Playing moving picture/i-motion**

- Menu button for touch operation (horizontal display) : [PAUSE], [PLAY], [VOLUME], [STOP], [CANCEL]
- Switch horizontal display/full-screen/wide-screen : Double-touch on the display
- Rewind/Fast forward play : Slide to the right or left on the display (during pause, slide to move the tab for specifying position)
- Switch data while playing playlist : Slide to the right or left (or slide quickly) on the display

■ **Music&Video Channel player screen**

- Menu button for touch operation (horizontal display) : [PAUSE], [PLAY], [VOLUME], [Website]
- Rewind/Fast forward : Slide to the left or right
- Move to the beginning of a chapter : Slide quickly to the left (move to the previous chapter if play time is within 3 seconds)
- Move to the next chapter : Slide quickly to the right

■ **MUSIC Player screen**

- Rewind/Fast forward : Slide to the left or right
- Move to the beginning of a tune : Slide quickly to the left (move to the previous tune if play time is within 3 seconds)
- Move to the next tune : Slide quickly to the right

■ **1Seg video playing**

- Menu button for touch operation (vertical display) : [Rotate view], [Switch view], [Subtitle]
- Menu button for touch operation (horizontal display) : [◀◀]/[▶▶] (rewind/fast forward), [❚❚] (pause), [▶] (play), [<<Search]/[>>Search] (back/forward by 1 frame during pause), [Rotate view], [ViewSW], [Subtitles], [Volume]
- Zoom in/out : Double-touch on the display (data broadcasting section)

■ **While My Document (PDF data)/data in Other is displayed**

- Menu button for touch operation* : [Zoom out], [Zoom in] ([Cancel], [Previous], [Next], [Zoom out] (only for data in Other), [Zoom in] (only for data in Other) on the search result screen)
- Scroll : Slide on the display
- Zoom in : Double-touch on the display

* Available when the guide area is not displayed for My Document or when full-screen display is applied for Other.

■ **While alarm clock, schedule reminder or countdown timer is activated**

- Menu button for touch operation : [Stop] (only when FOMA terminal is closed)
- Stop : Touch the display

Pointing device

Using fingerprint sensor for pointing operation

When FOMA terminal is opened, you can operate the fingerprint sensor to perform the same menu operation as the multi-cursor key (● 3 9 7 1) and to operate i-αppli (only compatible i-αppli), Full Browser screen, etc.

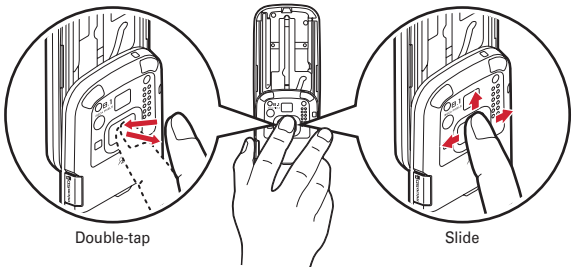
- You cannot operate on the stand-by display (except in Focus mode) or on the screen while talking.
- Precautions on fingerprint sensor→P105 "Usage precautions for fingerprint sensor"
- When Pointing device is valid, touching operation with FOMA terminal closed is unavailable.

❖Pointing operation

Basic operations are as follows.

Double-tap : Tap twice as you can put the ball of your finger on the center of fingerprint sensor (put your finger on the fingerprint sensor as parallel as possible).

Slide : Move your finger up, down, right or left with your finger lightly on the fingerprint sensor.



- Pointing device operation corresponds to multi-cursor key operation as follows.

Pointing device	Multi-cursor key
Slide	✣
Keep touching after sliding	✣ (1 sec. or more)
Double-tap	●
Touch for 1 sec. or more*	● (1 sec. or more)

* Available only for Browser screen.

- Operate the pointing device with a light touch. Putting your finger nail or excessive force on the fingerprint sensor may damage it.

◆Setting effective area and speed <Pointing device>

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 8 **▶Set required items▶** 📷

Use sensor for: : Set the effective area of pointing device.

- When "Browser/i-αppli" is set, you can use it only for Browser screen and i-αppli.
- When "Not use" is set, you can use the fingerprint sensor only for fingerprint authentication.

Pointer speed : Set movement speed for sliding.

DoubleTap speed : Set speed for double-tapping.

Using motion sensor

Motion sensor allows you to perform various operations by moving FOMA terminal.

■ Auto rotation

When FOMA terminal is closed and tilted 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise, it detects the orientation and automatically applies the horizontal display.

- Functions of still image/moving picture shooting, bar code reader, i-αppli, i-Widget, i-concier information, i-schedule and calculator do not support the auto rotation.
- When Auto rotation of Motion sensor is set to "Only selecting", you can individually set 1Seg (watching and playing video), i-mode/PDF viewer, My Picture, i-motion/Movie and Document viewer to ON or OFF.
- While displaying JPEG images, the screen automatically switches to the vertical/horizontal display or the display size according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.



■ Changing vertical/horizontal position or orientation of an image automatically when shooting a still image

The orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.→P195

■ Scrolling Browser screen by tilting the terminal

While holding down [i] on the i-mode Browser screen or Full Browser screen, tilt FOMA terminal to scroll up, down, right, left or obliquely. The more you tilt the terminal, the faster the scrolling speed becomes. For example, tilt the terminal forward to scroll down and backward to scroll up.

- The pointer does not move even after the screen scrolls.

■ Stopping alarm by double-tapping FOMA terminal

Double-tapping (tapping twice) the FOMA terminal while sounding Alarm clock, schedule alarm or Countdown timer with FOMA terminal closed stops sounding. Alarm clock stops or starts snooze.

- Be careful that when you double-tap on the screen, it may operate as touch operation.

■ Flash graphics change

When downloaded Flash graphics that are compatible with motion sensor are set for the stand-by display, images change by moving FOMA terminal with the terminal opened.

✔INFORMATION

- While walking or in the place with much vibration, scrolling Browser screen by titling FOMA terminal does not work correctly. Also, do not walk while watching a screen because it is dangerous.

◆ Enabling Motion sensor <Motion sensor>

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [7] [9] ▶ Set required items ▶ [📷]

Motion sensor : Set whether to enable Motion sensor.

Auto rotation : When "OFF" is set, the auto rotation for all the functions is disabled. When "Only selecting" is set, you can set whether to enable each function. Press [MENU] to view the description of auto rotation of the function at the cursor position.

◆ Disabling auto rotation temporarily <Auto rotation lock>

You can temporarily disable auto rotation and fix the horizontal display or vertical display.

1 Press with FOMA terminal closed (1 sec. or more)

appears at the top of the display.

- To unlock, press again for 1 second or more. It is unlocked also when FOMA terminal is opened.
- When the lock is canceled, the screen that corresponds to the FOMA terminal orientation (in the locked state) is displayed.

Using UIM (FOMA card)

UIM (FOMA card) is a card for storing user information such as phone numbers.

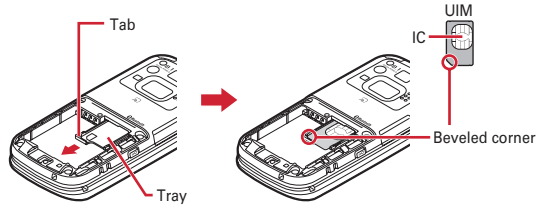
- If UIM is installed incorrectly or if there is a problem with UIM, you cannot make/receive a call or send/receive a mail.
- For details on handling UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

◆ Installing/Removing

- After turning the power OFF, close FOMA terminal and hold it with your hand.
- Take care not to touch or scratch the IC part.
- Attaching/Removing back cover and battery pack→P46

■ Installing

① Pull the tab and pull out the tray until it clicks.
② Hold UIM with the IC side up, align the beveled corner with the tray and push into the tray until it stops.



■ Removing

① Perform ① of installing operation.
② Take out UIM.

✔INFORMATION

- Note that forcible installing or removing UIM, or installing battery pack with the tray inserted at a slant may break UIM or the tray.
- If the tray is removed, press it straight along the guide rail inside the UIM slot with UIM left detached.

◆ Security code

Two security codes, "PIN code" and "PIN2 code", are set for UIM.

- You can change the security codes yourself.→P104

◆ UIM operation restriction

FOMA terminal is provided with UIM operation restriction for protecting your data/files or data/files copyrighted by a third party.

- When files or data are downloaded from websites or data attached to mails are obtained to your FOMA terminal with UIM equipped, UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- The data types subject to UIM operation restriction are as follows.
  - Videophone call message, Movie memo, Screen memo
  - i-mode mail attachment files (except ToruCa), images inserted to Deco-mail or signature, Decome-Anime template, MessageR/F, Deco-mail template containing data subject to UIM operation restriction
  - i-αppli (including i-αppli stand-by display), ToruCa (Details) image
  - Images (including GIF animations, Flash graphics and images downloaded from Data Center), i-motion, data compatible with contents transfer, melodies, PDF data, Chara-den, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files, Machi-chara
  - Kisekae Tool, Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta full®, Uta-moji Lyrics, Music&Video Channel programs

  * "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- Data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be transferred over infrared communication/iC transmission or copied/moved to microSD card.
- With UIM replaced or no UIM installed, data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played. For i-αppli with UIM operation restriction set, no functions except deletion are available.

✔INFORMATION

- When data subject to UIM operation restriction is set as stand-by display, incoming/outgoing image, ring alert, etc., replacing UIM with another one or using FOMA terminal without UIM installed causes the sound and image settings to be reset to the default state. In this case, sound or image actually generated or displayed may be different from those set. If UIM used when downloading the data is installed, UIM operation restriction of the data is canceled and the original settings are restored (when data is used for Set random image on stand-by display, settings may be canceled).
- UIM operation restriction is not set to data obtained via infrared communication, iC transmission, microSD card or DOCOMO keitai datalink or still images/moving pictures taken with the built-in camera.
- The following settings are saved to UIM.
  - My phone number
  - SMS settings (except "SMS report request")
  - DOCOMO Cert/User certificate of Manage certificate
  - バイリンガル (Select language), UIM, PLMN setting

◆ Settings when replacing UIM

If replacing the currently installed UIM with another UIM, the following settings are changed.

Setting	Changed contents
My phone number , バイリンガル (Select language), SMS settings (except "SMS report request"), "DOCOMO Cert"/"User certificate" of Manage certificate, PIN code and PIN2 code of UIM, PIN1 code ON/OFF, PLMN setting	Changed to the contents saved in the inserted UIM.
i-Channel setting, Reset call cost, i-Widget roaming set	Restored to the default settings.
Full Browser usage	Set to "No" regardless of the setting before replacement.
Cookie for i-mode Browser/Full Browser	Set to "Invalid" regardless of the setting before replacement. Cookie information is retained, but if setting to "Valid" again, a confirmation screen for deleting Cookie information appears.
Set program of Music&Video Channel	The setting before replacement is canceled. Set the program again if necessary.

◆ UIM types

When using UIM (blue) in FOMA terminal, note that it differs in the following items from UIM (green/white).

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
Number of savable digits of phone numbers in UIM phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P75
User certificate download to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P177
WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P364
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available	P357

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's FOMA international roaming service that allows you to make/receive calls with the same phone number overseas with UIM (green/white) and a terminal compatible with the service.

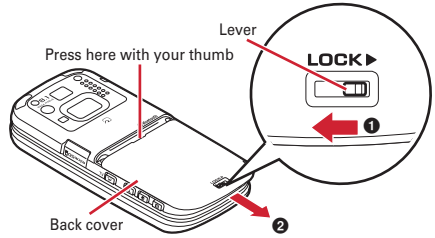
* If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. Note that, if you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription.
* If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005, but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
* There are some charging plans unavailable.
* If UIM (green/white) is misplaced or stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO and request for suspension of usage. Please see "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for contact information. Be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after misplacement or stealage.

Attaching/Removing battery pack

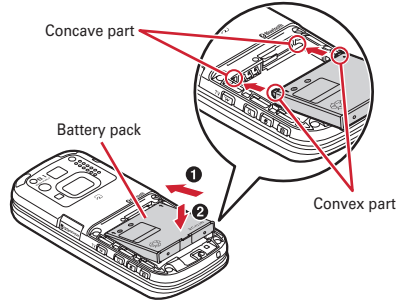
- After turning power OFF, close FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand.
- Removing battery pack may cause reservation of Software update to be canceled. When the date and time are set with Auto time adjust set to "OFF" in Date & time, removing battery pack may delete date and time.
- Always lock the back cover lever. If you use the terminal without lock, the back cover may come off.

■ Attaching

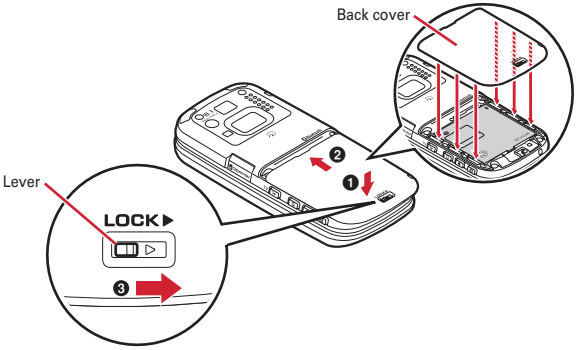
① Slide the back cover lever in the direction of ❶ to unlock, steadily hold FOMA terminal not to slide with one hand, then slide the back cover in the direction of ❷ by 2 mm with a thumb of the other hand to remove it.



② With the label side of the battery pack upward, align convex parts of the battery pack with concave parts of FOMA terminal and slide the battery pack in the direction of ❶, then press the battery pack in the direction of ❷ to set it in.



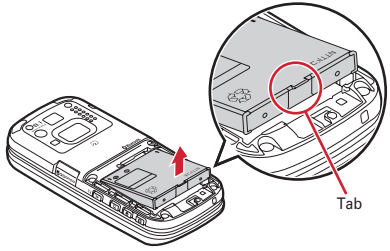
③ Place the 6 tabs of back cover to the notches, press back cover in the direction of ❶ to avoid forming any clearance between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide it in the direction of ❷ to install, then slide the back cover lever in the direction of ❸ to lock.



■ **Removing**

① Perform ① of installing operation.

② Pinch the tab of battery pack and pick it up in the direction of the arrow to remove.



✔INFORMATION

- Attaching battery pack forcibly into FOMA terminal may damage FOMA terminal jack.
- FOMA terminal or back cover may be damaged if you install or remove battery pack by a method except the procedures above or if you press too hard.

❖For better battery pack performance

- **Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with FOMA terminal turned ON.**
  After charging has completed with FOMA terminal turned ON, the power is supplied to the terminal from the battery pack. If FOMA terminal is left in that state for a long time, the battery pack may run out causing the low battery alert to sound after using only a short period of time. In this case, remove FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter and then reconnect it and charge the battery again.
- **To promote environmental conservation, return your used battery pack to NTT DOCOMO sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.**

Li-ion 00

Charging

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Use AC/DC adapter for FOMA terminal to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

- To get the maximum performance from F-09A, use battery pack F10.

❖Charging times (approximate)

The following is the time for charging an empty battery pack with F-09A's power switched OFF. Charging with the terminal ON or under low temperature requires longer time.

AC adapter	Approx. 150 min.
DC adapter	Approx. 150 min.

❖Operation time on full charge (approximate)

The following time varies by the charging method and operating environment.

Continuous stand-by time	**FOMA/3G**	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 630 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 350 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 400 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 320 H
Continuous call time	**FOMA/3G**	Voice call : Approx. 240 min. Videophone call : Approx. 120 min.
	GSM	Approx. 210 min.
1Seg watching time		Approx. 300 min. (1Seg ECO mode : Approx. 330 min.)

- Continuous stand-by time indicates the approximate time that the phone can receive radio waves normally with F-09A closed.
- Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- 1Seg watching time indicates the approximate watching time with receiving radio waves normally and using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional).
- Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.
- Call, communication or stand-by time is reduced by performing i-mode communication. Also, even with no voice calls or i-mode communications made, continuous call/communication/stand-by time is reduced by creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-αppli, using i-αppli stand-by display, performing data communication or multiaccess, using camera, playing moving picture/i-motion, obtaining or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing music with MUSIC Player, watching or recording 1Seg, making Bluetooth connection, etc.

❖Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the battery is recommended because it is near the end of life. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- The battery pack's life may be reduced by using i-αppli or videophone or watching 1Seg while charging.

❖Battery charge

- For details, refer to the operation manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 is applicable only to 100V AC. Though FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use is applicable to 100-240V AC.
- AC Adaptor has a plug dedicated to 100V AC (for domestic use). When using the AC adapter in the range of AC 100V and 240V overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are staying is required. Do not charge the battery using a transformer for overseas travel.

✔INFORMATION

- Some i-αppli remains operating even when FOMA terminal is closed, consuming power. In this case, the call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced.
- During a call or communications, charging may not finish. Charging may not complete if you start battery charging while watching/recording 1Seg, playing moving picture/i-motion, obtaining Music&Video Channel program, activating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player, running i-αppli. In this case, it is recommended to end the operation, and then charge the battery.

- Charging may not be completed depending on the settings of Display & Key light or in some charging methods, for example, charging with "Always on" set to Normal use in Display light time of Display & Key light.
- If you use the videophone or make packet communication or 64K data communication while charging, internal temperature of FOMA terminal may increase and the charging may not finish normally. In this case, wait until the temperature drops and try again.

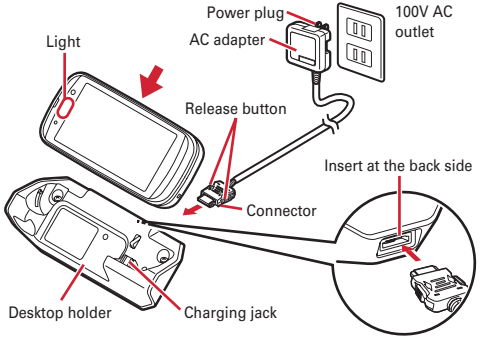
❖Charging using AC adapter or Desktop holder

Read the respective instruction manual when using the optional FOMA AC adapter, DC adapter or Desktop Holder.

- When charging the battery pack, install it to FOMA terminal.

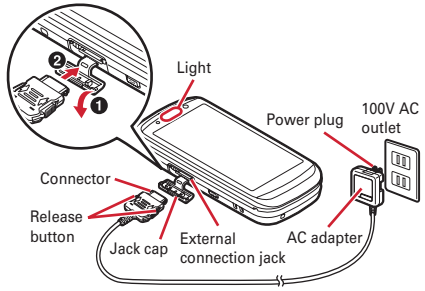
■ Using desktop holder and AC adapter in combination for charging

① Insert the AC adapter to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the AC adapter's connector upward.
② Unfold the AC adapter's power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
③ With FOMA terminal closed, align the charging terminal of FOMA terminal with the charging jack of the desktop holder, and press the terminal in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
④ After charging is completed, hold the desktop holder and remove FOMA terminal.



■ Charging the battery using AC adapter only

① Open jack cap (❶) of FOMA terminal, hold the connector horizontally with the arrow side upward and insert it to the jack. (❷)
② Unfold the power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
③ When charging is over, pull out the power plug from the outlet, and pull out from FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector.



❖Charging in a car

By using FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional), charging is available in a car.

- For details, refer to the operation manual of DC adapter.
- When FOMA terminal is not used or you are leaving the car, disconnect the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket and disconnect the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply store for a replacement.

✔INFORMATION

- Insertion or removal of the AC and DC adapter connectors should be done slowly and carefully so that they are not given excessive force. When disconnecting the connector, pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.

❖Operations and precautions for charging

When charging starts, a charge start alert sounds, the light turns on and the battery icon on the display blinks. When charging is over, a charge completion alert sounds, the light turns off and the battery icon stops blinking.

- When starting the battery charging, the light turns on in red. In some environments, the light may not light immediately when charging starts; this is normal and not a malfunction. However, if the light does not turn on after a while, disconnect FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter then connect it again to start charging. Contact the sales outlet such as docomo Shop if the light does not turn on for a while after charging starts.
- If you receive mail or shoot an image while charging, the light turns on temporarily in a different color, but it is not a failure. It turns on in red after a while.
- When installing the fully charged battery pack to FOMA terminal and connecting it to the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter, the light may turn on for a moment and turn off. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- During a call or communication, in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) or with Charge alert set to "OFF", the charge alert does not sound at start or completion of charge.

Remaining battery level

Checking battery level

A battery icon appearing on the top of the display shows an approximate remaining battery level.

(Battery level 5) : Ample charge (81-100%).
(Battery level 4) : Slightly low charge (61-80%).
(Battery level 3) : Low charge (41-60%).
(Battery level 2) : Very low charge (21-40%).
(Battery level 1) : Almost exhausted (20% or less). Charge the battery.

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- You can change the battery icon in Battery icon to display the battery level in percent figures as 1% 100%. Consider the battery level to be a rough guide. When the battery is 20% or less, charge it as early as possible.
- The battery level significantly changes under some usage conditions.

✔INFORMATION

- Battery level information is corrected to improve the battery level accuracy. Corrected information is reset when battery pack is replaced because it is the information unique to the battery pack. Therefore, error may temporarily become larger immediately after the battery pack is installed.
- When the battery level is displayed in a percent figure, it may be increased or decreased approximately by 20% in the process of correction, however, it is not a failure. Note that, when the correction is made with the battery level approximately 20%, it may suddenly become 0% and battery alarm may sound.
- The error of the battery level may temporarily become larger in the following cases.
  - An old battery pack (heavily used battery pack) is used.
  - A new battery pack and an old battery pack are alternately used.
  - Difference in temperature between a battery pack and FOMA terminal is considerable when used.
  - A battery pack left for a long time is used.
- Note that, if you alternately use 3 or more battery packs, the battery level accuracy may be extremely reduced.

❖When battery is almost exhausted

When the battery level is 0%, a message indicating the battery is exhausted appears. Pressing any one of ●, CLR, ⏻ keys with FOMA terminal opened deletes the message temporarily. After a while, a battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display blink. The power is turned off in approximately 1 minute. Although these operations stop when charging starts, press ⏻ to immediately stop the battery alarm.

◆Checking battery level with sound and display <Battery level>

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 4

The battery level is displayed and the sound set for Key/touch sound (→P86) is emitted according to the level. After a while, the screen returns to the menu list.
Battery level 5 (81-100%) : 5 short beep sound
Battery level 4 (61-80%) : 4 short beep sound
Battery level 3 (41-60%) : 3 short beep sound
Battery level 2 (21-40%) : 2 short beep sound
Battery level 1 (20% or less) : 1 short beep sound

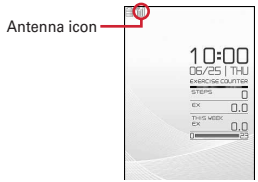
Turning power ON/OFF

❖Turning power ON

1 [Power] **(2 sec. or more)**

The wake-up screen appears and the stand-by display appears. [UIM] appears at the bottom of the display while reading UIM.

- An antenna icon appearing at the top of the display shows the approximate received signal level.



Stand-by display

Icon		
Received signal level	Strong ⟷ Weak	Out of service area or where radio waves do not reach

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- If you remove the battery pack and install it again soon with the power left ON, the power automatically turns on and the message indicating it appears.

❖Turning power OFF

1 [Power] **(2 sec. or more)**

◆Operations to perform after turning the power ON at the first time

When turning the power ON for the first time, operate in the order of "拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting)"→"Initial setting". The settings made can be changed later.

- When initialization is finished, a confirmation screen of software update function appears. Press [●] to display the stand-by screen.

❖Enlarged menu setting

1 **"Yes" or "No" on the confirmation screen**

- When selecting "Yes", "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" of Kisekae Tool is set. If you cancel the confirmation screen by pressing [CLR] or [Power], the confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.

❖Default setting

- Always set Password and Request permit/deny. When [Camera] or [CLR], [Power] is pressed before setting terminal security code or Request permit/deny, a confirmation screen appears asking you to exit. If you exit by selecting "Yes", this confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.
- On the stand-by display, initial setting screen is also displayed by pressing [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [7] [6] [8].

1 **Set required items on Initial setting screen▶** [Camera]

Date & time : Set the date and time.→P52

Password : Change the terminal security code after performing authentication.→P103

Fingerprint : After performing authentication, register the fingerprint to be used for authentication.→P105

Key/touch sound : Set a confirmation sound emitted when a key is pressed or touch operation is performed.→P86

Text size : Set size of characters for phonebook, mail, etc.→P99

Request permit/deny : After performing authentication, set if you provide location information. To permit the location request in a specified period, set the permission period in Request permit/deny.→P271

Pointing device : Set effective area and speed.→P42

❖Checking Welcome mail

"Welcomeドコモ動画 (DOCOMO moving picture)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメBEST5 (Recommendation)" mail messages are saved by default. appears on the stand-by display, and the light (blink) indicates that there is unread mail.

1 ● ▶ ●

The next procedures→P142 Step 2 and the following steps in "Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox"

✔INFORMATION

- When UIM is replaced, authentication is required after turning ON FOMA terminal. When authentication is succeeded, the stand-by display appears. If an incorrect terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (the power can be turned on again).
- If no operation is performed with something displayed on the screen, the display light is turned off automatically according to the settings in Light time-out or Power saving mode. It also applies while making a call. The display light turns on again if there is any operation or incoming call.

Select language

Changing screen display to English

1 MENU [設定/NWサービス (Settings & NW services)] 2 6 3 ▶ 1 or 2

✔INFORMATION

- This setting is also saved to UIM.
- Even if setting to "English", the displayed menu is not switched to English in some Kisekae Tool. Note that, when Kisekae Tool in "Preinstalled" folder is set, a menu dedicated to "English" is displayed.
- Even if changing this setting, the title of Shortcut icon is not changed from the language set when the shortcut icon was pasted.

Date & time

Setting date and time

You can set so that the time or time difference is automatically corrected or directly enter the date and time. With automatic correction set, the time is corrected when receiving the time information from DOCOMO's network in Japan or the time difference correction information from the telecommunications carrier used overseas.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 3 1 **▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

Auto time adjust : Set whether time is corrected automatically.

- When "ON", Offset can be set.
- When "OFF", set the date and time. Time zone and Summer time may also be set.

Offset : When "+", the displayed time is always set forward the specified period of time from the corrected time. When "-", the displayed time is always set back the specified period of time from the corrected time.

Date : The date can be entered up between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.

Time : Enter the time in the 24-hour format.

Time zone : When moving to a place with time difference, set the time zone without changing the date and time settings.

- Time difference from the previously set time zone is calculated and displayed.
- Set "GMT+09:00" in Japan.

Summer time : When "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the specified time.

✔INFORMATION

<When setting Auto time adjust to "ON">

- Time or time difference is corrected when FOMA terminal is turned ON. If not corrected for a while after turning FOMA terminal ON, once turn FOMA terminal OFF and then turn it ON again. Note that, when no UIM is installed or in some radio wave conditions, time is not corrected even if FOMA terminal is once turned OFF and turned ON again.
- When time difference is corrected, a message indicating it appears.
- After time or time difference is corrected overseas, the time displayed for call histories and sent mails is local time.

- Time difference is not corrected in some networks of overseas telecommunications carriers. In this case, set the time zone manually.
- The corrected time or time difference may have an error of several seconds.

<When the correction has never been performed and date and time are displayed with "--" or "?">

- Flash graphics, Machi-chara, etc. that use clock or date/time are not displayed correctly. Also, functions requiring date/time information such as Auto start, Reserve, downloading or playing data with Replay Restriction, operating a user certificate, etc., cannot be activated.
- Date and time of each data are not recorded and displayed as "----/--/--" or "----------". A segmental number furthermore (number to segmentalize) may be appended.

<When setting date/time with Auto time adjust set to "OFF">

- When the date/time are deleted because of removing of the battery pack or leaving the battery for a long time after the battery exhausted, set the date/time again after charging the battery.

Caller ID notification

Notifying the other party of your phone number

You can notify your phone number (caller ID) to the other party's terminal when making a voice call or videophone call.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the phone of the other party can display the caller ID.
- Setting operations for this function is disabled from a location out of service area.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 4 1 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- Press MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 4 1 2 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

❖Priority of Caller ID notification

There are multiple methods to notify your phone number to the other party. If you set or perform these methods simultaneously, the caller ID operations are performed with the following priorities. The displayed setting and actual Notify/Not notify may differ.

① When setting a caller ID notification method in Call option for dialing→P62
② When "186" or "184" is prefixed to phone number to dial→P61
③ Caller ID settings of phonebook→P79
④ Activate/Deactivate of Caller ID notification

✔INFORMATION

- If an announcement of requesting caller ID is heard when making a call, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

User information

Checking your own phone number

You can check your phone number (My phone number), Name, Mail address, etc.

1 MENU **[User information]**

Checking during a call etc. : 0

✔INFORMATION

- For details of how to check i-mode mail address, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press ✉ to switch User information between Number A and B.
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P325
  Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF to update to the correct user information.→P359

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making calls/videophone calls

Videophone calls 56
Making a call/videophone call 56
Switching a voice/videophone call during a call 58
Making a call using redial/received calls ..... Redial/Received calls 58
Using Chaku-moji ..... Chaku-moji 60
Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call 186/184 61
Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF) 61
Making a call under set conditions ..... Call option 62
Making international calls ..... WORLD CALL 62
Registering prefix ..... Prefix dialing 63
Setting Sub address ..... Sub address 64
Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear ..... Noise reduction 64
Talking hands-free while driving ..... In-Car Hands-Free 64

Receiving calls/videophone calls

Receiving a call/videophone call 64
When the other party switches voice/videophone call 65
Pressing a dial key to answer call ..... Any key answer 65
Answering a call by opening FOMA terminal ..... Slide and answer 65
Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed ..... Close settings 66
Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call ..... Priority comm mode 66

When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately ..... Respond and Hold 66
Using public mode 67
Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call ..... Record message 68
Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos 69

Videophone call settings

Using Chara-den 69
Setting image during a videophone call 70
Changing videophone settings ..... Operation 71
Setting for switching a voice/videophone call during a call ..... Notify switchable mode 71
Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication ..... DataSession arv. act 71
Using videophone call by interfacing to external device ..... External device 72

Videophone calls

Videophone function is available between terminals that support DOCOMO videophone.

- Videophone calls are only available at 64 kbps.
- DOCOMO videophone specifications conform to "3G-324M*2, an international standard prepared by 3GPP*1". The connection with the videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

*1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)··· is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

*2 3G-324M···An international standard for 3rd generation mobile videophone

◆ Reading screen during a videophone call



- Icon definitions

×1 - ×16 : Zooming
: Sending camera image : Sending Camera-Off images
: Using Chara-den
: Sending still image : On hold : Respond and Hold
: Recording message : Recording moving picture memo
Action / Parts : Action mode (Full motion/Semi-motion)
STD / / / : Scene mode (Standard/Backlight/Monotone/Sepia)
: Light ON
/ HQ : Sending image quality (Prefer motion speed/Prefer image quality)
A : Sending/Receiving audio V : Sending/Receiving video
AV : Sending/Receiving audio/video
1 - 8 : Adjusting Listen volume
: Macro shooting ON
: Videophone call switch available

Making a call/videophone call

- Operations by menu buttons for touch operation etc.→P40
- Canceling Touch lock→P119

1 Enter a phone number (up to 80 digits)

- Always enter area code even when calling from the same city.

CLR : Delete 1 digit

2 Select a call type

Making a voice call :
Making a videophone call :

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

- The charging begins when "Connected to videophone." appears on the screen.

3 When ending the call,

✔INFORMATION

<For both voice and videophone calls>

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed. Select "Number A" or "Number B".
- If an announcement requesting caller ID is heard, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

<Voice call>

- You can make a call by entering a phone number after pressing . In this case, a call is made approximately 5 seconds after the phone number is entered.

<Videophone call>

- The charges are based on the rate for digital communication not for voice calls even when substitute image is sent instead of the camera image.
- If videophone call was not connected, a message appears indicating the reason and stand-by display reappears. Displayed messages may not reflect the state of the other party correctly depending on the type of terminal and/or usage of the network service by the other party. Main messages are as follows.
  - **Busy. :** The line of the other party is busy (may appear during packet communication on some types of the other party's terminal)

- **Set Caller ID to ON :** Caller ID is not sent (such as when connecting to visualnet)
- **Redial using voice call :** The other party is set for Call Forwarding Service but forwarding destination does not support videophone calls
- **Busy with packet transmission. :** The other party is performing packet transmission
- **Make call from i-mode web page :** You are not making videophone call after connecting to site provided by IP (Information Provider)
- **Upper limit exceeded. Connection failed. :** Upper limit of a charging plan with a limiting function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) is exceeded

- If a videophone call accompanied with Chaku-moji is made when Auto redial as voice in Operation is set to "ON", Chaku-moji accompanies when redialing.
- Any videophone call from FOMA terminal to emergency call (110, 119 or 118) with Auto redial as voice in Operation set to "ON" is automatically switched to a voice call.
- The speakerphone function switches according to Speakerphone in Operation.

◆ On hold

- The caller is charged for time spent on hold.

1 During a call, ●

The call is put on hold, light blinks in green, and a melody is played. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.

- To clear voice call on hold, press ● or [ ].
- To clear videophone call on hold, perform any of the following operations.
  ● : Redisplay the image sent before the call is put on hold
  [ ] / [ ] : Camera image is sent
  [ ] : Substitute image is sent
- While on hold, FOMA terminal vibrates every 3 minutes, up to 5 times. However, it does not vibrate in Public mode (Drive mode) or while Vibrate alert in Personalized silent mode is set to "OFF".

◆ Using speakerphone function

1 Enter a phone number ▶ [ ] (1 sec. or more) or [ ]

appears at the top of the display.

- For operating from phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages or Voice memos, press [ ] (1sec. or more) or [ ].
- Press [ ] for 1 second or more to use speakerphone while Speakerphone in Operation is set to "OFF".
- While making a call, ringing or talking on the phone, you can switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF each time you press [ ].

✔INFORMATION

- If you switch to speakerphone, the volume may suddenly increase. Use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm. If a call is hard to hear from the speaker due to loud noise around you or the other party, turn the speakerphone function OFF.
- This function can be used in Silent mode.

◆ Adjusting Listen volume during a call

- This setting applies to Listen volume in Adjust volume.
- Volume of the speakerphone function is retained even after a call but not applied to Listen volume.

1 During a call, [ ]

◆ Using Voice clear/Voice slowing

❖ Switching Voice clear ON/OFF

This function detects ambient noise and optimizes the other party's voice during a voice call by limited vocal range to make the voice be heard clearly. And, the volume is automatically increased also when your or other party's voice is small.

- This function does not operate while using speakerphone function or in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are retained after a call.
- This function is not for adjusting Listen volume. Change the volume of the other party's voice with Listen volume.

1 During a voice call, [MENU] [7]

When setting to "ON", 自動はっきりボイス appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

❖ Switching Voice slowing ON/OFF

During a voice call, adjust the other party's voice to be heard slowly by using the silence at intervals, to make it easier to be heard. When the other party speaks without intervals, the voice is heard at the normal speed.

- If you set Voice slowing to ON, the quality of the other party's voice, music or time tone may change. In this case, set Voice slowing to OFF.
- This function does not operate in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are canceled after a call.

1 During a call, [✉]

When setting to "ON", ゆっくりボイス appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

Switching a voice/videophone call during a call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- This function is available among the models which support switching voice call and videophone call.
- To switch the call, the other party needs to set Notify switchable mode to ON.→P71

<Example> Switching to videophone call during a voice call

1 During a voice call, [ﾋﾞﾃﾞｵ] ▶ "Yes"

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.

Switching to voice call during a videophone call : During a videophone call, [ﾒｰﾙ/ﾒﾓ] [1] ▶ "Yes"

- Speakerphone is deactivated when the call is switched to voice call.

✔INFORMATION

- It takes approximately 5 seconds to switch. It may take longer depending on radio wave conditions.
- Voice calls and videophone calls are charged individually depending on their respective times. The time for switching calls is not counted in the call duration thus not charged.
- Under some radio wave conditions, switching calls is unavailable, resulting in disconnection of the call.
- During voice call using Call Waiting or while the other party is performing packet communication, switching to videophone call is unavailable.
- When packet communications are made during a voice call, packet communications are disconnected before switching to a videophone call.
- Settings such as camera image sending etc., made during a videophone call are canceled each time you switch voice call and videophone call.→P70

Making a call using redial/received calls

- Up to 30 items are recorded in each of Redial and Received calls. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 30 items for each of Number A and B are recorded in Redial and Received calls.
- When calls are made to the same phone number, the latest call is recorded in Redial as "Unspecified", "Notify" or "Not notify" of Caller ID.

1 [📞] (Redial) or [📞] (Received calls) ▶ Move the cursor to a party

- Select the party to display details screen.

<Example> Redial screen



Redial list screen



Redial details screen

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  - / : Making/Receiving of voice call/international voice call*1
  - / : Making/Receiving of videophone call/international videophone call*1
  - / : Receiving of 64K data communications/international 64K data communications
  - / : Missed call/Unchecked missed call
  - / : Recorded message/Unchecked recorded message*2
  - : Received call with Chaku-moji
  - / : Missed call with Chaku-moji/ Unchecked missed call
  - / : Recorded message with Chaku-moji/Unchecked recorded message*2
  - / : Calling of show/hide of Caller ID set in Call option or Caller ID settings of phonebook
  - : Making/Receiving call while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)*3

: Making/Receiving a call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
: Ringing time of missed call

*1 If you directly enter "010" or dial from "010" saved in phonebook, the international call icon and "+" do not appear.
*2 If recorded message is deleted, this icon changes to missed call icon.
*3 May not appear when the call making/receiving date and time is not recorded etc.

2 [ ] or [ ]

- Pressing [●] on the details screen makes a call in the same way as the call type of the selected redial/received calls.
- Press [MENU] [1] to make a call specifying conditions.→P62
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, a call is made from the number specified for incoming/outgoing calls.

✔INFORMATION

<Redial/Received calls common>

- If voice and videophone calls are switched during the call, the type at the time of making/receiving the call is recorded.
- For international call, "+" appears before phone number. It is not displayed when dialing with "010" prefixed.
- If you press [ ] during a voice call, Redial/Received calls appear.
- When an image is saved to phonebook, details screen is displayed according to View preference.

<Redial>

- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of a call dialed by specifying Multi Number from submenu is displayed on details screen.

<Received calls>

- When caller ID of the other party is not shown, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of Multi Number used for incoming call appears on details screen.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in an office etc. may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number (Dial-in service allows you to have multiple incoming phone numbers for one telephone line).
- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in received calls.
- To display all received call logs including missed calls within the delay time set in Ring alert delay, press [MENU] [9] [1] on Received calls list. To return to original Received call list, press [MENU] [9] [2].
- To display the number of unchecked missed calls, press [MENU] [0] on Received call list.
- When you receive a call from the phone number that is not saved in phonebook but in Redial, "Callback" appears.

❖Using Redial/Received calls

Check the location of the other party : Move the cursor to the other party▶ [MENU] [4] ▶ "Yes"

Accessed to "imakodokantan search" using a phone number as the target.

- For details about imakodokantan search, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to the other party▶ [MENU] [5] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Creating i-mode mail : Move the cursor to the destination party▶ [ ]

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, sender's address is set according to number information of the used incoming/outgoing calls.

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to the destination party▶ [ ] (1 sec. or more)

Switching Redial/Received calls : [MENU] [7]

Displaying Sent msg. log/Received msg. log : [ ]

✔INFORMATION

- When using 2in1, you cannot create SMS from Redial/Received calls for Number B.

❖Switching details screen display <View preference>

1 On details screen, [MENU] [9] ▶ [1]-[3]

❖When you missed calls <Missed calls>

2 (The digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display. The incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received calls.

- When a missed call from an unknown phone number exists, the ring time enables you to check whether it is a malicious ("One-ring phone scam" etc.) call for the sole purpose of recording the phone number in the received call list.

◆Deleting Redial/Received calls

1 [ ] (Redial) or [ ] (Received calls)▶ Move the cursor to an entry▶ [MENU] [6] ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the redial/recieved calls.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ [ ]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice or videophone call, a message can be sent in a ring time to inform the receiver of the purpose and urgency of the call.

- For details of Chaku-moji or supported models, refer to NTT DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".



◆ Editing or Setting Message

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 3

2 **Operate Chaku-moji**

Adding message : 1 ▶ **"<New message>"** ▶ **Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters)** ▶ 📷

- Up to 10 items can be saved.
- Select the existing Chaku-moji to edit it. In this case, a confirmation screen for adding appears.
- To quote Chaku-moji from Sent messages, press MENU 1 and select Chaku-moji.
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a message and press MENU 2. To delete all items, press MENU 3 and select "Yes".

Setting display for incoming message <Message display settings> : 2 ▶ 1 - 4

- If "Hide all" is set, no Chaku-moji is received.

◆ Making a call accompanied by message

Chaku-moji appears on the incoming call screen of the other party.

- Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages for Numbers A and B, respectively. Display differs depending on mode.

1 **Enter a phone number** ▶ MENU 3 1 ▶ **Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters)** ▶ 📷 ▶ MENU **or** i-α

When the other party receives the message, "Transmission:success" appears on the calling screen and message transmission is charged.

- You can also select from saved or Sent messages.

✔INFORMATION

- The sender is charged for communication fee, but the receiver is not.
- Message cannot be sent if the terminal of the other party is not compatible with this function, when Message display settings is set to "Hide all", or while the terminal is overseas. In these cases, "Transmission:failure" appears and no message transmission fee is charged. Also, if the terminal of other party is not turned on, is out of service area, in public mode (drive mode) or if Greeting msg resp time is set to "0 Sec.", a message cannot be sent and the transmission result is not displayed.
- Chaku-moji is sent even within the delay time in Ring alert delay set on the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not appear even when Chaku-moji arrives to the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received overseas.
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, [2] appears in Sent messages of Number B.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock or Personal data lock, Chaku-moji can be received but not displayed on the incoming call screen. It is displayed in Received calls when the lock is canceled.

186/184

Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P53

Notifying your caller ID : 1 8 6 ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶ [ ] or [ ]

Not notifying your caller ID : 1 8 4 ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶ [ ] or [ ]

✔INFORMATION

- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "186" is prefixed.
- When making a call by prefixing "186" or "184", the phone number prefixed with that number is recorded in the redial list.

Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF)

- Pause and timed pause are effective only for voice calls.

❖Sending pause "P"

This function allows you to operate Voice mail at home, to reserve tickets or to check the balance of a bank account, etc.

1 Enter a phone number ▶ [ ] (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter a number ▶ [ ]

When pressing [ ] after the call is connected, the digits after the pause ("P") are sent.

❖Sending timed pause "T"

Timed pause ("T") is used to dial outside line number followed by an extension. When timed pause ("T") is entered between the phone and extension numbers, the extension number is dialed with a pause of the predetermined seconds after the phone number is dialed.

1 Enter a phone number ▶ [ ] (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter an extension number ▶ [ ]

- Timed pauses ("T") can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause ("T") is followed by an interval of approximately 1 second.

❖Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF) during a videophone call

1 During a call, [MENU] [0] ▶ Enter a number

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

[CLR] : Cancel sending

- While sending camera image or Camera off image, tone signals can be sent only by pressing numeric keys without pressing [MENU] [0].
- A still image being sent is canceled.
- During Chara-den call, actions by pressing numeric keys are not available.

✔INFORMATION

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold, by entering a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T").

Call option

Making a call under set conditions

You can set calling conditions each time you make a call.

- Priority of the method to notfy a caller ID→P53

1 Enter a phone number▶ MENU 2 ▶Set required items

Chaku-moji : Creating/selecting Chaku-moji→P60
Multi-No/Own number : Select a number from which a call is dialed
Call type of Multi Number→P358
- Own number is displayed when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode. Select "Number A" or "Number B" when in Dual mode→P358

Call type : Select call type
Caller ID : Set Notify/Not notify caller ID
- When "Unspecified" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate setting.

Prefix : Select Prefix to be added at the beginning
Int'l call : Set Int'l call→P63
Int'l prefix : Select international prefix number when making an international call
Country code : Select country code to dial for international call

2 MENU or ☎

- If "V.phone" is selected for Call type, Chara-den to display during a call can be set by pressing ✉.
- When operating from the received message/sent message details screen, or when using Phone To (AV Phone To) function, a confirmation screen for calling may appear. When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made with the settings other than Chaku-moji and Call type canceled.

✔INFORMATION

- "SMS" of Call type can be selected in cases like using SMS To function.
- Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

WORLD CALL

Making international calls

- Overseas use→P364
- "WORLD CALL" is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones.
- You can call approximately 240 countries and regions in the world.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges apply. No monthly fee is required.
  * You are subscribed to "WORLD CALL" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (Unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- There are some unavailable charging plans.
- Contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of this manual for details of "WORLD CALL".
  * To use international call services except DOCOMO service, contact the carrier for details.

You can make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.
- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the other party's terminal connected through the international videophone line.

1 0 1 0 ▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number▶ ☎

- Omit the leading "0" in area (city) code (The leading "0" is required for certain countries and regions including Italy).
- The above phone number can be saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can also call by 009130▶010▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶phone number

❖Making international call entering "+"

Entered "+" is converted to the international prefix number "009130010 (WORLD CALL)".

- When a call is made by entering Japanese country code "81" succeeding "+", international prefix number is not converted.

1 [0] **(1 sec. or more)▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number▶** [ ] **▶"Yes"**

- Press [0] for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit the leading "0" in area (city) code (The leading "0" is required for certain countries and regions including Italy).

❖Making international call by selecting international prefix number and country code

You can select international prefix number or country code registered in Int'l call assist.

1 Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number▶ [MENU] [2] **▶Select Int'l call field▶** [2] **▶Select Int'l prefix field▶Select the name of int'l prefix number▶Select Country code field▶Select Country code▶** [MENU] **or** [ ] **▶"Yes"**

- When "No, use original" is selected, a call is not made.

◆Setting Int'l call assist

❖Setting Auto switch

You can set whether entered "+" is automatically converted to international prefix number. Also, you can set whether country code is added for a call made from overseas.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [9] [3] [1] **▶Set required items▶** [●]

Country code : Select "ON" then country code
- These settings are useful when making a call overseas.

Int'l prefix : Select "ON" and select Intn'l prefix number

❖Editing country code <Country code setting>

Up to 22 country codes that are required for making international calls can be saved.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [9] [3] [2]

2 Select a country code

Setting auto conversion : Move the cursor to country code▶ [●]
✓ is added to the selected number.
Deleting : Move the cursor to a country code▶ [MENU] [3] **▶"Yes"**

3 Set required items▶ [●]

Country name : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters
Country code : Enter up to 5 digits

❖Setting Auto assist setting

You can save up to 3 items to be prefixed to a phone number when making international calls.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [9] [3] [3]

2 "<Not recorded>"

Setting auto conversion : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix No.▶ [●]
✓ is added to the selected name.
Deleting : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix number▶ [MENU] [3] **▶"Yes"**

3 Set required items▶ [●]

Name : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters
Int'l prefix No. : Enter up to 10 digits

Prefix dialing

Registering prefix

You can set a number (prefix) such as an international prefix number to be prefixed to a phone number.

- Up to 3 items can be set.
- Making a call with registered prefix→P62

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [5] [6] [2] ▶ **Enter the number in the entry field (up to 10 digits)** ▶ [●]

- If you register a number (prefix) including a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T"), you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Sub address

Setting Sub address

You can set whether you can call a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub address.

- A sub address is a number used to call a specific device out of multiple telephone sets and/or communication devices assigned the same phone number (e.g. when multiple devices with sub addresses are connected to an ISDN line). It is also used to select contents in a graphics download service "V-live".

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [5] [6] [3] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

◆ Making a call specifying a sub-address

1 **Enter a phone number** ▶ [✂] ▶ **Enter a sub address** ▶ [✆] **or** [●]

✔INFORMATION

- If "＊" is entered after the pause ("P") or timed pause ("T") is entered, it is not recognized as the separator of sub address and is sent as tone signals containing "＊" even if Sub address is "ON".

Noise reduction

Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear

- It is recommended that this function be used set to "ON" normally.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [5] [7] [1] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

In-Car Hands-Free

Talking hands-free while driving

When FOMA terminal is connected to a handsfree-compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system, voice calls can be made or received using the handsfree-compatible device.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the operation manual for the respective devices. FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

✔INFORMATION

- When a handsfree device is set to sound, the ring alert for incoming calls sounds from a handsfree device regardless of settings of Silent mode or ring alert setting on FOMA terminal.
- When a handsfree device is set to sound, a call continues even when FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of settings in Close settings.
- When Record message is set, incoming operation is made according to the settings of Record message.

Receiving a call/videophone call

- Operations by menu buttons for touch operation→P40
- Canceling Touch lock→P119

1 **A call is received**

A ring alert sounds and the light turns on or blinks.

[▲] : Adjust the ring alert volume [■] : Stop the ring tone or vibration

Display while receiving a call

When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears, and when phone number is saved in phonebook, saved name appears.→P74

- When caller ID is not sent, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
  - **User Unset :** When the caller selected not to send caller ID
  - **Payphone :** When the call was made from payphone etc.
  - **Unavailable :** The call was made when sending the caller ID was not available; e.g. a call from overseas or land-line phone via forwarding services (caller ID may be sent depending on the carrier)

Operations from submenu while receiving a call

- The following operations can be performed.
  - **Reject call :** Disconnect without receiving a call
  - **Voice mail :** Connect voice call to Voice Mail service center
  - **Call forwarding :** Forward a call to the specified phone number

2 Select call reception type

Receiving a voice call : [ ]

Receiving videophone calls : [ ] **or** [ ]

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

- Press [ ] instead of [ ] or [ ] to receive a videophone call using the substitute image.

3 When ending the call, [ ]

✔INFORMATION

- If you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, and set Arrival call act to "Answer", you hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when receiving another incoming voice call during voice call. If you activated Voice Mail service, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, the services operate.
- When Chaku-moji is received, Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen. Chaku-moji disappears when you answer the call.→P60
- When a forwarded call from FOMA terminal arrives, name appears as a normal incoming call. However, a phone number or a name may not appear depending on forwarder.
- When sub address is notified, "＊" and the sub address is displayed at the end of the caller ID.
- For an international call, a plus sign "＋" appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- When you receive a call from the phone number that is not saved in phonebook but in Redial, "Callback" appears.

When the other party switches voice/videophone call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- To accept switching, you need to set Notify switchable mode to ON in advance.→P71

1 Receiving a request for switching during videophone call

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.
- When the request to switch to a videophone call is received, a confirmation message for sending the camera image appears. When "Yes" is selected, the camera image is sent to the other party, and when "No" is selected, Default image specified in Substitute image of Videophone image is sent.

Any key answer

Pressing a dial key to answer call

You can set whether you answer a call by pressing [0]-[9], [●], [＊], [#] in addition to [ ].

- This function is available for voice calls. However, it is unavailable for an incoming call during another call.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [5] [3] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

Slide and answer

Answering a call by opening FOMA terminal

- This function is available only when receiving a voice call.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [5] [6] [4] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

- When "ON" is set, you can answer a call by opening FOMA terminal even when the call is on hold, the greeting message is played, or a message is recorded.
- It is available for an incoming call during a call or a held call. When you subscribe to Call Waiting service, you can answer an incoming call after placing the current call on hold. If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting service, the incoming call continues arriving.

Close settings

Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication, packet communication.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 7 2 ▶ 1-3

✔INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
  - When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
  - When a device that is connected to handsfree is set to sound
  - When message is being recorded by Record message.
- When a call is placed "On-hold", On-hold is deactivated when FOMA terminal is opened again.
- Operations during voice call : MENU 6

Priority comm mode

Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call

You can select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when data is received via packet communication from a connected PC during a voice call or when a voice call is received during i-mode communication.

- A screen change caused by this function does not suspend the call or packet communication.
- When i-mode mail or MessageR/F is received during voice call, voice call screen appears by priority.
- When a voice call is received while accessing data broadcasting site, Call alert image appears by priority.→P209 "Time shift function"

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 6 1 ▶ 1-3

- When this is set to "No Set Up", the incoming screen for the newest call appears. However, voice call screen appears when packet transmission is received during voice call.
- When "Packet" is set, packet communication screen appears during voice call, and i-mode screen appears during i-mode session. You can switch to the call screen by pressing ▶ from Switch Task menu.

Respond and Hold

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately

- The caller is charged for time spent in Respond hold.

1 While receiving a call, ☎

The call is put on hold, and the other party hears a status message. For videophone call, response hold image for videophone is displayed to you and the other party.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, ☎ **or** iモード

- Press ✉ to send the substitute image for a videophone call.
- If ☎ is pressed or the caller hangs up while on hold, the call ends.

◆ Setting Status message

- You can record a status message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 8 1 **▶ Select On-hold tone field ▶** 2

- Press 1 and 📷 to restore the standard guidance.

2 "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep ▶ 📷

- A message appears, and recording starts. After approximately 10 seconds, the end tone sounds.
- Press ● to stop recording halfway.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the preinstalled message is reset.
- Select "Play" to check a status message.

Using public mode

Public mode is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place. When a call is recieved with Public mode activated, a status message or a message indicating that you cannot answer the call is played, and the call is disconnected.

- When a call is received in Public mode (Drive mode), an announcement "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later." is played.
- When a call is received in Public mode (Power OFF), an announcement "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later" is played.
- When videophone call is received, Public mode status message image is displayed on the caller's terminal.

■ Incoming operations while using network services in Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)

- Voice Mail Service*1, Call Forwarding Service*1, and Caller ID Request Service*2 take precedence over Public mode.

*1 For voice call with ring time set to other than "0 second", a service starts after the status message for Public mode is played.

*2 When caller ID is sent, Public mode activates.

- When a call is sent from a caller whose calls are set to be rejected in Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Public mode does not activate.

◆ Using public mode (Drive mode)

- Public mode can be set or canceled only in stand-by. You cannot set this option out of service area.
- Even in Public mode, calls can be made normally.
- Public mode precedes even in Silent mode or Record message.
- Making an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode.

1 [✻] **(1 sec. or more)**

Public mode is set and 🚗 appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : [✻] **(1 sec. or more)**

■ When public mode (Drive mode) is activated

Your FOMA terminal does not perform receiving actions, and 2 (the number of incoming calls) appears on stand-by display and the call is recorded as a missed call.

- The following sound does not ring. Also, vibrator and/or light are not activated.
  - Ring alert of phone/mail/i-concier
  - Sound of countdown timer, alarm clock, schedule reminder
  - i-αppli sounds, i-Widget sound effect
  - Call cost limit alert (even when Alert is set to "ON", no messages appear)
  - Sounds for starting/completing battery charge, battery alarm, GPS positioning
- If Early warning "Area Mail" setting is set to emit sound in Public mode, the buzzer alarm and Area Mail ring tone are emitted when receiving Area Mail.
- i-Channel ticker does not appear.

◆ Using public mode (Power OFF)

1 [✻] [2] [5] [2] [5] [1] ▶ [↙]

Public mode (Power OFF) is set (No change on the stand-by display).

Canceling : [✻] [2] [5] [2] [5] [0] ▶ [↙]

Checking the settings : [✻] [2] [5] [2] [5] [9] ▶ [↙]

■ When public mode (Power OFF) is activated

- The settings continue until Public mode (Power OFF) is canceled by dialing "✻25250". The settings are not canceled by simply turning the power ON.
- The Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played also when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

When Record message is activated, a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- When using 2in1, messages of up to 4 incoming calls to Numbers A and B can be recorded to Record message in total. Display differs depending on mode.

◆ Activating Record message

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 7 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2

When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

■ When there is an incoming call with Record message active

1 A call is received

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, the greeting message is played according to setting of Set greeting message.

2 The other party's message is recorded

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is terminated

❖ Responding with quick message recorder <Quick message recorder>

Even when Record message is not active, you can activate it only once by pressing for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Record message to active.

✔INFORMATION

- Even during the greeting message or recording to Record message, a call can be answered by pressing . For a videophone call, press to send your image, or to send the substitute image. In this case, message before the call was answered is not recorded.
- Record message does not operate when FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Use Voice Mail service.
- When 4 messages are recorded, appears on stand-by display and Record message or quick message recorder does not operate. Delete unnecessary recorded messages. If you activated Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, the services operate.
- In Personalized silent mode, "Answer machine" setting for Personalized silent mode is applied.

◆ Setting the time before the greeting message starts <Greeting msg resp time>

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 7 1 3 ▶ **Enter time**

◆ Setting the greeting message

- You can record a greeting message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 7 1 4 ▶ **Select Greeting message field** ▶ 2

- Press 1 and to restore the preinstalled greeting message.

2 "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep ▶

Supplementary description of recording message→P66 Step 2 in "Setting Status message"

Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos

◆ Playing recorded message/voice memo

1 [MENU] **[Phonebook & Logs]** [7] ▶ [2] **(Recorded messages) or** [4] **(Voice memos)**

<Example> Recorded messages screen



- Icon definitions are as follows.
  / : Recorded message/Played recorded message
  / : Recorded message of videophone call/Played recorded message
  /No icon : Voice memo while talking/Voice memo in stand-by
  : Making/Receiving call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
  : While staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)*
  : Recorded message of international call or voice memo while talking

* May not appear when receiving or recording date/time is not recorded etc.

2 **Select the recorded message/voice memo**

- While playing, elapsed playing time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- While playing, the following operations are available.
  [◎] : Adjust volume [●] : Stop
  [📞] : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF
- Videophone call message is always played with speakerphone activated. You cannot turn off the speakerphone.
- When videophone call message is played in Silent mode, a sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "No" to play the message without sound.

Making calls : Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ [📞] or [i-α]

- To make a call specifying conditions, press [MENU] [3].→P62

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ [MENU] ▶ [4] or [5] ▶ [1] or [2]

Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

3 **Select whether to delete**

✔INFORMATION

- When recording voice memo in stand-by, "Voice memos" is displayed.

◆ Deleting recorded message/voice memo

1 [MENU] **[Phonebook & Logs]** [7] ▶ [2] **(Recorded messages) or** [4] **(Voice memos) ▶ Move the cursor to message/memo ▶** [MENU] [2] ▶ [1] **or** [2] ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the message/memo.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Using Chara-den

You can change the character sent during a videophone call.

- Displaying Chara-den→P288

1 **During a call,** [MENU] [4] [1] [1] ▶ **Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den**



- The following operations are available during a videophone call.
  [1]-[9], [#] : Action [0] : Stop the action
  [✉] : List actions
  [✉] (1 sec. or more) : Switch Action/Action of Parts

Setting image during a videophone call

- The following cannot be set as still image or substitute image to send.
  - A still image larger than 176×144
  - Animation, created animation
  - A still image except in JPEG or GIF format
  - Images that inhibited to output from FOMA terminal →P300 "File restriction" in "List of display items and changeability"

◆ Setting image to send

1 Perform necessary operations during a call

Switching your own image and substitute image : [ ]

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not appear and the default image may be sent.

Switching in-camera/out-cameras*1 : [ ]

- Even when the camera is switched, the shooting mode, the setting for image brightness and Adjust flicker are retained.

Turning on/off the light*2 : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)**

- Light may temporarily be turned off by setting operations etc. during a call.

Switching display magnification <Zoom>*1 : [ ]

- Each time you press [ ], the zoom scale switches in the following order, and each time you press [ ], it switches in the reverse order. Zoom is canceled when the camera is switched.
  In-camera : Standard→2×
  Out-camera : Standard→2×→4×→6×→8×→10×→12×→16×

Applying special effects to image <Scene mode/effect>*1 : [MENU] [2] ▶ [1]-[4]

You can shoot a subject against the light, or in monochrome or sepia mode.

Adjusting brightness of image*1, 3 : [MENU] [3] [1] ▶ [1]-[5]

Adjusting flicker*1, 3 : [MENU] [3] [2] ▶ [1]-[3]

The flicker may be reduced by selecting the settings that match the power supply frequency of your area.

- It also applies to the flicker adjustment settings of Camera and Bar code reader.

Sending Camera-Off image : [MENU] [4] [2]

A substitute image selected in Substitute image in Videophone image is sent.

- When Chara-den is set as substitute image, Default image is sent.

Sending a still image : [MENU] [4] [3] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a still image**

- Press [●] to cancel.

Switching to macro shooting*2 : [MENU] [6]

You can adjust the focus when sending very close images approximately 8-10 cm away.

- Perform the same operation to cancel macro shooting.

Setting quality of sending/receiving images : [MENU] [8] ▶ [1] **or** [2] ▶ [1]-[3]

- When "Prefer motion spd" is selected, motion becomes smoother in a lower-definition image. When "Prefer img qual" is selected, motion becomes slower in a higher-definition image.
- When Receive image is changed, it applies to the image quality sent from the other party.

*1 Can be set only while sending camera image.
*2 Available only for out-camera.
*3 The settings are retained after a call.

◆ Setting display during a call

- The settings are retained after a call.

1 Perform necessary operations during a call

Switching the main screen and the sub screen : [ ]

Changing the main screen size : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)**

- Each time you press, the display size switches in the order of Large→Standard→Small→Large.

Setting display : [MENU] [9] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [ ]

Setting items→P71 "Changing videophone settings"

◆ Setting substitute or on-hold image <Image setting>

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [6] [5] ▶ [1]-[5] ▶ Set required items ▶ [ ]

Image : Set image type

List images : Select when Image is "Selected Chara-den" (only for Substitute image) or "Selected image"

✔INFORMATION

- If Chara-den set for the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to the default Chara-den. If the still image or Default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default image.
- If the still image set as Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image or Movie memo image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default.

Operation

Changing videophone settings

You can set actions to be performed when videophone call fails, or set the screen to appear during a videophone call.

- Auto redial as voice is provided to ensure access to the other party. When this is set to "ON", the number is re-dialed as voice call if a call cannot be answered because the other party's terminal does not support videophone, or the other party is using the mova service via Dual Network Service. However, this option may not work properly if you dialed ISDN-sync 64K access point, ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of April, 2009), or a wrong number, etc. Note that you may be charged for these calls.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 6 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Auto redial as voice : Set whether to redial as voice call for unsuccessful videophone attempt
Display setting : Set the screen
Sub screen : Set Sub screen
- This setting is available when Display setting is "Both sides".

Screen size : Set the main screen view size
Visual preference : Set the incoming image quality of the other party
Display light : When "Terminal settings" is selected, this option depends on Brightness of Display & Key light
Speakerphone : Set whether to use speakerphone when connected

✔INFORMATION

- During a voice call or 64K data communication, no videophone calls can be made even if Auto redial as voice is set to "ON". However, during packet communication connected to a PC, dialed videophone call is re-dialed as voice call.
- If you redial voice calls with Auto redial as voice set to "ON", the voice call rate is applied instead of digital communication rate.

Notify switchable mode

Setting for switching a voice/videophone call during a call

You can notify the network that your terminal is available for switching voice and videophone calls.

- This option is not available during a call.
- You cannot set this option out of service area. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave conditions.
- Notify switchable mode is ON by default.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 6 7

2 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

DataSession arv. act

Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication

You can set how to react to an incoming videophone call received during i-mode, data broadcasting site display or downloading Music&Video Channel program.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 6 4 ▶ 1-4

- When "V.phone priority" is selected, displaying the incoming call screen has precedence, and packet communication is disconnected when a videophone call is answered. After videophone call is terminated, i-mode screen reappears and download of Music&Video Channel program resumes. While accessing data broadcasting site, Time shift of 1Seg is activated.
- When "Packet DL priority" is set, an incoming call is disconnected without incoming call screen being displayed, and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- When "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is selected, the service starts.

✔INFORMATION

- If you do not subscribe to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service, actions for "Packet DL priority" are performed even with "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding" set.
- If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ring time is set to "0 sec.", each service starts. The call is not recorded in Received calls.

External device

Using videophone call by interfacing to external device

Videophone calls can be sent/received through external devices by connecting FOMA terminal to external devices such as PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional).
If you want to use this function, prepare an approved external device or a PC, that videophone application is installed in, and devices (commercial) such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera.

- Refer to the instructions manual of external devices for hardware requirements, setting or operating instructions of videophone applications.
- You can use "DOCOMO Videophone Software" as an application supporting this function. Use DOCOMO Videophone Software by downloading it from NTT DOCOMO website.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 6 6 ▶ 1 **or** 2

✔INFORMATION

- Videophone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during voice call is recorded in Received calls as a missed call. The same applies to an incoming voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

Phonebook

Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal 74
Adding entries to phonebook ..... Phonebook new entry 75
Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry ..... Alert by contact 75
Setting group ..... Group setting 76
Making a call from phonebook ..... Phonebook search 76
Editing phonebook entries ..... Edit phonebook 78
Copying phonebook entries 79
Deleting phonebook entries ..... Delete phonebook 79
Making phonebook entries secret ..... Secret attribute 80
Checking number of phonebook entries ..... No. of items 80
Making a call with a few key operations ..... Quick dial 80

Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal

F-09A supports FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Item		FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries		Up to 1,000 entries*1	Up to 50 entries
Entry items	Phonebook No.	No.000 - 999	×
	Name	16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters	10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters*2
	Reading	32 one-byte characters	12 two-byte (25 one-byte) characters*3
	Image, Moving picture	○	×
	Group	30 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"	10 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"
	Phone number	5 numbers per item, up to 3,005 numbers in total in phonebook*1	1 number per item
	Phone number icon	○	×
	Mail address	5 addresses per item, up to 3,005 addresses in total in phonebook*1	1 address per item
	Mail address icon	○	×
	Other items*4	○	×

*1 The number of savable items may be decreased depending on saved data.

*2 Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

*3 Up to 12 characters can be entered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.

*4 Items that can be set are Birthday, Note, PostalCode/Address, Location info, Company name, Job title and URL.
i-concier information (note, address, URL) is automatically updated (when subscribed to i-concier).

- Phonebook saved in your UIM is available even when the UIM is installed to another FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminal phonebook can be stored in Data Center. Stored phonebook can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.→P121
- FOMA terminal phonebook list and UIM phonebook list can be switched with [📷].

◆ Displaying name

■ Voice call/Videophone call

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the screen while dialing/receiving, calling or voice call talking.

■ i-mode mail/SMS

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list screens and mail details screen.
When a mail is received from a sender with mail address that completely matches with that saved in the phonebook including the domain name succeeding @, the name in the phonebook appears. However, for a sender with i-mode terminal, the name in the phonebook appears even when the domain name (@docomo.ne.jp) is omitted in the mail address and saved in the phonebook. If the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", add it to the phonebook omitting "@docomo.ne.jp".

✔INFORMATION

- With 2in1 in A mode, a name of phonebook set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting and with 2in1 in B mode, the name set to "A" in Ph.book 2in1 setting are not displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are saved in FOMA terminal phonebook, the name saved earlier is displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are separately saved in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, the name saved in FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- Saved names are also displayed in other functions using phonebook.

Phonebook new entry

Adding entries to phonebook

You can add to FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- Note that, when changing the models at a sales outlet such as docomo Shop, data saved in FOMA terminal may not be copied to a new model terminal due to its specifications.
- Priority of Call image→P91
- Savable number→P74

1 ○ **(1 sec. or more)**

Adding to UIM phonebook : ﾒﾆｭｰ **[Phonebook & Logs]** 4

2 Enter a name

3 Set required items ▶ ●

Phonebook number : The smallest phonebook number available between 10-999 is assigned. If they are all assigned, 0-9 is assigned.

- When the phonebook number overlaps with an existing number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears. Not to overwrite, select "New entry" and enter the other number.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.

Reading : Reading of the entered name is entered.

- Even if you correct the name, the reading does not reflect the change.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or moving picture/i-motion that is displayed when receiving/making a call or checking the phonebook.

Setting image : 1 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**

Reading folders and lists of images→P278

- If an image whose vertical to horizontal size (or vice versa) is larger than 960×480 dots is selected, a confirmation screen for shrinking the image appears.
- When Flash graphics include a created animation or video data, the video data does not work.

Shooting and setting a still image : 2 **▶ Shoot a still image ▶** ●

- The still image is shot only in the size of QCIF (176×144).

Setting a moving picture/i-motion : 3 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion**

Reading folders and lists of moving picture/i-motion→P282

- Moving picture/i-motion of only image can be set.→P285
- This function is not available when dialing.

Shooting and setting a moving picture : 4 **▶ Shoot a moving picture ▶** ●

- Sounds are not recorded.→P193

Returning to the initial screen : 5

Group : "グループなし (No group)" is set.

- For FOMA terminal phonebook, press ✉ to add a group.→P76

Phone number : Up to 26 digits can be entered.→P46

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.
- Pause ("P"), Timed pause ("T"), "+", "#" and sub-address delimiter ("＊") can be saved. Timed pause ("T") cannot be saved in UIM phonebook.
- If a phone number prefixed with "186" or "184" is added in phonebook, SMS cannot be sent even when the number is selected as the address.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.

Secret code→P79

Birthday : Set Set birthday to "ON" and enter the birthday.

Note : Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered.

PostalCode/Address : Up to 7 digits for a postal code and up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters for an address can be entered.

Location info : Add location information from the current location and/or location history.→P268

Company name : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Job title : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

URL : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

Alert by contact

Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry

You can set receiving actions for each phone number or mail address in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- "Terminal setting" is displayed for all items that are set to "グループなし (No group)", and "Group setting" is displayed for the items that are set to a certain group ("Terminal setting" is displayed only for Substitute image).
- Priority of a receiving action→P84, 85, 91, 98

1 ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** ▶ MENU 3 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

: Switch Call/Mail screens

♪ / **Ring alert :** When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Ring alerts & Sounds.

- Only when setting Ring alert of the detail information to "Available", moving pictures/i-motion and Music can be set as ring alert.

Setting Music→P83

Vibrate alert : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.

Light alert : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

- When "Sync melody" is set, Light color operates in "Rainbow".

Light color : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

Substitute image (Call only) : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Substitute image in Videophone image.

Group setting

Setting group

- You cannot change a group name or set calling/receiving actions to "グループなし (No group)". When deleting the group, only the entries in the group are deleted.
- For UIM phonebook, only renaming group name is available.

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 1 2

2 **Perform necessary operation**

Adding : MENU 2 ▶ **Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ 📷

Deleting : Move the cursor to a group ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

The group and the phonebook entries in the group are deleted.

- It is deleted even when secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

Changing a group name : Move the cursor to a group ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ 📷

- For UIM phonebook, move the cursor to a group and press MENU 2, and enter a group name up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters. Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

Setting calling/receiving actions : Move the cursor to the group ▶ MENU 5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Setting Call image→P75 Step 3 in "Adding entries to phonebook"

Setting other items→P75 "Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry"

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the group ▶ MENU ▶ 6 **or** 7

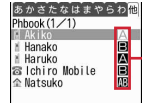
Phonebook search

Making a call from phonebook

You can call up the phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook for the party to call.

- When searching phonebook, the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.
- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute cannot be searched. The same applies to Quick dial, Quick mail, Headset quick-dial and Search message.

1 📷 ▶ **Search the phonebook**



Phonebook list (Show all names)

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the following icons appear.
  A : Phonebook entries in A mode B : Phonebook entries in B mode
  AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
- When i-concier information is registered, appears.

2 **Move the cursor to the party** ▶ 📞 **or** i-α

- To make a call specifying conditions by pressing MENU 1 1.→P62
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, Number B is used to make a call to a party set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and Number A is used for other parties.

❖Using phonebook entries

Creating an i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a party▶ [✉]

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, Address A is set for a party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting and Address B is set for a party set to "B" as a sender's address.

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a party▶ [✉] (1 sec. or more)

- When only the phone number for the party is saved, pressing [✉] can also create SMS.

Attaching a phonebook entry to i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [1] [3]

Searching a sent/received mail : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [1] [6]▶ [1] or [2]

- For UIM phonebook, move the cursor to the party and press [MENU] [1] [5], and press [1] or [2].

Displaying a site : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [1] [5]▶ "i-mode" or "Full Browser"

Displaying a map from an address : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [1] [7]

- GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts.

Using Location info : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [0] [1]

The next procedure→P268 "■Location information usage menu"

Checking location of a party : Move the cursor to a party▶ [MENU] [0] [2]▶ "Yes"

The phone number is targeted and you are connected to "imadocokantan search".

- For details of imadocokantan search, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

◆ Searching by specified method

- When there are multiple pages in the phonebook list, you can switch pages with [◎]. When Show all names is selected, you can change by the line.

1 [MENU] **[Phonebook & Logs] [1]**

2 Specify the search method

Show all names : [1]▶ [◎] to select the line to show

- Each time you enter 1 character in reading, the phone number with the closest reading is searched (Name search).

Group search : [2]▶ Select a group

- Entries in the same group are displayed in the order of the reading (Japanese syllabary order→Alphabets→Numbers→Reading starting with blanks→Symbols→No reading).
- When one of the keypads of [0]-[9] is pressed, the line assigned to each keypad is displayed.→P395
- Entries are displayed in the order of alphabets→numbers→symbols by pressing [#] or [✂].

Search by freq* : [3]▶ [1] or [2]

Displayed in the order of number of calls or number of mails.

- Counted up to 9,999 times. To reset the counting, move the cursor to a party, press [MENU] [9] [3] and select "Yes".

Ph book No. search* : [4]▶ Enter phonebook number▶ [📷]

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.
- You can display the phonebook list in phonebook number order by pressing [📷] with no entry.

Number search : [5]▶ Enter part of a phone number▶ [📷]

Search the phone numbers containing the entered numbers, and phonebook data list of FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed in the order of the phonebook number, and the phonebook data list of UIM phonebook is displayed in the order of reading.

- You can display the phonebook data list in the order of phonebook number or reading by pressing [📷] with no entry.

Secrecy search* : [6]

The phonebook entries with secret attribute are displayed in the order of phonebook number.

* Unavailable for UIM phonebook.

❖Searching by Rocket search

Search from the characters assigned to keypads [0]-[9].

<Example> Searching for "携帯花子"(Keitai Hanako)

1 [2] **(か (ka) line)▶ [○]**

The phonebook list of the Show all names is displayed.

◆ Setting preferred search method <Default search setting>

Set the search method displayed when pressing ○ on the stand-by display.

1 MENU [Phonebook & Logs] 1 ▶ Move the cursor to the search method ▶ MENU

- Check mark ✔ appears after the specified search method.

✔INFORMATION

- Even when Search by freq or Ph book No. search is set by priority, if the UIM phonebook is searched last time, the UIM phonebook list is displayed based on Show all names.

◆ Checking phonebook details

1 ○ ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry



FOMA terminal phonebook details screen (Phone number)

① **Phonebook No.**
② **Name and reading**
③ **Group icon, Group name**
④ **Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)**
A : Phonebook entries in A mode B : Phonebook entries in B mode
AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
⑤ **Setting conditions of Accept/Reject call, Caller ID Settings and Secret code**
⑥ **Setting condition of Alert by contact (call/mail)**
♪ / ♪ : Ring alert
📳 / 📳 : Vibrate alert
♪📳 / 📳 : Ring alert and Vibrate alert
☀ / ☀ : Light alert
● / ● : Light color
● / ● : Light alert and Light color
☺ : Substitute image (call only)
⑦ **Image (displayed according to the settings of View preference)**
⑧ **Saved icon, Icon type**
▲ : Display the previous/next phonebook entry.
▼ : Display the set items.

Viewing history information : On the phone number or mail address details screen, ●.

- The cumulative number and the date and time of last call appear. Cumulative information of calls and mail messages can be reset at once by pressing ● and selecting "Yes".

Check User information : MENU 9 1

Name, reading, group name and the first phone number/mail address are displayed in full.

◆ Switching details screen display <View preference>

- View preference of phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Mail logs and User information apply to each of them.

1 ○ ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ MENU 9 4 ▶ 1-3

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press MENU 9 3 and 1-3.

Edit phonebook

Editing phonebook entries

1 ○ ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry

2 Perform necessary operations

Editing contents : MENU 3 1 ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

Set required items→P75 Step 2-3 in "Adding entries to phonebook"

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press MENU 3.

Changing the phone number order : MENU 3 3 1 ▶ **Select a phone number to be set as the first one**

Changing the mail address order : MENU 3 3 2 ▶ **Select a mail address to be set as the first one**

Changing the phonebook number order : MENU 3 3 3 ▶ **Select a phonebook entry to change the phonebook number**

Setting Caller ID notification to each phone number <Caller ID settings> : MENU 3 4 2 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select a phone number** ▶ 1-3

- When "No setting" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate.

Setting secret code to mail address <Secret code> : MENU 3 4 4 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select a mail address** ▶ **Enter 4-digit secret code**

- To cancel, delete all the secret codes entered and press ●.
- A secret code you set is displayed on this screen only.
- You cannot send a mail to the party whose address is saved as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp".

✔INFORMATION

- In UIM phonebook, a phone number containing "*" may not be overwritten.
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved and the phone number or mail address in the first entry is deleted, the second or subsequent entry moves forward.

Copying phonebook entries

- FOMA terminal phonebook can also be copied to microSD card.→P292

◆ Copying between FOMA terminal and UIM

- When there is the same group in the copying destination, it is copied to the group.
- When copying from FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook, a part that exceeds savable character number and timed pause ("T") of phone number are deleted.
- Icons of phone number and mail address are replaced.

1 ○ ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ MENU 7 1 ▶ **Select a phonebook entry** ▶ 📷

- When copying from UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook, press MENU 7 to select a phonebook entry, and press 📷.

◆ Copying each data

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted to anywhere any number of times.

1 ○ ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry to copy** ▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1-8

- The first phone number and mail address are copied.
- When copying the second or subsequent item, display the phone number or mail address on the details screen, press MENU 6 and press 2 or 3.
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press MENU 6 and 1-3.

2 **Display the character entry screen to paste** ▶ **Paste the characters**

Pasting method of characters→P345

Delete phonebook

Deleting phonebook entries

- When deleting all, all of the created groups are deleted.
- For entries in UIM phonebook, "All contacts" cannot be performed.

1 ○ ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press MENU 4 and select "Yes".

Secret attribute

Making phonebook entries secret

In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute are not displayed.

- Setting for UIM phonebook is unavailable.
- If you change secrecy, a confirmation screen appears for performing Apply secret attribute when ending the phonebook and returning to the stand-by display.
- Flow of using Privacy mode→P110

◆ Setting secret attribute to phonebook entry

1 [Search] ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** ▶ [MENU] [3] [4] [1]

- When secret attribute is set, 🔑 blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

◆ Setting secret attribute to group

- Secret attribute is not set to each phonebook entry in the group.
- Secret attribute cannot be set for "グループなし (No group)".

1 [MENU] **[Phonebook & Logs]** [1] [2] ▶ **Move the cursor to the group** ▶ [MENU] [8]

- When secret attribute is set, 🔑 blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

No. of items

Checking number of phonebook entries

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the number of phonebook entries with secret attribute is not displayed.

1 [Search] ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ [MENU] [9] [2]

Quick dial

Making a call with a few key operations

You can make calls by a simple operation to parties with phonebook numbers 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The phone number saved first is used for calling.

1 **Enter a phonebook number** ▶ [📞] **or** [📷]

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages 82

Sounds settings

Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc. ..... Ring alerts & Sounds 83
Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc. ..... Adjust volume 84
Setting Stereo/3D sound or Dolby Mobile ..... Stereo sound effect 85
Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration ..... Vibrate alert/effect 85
Changing ring tone ..... Melody Call 85
Setting System sound 86
Setting confirmation tone for charging ..... Charge alert 86
Setting on hold tone ..... On-hold tone 86
Sounding alarm when a line is likely to be disconnected Quality alarm 87
Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call ..... Reconnect alarm 87
Informing you by alarm that the battery is almost exhausted ..... Low Battery alert 87
Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal ..... Silent mode 87

Displays/Lights settings

Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles ..... Timed theme 88
Changing stand-by display ..... Stand-by display 89
Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call ..... Outgoing call image 91
Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call ..... Incoming call image 91
Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking ..... Identification mark 92
Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call ..... Contact image 92
Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving ..... Mail image 92
Setting display and key lighting ..... Display & Key light 93
Saving battery consumption ..... Power saving mode 93
Changing display colors ..... Color scheme 94
Changing startup menu ..... Select startup menu 94
Setting Machi-chara ..... Display Machi-chara 94
Using Kisekae Tool 94
Customizing the menu 97
Customizing FOMA terminal screen ..... Style theme 97
Changing battery icon ..... Battery icon 98
Changing antenna icon ..... Antenna icon 98
Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting ..... Indicator light 98
Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking ..... Light alert 98
Changing font style ..... Font style 99
Changing font size ..... Font size 99
Setting clock display ..... Clock display format 99

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/ messages

- This setting also applies to Call ring alert, Mail/Msg. ring alert, Incoming call/ Videophone receiving in Call image, Vibrate alert/effect and Light alert.
- Music or moving picture/i-motion that can be set as Ring alert, moving picture/i-motion that can be set as Show image→P228, 285

◆ Call alert

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 1 2 **▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

Ring alert : Set the ring alert.
- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P83)", select the ring alert.

Show image : Set an incoming call image.
- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field. When "i-motion" is selected, select moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data are set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

Vibrate alert : Set the operation pattern of vibrator.
- Even if setting to "Sync melody", some melodies are not synchronized.

Light alert : Set a lighting pattern and color of the light.
- When "Sync melody" is set, the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. And, some melodies are not synchronized.

◆ Videophone alert

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 6 2 **▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

- Items to be set are the same as those for Call alert.

◆ Mail alert

1 ✉ 9 1 1 **▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

Ring alert : Set the ring alert.
- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P83)", select the ring alert.

Light alert/Vibrate alert : Set the same items as those for Call alert.

Ring time (sec) : Set the duration of sounding of ring alert or operation of vibrator within the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ MessageR alert/MessageF alert

1 ✉ 9 1 **▶** 2 **or** 3 **▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

- Items to be set are the same as those for Mail alert.

❖Ring alert and incoming image for voice call/videophone call/mail

- When setting a moving picture/i-motion with sound and image for Ring alert, Show image is "Sync ring alert".
- In the following cases, Display image is "Standard image". The settings can be changed.
  - When moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds is set as Ring alert with Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images set as Show image
  - When Ring alert is changed from moving picture/i-motion containing sounds and images to melody, moving picture/i-motion containing only sounds, or music
- In the following cases, ring alert is restored to the default setting. The settings can be changed.
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images is set as Show image with moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds or music set as Ring alert
  - When Show image is changed from "Sync ring alert" to other than "Sync ring alert"

* Display image of mail can be set in Image message alert.

Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

- When a moving picture/i-motion is set as ring alert, a moving picture and/or sound is played when receiving a call or mail (Movie ringtone).
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, mail and MessageR/F.
- Music or moving picture/i-motion that can be set as ring alert→P228, 285
- Ring tone and incoming call image→P82
- Melodies for ring alert stored by default→P393
- When moving picture/i-motion is set to ring alert, it may operate according to the default setting if there is an incoming call when activating camera.

◆ Call ring alert

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P83)", select the ring alert.

◆ Mail/Msg. ring alert

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P83)", select the ring alert.
- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ i-concier ring alert

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P83)", select the ring alert.
- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ GPS alert

- This setting also applies to Position settings, Notification setting and Positioning alert for Request setting.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 4 ▶ 1-4 ▶ **Select Ring alert field** ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ 📷

- When "Melody" is selected, select ring alert.

◆ Alarm sound

You can set Alarm clock sound and Schedule reminder.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 1 5

2 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When selecting any of "Melody", "i-motion" or "Music (→P83)", select alarm clock sound or alarm sound. When moving picture/i-motion containing sound and image is set for "i-motion", the image of the moving picture/i-motion is displayed.

❖ Setting music

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

<Example> Setting Full song ring tone

1 **Select "Music" at each setting ▶ Select a folder**

2 **Select music to set**

- When music in microSD card is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to move the music to the terminal and set to a ring alert.

Setting Point ring tone : Move the cursor to music▶ [✉] ▶Select the item

- When Chaku-uta full® in microSD card available to nonmember is selected, a confirmation screen for cutting out the part to set as the ring alert and saving it in the i-motion folder appears. Select "Yes", enter a display name and press [📷]. The cut out music is saved to "i-mode" folder of i-motion as i-motion/Movie compatible with contents transfer.
  When exceeding the savable number/area→P302

❖Ring alert priority

When setting ring alerts for multiple functions, they sound in order of the following priority.

① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
③ Call ring alert/V.phone ring alert/Mail ring alert, Call alert (Incoming call)/Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Mail alert, Incoming calls melody setting in Multi Number, Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the ring alert of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. Ring alert for videophone call operates according to V.phone ring alert/Videophone alert/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting.

Adjust volume

Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [1] [2] ▶ [1]-[9]

- When Alert/Call volume is selected, additionally select [1] or [2].
- When Alarm volume is selected, additionally select [1]-[3].
- "Silent" and "Steptone" cannot be set for Listen volume. "Steptone"cannot be set for i-αppli effect sound, ToruCa receive alert, Operation sound, Melody effect sound or 1Seg alarm sound.

Alert/Call volume : Set alert volume or listen volume for a voice call and videophone call.

- Alarm volume of Call cost limit operates according to the setting of Call alert volume, and the volume of play sound for Recorded messages or Voice memos and sound effect for pasting stamp or text to an image operates according to the setting of Listen volume.
- Changing Listen volume during a call→P57

Mail/Msg. alert vol. : Set alert volume for mail and MessageR/F.

GPS alert volume : Set volume of GPS alert sound (Position location, Notify location, Location request).

i-concier ring alert : Set volume when receiving information.

Alarm volume : Set volume for alarm clock (when Volume is set to "Phone setting" from the Set sound screen), 1Seg alarm (when 1Seg volume is set to "Phone setting") and schedule reminder.

- The volume of Countdown timer applies to Alarm clock sound, and the alarm volume of 1Seg watching reservation applies to Schedule reminder.

i-αppli effect sound : Set volume of the sound emitted from i-αppli.

ToruCa receive alert : Set the volume of the alert activated when receiving ToruCa has completed. This setting also applies to Receive alert volume of ToruCa alert.

Operation sound : Set the volume for Key/touch sound, Slide sound and Display turn sound.

- When "Silent" is set, the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.

Melody effect sound : Set the volume for playing melody (including melody attached to mail or MessageR/F). This setting also applies to the volume of Settings of Melody.

2 [◎] ▶ [●]

- If setting Call alert volume to "Silent", 🔇 appears on the stand-by display. 📳 appears when a vibrator for Call vibrate alert is also set.

Stereo sound effect

Setting Stereo/3D sound or Dolby Mobile

- Stereo/3D sound is enabled when the earphone/microphone (optional) etc. are used.
- This setting also applies to Stereo/3D sound of Settings of Melody, moving picture/i-motion (Settings), MUSIC Player (Settings), 1Seg (Sound setting of User setting) and Dolby Mobile of Music&Video Channel (submenu).

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 6 ▶ 1-5 ▶ 1 **or** 2

✔INFORMATION

- The 3D sound function is a function to create sound that seems to have 3-dimensional spread or move spatially. Using the 3D sound function, you can enjoy realistic i-αppli games, ring tone, i-motion, etc.
- There are differences in how the 3D sound effect is felt among individuals.

Vibrate alert/effect

Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration

- The vibrator for receiving 64K data communication operates according to the setting of incoming voice call.
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, mail and MessageR/F, Positioning alert of GPS and Vibrate effect of i-αppli settings.
- If FOMA terminal is on the desk etc. when the vibrator operates, it may fall off because of the vibration.

<Example> Setting vibrator for incoming voice and videophone calls

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 3

2 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2

Setting vibrator when receiving mail and MessageR/F : 2 ▶ 1-3
Setting vibrator for GPS positioning : 3 ▶ 1-4
Setting vibrator when receiving i-concier : 4
Setting vibrator when Alarm clock or the schedule reminder sounds : 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2
Setting vibrator when using i-αppli : 6 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- Omit Step 3.

3 1-5

- If you move the cursor to "Pattern A", "Pattern B" or "Pattern C", it vibrates in the pattern at the cursor position.
- When setting to "Sync melody", the vibrator operates along with the melody set for ring alert etc. Note that some melodies are not synchronized.
- If the vibrator for incoming calls is set, appears on the stand-by display if the Call alert volume is more then "Level 1". appears when Call alert volume is set to "Silent".

❖Vibrate alert priority

When setting vibrator for receiving in multiple functions, it operates in order of the following priority.

① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
③ Vibrate alert/effect/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

✔INFORMATION

- It does not vibrate when receiving a call/mail during a call.
- Even with "OFF", the vibrator may operate when Flash graphics operate.

Melody Call

Changing ring tone

This is a service to let the caller to FOMA terminal hear melody instead of ring alert.

- A communication fee is free for connecting to the setting site. Note that packet communication fees are charged for connecting to IP site, i-mode menu site or Free Melody Corner.
- Melody Call is valid only when a voice call is received.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 9 ▶ "Yes"

The melody call site is connected.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Setting System sound

◆ Key/touch sound

Set a sound to be emitted when pressing keys or touching the touch panel.

- Even if setting a sound, no sound is made while i-αppli is activated.
- When setting to "OFF", the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.
- With "Sol-fa" set, when you touch the touch panel, "Key/touch sound 2" sounds.
- When the sound of Battery level and End alert of Data exchange settings are set to "ON", sounds are emitted according to these settings.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 6 1 ▶ 1-5

◆ Slide sound

Set a sound to be emitted when opening/closing FOMA terminal.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 6 2 ▶ 1-4

◆ Display turn sound

Set a sound to emitted when the displayed is turned clockwise with the FOMA terminal open.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 6 3 ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

- When "Melody" is selected, select turn sound.

◆ Shutter sound for still image/moving picture

Set a shutter sound for still image shooting and moving picture shooting (recording with Sound recorder).

- This setting also applies to Shutter sound of Recording settings and Still image settings.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 6 ▶ 4 or 5 ▶ 1-5

Charge alert

Setting confirmation tone for charging

You can set if you activate the battery charging sound at the start and end of charging.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 7 ▶ 1 or 2

✔INFORMATION

- Even when "ON" is set, the charge alert does not sound while talking, during communication or in Public mode (Drive mode).

On-hold tone

Setting on hold tone

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 8 2 ▶ 1-3

Quality alarm

Sounding alarm when a line is likely to be disconnected

- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 8 3 ▶ 1-3

- You can set it during a voice call by pressing MENU 5.

Reconnect alarm

Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call

- While the call is interrupted, the other party hears no sound.
- The time required for reconnection differs depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions. It normally takes 10 seconds at most.
- You are charged for the time used for reconnection (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 8 4 ▶ 1-3

- You can set it during a voice call by pressing MENU 4.

Low Battery alert

Informing you by alarm that the battery is almost exhausted

- Regardless of this setting, an alarm sounds from the earpiece when the battery is almost exhausted during a call.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 1 1 8 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Silent mode

Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal

You can set FOMA terminal not to emit a sound by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

◆ Starting/Canceling Silent mode

1 # (1 sec. or more)

Silent mode is started/canceled. When started, (in General silent mode) or (in Personalized silent mode) appears on the stand-by display.

- When Search key shortcut is in default state, Silent mode can also be started/canceled by pressing P for 1 second or more.

❖When General silent mode is activated

This function cancels the sound emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, Key/touch sound, Slide sound, Display turn sound, alarm, buzzer or the sound for reading a code, and an incoming call is notified with vibrator (vibration). Also, microphone is sensitized, and you can call in a small voice.

- In the following cases, the operation of vibrate alert is "Pattern A".
  - When receiving voice call, videophone call, mail, during 64K data communication or when receiving i-concier
  - While positioning with melody set to GPS alert
  - When the time specified in Countdown timer elapses
  - When the date and time specified in schedule come
- The operation of vibrator for receiving Area Mail is "Sync melody".
- When the time specified in Alarm clock comes, vibrate operates according to the setting of Alarm clock.
- Melody is not played automatically even when sent/received mail or MessageR/F is displayed with "Auto play" set for Attachment auto-play.
- When playing Melody, Music&Video Channel program or Music, a confirmation screen for playing appears. Select "Yes" to play.
- When playing moving picture/i-motion with sound or program recorded from 1Seg, a confirmation screen for playing a sound appears. Select "No" to play moving picture only.

- When activating 1Seg, a sound emission confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to adjust the volume. Select "No" not to emit a sound. Note that a sound is emitted if 1Seg activation is set to "Auto start" in Set notify alarm of watching reservation.

✔INFORMATION

- Shutter sound is emitted even in Silent mode.
- If you have changed Area Mail setting so that an alarm can sound in Silent mode, the buzzer alarm or the Area Mail ring tone sounds when Area Mail is received.

◆ Silent mode

<Example> Setting Personalized silent mode

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 4

2 2

Setting General silent mode : 1

- Omit Step 3.

3 Set required items ▶ ●

- When Vibrate alert is set to "ON", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect. Items set to "OFF" in Vibrate alert/effect vibrate in "Pattern A".
- When Vibrate alert is set to "Contact setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.
- Regardless of the setting of Vibrate alert, when receiving Area Mail, the vibrator operates in "Sync melody".
- When Call alert volume is set to other than "Silent", alarm for Call cost limit also sounds.
- Even when Mail alert volume is set to "Silent", if you set sound to be emitted in other settings, the buzzer alarm sounds when Area Mail is received. Also, if you set sound to be emitted in Silent mode in Early warning "Area Mail" setting, the buzzer alarm or Area Mail ring tone sounds.
- When Alarm sound, Schedule reminder or i-αppli sound is set to "ON", the sound is emitted according to each setting.
- When setting Alarm sound to "ON", the sound of Countdown timer or 1Seg alarm is also emitted.
- For Record message, it operates according to this setting regardless of the setting of Record message.

Timed theme

Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles

This function allows you to change the stand-by display or activate Silent or Privacy mode at the specified time. Timed theme can be added up to 18 items.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 3 3

2 Select a title ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

Time : Enter the time to switch the theme in the 24-hour format.

Repeat : Set repetitive operation.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press ●.

Title : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Style theme : Set if you change style theme.

- When "Change" is selected, select a style theme.

Silent mode : Set if you start/cancel Silent mode.

- When "ON" is set, Silent mode set from Silent mode starts.

Privacy mode : Set if you start Privacy mode.

- When "ON" is set, Privacy mode set from Privacy mode setting starts.

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to the title ▶ MENU

- 🕘 is displayed at the left of the title for Timed theme set to ON.

✔INFORMATION

- When Style theme is set to "Change", the image or moving picture/i-motion set to the stand-by display is canceled at the specified time. Note that Show ticker of i-Channel is not canceled.
- When i-αppli stand-by display is set, this function is unavailable.
- If multiple items are set and the operating time for them are the same, the item on the top of the list of Timed theme operates.
- When Repeat is set to "Day of week", the setting remains even after the specified day. To change the setting, register multiple time themes.
- When Timed theme and alarm are set to start at the same time, Timed theme starts after the alarm operates.
- This function does not operate if FOMA terminal is turned OFF, All lock or Omakase Lock is ON or other function is operating at the specified time. If you turn FOMA terminal ON, cancel the lock or display the stand-by display, Timed theme that passed the specified time operates in order.

Changing stand-by display

- For some images, moving pictures/i-motion or i-αppli, stand-by display settings are disabled if UIM used for downloading them is not installed (UIM operation restriction).

◆Setting image or moving picture/i-motion to stand-by display

- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for stand-by display→P285

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [2] [1] [1]

2 [1] ▶**Select any of** [1]**,** [3] **or** [5]

- When you select "Same as Kisekae Tool", no more operation is required.

Switching still images in a folder to display <Set random image> :

[1] [2] ▶**Set required items** ▶[●] ▶**"Yes"**

- Set Change image: to "Every 30 mins" to change images at minutes 00 and 30 every hour. Set it to "Every 60 mins"to change images at minutes 00 every hour. Set it to "EverySlideOpened" to change images each time FOMA terminal is opened.

Setting an image on horizontal stand-by display : [2] ▶[1] **or** [2]

- When you select "Same as Kisekae Tool", no more operation is required.

3 **Select a folder** ▶**Select an image or moving picture/i-motion**

4 **"Yes"**

- In some sizes of images or moving picture/i-motion, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)". Select "Yes (Large size)" to enlarge them to fit the screen size.
- If i-αppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking if you terminate the i-αppli stand-by display. When selecting "Yes", the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.
- If moving picture/i-motion is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting and Information display are set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When moving picture/i-motion is canceled with i-αppli stand-by display not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

❖Playing moving picture/i-motion or animation set to the stand-by display

- The following operations are available for moving picture/i-motion.
  [📞] /Opening FOMA terminal : Play
  [CLR] / [📞] /Closing FOMA terminal : Stop
  [●] : Adjust volume
- The following operations are available for GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics.
  [📞] /Opening FOMA terminal/Returning to the stand-by display with FOMA terminal opened/Turning power ON : Play
  [📞] /Closing FOMA terminal : Stop
- It is not played during All lock etc.

✔INFORMATION

- While playing moving picture/i-motion set for the stand-by display, pressing [●] does not display Scheduler or phonebook. Stop playing to operate.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set to stand-by display, the video data is not played.
- When the stand-by display is displayed, Flash graphics and/or GIF animation plays for a predetermined period of time and stops. If a clock is stopped when Flash graphics with clock function is specified, you can restart it by playing Flash graphics.
- By some Machi-chara on stand-by display, playing speed of Flash graphics is reduced.
- When setting GIF animation to be enlarged, the display may be distorted.
- When setting Flash graphics in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, displayed images may change according to time or season. When Pedometer/ACT monitor is set to "Use", values such as the number of steps are displayed on the stand-by display. For "スペースジム (Space gym)" or "ウォーキング×フラワー (Walking × Flower)", images also change according to the value.
- When there is no image to be displayed since the folder selected in Set random image is deleted, still images in the folder are moved or deleted or animation is created, the default setting is restored. Note that, right after the still image displayed on the stand-by display is moved or animation is created, the image is temporarily displayed until the next image appears.

◆ Setting i-αppli stand-by display

- Only i-αppli compatible with the i-αppli stand-by display can be set.
- The i-αppli stand-by display precedes other stand-by display settings.
- Operating i-αppli stand-by display→P250

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 1 1 1 4

2 **Select i-αppli▶"Yes"**

or is displayed when the i-αppli stand-by display is set.

- Show ticker of i-Channel setting and Information display are set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When i-αppli stand-by display is canceled with moving picture/i-motion not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

◆ Info/calendar layout

You can divide the stand-by display to several and make settings to display arrival information such as unread mail or missed call, schedule, calendar, list of notes or contents of a note in individual areas.

- When an image is set to the stand-by display, the set information is displayed over the image. It is not displayed if moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli stand-by display is set to the stand-by display.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 1 5

2 1

Canceling : 2

- No more operation is required.

3 ◎ **to switch patterns▶Select an area**

4 1, 3, 5

- Press MENU and select "Yes" to cancel all area settings.

Setting arrival information : 2 **▶Select information▶** ●

- "When selecting "Unread messages", reception date/time and titles of unread mails appear.
- When selecting "RMessageR"/"FMessageF", reception date/time and titles of MessageR/F appear.
- When selecting "Missed call", reception date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.
- When selecting "Recorded messages", recording date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.

Setting Calendar : 4 **▶** 1-4

- The number of months that calendar can be displayed varies by the area size. And, if the area is small, calendar cannot be set.

Setting Note content : 6 **▶Select a note**

5 ● **▶"Yes"**

❖Checking information on the stand-by display

1 ●

- When no information is shown, press ⌐ to display an area and press ●.

2 **Move the cursor with** ◎ **▶** ●

✔INFORMATION

- Each time you press ⌐ on the stand-by display, information is displayed/hidden in turn.
- When animation or created animation is set to the stand-by display, after the playing is stopped or paused, press ⌐ to display information.
- While information is displayed, the area set in Info/calendar layout cannot be selected.

❖Displayed contents of various information

- Since the numbers of information entries and lines displayed differ by the area size, some part of the information may not be displayed.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.
- In Personal data lock, only the setting of Missed calls for New arrival can be changed. Schedule, List of notes or Note cannot be selected.

■ New arrival

The information is displayed from the latest one. Select an area to check the top information.

: Unread mail R / F : MessageR/F : Missed call : Recorded message

■ **Schedule**

Icon, Start time, contents/program name appear in the order of the date and time of schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg that start date/time have not come yet. If an area is selected, the schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of the first item can be checked.

- ⇔ appears on the schedule that has different Start date and time and End date and time.
- If the schedule with All day set to ON is the current day, "AllDay" is displayed.
- Schedules in i-schedule are not displayed.

■ **Calendar**

The calendar for 1 month/2 months/4 months/6 months are displayed. Select an area to display the Calendar of Scheduler.

- The current day is displayed in yellow, days off and holidays in red and Saturdays in blue. The color changes by Days off, Day off of week and Holiday settings of Scheduler.
- When a schedule or 1Seg watching reservation/recording reservation is set, a red mark appears on the upper-right side of the date.

■ **List of notes**

The list of notes saved in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the list of notes.

■ **Note**

The beginning of a note set in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the details of a note.

Outgoing call image

Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 2 ▶ 1 **or** 3 ▶ **Select Display image field** ▶ 1-3 ▶ 📷

- When "Select image" is selected, select List image field to select an image.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data are set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

❖Outgoing call image priority

When setting outgoing images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the following priority.

① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook*

② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook

③ Outgoing call/Videophone dialing (V.phone dialing img.)

* Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

Incoming call image

Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call

- This setting also applies to Call alert of Call & Answer or Videophone alert of Videophone.
- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for Show image→P285
- Ring tone and incoming call image→P82

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 2 ▶ 2 **or** 4 ▶ **Select Show image field** ▶ 1-5 ▶ 📷

- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field. When "i-motion" is selected, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data are set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

❖Incoming call image priority

When setting incoming images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the following priority.

① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook*1

② Alert/Image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook

③ Call ring alert*2/V.phone ring alert*2/Call alert (Incoming call)/Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Incoming calls melody setting for Multi Number/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting*2

*1 Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

*2 Effective when setting to "Movie ringtone" and moving picture/i-motion containing a sound and image.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. An incoming image for videophone call operates according to the settings of Videophone alert.
- When setting moving picture/i-motion (including the case of setting to "Terminal setting" and setting moving picture/i-motion for Incoming call) for the ring alert of Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook, the image or moving picture/i-motion set in phonebook does not appear, and the moving picture/i-motion set for the ring alert appears. Note that, when setting moving picture/i-motion containing only sound for the ring alert of Alert by contact etc., it operates as follows.
  - When setting a still image to phonebook, the still image is displayed.
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion is set to phonebook, the image of the phonebook does not appear, but the image set for Alert/Image by group or Call alert appears.
- When setting ring alert to "Terminal setting" in Alert/image by group of phonebook and setting moving picture/i-motion in Call alert etc., the image or moving picture/i-motion set in phonebook by group does not appear, and the moving picture/i-motion set for Ring alert appears. Note that, when setting moving picture/i-motion containing only sound in Call alert etc., it operates as follows.
  - When a still image is set for Alert/Image by group, the still image appears.
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion is set for Alert/Image by group, the image set for Call alert etc. appears.

Identification mark

Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking

- This setting also applies to Number A of Identification mark of 2in1.
- An identification mark is not displayed when using Multi Number.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 1 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When setting Identify No. to "ON", Mark can be set.

Contact image

Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call

You can set if you display images etc. saved in FOMA terminal phonebook for incoming/outgoing voice/videophone calls.

- The image saved in phonebook is displayed when the caller notifies the phone number.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 2 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2

Mail image

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving

You can set images to appear when sending mails, receiving mails (including MessageR/F) or received mails, or checking new messages.

- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for Show image of Image message alert →P285
- Ring tone for Mail alert and incoming image for Image message alert→P82

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 3 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When "Select image" is selected, select Image list field to select an image.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data are set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.
- When "i-motion" is set in Image message alert, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.

Display & Key light

Setting display and key lighting

◆ Display light time

You can set the lighting time to turn on the light on the display.

- This setting also applies to i-mode settings (Common Setting), Display light time of i-αppli settings, Image settings, Recording settings and Display light time of Settings for i-motion. Also, i-motion setting applies to Display light time of Music&Video Channel.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 4 1 ▶ 1-7

2 1 **or** 2 **(for Normal use,** 1-7**)**

- When setting to "Terminal setting", the light turns on according to the lighting time set in Normal use.
- When "Always on" is set, the light always turns on with brightness set in Brightness. Note that, when an AC/DC adapter is connected, the light turns on in "Brightness 5" regardless of the settings in Brightness.
- When "Software" is set for i-αppli, the light turns on according to the i-αppli settings. The light does not turn off for i-αppli set to Always on.

◆ Light time-out

You can set the duration to show display.

- This setting is unavailable for the function to which Display light time is set to "Always on".
- Display remains shown while receiving a call or mail, making a videophone call, operating camera, watching 1Seg, playing 1Seg video, alarm is sounding, etc. Display disappears when specified time elapses after those operations.
- Display light turns on by operating keypads or receiving calls/mails when nothing is displayed on the display.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 4 2 ▶ 1-7

◆ Brightness

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 4 3 ▶ 1-6

- When setting to "Auto adjust", the brightness of the display lights is automatically adjusted according to the ambient light. In a well-lighted area, Keypad light does not turn on.

◆ Keypad light

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 4 4 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Keypad light : When setting to "ON", Keypad light turns on when opening FOMA terminal or pressing a key.

Light color : When setting to "Rainbow (Key press)", the light color changes each time you press a key. When setting to "Rainbow (Slide)", the light color changes each time FOMA terminal is opened.

Call/Mail light alert : When "ON" is set, it blinks in the light color that is set in Light alert for incoming calls or mail. When "OFF" is set, the light turns on in Keypad light color.

- When "ON" is set, if Light pattern of Light alert is "Sync melody" or Light color of Light alert is "Rainbow", it blinks in "Rainbow (Key press)". When Light pattern of Light alert is set to "OFF", the light turns on in Keypad light color.

Power saving mode

Saving battery consumption

◆ Saving mode ON/OFF

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 8 1

◆ Saving mode options

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 8 2 ▶ 1 or 2

❖When power saving mode is set

- When setting to Standard saving, it operates as follows.
  - Keypad light of Display & Key light, Indicator light, Call session light of Light alert, Position location and Notifying location of GPS light alert, IC card light, Slide/turn light are set to "OFF".
  - "0 sec" is set for Normal use of Display light time in Display & Key light, "Terminal setting" is set for others, "15 sec" is set for Light time-out, and "Brightness 1" is set for Brightness.
  - 1Seg ECO mode is set to ON
- When setting to Full saving, it operates with the operation of Standard saving as follows.
  - Motion sensor and Immobile sensor of Security lock are set to "OFF".
  - "Not use" is set to Pedometer/ACT monitor settings.

✔INFORMATION

- In the following cases, power saving mode is set to OFF and Power saving mode is restored to default.
  - When an item set in Power saving mode is separately changed
  - When Kisekae Tool is reset or Kisekae Tool including the brightness other than "Brightness 1" is set
  - When Style theme is set or Timed theme for which Style theme is set to "Change" operates

Color scheme

Changing display colors

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 1 ▶ **Select the color scheme**

Select startup menu

Changing startup menu

Set the menu displayed when pressing MENU on the stand-by display.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 2 1 ▶ 1-3

Display Machi-chara

Setting Machi-chara

You can display a character on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 7 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- When Display is set to "ON", you can select Machi-chara.

✔INFORMATION

- Machi-chara does not appear when moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set for the stand-by display.
- Some Machi-chara change its actions according to time, arrival information, call duration, etc.

Using Kisekae Tool

Use of Kisekae Tool allows you to collectively set stand-by display image, menu, incoming/outgoing call images, etc.

- Kisekae Tool in "Preinstalled" folder cannot be moved or deleted. Also, the file name cannot be changed.
- Using Kisekae Tool, the following items can be set (combinations of items that can be set vary by Kisekae Tool).
  - Stand-by display, Stand-by(Horizontal), Kisekae menu*1, Basic menu, Mail menu BG, Mail menu BG, i-mode menu BG, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call img., Call alert image, V.phone call image, V.phone alert img, Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving*2, Call ring alert, V.phone ring alert, Mail ring alert, MsgR ring alert, MsgF ring alert, Alarm clock sound, i-concier ring alert, Color theme, Font, Brightness, Keypad light color, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format

*1 Some Kisekae Tool does not support English display when setting バイリンガル (Select language) to "English". Also, operation by pressing [i-αx] or [✉] on the stand-by display may cause different actions from ordinary ones or short-cut operations may be unavailable.

*2 Set the image to display when setting Check new message/SMS.

- Some types of Kisekae menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.
- With 2in1 ON, no Kisekae Tool items are set on the stand-by display in Dual and B modes, and for Call/V.phone/Mail ring alert of Number B.

◆ Changing Kisekae Tool

1 [MENU] **[Data Box]** [7]

i-mode : Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites
Preinstalled : Preinstalled Kisekae Tool
My folder : Kisekae Tool moved from other folders
- Appears if a folder is added.→P298

Search by i-mode : Searching Kisekae Tool on i-mode site→P172

2 **Select a folder▶Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool**

The display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details are shown.



Thumbnails screen　　List screen

① **Originated**
: i-mode
/ : i-mode (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
/ : Preinstalled (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
: Searching Kisekae Tool on i-mode site→P172

② **File types**
: Set
: Previously used setting whose items are valid because the current Kisekae Tool does not have the items
(the back card is gray) : Not set
(upper half is gray) : Partially saved
: i-αppli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.

③ **File restriction**
: File restricted

- For thumbnail screen, the display name of the Kisekae Tool at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appear at the bottom of the display. Also, when thumbnail display is unavailable, it is displayed as follows.
(the back card is pink) : No preview image
: i-αppli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.
(upper half is gray) : Partially downloaded

Resetting : [MENU] [6] **▶Authenticate▶"Reset all" or "Reset menu"**
- Selecting "Reset all" resets items that can be set in Kisekae Tool to the default state.
- Selecting "Reset menu" resets settings of Kisekae menu, Basic menu, Basic menu BG, Mail menu BG and i-mode menu BG to the default state.

Checking memory : [MENU] [4] **▶Move the cursor to a data type**

3 [📷] **▶"Yes"**

Data of Kisekae Tool is collectively set.
- When a large font setting is included in Kisekae Tool, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. And, when changing to a Kisekae Tool not containing large font while setting in a large font, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. Follow the instruction of this screen and set.
- Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool partially downloaded▶Press one of [●], [📷], [✉], then a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Kisekae Tool partially saved may be deleted.

Viewing/Changing detail information : MENU 2 ▶ 1 or 2
Detail information→P299
Canceling setting : MENU 3 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**
• To cancel selected items, select them ▶ ●.
Moving/Restoring : MENU 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 1-3
Moving/Restoring→P298
Deleting : MENU 5 ▶ 1-3
Deleting→P301
Sorting : MENU 6 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●
Sorting→P301
Checking memory : MENU 7
Checking memory→P302
Setting list screen operations : MENU 8 ▶ 1 or 2
• Set to "Yes" for thumbnail display.

❖Using Special mode

If you set Special mode, "サファリ (Safari)" is added to "Preinstalled" folder, and automatically set to Kisekae Tool.

1 MENU ▶ ● ▶ MENU 1 3 ▶ **Enter "サファリ (Safari)" in the group name field** ▶ ●

• The following items are set.
- Stand-by display, Stand-by(Horizontal), Kisekae menu, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call img., Call alert image, V.phone call image, V.phone alert image, Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving, Color theme, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format

• If you perform the same operations as the setting procedure, "サファリ (Safari)" is deleted from "Preinstalled" folder, and the set items are restored to the default state.
• "リーフロボット（スペシャル）(Leaf robot (Special))" is also added in "Preinstalled" folder of Machi-chara. If you delete "リーフロボット（スペシャル）(Leaf robot (Special))", it never appears even if you set Special mode again. Download it from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" website.→P301
• For information on Special mode, refer to "裏技紹介 (Tricks)" of "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" website.→P301

◆Checking Kisekae Tool content

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 7 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool** ▶ ✉

• For the item currently set, a red check mark is added on the icon on the left of item name.
• For some items, the icon indicating file format appears on the right of item name. Icon definitions
JPG : Image in JPEG format GIF : Image in GIF format : SWF (Flash graphics)
VUI : Kisekae menu MP4 : Moving picture in MP4 format MFI : Melody in MFi format
SMF : Melody in SMF format

Displaying an image : Select Kisekae Tool
Displaying images or setting for each item : Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool ▶ ✉ ▶ **Select an item**

✔INFORMATION

• バイリンガル (Select language) cannot be set when using "Simple Menu".
• For items set to "Kisekae Tool" in each setting screen, when selecting other than "Kisekae Tool", a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekae Tool appears. If you select "Yes", only corresponding items are canceled. To restore the setting of Kisekae Tool, set Kisekae Tool again.
• When Kisekae Tool contains data that cannot be displayed or played, only that data is not set.
• A ring alert or incoming call image that is included in Kisekae Tool may not be set depending on the combination with the current settings of incoming call image or ring alert. Also, even when "Kisekae Tool" is set, the default ring alert may sound or "Standard image" may appear.

Customizing the menu

◆ Customizing menu items for Kisekae menu

- This operation is available only when you download and set Kisekae Tool that can change or replace menu items or when you set "切替メニュー (Switch menu)" of Kisekae menu. For "切替メニュー (Switch menu)", press ✉ on the menu screen to use "お気に入り (Favorite)" menu.

❖Changing menu item

1 MENU ▶ **Move the cursor to a menu item** ▶ MENU 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a function to register** ▶ ●

- You can select till second level.

❖Replacing menu items

1 MENU ▶ **Move the cursor to a menu item** ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **Select the destination item to replace**

◆ Changing icon and background of Basic menu

1 MENU ▶ i-α

- When the display menu is Basic menu, you do not need to press i-α.

2 MENU 2

3 **Select a function** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

Menu icons of other functions can be set successively in the same way.
Canceling 1 item : Move the cursor to an icon ▶ MENU 1 ▶ **"Yes"**
Canceling all items : MENU 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

4 ✉ ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

Background is set.
Canceling background : MENU 4 ▶ **"Yes"**

5 ● ▶ **"Yes"**

- When the display menu is Basic menu, you do not need to select "Yes".

✔INFORMATION

- Created animations, Flash graphics or images in "Item" folder cannot be selected. If a GIF animation is selected, first image is displayed.
- Depending on the image size to set, the icon is displayed by 192×192, and the background image is enlarged/shrunk to 480×704.
- The icon and background of Basic menu cannot be changed while using Kisekae Tool including "Basic menu", "Basic menu (Background)" or during Personal data lock.

◆ Resetting menu

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 2 3 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- Authentication is required for Menu design.
- Select Operation history to delete the information about how many times and when you used the menu. Select Menu design to restore the menu (including Custom menu) to default state.

2 **"Yes"**

Style theme

Customizing FOMA terminal screen

You can create 3 types of original coordinates by changing the screen designs such as stand-by display, menu, clock, battery icon or antenna icon.

- When Style theme is set, Brightness of Display & Key light, i-mode of Font size, Mail view, Text input, Font style, power saving mode and Subtitle size of User setting of 1Seg are restored to default settings. Also, when Normal use of Display light time in Display & Key light is set to "0 sec", the previous setting is restored.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 3 2

2 1 - 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Title : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.
Menu design : Select a preinstalled Kisekae Tool.
Color scheme : Select the display color scheme.
Stand-by image : Select an image to be displayed on the stand-by display from a still image, GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics.

Clock display format/Time format/Clock layout/Day : Select if you display a clock on the stand-by display, clock design to be displayed, time format, clock layout, and display type of the day of the week.
Items of Clock display format→P99 "Setting clock display"
Battery icon : Select the battery icon type.
Antenna icon : Select the antenna icon type.
Keypad light color : Select the color of Keypad light.

Battery icon

Changing battery icon

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 1 3 ▶ 1-7 (1-8 **when Special mode is set)**

Antenna icon

Changing antenna icon

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 1 4 ▶ 1-6 (1-7 **when Special mode is set)**

Indicator light

Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting

You can set whether to blink the light for a missed call, unread mail (including SMS) or arrival information.

- The light blinks in the light color for incoming calls and mail/messages at intervals of approximately 6 seconds.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 3 5 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2

✓INFORMATION

- If multiple arrival information exists after the power is turned OFF and ON, the light blinks in order of the following priority. Light turns on in the color according to Light color of Light alert.
  ①Missed call ②Unread mail (including SMS) ③Arrival information
- When approximately 6 hours elapse since the last information was received or you delete 2 2 (the number indicates the number of items) from the stand-by display, the light stops blinking.

Light alert

Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking

- This setting also applies to Light alert of Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert, MessageR/F alert, Light alert and Light color of ToruCa alert, Light alert of Positioning alert in GPS.
- Brightness and color of light→P414

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 5 ▶ 1-5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

- When Light pattern is set to "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. And, some melodies are not synchronized.
- When Light pattern of Light alert is set to "Sync melody", the light color for Indicator light is according to Light color.
- To set light for receiving ToruCa, Call session light, IC card light, Slide/turn light, set Light to "ON" and select a light color.
- For GPS light alert, Light pattern cannot be set to "Sync melody". Also, "OFF" cannot be set for Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.

❖Light alert priority

When Light pattern and Light color of Light alert is set for multiple functions, light turns on in order of the following priority.
① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
③ Light alert/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

Font style

Changing font style

You can change the font type to used for i-mode site, Full Browser, character entry screen, etc.

- In addition to "プリティー桃" stored by default, you can use other kana fonts downloaded.
- This setting does not apply to some functions such as camera, i-αppli or i-motion. Also, Chinese font cannot be changed.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 6 2 ▶ **Select Kanji/Alphameric field** ▶ 1-3

2 **Select Hiragana/Katakana field** ▶ **Select a font**

Deleting downloaded fonts : Select Hiragana/Katakana field ▶ **Move the cursor to a font** ▶ MENU ▶ **"Yes"**

- Preinstalled fonts or fonts currently used cannot be deleted.

3 ●

Font size

Changing font size

<Example> When setting with All listed

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 2 6 1

2 1-6 ▶ **Select a font size**

- When Text input is set, the font size used for creating a mail or Full-screen entry is changed.
- When P.book/Log/Accessory is set, the font size for phonebook, Received calls, Redial, notepad, alarm clock list screen and dictionaries are changed.

✔INFORMATION

- Font sizes to be selected differ depending on items. When the items do not support the font size that is selected in All listed, the closest font size is set.
- For some font sizes selected in All listed, a confirmation screen for changing the font size for menu appears. When selecting "Yes", Kisekae Tool applicable to the selected font size can be selected.
- The font size can also be changed from the mail details screen.→P153

Clock display format

Setting clock display

Whether to display clock, the design, size or layout of clock display on the stand-by display can be set. The language to use to display the day of the week or the display format can also be set.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 3 4 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Style : Set if you display clock. When setting to "ON", select a clock style.

- When setting to "World time clock", Japan time appears on the left side and the time/name of the specified time zone appears on the right side, respectively.

Time format : Set the clock display format to either "24 hour" or "12 hour".

Clock layout : Set the position to display the clock.

- In All lock or Omakase Lock, the clock is displayed at the "Top" regardless of this setting.

Day : Set if you use Japanese or English to display the day of the week.

- When setting to "Terminal settings", the display depends on the バイリンガル (Select language) setting.

World time clock : Set the time zone to be displayed or set if you enable summer time when "World time clock" is selected in Style.

- When Summer time is "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the time of the specified time zone.

✔INFORMATION

- On a screen other than the stand-by display, the clock appears in the upper-right corner of the display. This display depends on Time format ("24 hour" or "12 hour").
- When moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set to the stand-by display, a clock is displayed with Style set to "Digital 4", Clock layout set to "Top" regardless of this setting.
- Two time zone clocks are used when using FOMA terminal overseas.→P370

Security Settings

Security code

Security codes used on the FOMA terminal 102
Changing terminal security code ..... Terminal security code change 103
Setting PIN code 103
Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code 104
Using fingerprint authentication 104

Restricting operations and functions on mobile phone

Restricting others from using ..... All lock 107
Using Omakase Lock ..... Omakase Lock 107
Restricting making/receiving calls ..... Self mode 108
Disabling to use personal information ..... Personal data lock 109
Prohibiting keypad dial ..... Keypad dial lock 110
Setting operations for using or displaying personal information ..... Privacy mode 110
Setting display contents for receiving call/mail ..... Receive display option 116
Locking touch operation or keypad operation by hiding screen display ..... Operation lock 116
Locking touch operation or keypad operation automatically ..... Security lock 117
Deterring only touch operation when making a call or talking on the phone ..... Touch lock 119

Restricting outgoing/incoming calls and messages

Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers 119
Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID ..... Anonymous caller 120
Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook ..... Ring alert delay 120
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook ..... Unregistered caller 121

Other security settings

Using Data Security Service 121
Resetting various functions ..... Reset 123
Deleting saved data all at once ..... Delete all data 123
Resetting data by remote control ..... Initializing remotely 124
Restricting each function by remote control ..... Remote customization 125
Other security settings 126

Security codes used on the FOMA terminal

Some of the convenient FOMA terminal functions require entry of security code. In addition to the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, there are several types of security codes such as network security code for network services and i-mode password. Use these codes appropriately for FOMA terminal.

- The terminal security code, network security code or i-mode password entered is masked with "✻".

Precautions related to security codes

- When setting a security code, do not use a number that can be easily known to others, such as "birthday", "a part of a phone number", "street address or room number", "1111" or "1234". Keep a separate note of the set security code.
- Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is known to and misused by others, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for damages resulted from it.
- If you forget your security codes, you need to bring a document (a driver's license etc.) to identify your subscription, FOMA terminal and UIM to the docomo Shop.
  For details, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

❖Terminal security code

The default security code is "0000", which you can change by yourself.→P103

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF.

❖Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number used when DOCOMO identifies the subscriber to accept orders at docomo Shop, docomo Information Center or "お客様サポート (user support)" or when you use a variety of Network Services. You can set any number at subscription and optionally change it later.

If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo" that is a total support site for a PC, you can change your network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing "各種設定（確認・変更・利用）(Settings (Check/Change/Use))" in お客様サポート (Support).

- For "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (Support)", see the reverse side of the back cover of this manual.

❖i-mode password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to save to/delete from マイメニュー (My Menu) or subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode charged services. The password is set to "0000" by default, however, you can change it by yourself.→P163

There may be passwords required by individual IPs (Information Providers).

❖PIN code/PIN2 code

2 security codes which are the PIN code and PIN2 code can be set for UIM. Their security codes are set to "0000" by default, which you can change by yourself.→P104

PIN code is a number (code) to be entered each time UIM is installed or FOMA terminal is powered ON to confirm the user and to prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal. Making/Receiving calls and terminal operations are enabled by entering PIN code.

The PIN2 code is the security code to be used when requesting the issuance of a user certificate, resetting Total calls cost or changing settings of Reset call cost.

- When installing UIM that has been used with another FOMA terminal, the PIN code and PIN2 code should be the same ones set previously. If no changes have been made to PIN code and PIN2 code, your codes are "0000".

❖PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

PUK is a number of 8-digit code used to unblock PIN or PIN2 lock. You cannot change PUK by yourself.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, UIM is locked.



✔INFORMATION

- In case of using password manager with simultaneous use of the fingerprint authentication and terminal security code access, be sure to change the terminal security code. For the new terminal security code, avoid use of an easily-guessed number such as the low-order 4 digits of the phone number and take care not to let others know the terminal security code. Keep a separate note of the set security codes.
  * Note that DOCOMO is not liable for any damages caused through incorrect use of the data by a third party.

Terminal security code change

Changing terminal security code

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [4] [5] [1] ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter the new terminal security code**

2 **Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field** ▶ [📷]

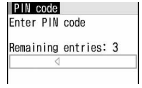
Setting PIN code

◆Setting whether to require entry of PIN code when turning power ON <PIN1 code ON/OFF>

If a wrong PIN code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press [●] and enter PUK.

- The PIN code entry screen is displayed only when the current setting is changed.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [4] [4] [3] ▶ [1] **or** [2] ▶ **Enter PIN code**



❖When PIN1 code ON/OFF is set to "ON"

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. The stand-by display appears when correct PIN code is entered, but all operations are unavailable when not.

✔INFORMATION

- When the date/time specified in Alarm clock or schedule has come with Alarm auto power ON is "ON", the power is turned ON and the alarm starts sounding before the PIN code entry screen is displayed. When [⏎] is pressed to stop the alarm, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. Even if a downloaded melody, i-motion or music is set as an alarm, operations are carried out as specified in the default settings.

◆Changing PIN/PIN2 code

- To change the PIN code, you need to set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "ON".

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 4 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Authenticate

2 Enter the current PIN/PIN2 code ▶ Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code entry field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 📷

- If the PIN/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a screen indicating the failure of authentication appears. Press ● and enter the correct PIN/PIN2 code. If a wrong code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press ● and enter the PUK.

✔INFORMATION

- Even if PIN2 code is locked by entering incorrect PIN2 code 3 times consecutively, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available; if PIN code is locked by entering incorrect PIN code 3 times consecutively, these operations are unavailable.

Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code

If a wrong PIN/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, lock is set. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

1 On the confirmation screen of the PUK, "OK" ▶ Enter the PUK

2 Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 📷

Using fingerprint authentication

Use of the fingerprint authentication allows you to skip the operation of entering the terminal security code with keypads by sliding your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor.

- Even with fingerprint authentication set, pressing MENU on the fingerprint authentication screen displays the terminal security code entry screen, allowing you to enter terminal security code for authentication. The terminal security code cannot be entered when Fingerprint access is "ON".
- Simultaneous use of the fingerprint authentication and terminal security code access→P102 INFORMATION in "Security code used on the FOMA terminal"

◆Precautions for using fingerprint authentication

- This function is used to authenticate the information on the characteristics of fingerprint image. For this reason, user with fingerprint that does not provide enough characteristics information may not be able to use the fingerprint authentication.
- The 3 readings with the same finger are needed to register your fingerprint. Do not register the different finger.
- Authentication performance (the probability of successful fingerprint authentication for correct sliding of the finger) depends on the condition of use. The following finger conditions may make fingerprint registration difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Taking measures according to the condition of your finger including washing hands, wiping hands, using a different finger for fingertip authentication and applying cream if the hand is rough or dry may improve the authentication performance.
  - Fingers are wrinkled, wet or sweaty after taking a bath, etc.
  - Fingers are sweaty or oily enough to obscure ridges of fingertip, or fingers are soiled with dirt or oil
  - Rough or damaged (cut, inflamed, etc.)
  - Extremely dry or having tendency to get dry
  - Became fat or thin to cause the fingerprint to change
  - Fingerprint unclear by wearing away
  - Surface in a condition extremely different from that at the time of fingerprint registration

- For registration/authentication of your fingerprint, align the first joint of one of your fingers to the center of the sensor, press your finger parallel to the sensor and slide it downward until it passes the fingerprint sensor area. To prevent authentication failure due to difference in finger positions at registration and authentication, keep your finger parallel to the terminal as you slide it.
- If the sliding movement is too fast or too slow, the fingerprint may not be correctly recognized.
- Registration/Authentication of fingerprint may be difficult with your thumb as the center of the whorl of the fingerprint may be displaced or distorted. Try as much as possible to slide your finger so that the center of the whorl of the fingerprint passes the center of the fingerprint sensor.
- If the fingerprint was not correctly read, a warning message appears. If the fingerprint was not authenticated within a certain period of time, a confirmation message appears and the previous screen reappears.
- If fingerprint registration or authentication is started with the finger put on the fingerprint sensor, activation may be unavailable. Put the finger off from the fingerprint sensor and retry the operation.
- When connecting FOMA terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be unavailable. In this case, perform fingerprint authentication while touching a metallic part (frame, external connector, etc.) of the connected device or after disconnecting FOMA terminal from the device.
- Fingerprint authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by use of this product or unavailability of this product.

◆ Usage precautions for fingerprint sensor

- A protective film is put on the fingerprint sensor. Do not remove or poke the film with a pointed object such as a pen.
- Malfunction may occur if a drop of water or dirt adheres to the surface of the fingerprint sensor or your finger, or if you operate it with a wrinkled finger. Wipe any water or dirt off with a soft cloth before use.
- The following conditions may cause failure or damage.
  - Strike or give a hard shock
  - Scratch or pick with a pointed object
  - Rub hard with a fingernail or hard object (such as metal piece of strap) and scratch the surface of the fingerprint sensor
  - Scratch or stain the surface of the fingerprint sensor with soil etc.
  - Cover with a sticker or paint with ink etc.
- The following conditions may make fingerprint scanning difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor from time to time.
  - Dirt of dust, sebum, etc., attachment or condensation of moisture of sweat etc.
- If any of the following phenomena occurs, clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor. The phenomena may be improved.
  - "Clean surface of sensor." appears
  - Fingerprint registration or authentication fails often
- To clean the fingerprint sensor, wipe its surface with a dry, soft and static-free cloth. Long-term use may cause the fingerprint sensor to get dusty, but do not try to remove the dust with a pointed object even in such a case.
- Static electricity may cause malfunction. Before placing the finger on the fingerprint sensor, eliminate static electricity by touching a metal object with the hand etc. Take particular care in dry seasons such as winter.

◆ Registering fingerprint to be used for authentication <Register fingerprint>

- Up to 10 items can be registered.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 5 2 **▶ Authenticate**

2 **"OK" ▶ Press the sensor with your finger and slide slowly downwards by following the instruction message**

- Fingerprint registration is canceled when there is an incoming call or a specified date/time for Alarm clock or schedule comes during the fingerprint scan.

3 **Enter the name to register (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶** 📷

- ✓ appears for the fingerprint set to be used.
- Press 📷 to register a fingerprint subsequently.

◆ Setting whether to use only fingerprint authentication for authentication <Fingerprint access>

- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", 2 or more registrations of different fingers and setting Use for authorize are required.
- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", authentication using terminal security code is unavailable. If authentication is disabled for any registered fingers due to FOMA terminal operating conditions, finger conditions, failure of the fingerprint sensor or other reasons, you need to bring a document (such as a driver's license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, FOMA terminal and UIM to a docomo Shop.

<Example> Setting Fingerprint access to "ON"

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 5 4 ▶ **Authenticate**

2 1 ▶ **"OK"** ▶ ✉

Canceling : 2

- If 2 or more fingerprint items registration and Use for authorize are not made, setting cannot be completed. Press 📷 to register fingerprint.

The next procedure→P105 Step 2 in "Registering fingerprint to be used for authentication"

Setting authentication→P106 "Setting/Canceling Use for authorize" in "Managing fingerprint"

◆ Authenticating fingerprint

1 When the fingerprint authentication screen appears, slide your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor

- For fingerprint authentication, press the finger set for use against the fingerprint sensor.
- If the authentication is failed, remove the finger from the fingerprint sensor and retry authentication. When authentication performance is low, retry the fingerprint registration.
- Pressing MENU or a keypad (touch [ScrtyCd] for the touch operation) displays the terminal security code entry screen, except when Fingerprint access is "ON".

✔INFORMATION

- If fingerprint authentication failed 5 times consecutively, the terminal security code entry screen appears. If authentication failed 5 times consecutively when Fingerprint access is "ON", the power is turned OFF. The cumulative number of authentication failure is cleared by correct authentication or redisplaying of fingerprint authentication screen.

◆ Managing fingerprint

You can display or delete fingerprint set for authentication, change the registered name, etc.

- If all fingerprints set for authentication are canceled or deleted, the fingerprint authentication becomes unavailable.
- When setting Fingerprint access to "ON", and there are 3 or more registered fingerprints set for authentication, the fingerprints can be deleted after canceling authorize. Note that if there are 2 or less fingerprints, they cannot be canceled authorize or deleted.

<Example> Deleting the fingerprint

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 5 3 ▶ **Authenticate**

- To check the registered fingerprint, press i.

Setting/Canceling Use for authorize: Select a fingerprint to set/cancel Use for authorize

✔ appears with the finger print set for use.

Renaming data : MENU 4 ▶ **Edit the name** ▶ 📷

Changing the order : Move the cursor to a fingerprint ▶ MENU ▶ 5 **or** 6

2 Move the cursor to a fingerprint to delete ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a fingerprint.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 📷.

All lock

Restricting others from using

When All lock is activated, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in All lock, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press [ ] with FOMA terminal opened.

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is marked with "*".

- Even when All lock is activated, IC card lock is not activated. To start both IC card lock and All lock, start IC card lock→All lock in sequence.→P258
- The UIM and microSD card are not locked.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [4] [1] [3] ▶ **Authenticate**

"All locked." appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : Enter the terminal security code with FOMA terminal opened

- When fingerprint authentication is set, press [MENU] to authenticate.

✔INFORMATION

- A call is received regardless of the settings of Specified caller.
- Even if a stand-by display or Machi-chara is set, only the image set by default is displayed.
- All lock precedes even when Security lock is set to "ON".
- The alarm clock and schedule reminder do not operate even when the specified date and time arrive. Activation by watching reservation or recording reservation of 1Seg does not occur.
- Even when the specified date/time comes, Timed theme is not switched. When canceling All lock, Timed theme not in operation start in order.
- Bluetooth ON/OFF becomes "OFF" even if it is set to "ON". The previous setting is restored after All lock is canceled.
- The following functions are available.
  - Receiving voice/videophone calls*1, making emergency call (110, 119, 118)
  - Automatic update of Data Center
  - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS*2
  - Receiving Area Mail, activating Omakase Lock
  - Receiving i-αppli call*3
  - Functions to pay money only by holding Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader, obtaining ToruCa from the IC card reader*4
  - Operations for location request of GPS*5
  - Updating software, auto-updating pattern definitions.

*1 Only a phone number is displayed, but the other party's name and image saved in phonebook are not. The incoming image, ring alert, etc. are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image.

*2 No receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.

*3 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.

*4 Sound is not emitted when ToruCa obtainment is completed.

*5 Even when the requester ID of Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

This service allows you to lock the personal data of phonebook etc. or IC card function of Osaifu-Keitai only by contacting DOCOMO in case FOMA terminal is misplaced etc. You can protect your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai with this service. And, when Omakase Lock is unavailable at your application and communication becomes available within one year, Omakase Lock is activated automatically. However, if a new UIM is issued because you cancel/suspend your subscription, change a phone number, lose the terminal, etc. (for number-specified lock), the automatic lock is not activated even if it is within one year.
FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request, etc.

* If you are the member of docomo Premier Club, you can use the service any number of times with no commission. If you are not the member of docomo Premier Club, you are charged for the service (however, you are not charged if you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption.). Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack. When Request permit/deny is set to "Always permit" or "Deny unsaved contact", FOMA terminal responds to location request of GPS function even in Omakase Lock.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock
0120-524-360 Office hours : 24hours
* Omakase Lock can be set/canceled from My docomo site using a PC etc.

- For details of Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

❖When Omakase Lock is activated

"Omakase Lock active." appears on the stand-by display.

- In addition to IC card functions, the touch operations and keypad operations other than turning power ON/OFF, receiving a voice/videophone call, reacting to Location request of GPS become unavailable. However, the UIM and microSD card are not locked.

✔INFORMATION

- Voice calls or videophone calls are received, displaying the callers phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The setting you made is restored when Omakase lock is canceled.
- i-αppli call can be received automatically, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken. It is displayed in i-αppli call log after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- Bluetooth ON/OFF becomes "OFF" even if it is set to "ON". The previous setting is restored after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- The received mails are stored in i-mode Center.
- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are active, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even with various lock functions set, Omakase Lock precedes them.
- Lock or unlock operation is unavailable when FOMA terminal is turned OFF, out of service area, in Self mode or used overseas. Besides, FOMA terminal may not be locked depending on your usage etc.
- You can turn ON/OFF the power, however, lock is not canceled even if you turn OFF the power.
- If you are a subscriber to Dual Network Service and use mova service, Omakase Lock is unavailable.
- Even when the holder of FOMA terminal is different from the subscriber, Omakase Lock is activated on the request from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only when UIM with the same phone number as the one used when activating Omakase Lock is installed. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Self mode

Restricting making/receiving calls

You can make all functions requiring communication unavailable.

- Self mode is canceled after an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) is dialed.

1 CLR **(1 sec. or more)▶"Yes"**

SELF appears at the top of the display.
Canceling : CLR **(1 sec. or more)▶"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- The following functions are not available.
  - Making/Receiving a call
  - i-mode, sending or receiving mail
  - Receiving i-αppli call or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
  - GPS (including registering, editing and deleting service clients in LCS clients list)
  - Infrared communication/iC transmission or infrared remote control, Bluetooth function
  - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
- When a call is received, a message is played for the caller indicating that the terminal is out of service area or turned OFF.
- Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service are available, but the call is not recorded as a missed call. Also, even if Self mode is canceled, an icon that notifies of the recorded message in Voice Mail service center does not appear.
- i-mode mail and MessageR/F are stored in i-mode Center and SMS in SMS Center when they are received. To receive messages, perform i-mode/SMS inquiry after canceling Self mode.

Disabling to use personal information

You can temporarily restrict use of i-mode, mail, personal information, etc.

- This function cannot be activated when Unregistered caller is "ON".
- Calls made or received in Personal data lock are recorded. Making calls from Redial or Received calls is available

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 1 4 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ 1 **or** 2

When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

❖When Personal data lock is ON

All or a part of the following operations is restricted. However, the UIM and microSD card are not locked.

- Mail*1, Check new message, SMS*1
- i-mode, MessageR/F*1, i-Channel, Full Browser
- i-αppli, receiving i-αppli call*2, i-Widget
- Phonebook, Record msg.&Voice memo (Movie memo), Mail logs*3
- Data Box (All functions)
- Bar code reader, Ir/iC/PC connection*4, microSD, Camera, Sound recorder, Data Center, Map/GPS*5, Pedometer/ACT monitor, 1Seg (except a part of User setting), Bluetooth communication
- Quick search*6, Scheduler*7, Notepad, Alarm clock, Alert&Time settings
- Call ring alert, Mail/Msg. ring alert, i-concier ring alert, GPS alert, Alarm sound, Display turn sound, Image/i-αppli, i-Channel setting, Shortcut icons, Reset in Menu preference, Call image (except Contact image), Mail image, Kisekae Tool, Display Machi-chara, Kisekae/Themes, Sound & Image, Anonymous caller, Headset key control (Headset quick-dial), Reject/Accept call, V.phone dialing img., Videophone alert, Image setting*8, Call cost limit, Reset, Delete all data, Tone/Vibration message notification, Chaku-moji, 2in1 setting, Melody Call, Number Setting/Incoming calls melody setting in Multi Number
- MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel*9
- IC card content, DCMX, ToruCa, Search by i-mode
- User information
- i-concier

*1 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken. Mail creation from mail logs is also unavailable.

*2 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.

*3 Only a mail address is displayed, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not.

*4 Data transfer in infrared communication/iC transmission, Bluetooth communication or using USB connection is unavailable.

*5 Reactions to a Location request are available.

*6 Search by function with restriction is unavailable with Personal data lock ON.

*7 The information of the Scheduler is not displayed on the calendar set for stand-by display.

*8 The default image is displayed as videophone substitute image.

*9 When program downloading starts, the program downloading screen appears, but the downloading result screen does not appear.

✔INFORMATION

- When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
- does not appear on the stand-by display even when Record message is activated, and an icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed.
- When data to which Personal data lock applies is set as the stand-by display or ring alert, the default setting becomes active in Personal data lock (when menu is a Kisekae menu except the one set by default, Basic menu is displayed). The setting you made is restored when canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even in Personal data lock.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- On Basic menu or Custom menu, icons of functions and parties with activation restricted are changed to and person names appear as "＊＊＊". For Kisekae menu, the font color is displayed in gray or the reason is displayed why activation cannot be performed.
- Calls cannot be made even when FOMA terminal is connected with a Bluetooth device using a headset.

Keypad dial lock

Prohibiting keypad dial

You can set so that calls can be made only by using phonebook.

- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even if Keypad dial lock is activated.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 4 1 6 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1 or 2

When "ON" is set, 🔒 appears on the stand-by display.

❖When Keypad dial lock is ON

The following operations cannot be performed.

- Making call from Redial or Received calls*1
- Editing, registering/adding, deleting and setting a group or entry in phonebook
- Editing and resetting recorded user information data
- Phone To (AV Phone To), SMS To and Mail To functions
- Exchanging phonebook data or user information transfer with external devices
- Sending Mail/SMS*1, sending from mail logs*1
- Reading template on the mail creation screen, creating mail from the mail template list screen or the mail template details screen*2
- Notify location of GPS*3
- Dial-up communication service for Bluetooth function*1
- Saving a phonebook entry temporarily stored in INBOX, User information and LCS client
- Backing up/Restoring microSD card, displaying phonebook in microSD card
- Using network services by the dial up operation
- Packet communication*1 or 64K data communication*1 with a PC

*1 Calls/Messages can be made or sent to parties saved in phonebook.

*2 A mail can be created from a template that a mail address saved in the phonebook is entered as the destination.

*3 Though notification to notification destinations is available, adding, editing and deleting notification destinations to LCS clients are unavailable.

Privacy mode

Setting operations for using or displaying personal information

You can make settings to perform authentication for using personal information, to hide phonebook entries/schedules with secret attribute, incoming calls/sent mail/received mail from a party with secret attribute.

- You can also set the operation for incoming calls or mail from a party with secret attribute.
- You can also set the method to activate/cancel Privacy mode.

◆ Flow of Privacy mode setting

❖Displaying personal information after authentication

<Example> Mail

Step 1

Setting Privacy mode to "Authorized access"→P111

Set Mail & Logs to "Authorized access" in the setting of Privacy mode.

Step 2

Setting activation method for Privacy mode→P112

Set activation method to "Hold L-cursor key".

Step 3

Activating Privacy mode→P113

Press ⏻ for 1 second or more on the stand-by display to activate Privacy mode.

Step 4

Using mail

Authentication is required.

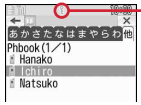
❖Hiding personal information

<Example> Phonebook entry

Step 1

Setting secret attribute for a phonebook entry→P80

Set secret attribute for a phonebook entry to hide.



- Set secret attribute for each data.
  Phonebook→P80, Bookmark→P169, Mail→P145, My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Other→P298, Schedule→P320
- When you set secret attribute and return to the stand-by display, a confirmation screen for reflecting secret attribute in phonebook on mail or a message that confirms Activation option appears.

Contact setting→P115

Step 2

Setting Privacy mode to "Hide set contact"→P111

Set Call & Logs to "Hide set contact" in the setting of Privacy mode.

Step 3

Setting activation method for Privacy mode→P112

Set activation method to "Hold L-cursor key".

Step 4

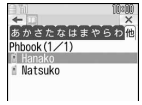
Activating Privacy mode→P113

Press [R] for 1 second or more on the stand-by display to activate Privacy mode.

Step 5

Searching for phonebook entries

Phonebook entries with secret attribute are hidden.



- Even in Privacy mode, hidden information can be displayed by temporary cancellation.→P115

* You can switch orders of Step 1 and Step 2.

◆ Setting Privacy mode operation

❖Setting operation of phonebook or mail

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [4] [2] [1] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ [📷] ▶ [●]

Call & Logs :

- If "Authorized access" is set, authentication is required to search for mail by using phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages, Voice memos or quick search.
- With "Hide set contact" set, phonebook entries or groups (including phonebook entries in those groups) with secret attribute, redial, received calls, mail or SMS for parties with secret attribute are not displayed. Also, reception operation is made according to the setting of Private call act.

Mail & Logs :

- If setting to "Authorized access", authentication is required when using mail or mail logs.
- With "Hide secrecy fldrs" set, folders with secret attribute are not displayed. The reception operation when a mail is received from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute is made according to the setting of Private mail act.

Private call act. : Set incoming actions for an incoming call from a party with secret attribute set in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is set to "Hide set contact").

- If setting to "Alert+Show No.", it is treated as a call from a party not registered in phonebook.
- If setting to "Silent receive", notification by ring alert, vibrate alert or light alert is not performed. And, the display operates according to the setting of the Silent receive act.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name.", it is treated as a call from a party that secret attribute is not set.

Silent receive act. : Set the incoming operation when setting Private call act. to "Silent receive". Even when these functions are set, notification by ring alert, vibrate alert or light alert is not performed.

- If setting to "Keep receiving", when there is an incoming call, only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.
- If setting to "Start Ans. Machine", when there is an incoming call, answer machine is activated. Only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.
- If setting to "Fwd to Voice Mail", the received call is connected to voice mail. Note that the incoming screen is not displayed.

Private mail act. : Set the display or notification when a mail comes from a party that secret attribute is set or from a party whose mail is set to be sorted to folders that secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact" or when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

- If setting to "No alert/name/no.", mails are received but the receiving operation is not performed.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name", even if receiving a mail from a party that secret attribute is set, ticker, name or subject is displayed and the receiving operation is performed.

Incoming: privacy mode : Set if you are notified, with a changed battery icon type, of incoming calls or mail from a phonebook entry with secret attribute, or mail from a party whose mail is set to be filtered to a folder with secret attribute. Select a battery icon to display or select "OFF".

❖Setting operations for Other item privacy

You can set if authentication is required to use My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Other (Word, Excel, PowerPoint), Schedule, Notepad, i-αppli, Loc. history (GPS), Bookmark or Screen memo.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 2 2 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷 ▶ ●

- If "Authorized access" is selected, authentication is required to use a set function.
- When "Hide secrecy album", "Hide secrecy fldrs" or "Hide set schedule" is selected, albums, folders or schedule with secret attribute set are not displayed.

✔INFORMATION

- Also when Shortcut icons are set on stand-by display, data or folders with secret attribute are hidden.
- If Schedule is set to "Authorized access", watching 1Seg/recording reservation are also included.
- If i-motion is set to "Hide secrecy album", titles in playlist are not displayed when moving pictures/i-motion in album with secret attribute are saved in playlist.

◆Setting start/cancel method of Privacy mode

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 2 3 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Activate/Deactivate : Set the activation/cancellation method of Privacy mode.

- When setting to "No activation", Privacy mode is activated only when Auto start is set.
- When setting to "Key+Authorize", the operation of authentication screen for activation/cancellation is not displayed. When selecting this item, press 📷 to display the detailed explanation screen of this operation.

Auto start : Set the time period till Privacy mode automatically starts when doing nothing on stand-by display.

◆ Activating/Deactivating Privacy mode

❖When start/cancel method is "Hold L-cursor key"

1 [C] **(1 sec. or more)**

Canceling : [C] **(1 sec. or more)▶Authenticate**

❖When start/cancel method is "Key+Authorize"

1 [ ] **▶** [ ] **▶Authenticate▶** [●]

- When fingerprint authentication or Fingerprint access is set, [●] is not required.
- Authentication screen is not displayed. When authentication is failed, press [ ] and authenticate again. The power is not turned OFF even if authentication is failed 5 times in succession.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

✔INFORMATION

- When Auto start of Activation option is other than "OFF", Privacy mode is activated when the set time elapses on stand-by display.
- For Timed theme, when Privacy mode is set to "ON", even if Activate/Deactivate of Activation option is set to "No activation" and Auto start is set to "OFF", Privacy mode is activated.

❖When Privacy mode is activated

There are restrictions as follows depending on the contents set by the items of Privacy mode.

<Except i-αppli : "Authorized access">

- There is unavailable i-αppli (except when Mail & Logs is "Authorized access") or i-αppliDX.

<Call & Logs or Mail & Logs : Except "Show all">

- To display mail groups or sort mail, authentication is required.

<Call & Logs : Except "Show all">

- When sending mail with a still image shot during a call, even if a mail address of the party you are talking over a call is saved in the phonebook, that mail address is not entered as a destination.

<Call & Logs : "Authorized access" or "Hide set contact">

- When receiving i-αppli call, only a phone number is displayed but the other party's name saved in phonebook is not.

<Call & Logs : "Authorized access">

- When making a call by pressing the dial, only a phone number appears, but the name or image saved in phonebook does not. When sending a mail by directly entering mail address, a phone number or mail address is displayed. When receiving, receiving operation is performed according to the setting saved in phonebook.
- Missed calls or Recorded messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- A mail address appears, but the name saved in phonebook from mail or mail logs does not.
- Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed. Also, the located position is displayed in Loc. history, however, the requester's name is not displayed on the Loc. history details screen.
- Birthdays or contacts saved in Scheduler is not displayed.
- Persons saved to Custom menu cannot be selected. The icon changes to [ ] and a person's name appears as "＊＊＊".
- Calls cannot be made using Headset quick-dial or a Bluetooth device.

<Call & Logs : "Hide set contact">

- Arrival information for parties with secret attribute does not appear. Also, records in Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages, voice memo while talking, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list or Mail logs are hidden.
- When Private call act. is set to "Silent receive", if there is an incoming call from a party that secret attribute is set, Chaku-moji is not displayed on the reception screen. Note that the call is recorded in received calls.
- If Private call act. is set to "Silent receive" and Silent receive act. is set to "Start Ans. Machine", Record message starts even if it is not activated. However, if 4 messages are recorded in Record message, the setting in "Keep receiving" is used to receive calls.
- If setting Private call act. to "Silent receive" and setting Silent receive act. to "Start Ans. Machine", if Personal data lock is activated, Record message does not operate, and incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.

- Even if setting Silent receive act. to "Fwd to Voice Mail", if Voice Mail is not subscribed, incoming operation is performed as "Start Ans. Machine" setting in Silent receive act. Note that, when 4 items are already recorded in Recorded messages, incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.
- Unread messages, Missed calls or Recorded messages for parties with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Display of name, or images, moving pictures/i-motion and vibrator saved in a phonebook entry with secret attribute operates for incoming calls according to the settings of Privacy call act.
- When the requester ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry with secret attribute, the requester's name does not appear. Also, the located position is not displayed in Loc. history.
- In Scheduler, birthdays or contacts of a phonebook entry with secret attribute set are not displayed.
- On Custom menu, parties in phonebook entries with secret attribute do not appear.
- If secret attribute is set to a phonebook entry or group from which you call, you cannot use Headset key control or a Bluetooth device to dial.

<Mail & Logs : "Authorized access">

- Unread messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Authentication is required when searching mail using phonebook or scheduler, searching mail by quick search, displaying mail logs, downloading , upgrading or deleting Message i-αppli.

<Mail & Logs : "Hide secrecy fldrs">

- When a mail is sent or received to/from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute, it is not notified with arrival information or mail logs.
- Mail from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout or Unread messages.
- When a received mail compatible with Message i-αppli is saved in a folder with secret attribute, even if a Message i-αppli is downloaded, they are not automatically sorted to the folder for Message i-αppli.

<My Picture or i-motion : "Authorized access">

- When using data in My picture or i-motion in settings for various functions, an authentication is required. A screen appears indicating that an item for some functions set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

<My Picture : "Authorized access">

- Still images or moving pictures with frames cannot be shot.
- Images except those in "Deco-mail picture" and "Deco-mail pict" saved by default do not appear in Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pict list currently used for mail creation.

<Schedule : Except "Show all">

- Even if a schedule is set on Calendar in Info/calendar layout, a red mark does not appear.

<Schedule : "Authorized access">

- Schedule area is not display for Info/calendar layout. On the Calendar set in Info/calendar layout, the display by the color indicating that the day off is set by Days off setting or Day off of week setting for the schedule is reset to default display.
- Schedule reminder (including Notify start of 1Seg) does not sound even when the specified time comes. Note that the recording reservation of 1Seg operates.
- When Alarm auto power ON is set to "ON" with the power turned OFF, the power is not turned ON even when the specified date and time come.

<Schedule : "Hide set schedule">

- Schedule reminder for a schedule with secret attribute does not sound even when the specified date and time arrive.
- Schedules with secret attribute do not appear in the schedule area for Info/calendar layout and it is not included in the number in No. of items.

<Notepad : "Authorized access">

- List of notes and Note in Info/Calendar layout are not displayed.

<i-αppli : "Authorized access">

- Authentication is required to select a folder for Message i-αppli or to download i-αppli.
- When setting i-αppli on the stand-by display with Stand-by display, an authentication is required. A message appears indicating that an item set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

<Screen memo : "Authorized access">

- When overwriting a screen memo, an authentication is required.

✔INFORMATION

- For URL entries of i-mode and Full Browser, only entries made during Privacy mode are displayed, and the last URL entry during Privacy mode is displayed. Also, for URL enter history and Last URL, only entries of URL enter history and Last URL made during Privacy mode are displayed.
- If all items except Incoming: privacy mode and Auto start are "Show all", Privacy mode is not activated. If Privacy mode is already activated, it is canceled.
- Deleting all data or perform "Delete all items" with the following functions also deletes the data hidden in Privacy mode.
  - Redial/Dialed calls, Record message, phonebook
  - Mail*, Mail logs, Schedule, Voice memo

  * Deleting operations other than "One item" or "Selected items" also delete hidden mail.
- When Call & Logs of Privacy mode setting is changed from "Show all" or "Authorized access" to "Hide set contact" in Privacy mode, a massage appears indicating that Contact setting is to be made to reflect the privacy to mail.
- Depending on the settings of Privacy mode, when using mail or schedule (including 1Seg watching/recording reservation) from i-αppli in Privacy mode or save data in My Picture, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be performed.
- Once authentication is performed to use the function set to "Authorized access" in Privacy mode, no more authentication is required before returning to the stand-by display. The same situation occurs when using multiple functions set to "Authorized access".
  <Example> When sending an image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs and My Picture is "Authorized access"), authentication is not required to display phonebook on a mail creation screen because it is carried out when displaying My Picture.

◆ Canceling Privacy mode temporarily

On a list screen containing hidden data etc., you can temporarily cancel the privacy state to display hidden data.

- The temporary cancellation is active until the stand-by display reappears. You may not be able to perform temporary cancellation depending on the screen.

1 On the screen containing hidden data, CLR (1 sec. or more) ▶Authenticate

◆ Hiding mail whose senders/receivers with secret attribute set in phonebook <Contact setting>

When performing Contact setting after secret attribute of a phonebook entry is changed or mail received via data communications is saved to FOMA terminal, secret attribute can be set to sent or received mail and SMS in correspondence with phone numbers or mail addresses in phonebook with secret attribute.

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), mail or SMS with secret attribute does not appear.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 4 2 4 ▶Authenticate ▶"Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- If Contact setting is not performed after changing a phonebook entry secret attribute or editing a phonebook entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed/edited phonebook entry.
- Mail and SMS to have secret attribute are as follows.
  - Sent/Unsent mail or SMS whose destination address (TO, CC, BCC) has secret attribute set in a phonebook entry
  - Received mail or SMS sent from phonebook entries with secret attribute set
- While setting secret attribute, the terminal is in data transfer mode (same as out of service area).
- When returning to stand-by display after receiving an external phonebook entry with secret attribute or setting secret attribute for phonebook entry, a confirmation screen appears asking if you want to reflect the secret attribute of phonebook entry to mail. Select "Yes" to apply secret attribute. When Privacy mode is not activated, message for confirming Activation of Privacy mode appears.
- When using 2in1, secret attribute is set regardless of 2in1 mode and Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- Performing Contact setting in the following cases causes cancellation of secret attribute for the related mail and/or SMS.
  - When secret attribute of a phonebook entry is canceled
  - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is edited (for a phone number or mail address before editing)
  - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is deleted (including deletion of a phone number or mail address of phonebook entry)

Receive display option

Setting display contents for receiving call/mail

You can set items to be displayed (name, phone number, etc.) on the display when receiving a call or mail from a party saved in phonebook.

- For the displaying contents when receiving a call or mail in Privacy mode, the setting of Privacy mode precedes this setting.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 3 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

At call received : Set the screen display when receiving a voice call or videophone call.

- If "Name+Phone No." is set, the name and phone number are displayed when you receive a voice call or videophone call.

Ticker at mail rcvd : Set the display of reception result ticker.

- If setting to "Name+Subject", when receiving a mail, the name and subject are displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "Incoming notice", only the message indicating the mail reception is displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "No ticker", reception result ticker is not displayed.

✔INFORMATION

- Even if setting a name to be displayed in All lock, Omakase Lock or Personal data lock, only a phone number is displayed on the stand-by display. Also, even if setting the reception result ticker to be displayed in All lock or Personal data lock, the reception result ticker is not displayed.

Operation lock

Locking touch operation or keypad operation by hiding screen display

This function allows you to lock touch operations or side keys (except 🔑) by hiding screen display (screen off) when FOMA terminal is closed. You can also set the lock to be activated each time FOMA terminal is closed.

◆ Activating/Canceling Operation lock

1 🔑 **with the terminal closed**

Screen display goes off, and the lock is activated.

- Operation lock is activated also when screen display goes off by the screen off setting when FOMA terminal is closed.

Canceling lock : 🔑 **with the terminal closed**

- Display turns on, and the lock is canceled. The lock is also canceled by opening FOMA terminal.

✔INFORMATION

- Operation lock is activated by pressing 🔑 even in All lock, Omakase lock or Security lock.
- Screen display goes off (screen off) by pressing 🔑 when FOMA terminal is closed, but keys are not locked.
- You can activate a function using Search key shortcut even in Operation lock with FOMA terminal closed.

◆ Setting whether to lock each time FOMA terminal is closed <Close settings>

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 1 1 ▶ **Select Close settings field** ▶ 1 **or** 2

- When "Go OFF when closed" is set, Operation lock is activated each time FOMA terminal is closed.
- When a function for which Display light time is set to "Always on" is used, Operation lock is not activated by closing FOMA terminal even when Close settings of Operation lock is "Go OFF when closed".

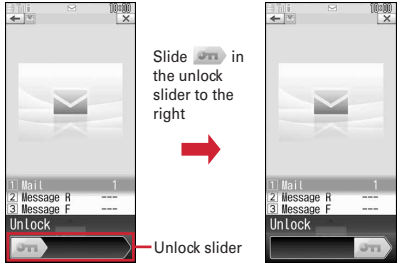
◆ Operating unlock slider

When the following functions operate in Operation lock, the unlock slider appears at the bottom of the display.

- The unlock slider appears when the following functions operate.
  - While receiving a voice call or videophone call
  - Updating Data Security Service automatically

- Receiving Area Mail
- Receiving mail or messages
- While sending mail by the setting of Auto-send
- While notifying increase in the number of Voice Mail
- When receiving location request of imadoco-search
- While receiving Fake call (when other than "Ring now" is set)
- While schedule reminder or countdown timer is sounding
- Receiving i-αppli call
- Receiving i-concier information

• When in the unlock slider is slid to the right, the unlock slider disappears and the lock on touch operations is canceled.



• Touch operations are enabled only on the unlock slider. For the horizontal display, slide upward.
• When mail or messages are received with both Security lock and Operation lock activated, slide in the unlock slider to the right to display the authentication screen.
• The unlock slider disappears when the following operations are performed.
  - When opening FOMA terminal or pressing
  - When screen display goes off by the screen off setting
  - When screen display goes on by the activation of functions

Security lock

Locking touch operation or keypad operation automatically

This function automatically locks touch operations or keypad operations when no operations are performed for the specified time after screen display goes off. Authentication is required to cancel the lock, so you can prevent unauthorized use by a third party.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Security lock, open FOMA terminal, enter the emergency call number on the terminal security code entry screen and press .

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is displayed with "✻".

• Security lock is not activated when FOMA terminal is in the following conditions.
  - Turning power ON/OFF*1
  - While calling*2, receiving, talking, disconnecting
  - While updating Data Security Service
  - While receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS
  - While receiving Area Mail
  - On a confirmation screen for receiving i-concier information
  - While starting alarm clock, schedule reminder, countdown timer
  - While activating Fake call
  - While playing MUSIC Player, or Music&Video Channel
  - While watching 1Seg, recording 1Seg (only recording while watching 1Seg), playing recorded 1Seg video, watching 1Seg from watching reservation, setting channels automatically, displaying a site, website or data broadcasting site from TV link
  - Sending/Receiving infrared communication (including when displaying INBOX), receiving iC transmission (including when displaying INBOX), sending/receiving data via Bluetooth communication or USB connection, receiving iC transmission when i-αppli is activated
  - Recording messages
  - Reactions to Location request of GPS

- Updating software
- Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC

*1 When the power is turned ON in Security lock, the terminal security code entry screen appears. If authentication is not performed, lock remains active.

*2 Includes a call using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) or a Bluetooth device.

- The following functions are available even in Security lock.
  - Turning power ON/OFF
  - Receiving a voice/videophone call, making an emergency call (110, 119, 118)
  - Updating Data Security Service automatically
  - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS
  - Receiving i-αppli call*1, starting i-αppli automatically
  - Receiving Area Mail, receiving i-concier information
  - Stopping sound of alarm clock, schedule reminder or countdown timer
  - Functions to pay money only by holding Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader, obtaining ToruCa from the IC card reader
  - Obtaining Music&Video Channel programs automatically
  - Starting record by 1Seg recording reservation, watching 1Seg from watching reservation
  - Starting message record for a received call or recording moving picture memo
  - Activating a function using Search key shortcut*2
  - Making a call by Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) or a Bluetooth device
  - Reactions to Location request of GPS
  - Updating software, updating pattern definitions automatically
  - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC

*1 A call can be received automatically, however, no receiving actions such as displaying the confirmation screen for responding or sounding the ring alert are performed.

*2 Functions except Check new message or Msg./voice memo can be activated.

◆ Setting Security lock

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 4 1 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

Security lock : Set whether to activate Security lock automatically.

- Even when "ON" is set, lock is not activated if the screen display does not go off.

Time to lock : Set time before activating Security lock after screen display goes off.

- The screen display goes off in any of the following cases: When the time specified in Light time-out elapses, Operation lock is activated, or ⚿ is pressed with FOMA terminal opened. When Display light time is set to "Always on", screen display does not go off by the setting of Light time-out.

Immobile sensor : When "ON" is set, Security lock is activated when screen display remains off, no operation is performed, or FOMA terminal is not moved*.

* Indicate that you do not walk with the terminal or no strong vibration is momentarily given to the terminal.

❖When Security lock is activated

Touch operations or keypad operations are locked.

- 🔒 appears at the top of the display.
- When Security lock is activated except on the stand-by display, a message "Security lock on. Authenticate to use phone" appears (the screen indicating Security lock is on).

◆ Canceling Security lock

1 ⚿ when the screen is off ▶ Authenticate

- The authentication screen is also displayed by opening FOMA terminal.
- When the display light is on, the authentication screen is displayed by touching the stand-by display.
- When the display light is on and FOMA terminal is opened, the authentication screen is displayed by pressing MENU, 1-9, 0, ✉, 📞.
- The authentication screen is also displayed by touching [Certif] on the screen indicating Security lock is on.
- The authentication screen is displayed by pressing keys except 📵 and ⚿ on the mail reception result screen or on the confirmation screen for receiving i-concier information or by touching the display with FOMA terminal opened.

✔INFORMATION

- Machi-chara does not appear in Security lock even if it is set.
- When Omakase Lock is activated, Security lock is activated after Omakase Lock is canceled.

Touch lock

Deterring only touch operation when making a call or talking on the phone

Touch lock is automatically activated when making a call or talking on the phone to prevent erroneous touch operations. If the display is touched in the touch lock, a message indicating the touch lock is ON appears.

- To cancel the touch lock, press [key] for 1 second or more. Each time you press [key] for 1 second or more, you can activate/cancel the touch lock.
- The touch lock is automatically canceled when making/receiving a call is ended.
- When screen display is off during a call, the touch lock is canceled by pressing [key].
- A message indicating that Touch lock is activated appears also when making a call by Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional), Bluetooth device or AT command from a PC via USB connection.

Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call can be set for each phone number saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, specifying Accept/Reject call for each phone number and Specified caller setting are required. The settings and the operations of Accept/Reject call are as follows.

Setting		Accept/Reject call for each phone number		
		Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Specified caller	Cancel settings	Accepted	Accepted	Accepted
	Reject call	Accepted	Rejected*	Accepted
	Accept call	Accepted	Rejected*	Rejected*

* The call from a specified phone number is disconnected with no ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- This function is activated only when the other party sends caller ID.
- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
- If Ring time is set to "0 Sec." for Voice Mail or Call forwarding, Voice Mail or Call forwarding is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
- Combination of Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous caller is recommended when used.

◆ Specifying phone numbers to accept/reject calls <Accept/Reject call>

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call is set for phone numbers saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 [key] ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ [MENU] [3] [4] [3] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a phone number ▶ [1]-[3]

- To accept/reject calls from specified phone numbers, activate settings of Specified caller in succession to the above step.
- If a phone number with Accept/Reject call set is edited or deleted, this setting is canceled. Set Accept/Reject call again for the new number.

◆ Enabling Accept/Reject call from specified numbers <Specified caller>

- This setting applies to all phone numbers with Accept/Reject call set.
- Reject call and Accept call are not enabled simultaneously.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 5 1 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ 1-3

✔INFORMATION

- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject call, the FOMA terminals response is according to the setting in Anonymous caller regardless of this setting.
- When Accept call is selected with no phonebook entry set to Accept call, a message appears indicating to reject all incoming calls. Select "Yes" to reject all incoming calls.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Anonymous caller

Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID

For each reason for hiding caller ID, you can set a receiving operation for incoming calls notifying no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming call image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this setting precedes the settings of Call alert (Incoming call).

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 2 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ 1-3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

(Incoming operation) : Set operations for incoming calls with no caller ID notification.

- When "Disable settings" is specified, the ring tone sounds according to setting.
- When setting to "Ring alert off", ring alert does not sound. Set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Melody", select a melody and set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Movie ringtone", select a moving picture/i-motion. When setting a moving picture/i-motion with sound and image, Show image is set to "Sync ring alert".
- When setting to "Music", select a music data and set an image in "Show image".
  Setting Music→P83

Show image : Set an image for incoming calls without caller ID.

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.

List images : When "Select image" is selected in Show image, select List images field and set an image.

✔INFORMATION

- When "Call Rejection" is set, incoming calls are rejected. Rejected calls are recorded as Missed call.
- When there is an incoming videophone call with no caller ID notification, the operations are performed only when "Call Rejection" is set. For other settings, ring tone and incoming image operate according to each ring tone or incoming call image setting.
- In the following cases, receiving action may use "着信音1 (Tone 1)" in "Melody", or Show image may be set to "Standard image". The settings can be changed.
  - When moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds is set as receiving action with Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images set as Show image
  - When ring alert is changed from moving picture/i-motion containing sounds and images to melody, music or moving picture/i-motion containing only sounds
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images is set as Show image with moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds or music set as receiving action
  - When Show image is changed from "Sync ring alert" to other than "Sync ring alert"
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Ring alert delay

Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook

- Effective to "One-ring phone scam".
- This option cannot be set when Unregistered caller is set to "ON".

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 1 5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Delayed ring alert : Set whether to enable Delayed ring alert.

Delay time (sec) : Set the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing. (1-99 seconds)

Missed call : Set whether to display a missed call that was terminated before the time set in Delay time in Received calls.

❖When Delayed ring alert is set

When an incoming voice or videophone call is received from a party not saved in phonebook or such call is received with no caller ID notification, the reception is notified only with screen display for the specified period of time. After the specified time elapses, normal ring alert action starts.

- Before the specified time elapses, ordinary call receiving operation such as answering an incoming call or replying it with Record message can be performed.
- In Personal data lock, this function operates even for an incoming call from a party saved in the phonebook.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

✔INFORMATION

- Regardless of this function, when the following functions or services are set, they precede.
  - Public mode, Record message
  - Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service
- When there is an incoming call from a party to be rejected according to the settings of Specified caller or Anonymous caller, those rejective operations precede this function.
- When Delay time has been set to the same seconds as that for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Unregistered caller

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook

- Combination of Caller ID Request Service is recommended when used.
- This function cannot be set when Personal data lock is activated or when Delayed ring alert of Ring alert delay is "ON".

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 5 2 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ 1 **or** 2

❖When Unregistered caller is set

The voice or videophone call from a caller who is not saved in phonebook is disconnected with no ring alert, and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls. It also applies to Callback.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Using Data Security Service

This service allows you to store phonebook, images, mail, ToruCa and schedule (hereinafter referred to as "saved data") saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center, and you can restore the saved data to FOMA terminal in case of misplacement, changing model, etc. You can also send broadcast notice to notify you changed your mail address. No packet communication fee is charged for the broadcast mail. With a PC (My docomo), more convenient uses are available.

- For details about Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Data Security Service is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).

◆Storing (updating or restoring) phonebook in Data Center

■ **Updating**

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 6 1

Operating from FOMA terminal phonebook : ○ ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ MENU 7 4

2 "Yes"▶Authenticate

- ● : Cancel save

3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

■ Restoring

- You can restore phonebook, set auto-update, etc. from Data Security Service site of i-mode.

  iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)*

  * When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かり/ｉコンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.

✔INFORMATION

- Entries saved in UIM phonebook cannot be saved in Data Center.
- If automatic update is performed after deleting entries of FOMA terminal phonebook, the entries of phonebook saved in Data Center are also deleted.
- If you deleted entries from FOMA terminal phonebook, you can download phonebook entries from Data Security Service site of i-mode.

  iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)*→お預かりデータ確認 (Check stored data)→Enter i-mode password→電話帳・ケータイヘダウンロード (Download to phonebook/mobile phone)→OK→Return to stand-by display

  * When you subscribe to i-concier, "お預かり/ｉコンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.
- When any other functions are running at the specified time of phonebook automatic update, automatic update is executed after returning to stand-by display. Automatic update is not executed when FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of FOMA service area or if UIM is not installed.
- When the automatic update of phonebook fails, no icon etc. appears on stand-by display. You can check update result using Synchronization log.
- The order by which phonebook groups are saved may not be returned to their original order by restoration.

❖Setting to send saved image in phonebook <Sync setting>

1 MENU [LifeKit] 6 3 ▶Select Contact image sending field▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 📷

◆Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center

You can save images, mail, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center.

- Up to 10 images or mails can be stored in one operation.
- i-mode mail attachments are deleted when the mail is saved. Note that, images or melodies in message text or Flash graphics in Decome-Anime message text (except files prohibited to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal) are not deleted.
- SMS report request cannot be stored.
- ToruCa (Details) containing images may be saved without details.

1 Select data to save

Saving mail : ✉ ▶ 1 or 4-5 ▶Select a folder▶ MENU 4 5 ▶Select a mail▶ 📷

- To save unsent mail, select a folder and press MENU 4 3, then select mail to save.

Saving an image : MENU [Data Box] 1 ▶Select a folder▶ MENU 5 6 ▶Select an image▶ 📷

Updating ToruCa : MENU [Osaifu-Keitai] 3 ▶ MENU 0

Updating Scheduler : ⏰ ▶ MENU 0 2

2 "Yes"▶Authenticate

- ● : Cancel save

3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

✔INFORMATION
- Saved data can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- Data Center cannot store data if they have Chinese characters in any of their titles, message texts, file names of images in the texts.
- An image whose size exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved or restored.
- Images in "Item" folder or "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture cannot be selected.
- For details about restoration, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Restored mail is protected except for the following cases.
  - When received mail or SMS saved in Data Center is unread
  - When the number of protected saved mail has reached the maximum
- When ToruCa is automatically updated from Data Center and viewed for the first time, a confirmation screen for saving ToruCa appears. Select "Yes" to save it, but the viewed ToruCa is deleted when "No" is selected.

◆ Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center from i-concier

- You can save phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal from i-concier menu to Data Center. Saved phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription. For details about notes and use, refer to "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 MENU **[i-concier]**

2 MENU ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"Update storage data"** ▶ **Select data** ▶ 📷

3 **"Yes"** ▶ **Authenticate**

- ● : Cancel saving

4 **Check the communication result**

- The communication result disappears in approximately 5 seconds.

◆ Checking used log <Synchronization log>

- Logs saved in Data Center can be checked.
- Up to 30 synchronization logs can be recorded. When the maximum is exceeded, older logs are overwritten first.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 6 2 ▶ **Select logs**

Reset

Resetting various functions

You can restore functions in red characters on the menu list to default settings. → P380

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 6 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select an item to reset** ▶ 📷 ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION
- When i-mode preferences is reset, i-Channel ticker does not appear on stand-by display. Displaying i-Channel list by pressing CLR on stand-by display starts receiving the latest information and displaying a ticker on stand-by display.
- When Set Pedometer/Activity monitor is reset, the counted number of steps is reset.

Delete all data

Deleting saved data all at once

Delete the saved or registered data, and restore the settings of each function to default.

- The protected data is also deleted.
- All settings or data are deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- The following data are not deleted. Also, default settings are not restored.
  - Data stored by default
  - Data saved, registered or set in FOMA terminal and the microSD card
  - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that data is saved
  - Data communication settings set from a PC
  - Network search mode
  - 3G/GSM setting

- i-αppli saved by default are as follows.
  - "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" is restored to the default when no data is saved in IC card.
  - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli other than "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" is deleted when no data is saved in IC card.
  - i-αppli other than Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is restored to the default, however, upgraded i-αppli is deleted. Note that, when "ロケーションレーダー (Vicinity viewer)" is upgraded, only saved data is deleted.
- When data is saved in IC card, IC owner is not reset.
- If mails of "Welcome!ドコモ動画 (DOCOMO moving picture)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメBEST5 (Recommendation)", saved in "Inbox" folder are deleted, they are saved again.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 7 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

Delete all data is performed while restarting.

✔INFORMATION

- When restarting after this function is performed, the same screen as that for the first activation of the terminal appears (拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting) appears only when the confirmation screen is closed without any settings).→P51
- When deleting a large size of data, restarting may take approximately 1 minute. Be careful not to turn the power OFF before deletion completes.
- Execution of this function disables automatic reception of Music&Video Channel programs. To enable automatic reception of programs again, perform Set program of Music&Video Channel.

Initializing remotely

Resetting data by remote control

With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to initialize data (memory in phone/ microSD card/UIM) in the target FOMA terminal.

■ **Inquiries**
DOCOMO business website
docomo Business Online
- From a PC
  http://www.docomo.biz

* May be unavailable for system maintenance.

◆ When data is reset by remote control

When remote initialization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting or remote initialization, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears.

- All touch operations and keypad operations are unavailable during remote initialization.
- One of the following initializations is performed.
  - Initializing data in FOMA terminal (deleting all data at once)
  - Initializing data in UIM (for UIM phonebook and SMS settings)
  - Quick format for data in microSD card

✔INFORMATION

- Even in Omakase Lock, the remote initialization precedes.
- This setting is retained even when resetting by remote control is completed.
  - All lock
  - Omakase Lock

Remote customization

Restricting each function by remote control

With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to remotely restrict or set ON/OFF to functions (camera function, lock setting, etc.) in the target FOMA terminal.

■ **Inquiries**
DOCOMO business website
docomo Business Online
- From a PC
  http://www.docomo.biz

* May be unavailable for system maintenance.

◆ When data is customized by remote control

When remote customization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears, and a completion message appears when the remote customization is complete. SET appears at the bottom of the display.

- If a function restricted or set to "ON" is accessed, the following message appears on stand-by display.
  - "This function is restricted by remote setting. Unable to use."
- The following functions may be restricted.
  - Music/Moving picture player (including i-motion, MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel, playing moving picture file or preview operation on Full Browser screen, downloading/playing music data)
  - 1Seg (including 1Seg watching, 1Seg recording, playing video recorded by 1Seg, displaying a still image, Notify start of 1Seg)
  - i-αppli, i-αppli auto start (setting to "Auto start")
  - Browser (including activation of i-mode or Full Browser, display of screen memo and PDF data)
  - Mail (including view of Outbox/Inbox/Unsent of i-mode mail, SMS and MessageR/F, creation of a new mail, mail logs, Mail settings)
  - Phonebook (including UIM phonebook)
  - Camera (including Still camera/Movie camera, Sound recorder)
  - Data exchange (including infrared remote control, infrared communication/iC transmission, Bluetooth communication, data communication using USB connection)
  - Data Box (including view of Data Box, usage of images)
  - microSD use (including moving/copying to microSD card, backing up data)
  - Moving/Copying data between the terminal and UIM
- The following functions may be set to "ON" regardless of the settings. The settings cannot be changed.
  - Security lock
  - IC card lock
  - Keypad dial lock
  - Unregistered caller
  - Fingerprint setting
  - Fingerprint access
  - Silent mode (setting to General silent mode)
  - GPS Request permit/deny

◆ Checking data customized remotely <Check remote setting>

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 2

Each function that is restricted or set to "ON" is listed.
- For the items customized remotely by an administrator, you cannot change the setting or initialize (initializing remotely) them from FOMA terminal.

✔INFORMATION
- Restricted function cannot be newly set to Shortcut icon.
- Even lock functions already set to "ON" may be changed to "OFF" by remote customization. When the remote customization is canceled, the previous setting is restored.
- When remote customization is activated while running other functions, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even in Omakase Lock, remote customization precedes.

- Remote customization is unavailable if FOMA terminal is misplaced with its power OFF, out of service area, or in Self mode.
- You can turn the power ON/OFF, however, remote customization is not canceled even if you turn the power OFF, perform Reset or Delete all data.
- While mail function is restricted, mail can be received automatically, but no receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.
- When phonebook is restricted, it operates as follows.
  - When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
  - Voice calls or videophone calls are received, display the caller's phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The settings you made are restored when canceled.
  - Even when the requester ID of GPS Location request matches with a phonebook entry, the requester's name is not displayed.
- If i-αppli is restricted, even when i-αppli call is received, it is discarded and not displayed in i-αppli call log.
- Even when Data Box is restricted, data subject to restriction can be downloaded and saved. When the memory space is not enough, delete data and save. Note that preview operation is unavailable on the saving screen.

Other security settings

In addition to those introduced in this chapter, you can use the following functions and services related to Security settings.

Function/Service	Aim	Page
IC card lock	Prevent unauthorized use of IC card function.	P258
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Reject "Nuisance Call" such as a prank call and malicious telemarketing call.	P356
Caller ID Display Request Service	Reject a call with no Caller ID.	P356
FirstPass	Perform secure and reliable data communication with the electronic authentication service. *Limited only for FirstPass compatible sites.	P163 P177
Software update	Update the software on FOMA terminal as necessary.	P421
Scanning function	Protect FOMA terminal from harmful data.	P425
Receive option	Receive only necessary mail from a large amount of mail.	P151
"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version"	
Change Mail Address		
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL) (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) (かんたんメール設定 (Simple mail setting)) (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders) (SMS Rejection Settings) (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail) (Confirm Settings)		
Suspend/Resume Mail		
Limit Mail Size		
ケータイお探しサービス (Keitai-Osagashi Service)		
imadocokantan search		

i-mode mail 128

Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail ..... Compose message 128
Creating and sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 130
Creating and sending Decome-Anime ..... Decome-Anime 132
Using mail templates 133
Attaching a file ..... Attachment (sending) 134
Saving i-mode mail, then sending later ..... Save i-mode mail 136
Composing i-mode mail quickly ..... Quick mail 137

Receiving and operating i-mode mail

When you receive i-mode mail ..... Mail auto receive 137
Receiving mail selectively ..... Receive option 138
Checking new i-mode mail ..... Check new message 138
Replying to i-mode mail ..... Replying to i-mode mail 139
Forwarding i-mode mail to other address ..... Forwarding i-mode mail 139
Downloading Receive option attachment file 140
Operating attachments 140

Operating mailbox

Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox 142

Useful functions of Mail

Using mail history ..... Mail logs 147
Useful functions of Mail 148

Configuring mail settings

Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal ..... Mail settings 149

Using message services

When MessageR/F is received ..... Receive MessageR/F 153
Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal ..... MessageR / MessageF 154

Using early warning "Area Mail"

Early warning "Area Mail" 155
When receiving early warning "Area Mail" ..... Receive Area Mail 156
Setting early warning "Area Mail" .... Early warning "Area Mail" setting 156

Using SMS

Composing and sending SMS ..... Composing and sending SMS 157
When SMS is received ..... Receive SMS 158
Checking for SMS ..... Check new SMS 159
Setting SMS ..... SMS settings 159
Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card) ..... SMS saved to UIM 159

i-mode mail

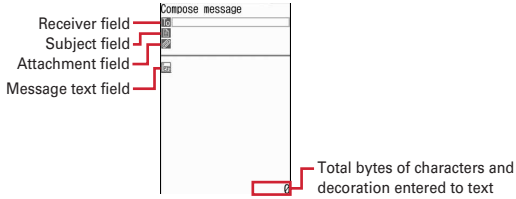
Only by subscribing to i-mode, i-mode mails can be exchanged not only with i-mode terminals but also via Internet.
In addition to message text, you can attach up to 10 files (images, moving picture files, etc.) of up to 2 Mbytes in total to a mail. Moreover, you can change a font color, size and background color of message text with Deco-mail, and you can also send expressive mails easily with Deco-mail pictogram.
In addition, Decome-Anime that has messages and images in a Flash graphic format is supported.

- For details of i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Compose message

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1 ✉ **(1 sec. or more)**



Mail creation screen

- When 2in1 is used, Address A is applied in A mode and Address B in B mode for a sender's address. Note that it cannot be changed.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, the following icons that indicate the sender's address appear at the bottom of the display.
  ?: Unspecified : Address B No display : Address A
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, press MENU 8 to switch Address A/Address B of the sender.

2 Select the receiver field

3 Select entry method ▶ Enter the address

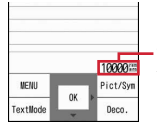
Entering mail address from mail logs : Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select mail logs to send mail
Entering by searching phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail
Entering mail address from mail group : "Mail group" ▶ Select a mail group
Entering directly : "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- To send mail to another i-mode terminal, "@docomo.ne.jp" can be omitted.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set depending on the entry method as follows.
  - Entering from mail logs : Set according to the information of Address A/Address B in the log.
  - Entering the address that is set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting by using phonebook or direct entry : Set Address A.
  - Entering the address that is set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting by using phonebook or direct entry : Set Address B.
  - Entering multiple addresses such as a mail group : Set according to the last receiver's address in Ph.book 2in1 setting.

4 Select the subject field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters)

- The whole title may not be received depending on the receiving terminal.

5 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text (up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters)



The remaining number of bytes that can be entered in the text

Pasting URL of location information : Select the message text field ▶ MENU 4 6

The next procedure→P268 "■Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- When location information is pasted, ▷ and location information URL are entered to the text. Entered URL and icons are counted as text characters.
- Location information is available only when the receiving device is an i-mode terminal.

Inserting signature : Select the message text field▶ MENU 4 7

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting which signature to insert appears.

Displaying mail to view : Select the message text field▶ MENU 7 1▶Select view source▶Select a folder▶Move the cursor to mail to view▶ 📷▶"OK"

- When "OK (Confirm once)" is selected, the instruction screen does not appear again.
- For a view mail while displaying, the following operations are available.
  - Slide up and down by touch operation (or slide quickly) : Scrolling up and down
  - Slide right or left quickly by touch operation/ MENU 7▶2 or 3 : Switching previous/next mail
  - MENU 7 4 : Changing view mail
  - MENU 7 1 : Canceling view mail
- The melody or sound effect of Flash graphics attached to a view mail or pasted to message text cannot be played.
- Each time you press MENU on the folder list or mail list, received/sent mail displays are changed.

6 📷

- To stop transmission, press ● on the connecting screen or press 📷 on the sending screen. Note that i-mode mail may be sent depending on the operation timing. Even if the i-mode mail is sent, it is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a receiver is different from the mode of sender's mail address that is set in Ph.book 2in1 setting, a confirmation screen for sending mail appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's mail address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.
- When you are out of service area, a message indicating out of service area appears. If you press the key other than ⏻, when the number of Auto-send mails is fewer than 5, the setting confirmation screen for Auto-send appears. When "Yes" is selected, i-mode mail with Auto-send set is saved in "Unsent" folder.

✔INFORMATION

- When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- When Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is used, the mail is sent as Deco-mail.
- Some pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the other party's i-mode terminal model.
- When i-mode mail containing pictograms is sent to other company's mobile phones, the pictograms are automatically converted to similar pictograms on the receiver's terminal. Note that the pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal depending on the models and/or functions of the receiver's terminals and they may be converted to characters or ■ if there are no applicable pictograms.
- Under some radio wave conditions, characters are not displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even when i-mode mail is sent correctly, an error message "Transmission failed." may appear depending on the signal quality.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- Error messages for address unknown etc. may not be received when mails are sent to addresses other than DOCOMO.
- When the memory space of Outbox/Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, i-mode mail cannot be created or sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- Mail that includes Chinese is different in data amount from the one that includes kanji, katakana, alphameric, symbol and pictogram.
- When a mail exceeding 10,000 bytes in process of creation is automatically saved due to other functions being started etc., some part of it may not be saved.

◆ Adding address

i-mode mail can be sent to up to 5 addresses at the same time (Simultaneous sending).

- There are 3 address types of receivers as follows.
  - To : Main receiver
  - Cc : Other receiver(s) than the main receiver to inform the contents of the mail
  - Bcc : The receiver(s) to inform the contents of the mail without making the mail address displayed on other receivers' terminals
- When no receiver addresses are entered in To, the mail cannot be sent.
- The mail addresses entered in address fields of To and Cc are displayed on the receiving side. However, they may not be displayed depending on receivers' terminals, devices, mail software, etc.

1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the receiver field ▶ [✉] ▶ Select an entry method

- When selecting "Mail group", select mail group.

Changing address type : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the address ▶ [MENU] [7] [3] ▶ Select an address type

Deleting an added address : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the address ▶ [MENU] [7] [2] ▶ "Yes"

2 Select an address type ▶ Enter an address

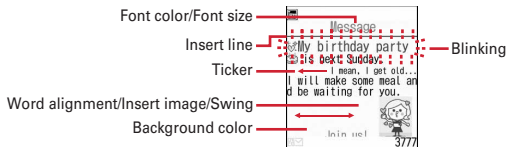
Entering to Receiver→P128 Step 3 in "Composing and sending i-mode mail"

Deco-mail

Creating and sending Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by changing the text font size or background color, inserting a still image shot, Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram stored by default in i-mode mail text.

■ Decoration example

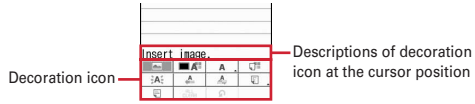


- Deco-mail can be created in two ways : entering decorated characters (→P130) and decorating entered characters (→P131).
- Deco-mail of 100 Kbytes or less in size can be sent. Images up to 20 types or up to 90 Kbytes in total can be attached to the text out of 100 Kbytes. Note that Flash graphics are up to 2 items.
- Deco-mail received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

◆ Entering characters after specifying decoration

1 Select the message text field on the mail creation screen

2 [✉] ▶ Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate



Operating procedure of decoration→P131 "Operating procedures of decoration icons"

- When a decoration icon such as a blink, ticker, swing icon is selected, select it again to cancel the selection.
- When setting multiple decorations, select the decoration icons successively. Ticker, Swing and Word alignment cannot be set at the same time.

Canceling the decoration at the cursor position and entering characters : Move the cursor to the character entry position ▶ [✉] [📷] ▶ Enter characters

- Decorations that can be canceled are Font color, Font size, Blink, Ticker, Swing and Word alignment.

Changing decorations : [✉] [iR] ▶ Select the start position

The next procedure→P131 Step 2 and the following steps in "Specifying decoration after entering characters"

3 [MENU] [0] ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the decoration set to the text and the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter on the lower-right screen.

- When Flash graphics with sound effect is attached to the text, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

4 [●] ▶ [●] ▶ Edit a mail ▶ [📷]

Editing mail→P128

❖Operating procedures of decoration icons

Function	Operating procedure/supplement
Insert image	①**Select the insertion source** • If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×960) in size can be shot and inserted. • By pressing MENU instead of , you can display Deco-mail picture list. • Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also in the procedure for entering pictogram.→P343 ②**Select a folder▶Select an image▶**
Font color	**Select a Font color▶Enter characters** • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color". • The pictogram font colors can also be changed (except for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D)). • Can be restored to the original color by specifying the range.→P131
Font size	**Select a Font size▶Enter characters** • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be changed.
Background color	**Select Background color▶** • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color".
Blink	**Enter characters** • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be set.
Ticker	**Enter characters** • Enter characters between and .
Swing	**Enter characters** • Enter characters between and .
Word alignment	**Selecting word alignment▶Enter characters** • If characters are already entered at the cursor position, a line feed occurs.
Insert line	 Lines (ruled lines) are inserted in the color specified with (Font color).
Reset all	 All decorations are canceled.
Undo	 Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.

◆Specifying decoration after entering characters

• Operating procedure of Insert line, Insert image and Background color and checking/canceling method of decoration→P130 "Entering characters after specifying decoration"

1 Select the message text field on the mail creation screen▶Move the cursor to the start point of decoration▶ (1 sec. or more)

2 Select the end point

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : MENU▶●
Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : ▶●
Selecting the whole sentence :

3 Select the decoration

Changing font color : 1**▶Select a font color**
• The color of separating line (ruled line) is also changed.
• To change the color back to the default, select "Default".
Changing font size : 2**▶**1**-**3
Setting/Canceling blinking of characters : 3**▶**1 **or** 2
Setting/Canceling Show ticker of characters or images : 4**▶**1 **or** 2
Setting/Canceling Swing display of characters or images : 5**▶**1 **or** 2
Changing the display position of characters or images : 6**▶**1**-**3
Canceling all decorations in a selected range : 7
Copying : 8
Cutting : 9
Returning to the previous state : 0
• Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.
Press MENU to continue specifying decorations.

4 ●▶●▶Edit a mail▶

Editing mail→P128

✔INFORMATION

- Even when the decorated characters are deleted, only decoration data remains and the number of characters permitted may be fewer. Cancel decoration first and then delete them. To delete characters including decoration data after the cursor position, press CLR for 1 second or more.
- On the mail creation screen or the preview screen, the operation such as blink, ticker, swing and animation is automatically stopped after a certain period.
- When a view mail including Flash graphic is displayed, pressing MENU to display Deco-mail picture list for selecting decoration icon, the Flash graphic of the view mail is stopped.
- When mails are exchanged with other than FOMA terminal supporting Deco-mail such as a PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

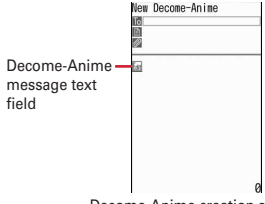
Decome-Anime

Creating and sending Decome-Anime

Decome-Anime is an expressive mail service using Decome-Anime template, and using Flash graphics with messages or images inserted.
Default mail templates or those purchased from IP (Information Provider) can be used.

- Decome-Anime text of 90 Kbytes or less can be sent.
- Decome-Anime received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

1 ✉ 3



Decome-Anime creation screen

- Icon definitions→P128 Step 1 in "Composing and sending i-mode mail"

2 Select Decome-Anime message text field

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : File restricted/unrestricted
  Icon definitions except the above→P133 Step 1 in "Reading Deco-mail template for creating a mail"
- Each time you press i-mode, thumbnail display and list display switch.
- Go to Step 4 if you already set Decome-Anime template.

3 Move the cursor to Decome-Anime template ▶ ●

The list of components of text or image that can be edited are displayed.

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Text component : Image component
- ✉ : Display preview
  For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

4 Select text component ▶ Enter characters

- The number of characters, number of lines, or position that can be entered differ by Decome-Anime template.
- Entering of Deco-mail pict (Pictogram D), decorating such as changing of the font size or color and inserting of signature are unavailable.

Editing image component :

- The image insert position differs depending on Decome-Anime template.
- Even an image smaller than a size of number of characters (bytes) that can be entered may not be inserted.
- When inserting an image, the number of characters (bytes) that can be entered becomes smaller than the inserted image.

① Select an image component ▶ Select the insertion source

- If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×960) in size can be shot and inserted.

② Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Reading other Decome-Anime template : MENU 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Move the cursor to Decome-Anime template ▶ ●

Deleting an image : Move the cursor to the image component ▶ MENU 2 ▶ "Yes"

Restoring to default : Move the cursor to a component ▶ MENU 3 ▶ "Yes"

Displaying mail to view : MENU 4 1 ▶ **Select view source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to mail to view ▶** [📷] **▶ "OK"**

- When "OK (Confirm once)" is selected, the instruction screen does not appear again.
- For a view mail while displaying, the following operations are available.
  - Slide up and down by touch operation (or slide quickly) : Scrolling up and down
  - Slide right or left quickly by touch operation/ MENU 4 ▶ 2 or 3 : Switching previous/next mail
  - MENU 4 4 : Changing view mail
  - MENU 4 1 : Canceling view mail
- The melody or sound effect of Flash graphics attached to a view mail or pasted to message text cannot be played.
- While displaying a view mail including Flash graphics, moving the cursor to the graphic element of Flash graphics stops the Flash graphics of the view mail.
- Each time you press MENU on the folder list or mail list, received/sent mail displays are changed.

5 [📷] **▶ Edit the mail ▶** [📷]

Editing mail→P128

✔INFORMATION

- When inserting an image or text, some extra bytes are added after the composition. Therefore, Decome-Anime may not be previewed or sent due to being oversized.
- The message text of Decome-Anime that failed to be sent and is saved in "Unsent" folder cannot be re-edited.

Using mail templates

A mail template is a predefined form of i-mode mail. Deco-mail/Decome-Anime can be created easily by modifying this form.
In addition to the mail templates stored by default, mail templates created by yourself or downloaded from sites are available.

- Checking memory space→P302

◆ Reading Deco-mail template for creating mail

1 On the mail creation screen, MENU 6 **▶** 1 **or** 2

- If the text already exceeds 10,000 bytes, "Load & Insert" cannot be selected.
- When selecting "Load & Overwrite", a confirmation screen for discarding entered contents to load appears.
- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Mail template unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
  : Mail template that an incorrect image is used
  : Find Deco-mail template from i-mode site→P134
  Icon definitions except the above→P143 "Mail list screen"
- Each time you press [i-αppli], thumbnail display and list display switch.

2 Move the cursor to a mail template ▶ [📷]

- When selecting "Load & Insert" in Step 1, if there are characters already entered in the text, select the insert position and select "Yes".

3 Edit the mail ▶ [📷]

Editing mail→P128, 130

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from submenu of message text entry screen : MENU 2

◆ Viewing mail template for creating mail

1 [✉] [✂] **▶** 1 **or** 2 **▶ Select a mail template**

2 [📷] **▶ Edit the mail ▶** [📷]

Editing mail→P128, 130, 132

Changing detail information of Deco-mail template : MENU 7 2

The next procedure→P134 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving mail template"

Changing detail information of Decome-Anime template :

MENU 4 2 **▶ Enter the display name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶** [📷]

◆ Creating and saving mail template

You can save created or sent/received i-mode mail as a Deco-mail template.

- Saving as a Deco-mail template is unavailable in the following cases.
  - When total size of text and decoration data exceeds 10,000 bytes
  - When the total size of text, decoration and attached file exceeds 100 Kbytes
- Sent/Received i-mode mail without text cannot be saved. Address and title are not saved.
- You cannot use this function for Decome-Anime.

1 On the mail creation screen, MENU 6 3 ▶ "Yes"

Saving sent/received i-mode mail : On the mail details screen, MENU 4 4

2 Set required items

Display name : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.
File name : Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, and ".", "-", "_" can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

3 📷 or ✉

It is saved to "Decome" of Template.

- To overwrite and save, select an item ▶ "Yes".

✔INFORMATION

- If attempting to save a Deco-mail template containing an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image may be deleted.

◆ Downloading a mail template

- The maximum savable size per template is as follows.
  - Deco-mail template : 200 Kbytes
  - Decome-Anime template : 100 Kbytes

1 Display a site ▶ Select a mail template

- 📷 while downloading : Stopping download

2 "Save" ▶ Set required items

Display name : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.
File name (only for Deco-mail template) : Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, and ".", "-", "_" can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

Displaying : "Preview"
Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"
Displaying detail info (only for Decome-Anime template) : "Detail info"
Detail information→P300

3 📷 or ✉

Deco-mail templates are saved to "Decome" in Template, and Decome-Anime templates to "Decome-Anime".

- To overwrite and save, select an item ▶ "Yes".
- A confirmation screen for creating mail appears after saving.
- When an unavailable file is attached, a confirmation screen for deleting the attachment file before saving appears.

◆ Deleting mail template

1 ✉ ✂ ▶ 1 or 2

2 Move the cursor to mail template ▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail template.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 📷. To delete all items, authentication is required.

✔INFORMATION

- When a mail template stored by default is deleted (except attached melody), it can be downloaded from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.→P301

Attachment (sending)

Attaching a file

You can send i-mode mail with files attached.

- Up to 10 files of up to 2 Mbytes in total can be attached.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail and outputting from FOMA terminal (except files with "File restricted" set for File restriction with your terminal or data of "Data transfer" folder) or files unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be attached.

• File types that can be attached are as follows.

File type	Condition of attachment
Image[*1]	• Only JPEG/GIF format images, GIF animation and Flash graphics can be attached (except created animation)
Moving picture/ i-motion/ Sound[*2]	• Only MP4 format moving picture/i-motion can be attached (except ASF format or partially downloaded moving picture/i-motion) • Moving picture/i-motion with replay restriction set cannot be attached[*3]
Melody	• Only melodies in SMF or MFi format can be attached
ToruCa[*4]	• ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be attached • Attachment is unavailable depending on settings of IP (Information Provider)
PDF data	• PDF data partially downloaded/failed in downloading cannot be attached
Phonebook	—
Schedule	—
Bookmark	—
Other	• Word, Excel or PowerPoint file can be attached

*1 When sending a JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to a 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, it is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that the receiving terminal supports. To an i-mode terminal with mova service, only one JPEG image can be sent. Note that i-mode mail with URL for image viewing is received by the terminal of the receiver's side.

*2 Moving picture/i-motion with images may be converted to continuous still images and played depending on receiver's terminals or devices.
When sending to 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, a moving picture recorded in Compatible mode is recommended.→P199
When the receiver's terminal is 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, moving pictures/i-motion are saved in i-motion mail Center and the terminal receives i-mode mail containing URL for i-motion viewing.
Sound recorded with the Sound recorder or Record voice is attached as moving picture/i-motion containing only sound. i-mode terminals with mova service cannot receive moving pictures/i-motion containing only sound.

*3 Files may not be attached to the mail even when replay restriction is not set.

*4 ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.

1 On the mail creation screen, select the attachment field ▶ Select a file to attach

The selected file is displayed in the attachment field of the mail creation screen.
- If microSD card is installed, a screen appears asking to select an attachment source from "Phone memory" or "microSD".

Selecting an image ("1 Image")
- For a JPEG image with size larger than 240×320 (or vice versa), a conversion to QVGA size confirmation screen appears.
- For an image with location information, a confirmation screen for pasting location URL to the message text appears. Select "No" to attach only the image.
- For a JPEG format image exceeding 2 Mbytes in size, it is converted to a size available for mail attachment.
- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a still image.→P188

Selecting a moving picture/i-motion ("2 i-motion")
- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a moving pictue.→P193

Selecting "3 Melody"
- Melodies are saved in "Mail attach melody" folder by default.→P394

Selecting "4 ToruCa"
- When ToruCa (Details) can be attached, a confirmation screen for attaching ToruCa with the detail information to mail appears.
- When ToruCa (Details) cannot be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking if you attach ToruCa to mail without the detail information.

Selecting "6 Schedule"
- When a schedule in i-schedule is selected, it is attached as an ordinary schedule.

Selecting bookmark ("7 Bookmark")
- When "Phone memory" is selected as an attachment source, each time [📷] is pressed on a bookmark list, the bookmark list switches i-mode and Full Browser.

Selecting ("9 Record voice")
- Sound data can be recorded and attached to mails.
Method of recording sound→P193 Step 2 and the following steps in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

2 Edit the mail▶[📷]

Editing mail→P128, 130, 132

✔INFORMATION

- Attachments not supported by the receivers' terminals may be deleted or may not be displayed/played correctly.
- Sending an attachment file of a certain size may take time.

◆ Changing/Removing attachments

<Example> Canceling

1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the attachment field

2 [✉]▶"Yes"

Changing : [iα]▶Retry attaching files→P134

Save i-mode mail

Saving i-mode mail, then sending later

◆ Saving i-mode mail

1 [MENU][3] on the mail creation screen

i-mode mail is saved in "Unsent" folder, and a confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icons appears.

- When saving Decome-Anime whose message text was edited, a confirmation screen for saving appears. Note that, if saved, the message text cannot be edited.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.

◆ Automatically sending mail from a place where radio waves reach <Auto-send>

You can set so that i-mode mail created out of service area is automatically sent when moving to a place where radio waves reach.

- Up to 5 mails can be registered.

1 On the mail creation screen, [MENU][2]

Mail is saved in "Unsent" folder and 📨 appears at the top of the display.

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a receiver is different from the mode of sender's address that is set in the phonebook 2in1, a confirmation screen for sending mail appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.

❖When moving to a place where radio waves reach

Automatically sent. During automatic sending, 📨 blinks. When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox and 📨 disappears.

- When transmission is interrupted or fails, 📨 changes to 📨 and blinks, and the i-mode mail remains in "Unsent" folder.
  Move the cursor to i-mode mail failed in automatic sending in Unsent messages and press [MENU][5][2] to display the reason for unsending.
- 📨 disappears after all mail that failed to Auto-send are edited, canceled or deleted.

✔INFORMATION

- When failed to be sent because of out of service area, it is resent up to 2 times.
- A mail is not automatically sent while using mail functions such as creating a mail or editing signature or while using Full Browser.

❖Canceling Auto-send setting

1 [✉][4]▶Select folder▶Move the cursor to i-mode mail▶[📷]▶"Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- Auto-send setting is canceled also in the following cases.
  - When the mail creation screen appears by selecting unsent Auto-send mail
  - When an unsent Auto-send mail is moved to a folder for Message i-αppli
  - When UIM is replaced
  - When Host number or Host address is changed in Host selection

◆Editing sent/unsent mail

1 ✉ ▶ 4 or 5 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select a mail**

Re-editing the sent mail : Move the cursor to mail ▶ 📷

3 **Edit the mail ▶ 📷**

Editing mail→P128, 130

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the sender's address of sent/unsent mail.

Quick mail

Composing i-mode mail quickly

i-mode mail and SMS can be sent by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in a phonebook, the destination is the first mail address for i-mode mail and the first phone number for SMS.

<Example> Sending an i-mode mail in phonebook number 23

1 **Phonebook number (2 3) ▶ ✉**

i-mode mail creation screen appears with the mail address saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

Creating SMS : Phonebook number ▶ ✉ (1 sec. or more)

SMS creation screen appears with the phone number saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

Mail auto receive

When you receive i-mode mail

1 **Receive an i-mode mail**

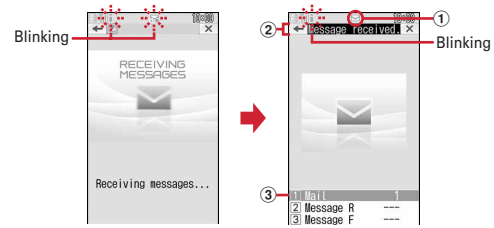
📶 and ✉ blink and "Receiving messages…" appears.

Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- ● : Cancel receiving

The mail may be received depending on the radio wave conditions.



Receiving screen　Reception result screen

① Icon

✉ : Unread i-mode mail exists　✉S : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist

② Reception result ticker

③ Number of received i-mode mails

- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

When reception has failed

"×" appears on the right side of "Mail" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform i-mode inquiry.

✔INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- Up to 100 Kbytes of i-mode mail including its attachments can be received automatically. Attachments larger than 100 Kbytes can be downloaded manually from i-mode Center.→P140
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically. A large number of existing mails may be deleted depending on the size of the received mail.

- In the following cases, received i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode Center.
  - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
  - During a videophone call
  - Accessing Data Center
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During FirstPass center connection
  - When reception has failed
  - When receiving SMS
  - When Receive option setting is "ON"
  - During infrared communication/iC transmission
  - When storage area is filled with mail unread or protected
- If there is not enough memory space available because memory is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of i-mode mail is stopped, and appear on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If there are remaining i-mode mail in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there is i-mode mail. When exceeding the savable number in the i-mode Center, the icon changes to or .

◆ Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

1 On the reception result screen, [1]

- MessageR/F can be displayed by pressing [2] or [3].

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Playing Flash graphics with a melody or sound effect→P152
Reading received mail details screen→P144

Receive option

Receiving mail selectively

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode Center to select if you receive or delete i-mode mail without receiving it.
When mail arrives at i-mode Center, "You have mail at i-mode center." appears on the display.

- To use Receive option, Receive option setting must be set to "ON" in advance.

1 [✉] [8]

You are connected to the i-mode Center and can view the list of i-mode mail stored.

- For details about i-mode Center operations, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

✔INFORMATION

- When you touch screen or press keys except [ｷ], [ﾀ], [ﾓ] or [ﾒ], "You have mail at i-mode center" disappears.
- A message does not appear in All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock and Security lock.
- Perform Check new message to receive all the mail. Not to receive mail, uncheck "Mail" in the list of Check msg. option.
- Area Mail, SMS and MessageR/F are received automatically even when Receive option setting set to "ON".

Check new message

Checking new i-mode mail

You can make inquiry for any i-mode mail delivered while you were out of service area or the power was turned OFF.
When you set MessageR/F to be retrieved in Check msg. option, MessageR/F is retrieved at the same time.

- Under some radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new message.

1 [✉] [✉]

- When Check new message is being performed, the light turns on in "Rainbow". When there are no newly received i-mode mail after i-mode message, the light blinks in red. When i-mode message failed, the light blinks in yellow.

Replying to i-mode mail

You can reply to the received i-mode mail or SMS.

- You may not reply to some received mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS sent from "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support".

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to mail** ▶ [MENU] [1] ▶ [1]-[5]

Reply format screen appears.

- For a mail sent to multiple addresses, the selection screen of the addresses to reply to appears.
- Reply format screen does not appear in the following cases. Go to Step 3.
  - When Activate quick reply is "OFF"
  - When no quick reply format is registered
  - When "Use Decome-Anime" or "Vreply Decome-Anime" is selected
  - When replying to SMS
- You can also create the reply mail by pressing [📷] in the received mail list.

2 [1]

- For "View reply", a confirmation screen for operations of viewing mail area appears.

Using Quick reply : [2]-[6].
Selected quick reply format is inserted.

3 **Edit the mail** ▶ [📷]

Editing mail→P128, 130, 132
The sender of the received mail is entered in the receiver field, the subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "REX:" (X is the number of replies except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail).

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B of received mail.
- The status icon of received mail changes from ✉ to ↩, or from 📩 to ↩.

✔INFORMATION

- You can set quote method and quick reply that is applied when you press [📷] on the received mail list or details screen.→P151
- Reply with quote is unavailable for Decome-Anime.
- Only message text, decoration and images (File restriction is not set) attached to the text are quoted by Reply with quote. When the total size of images in text exceeds 20 types and 90 Kbytes after quotation, a screen showing the deletion of excessive images appears.
- If a subject of reply mail exceeds the number of characters that can be entered, exceeded characters are deleted from the end of the subject, and a message indicating the deletion appears.

Forwarding i-mode mail to other address

You can forward received i-mode mail or SMS to other addresses. i-mode mail is forwarded as i-mode mail and SMS is as SMS.

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to mail** ▶ [MENU] [1] [6]

The subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "FWX:" (X is the number of forwarding except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail) and the text of the received mail is entered in the message text field.

- When receiving a mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. Note that Receive option attachment files that have not yet been downloaded or are being downloaded is not set.

2 **Edit the mail** ▶ [📷]

Editing mail→P128, 130

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B of received mail.
- The status icon of received mail changes from ✉ to →, or from 📩 to ↪.

✔INFORMATION

- When the link item that can activate the melody or i-αppli attached in the received message text, it is not set to forwarded mail and is not quoted as characters.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarded mail. When forwarding the received mail from microSD card, all attached files are canceled.
- When forwarding Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be edited. And, Decome-Anime that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal is canceled, and the mail creation screen appears.
- When the images in received message text to be forwarded exceeds 90 Kbytes, a screen showing the deleting of excessive images appears.

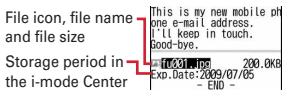
- If a subject of forward mail exceeds the number of characters that can be entered, exceeded characters are deleted from the end of the subject, and a message indicating the deletion appears.

Downloading Receive option attachment file

You can download the receive option attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, attached to the received i-mode mail.

- When the total size of text and attachment file exceeds 100 Kbytes, a part or all of attachment file is received as a Receive option attachment file.
- When there is an attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, its storage period in the i-mode Center is displayed on the received message details screen.
- The maximum size of each file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select i-mode mail with an attachment file**



Icon definitions→P144 "Mail details screen"

2 **Select a file name**

- If you press [📷] and select "No" while downloading, downloading is terminated and the downloaded part is saved.
- Operations after downloading are the same as those of an attachment file automatically received.→P140

✔INFORMATION

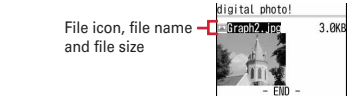
- When the memory space is not enough for the receive option attachment file to be downloaded, downloading is unavailable. Try to download again after deleting i-mode mail attachments already received, viewing unread mail, canceling protection, deleting unnecessary mail, etc.
- Read mails may be deleted when downloading a Receive option attachment file of a certain size.
- When downloading interrupts because of out of service area etc., resuming confirmation screen appears. When "No" is selected, the downloaded part is saved and ✚ appears as attachment icon.

Operating attachments

You can display/save the file attached to an i-mode mail.

- Melody or ToruCa (Details) that is larger than 100 Kbytes, ToruCa that is larger than 1 Kbytes, and Flash graphic that is lager than 500 Kbytes can be saved only on microSD card, however, they cannot be displayed/played.
- Multiple phonebook entries, Schedule and Bookmark still attached to i-mode mail cannot be displayed. Check the contents after saving.

<Example> i-mode mail with an image attached



Icon definitions→P144 "Mail details screen"

◆ Displaying/Playing

- The files not compatible with this FOMA terminal cannot be displayed or played.

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an i-mode mail**

2 **Select the file name**

- For an image, display/not display is switched.
- If there is detail information in ToruCa, Select "詳細 (Details)" button to download it from a site (ToruCa (Details)).

✔INFORMATION

- An image that the width is larger than the display size is displayed being scaled down.
- Select the file name of the image to display the image attached to Deco-mail.
- Displaying/Playing is not available for some receiver's terminal or the received file.
- If the character in the text is mistakenly recognized as the melody data, move the cursor to the melody and press [MENU] [7] [5] to display it as characters. Press [●] on the first line of the data-displayed melody to redisplay the melody.
- The same operation is available from sent mail details screen.
- Playing i-motion attached to a mail on a PC requires i-motion compatible software. For details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

◆ Saving

• Savable file types and saving destinations are as follows.

File type	Save to	
	FOMA terminal	microSD card
Image	Folder of My Picture	Any of "My Picture", "Other images" or "Deco-mail pict"
i-motion	"i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie	For no file restriction, "Movie" folder (for i-motion with voice only, "Other movie" folder) For file restriction, a folder selected in "Movie" folder
Melody	"i-mode" folder of Melody	"Melody" folder
ToruCa	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content	"ToruCa" folder
PDF data	"i-mode" folder of My Document	"My Document" folder
Phonebook entry	FOMA terminal phonebook	"Phonebook" folder
Schedule data	Scheduler	"Schedule" folder
Bookmark data	"Bookmark" folder of Bookmark	"Bookmark" folder
Word, Excel, PowerPoint file	Folder of Other	"Other" folder
Various files*	—	"Other" folder

* File not supported by this FOMA terminal. Only saving and transfer to microSD card are available. Note that the file name may be changed while saving.

<Example> Saving ToruCa

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an i-mode mail**

2 **Move the cursor to a file name** ▶ [MENU] [7] [3]

Saving an image : [MENU] [6] ▶ [1]-[3]

• To save 1 item, select an image. To save selected items, select them ▶ [📷] ▶ "Yes". To save all items, "Yes" is required.

The next procedure→P171 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

Saving melody : Move the cursor to the melody ▶ [MENU] [7] [2]

The next procedure→P172 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

3 [1] **or** [2]

• For some ToruCa, only one of the saving destinations can be selected.

Saving an image : The next procedure→P171 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

Saving i-motion : The next procedure→P181 Step 3 in "Downloading i-motion/movie"

Saving phonebook entries, schedule data and bookmark data : [📷]

• Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered to edit the title of bookmark data.
• If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.
• If pressing [i-α] when microSD card is installed, it is saved to microSD card.
• For multiple numbers of data, a saving destination selection screen appears.

Saving PDF data, Word, Excel and PowerPoint files : [📷]

• When changing the display name, up to 36 characters can be entered.
• When there are multiple folders in Other to save Word, Excel, PowerPoint files, a screen for selecting a save destination folder appears. The files are saved to a selected folder.
• When "microSD" appears in the guide area, press [i-α] to switch the saving destination and press [📷] to save to microSD card.

Saving other files : "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

• Images larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal. Also, images in some JPEG types cannot be saved.
• Some ToruCa can be saved only once.
• The file can be saved in the same way from sent mail details screen.

◆ Checking file name

1 ✉ 1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an i-mode mail**

2 **Move the cursor to a file name** ▶ MENU 7 2

Checking the title of the attached melody : Move the cursor to the melody ▶ MENU 7 5

Checking the title of the attached melody in message text : Move the cursor to the melody ▶ MENU 7 4

✔INFORMATION

- Operation to check the file name from the sent mail details screen : Move the cursor to the file name→MENU 7 →"Check title" or "Display file name"

◆ Deleting

- An image or melody attached in the message text, or links to activate i-αppli cannot be deleted.

1 ✉ 1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an i-mode mail**

2 **Move the cursor to the file name** ▶ MENU 7 ▶ 4 **or** 5 ▶ **"Yes"**

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in gray and cannot be selected.

Deleting melodies or Receive option attachment files : Move the cursor to file name ▶ MENU 7 ▶ 3 **or** 4 ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- File attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox

Received/Sent/Unsent i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F can be checked.

- Mails of "Welcome to ドコモ動画 (DOCOMO moving picture)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメBEST5(Recommendation)" are saved in Inbox by default. Communication charges are free for receiving these mails. Also, you cannot reply to these mails.
- Opening FOMA terminal displays the edit screen when the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list screen, or the receive/sent message details screen is displayed.→P323

<Example> Displaying received mails

1 ✉ 1

Displaying sent mail folder list : ✉ 5

Displaying unsent mail folder list : ✉ 4

2 **Select a folder**

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a folder for Message i-αppli to activate the corresponding i-αppli. To display a mail without starting i-αppli, move the cursor to the folder for Message i-αppli and press MENU 1.

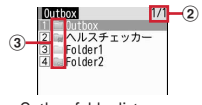
3 **Select a mail to display**

- Display preview in the mail list and the mail details screen can be zoomed in/out at 15 levels (Quick zoom).
  MENU ▶ "Display" ▶ Press "Key function help" to display Key function help.
  - Key operation is available while displaying. Press ● to return to the original screen.
  - Decome-Anime cannot be zoomed in/out.

◆ Folder list screen



Inbox folder list screen



Outbox folder list screen

① **Usage rate of the memory space**
② **Page/Total pages**

③ **Folder**

Received mail

(gray) : No mail (blue) : No unread mail

: No unread mail or no mail (Secret attribute ON)

: No unread mail or no mail (used in Message i-αppli)

: Unread mail exist : Unread mail exist (Secret attribute ON)

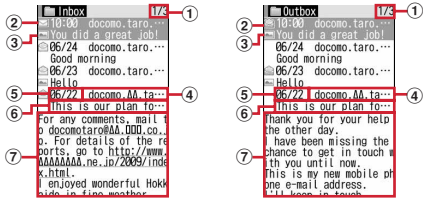
: Unread mail exist (used in Message i-αppli)

Sent/Unsent mails

(gray) : No mail (blue) : Mail exist

: Secret attribute ON : Message i-αppli

◆ Mail list screen



Inbox message list screen　　Outbox message list screen

① **Page/Total pages**

② **Status icon**

Received mail

: Unread : Unread (unable to reply) : Read : Read (unable to reply)

: Read (replied) : Read (forwarded) : Protected

: Protected (unable to reply) : Protected (replied)

: Protected (forwarded)

* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

Sent/Unsent mails

No icon : Unprotected

: Protected : Auto-send set : Failed in Auto-send

: Protected + Auto-send set : Protected + failed in Auto-send

③ **Type of attachment/SMS/Notification/Message i-αppli/Area Mail**

: Image : i-motion : Melody : ToruCa

: PDF data : Phonebook entry : Schedule

: Bookmark : Word file : Excel file

: PowerPoint file : Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal

: Multiple files are attached : SMS : SMS report request, Notify missed call

: Mail to be used in Message i-αppli : i-αppli To exists

: Area Mail : Area Mail to be used in Message i-αppli

: Invalid data attached

* For sent/unsent mails, when icon is not displayed at the position of ②, the icon of ③ is displayed at the position of ②.

* For received/sent mail lists, when List style of Message list is "Display 1 row", the following icon appears at the end of date and time.

: A file is attached : Area Mail

: Area Mail to be used in Message i-αppli

④ **Sender/Receiver**

When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.

For Area Mail, "Area Mail" appears.

⑤ **Received/Sent/Saved date & time**

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

⑥ **Subject**

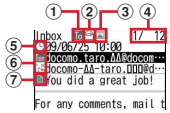
It may not be displayed depending on the i-mode mail. For Area Mail and SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed.

⑦ **Message text**

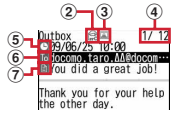
The message of the mail at the cursor position is displayed.

- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received/saved while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, appears at the top of the subject for i-mode mail for Address B/Number B, and at the top of the message text for SMS. For the mail list that was copied all or backed up from microSD card, is displayed at the end.

◆ Mail details screen



Inbox details screen



Outbox details screen

① **Address type icon**
To Cc Bcc : Receiver (Cc and Bcc only for i-mode mail)
For i-mode mail, you can check which address type is applied to you as a receiver.

② **Status/Notification icon**
Received mail
: Read : Read (unable to reply) : Read (replied)
: Read (forwarded) : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)
: Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)
: SMS report request, Notify missed call
* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.
Sent mail
No icon : Unprotected : Protected

③ **Type of attachment/SMS/Area Mail**
: Image : i-motion : Melody : ToruCa
: PDF data : Phonebook entry : Schedule
: Bookmark : Word file : Excel file
: PowerPoint file : Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal
: Multiple attachments exist : SMS : i-αppli (i-αppli To)
: Area Mail : Area Mail to be used in Message i-αppli
: Invalid data attached
* Depending on the conditions of attachment files, following icons appear below the message text with the icon above.
: Copyrighted (Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal unavailable)
/ : Data error/Data exceeded : Receive option attachment file not yet downloaded
: Receive option attachment file being downloaded
: Downloading of the receive option attachment file unavailable

④ **Mail number/number of items**

⑤ **Sent/Received date and time**

⑥ **Address type of sender's/receiver's/broadcast address**
From : Sender : Sender (unable to reply) To Cc Bcc : Receiver
To : Receiver (unable to reply) (only for i-mode mail)

⑦ **Subject**

- For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, B appears at the end of the date and time for i-mode mail or SMS for Address B/Number B.

Viewing Decome-Anime

If selecting Decome-Anime from received/sent mail list, Flash graphics of Decome-Anime text are played.

- While displaying Decome-Anime, the following operations are available.
  MENU : Play from the beginning
  : Stop playing
  : Return to the mail details screen/Display Decome-Anime
- For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect set by Melody volume of Adjust volume is played.

✔INFORMATION

- Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with " ・ " etc.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, "/" or "//" is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When the file attached to the received mail is larger than the data size that can be received (the data size that can be attached→P134) or for some files, it is deleted at the i-mode Center and [添付ファイル削除 (attachment files deleted)] is displayed below the subject.
- Only one melody or link item to start i-αppli attached in the text of message, is valid. If multiple melodies or link items are attached, those attached data become invalid and or is displayed on the received message list screen or details screen.
- Even when a mail that Flash graphics including video data is attached or pasted in message text is displayed, the video data is not played.

- If the message text includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- "Received SMS" appears as a subject of received SMS, and the phone number or the name saved in a phonebook appears as a sender. For SMS sent, "Sent SMS" appears as a subject.
  When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field.
  "User unset" (Message was sent with setting not to notify the caller ID)
  "Payphone" (Message was sent from a payphone)
  "Not support" (Message was sent using a procedure that does not provide caller ID information)
- You can save mail using Data Security Service.→P121

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Except for the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-αppli, up to 40 folders can be created in Inbox and up to 20 folders in Outbox/Unsent messages each.
- Folder settings of the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-αppli cannot be changed.
- Folders cannot be deleted in the following cases.
  - Folders stored by default
  - When protected mails are in the folder
  - When corresponding i-αppli is in the folder for Message i-αppli

<Example> Creating folders

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 4-5

2 MENU 1

Deleting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"
Changing folder setting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ MENU 3
Changing the order : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ MENU ▶ 7 or 8

3 **Set required items ▶ 📷**

Folder name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.
Secret attribute : Set if you display a folder in Privacy mode (when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

◆ Checking number of mail items <Check No. of msgs>

The number of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages are checked for each folder.

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 4-5 ▶ **Move the cursor to a folder ▶** MENU 5

◆ Displaying mail address <Display address>

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 4-5 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a mail ▶** MENU 7 3

Displaying a mail address of unsent mail : MENU 5 3

✔INFORMATION

- You can check also by selecting a sender or an address to check on the sent/received mail details screen. Note that it cannot be checked from the unsent mail details screen.
- Operations from the Deco-mail template details screen : MENU 4 2

◆ Moving mail to another folder <Move message>

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 4-5 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a mail ▶** MENU 4 1 ▶ 1-3

- To move selected items, select them ▶ 📷.

3 ● ▶ **Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"**

◆ Searching for mail

You can search sent or received mail.

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 5

2 MENU 9 ▶ **Set required items**

- Description of mail search is displayed on the first activation. Press ● to display the search screen.

Subject/Body : Up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters can be entered. To search with multiple key words, insert a blank space between words.
- After selecting the item below Subject/Body field, select "All words" or "Include any words".

Sender (Inbox)/Receiver (Outbox) : Select from sent/received mail logs or phonebook.
Date range : Select date range from the calendar.

• Press [✉] to display search records (up to 5). After a record is selected, the conditions of record are entered and the search screen appears

3 [📷]

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.
- During search, [●] : Cancel search
- On the search result screen, press [i✉] to search again.
- From the search result screen, the same operations as on the normal mail list are available.

✔INFORMATION
- Operations from the received/sent mail list : [MENU] [0]
  In this case, only the mails in the folder are searched.

◆ Sorting received/sent mail <Sort>

The sorting order of the mail list in Inbox and Outbox can be changed temporarily.

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 [MENU] [7] [4]

Sorting sent mails : [MENU] [5]

3 [1]-[4]

✔INFORMATION
- For sorting "By sender" or "By address", even when the mail address is added to the phonebook, mails are not sorted by the name saved in the phonebook but in the mail address order.
- When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of mails, the sort result "By title" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- If SMS or Area Mail is included, as the beginnings of message are displayed in the list screen, the result of sorting by "By title" does not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.

◆ Changing read/unread state of received mail

- Read/Unread state of received mails protected cannot be changed.

1 [✉] [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to the mail** ▶ [MENU] [5] ▶ [1]-[6]

- To change selected items, select them ▶ [📷] ▶ "Yes". To change all items "Yes" is required.

◆ Protecting/Unprotecting mail <Protect mail>

By protecting received/sent/unsent mails, they are protected from erroneous deletion or overwriting due to the lack of the memory space etc.
- Unread mail cannot be protected.
- Operation for protecting/unprotecting selected Area Mails is unavailable.

1 [✉] ▶ [1] or [4]-[5] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a mail** ▶ [MENU] [3] ▶ [1]-[6]

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ [📷].
- The status icon changes to one of the followings.
  Inbox : (Read), (Unable to reply), (Replied), (Forwarded)
  Sent/Unsent mails :

✔INFORMATION
- When "Protect all" is selected, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

◆ Deleting mail

❖ Deleting received mail

1 [✉] [1]
- To delete all items, [MENU] [4] [6] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select "Yes".

2 **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to mail** ▶ [MENU] [2] ▶ [1]-[7] ▶ **"Yes"**
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [📷]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

❖ Deleting sent/unsent mail

1 [✉] ▶ [4] or [5]
- To delete all items, [MENU] [4] [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select "Yes".

2 **Select a folder▶Move the cursor to mail▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Mail logs

Using mail history

This function is used to record the destination, sender's address of sent/received mail as mail logs. You can use the log to create a mail or add to the phonebook.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded for each of sent mails and received mails. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 30 items for Address/Number A and up to 30 items for Address/Number B are recorded in each of the sent message log and received message log. Only logs for Address/Number A are displayed in A mode and only those for Address/Number B are displayed in B mode. In Dual mode, all sent/received logs are displayed.
- When multiple mails are sent to the same destination, only the latest item is recorded in Sent msg. log.
- Received mail logs of i-mode mails or SMS that cannot be replied to are not recorded.

◆ Displaying mail logs

<Example> Displaying Sent msg logs

1 ▶

- Select the party to display details screen.



Sent msg. log list



Sent msg. log details

- Icon definitions
  - : i-mode mail logs
  - : SMS logs
  - : Sent/Received message logs for Address B/Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
  - : Sent message log* recorded while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)

  * May not be displayed when sending date/time is not recorded etc.

Displaying received message logs : ▶

❖Using mail history

Creating an i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a log▶

- For SMS log, the mail creation screen with a mail address set as destination appears if the mail address is saved in the phonebook, and the mail creation screen with a phone number set as destination appears if the mail address is not saved.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B in the log.

Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a log▶ (1 sec. or more)

- For i-mode mail log, SMS cannot be created unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to a log▶ MENU ▶ 4 or 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Making calls : or

- For i-mode mail logs, a call cannot be made unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

Displaying redial/received call logs :

❖Switching mail logs details screens <View preference>

1 **On the mail logs details screen, MENU 9 ▶ 1 - 3**

◆ Deleting mail logs

1 **Display the mail logs list**

2 Move the cursor to the mail logs▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1 -3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail log.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Useful functions of Mail

◆ Copying texts

You can copy characters in mail. Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

1 ▶ 1 or 5 ▶ Select a folder▶ Select a mail▶ MENU 2

2 Select a copy option

Copy text : Copy a specified range of characters.
Copying method→P345 Step 2 and the following steps in "Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters"
Copy title : Copy the title.
Copy selected item : Copy an item at the cursor position (mail address, phone number, etc.).
Pasting method→P345

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from the details screen of Deco-mail template or the details screen of SMS in UIM : MENU→"Copy" or "Move/Copy"
- For SMS stored in UIM, you can copy the message body, address or sender.
- For Deco-mail, only text is copied and decorations are not copied.
- For Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be copied.
- Text in the Date To format can be saved as schedule after being pasted to Notepad.

◆ Making call from mail <Phone call>

If the sender of a received mail or mail address of sent/unsent mails are saved with phone number in phonebook, calls can be made (for SMS or mail that the address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", a call can be made without saving).

1 ▶ 1 or 4 -5 ▶ Select a folder▶ Move the cursor to a mail▶ MENU 6

- When the mail has multiple destinations, select a mail address of the party to be called.
- When operating from the received message/sent message details screen, move the cursor to the sender, receiver or phone number and press MENU 8.

2 Set a condition for dialing▶ MENU

Making a call under set conditions→P62

◆ Adding phone number, mail address and URL

You can add the phone number, mail address and URL that you can move the cursor to to the phonebook entry from mail. URL can also be registered as bookmark.

<Example> Adding a phone number

1 ▶ 1 or 5 ▶ Select a folder▶ Select a mail

2 Move the cursor to a phone number▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P75
- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Adding URL to phonebook : Move the cursor to a URL▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P75
- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Registering URL in bookmark : Move the cursor to a URL▶ MENU 4 3

The next procedure→P168 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from MessageR/F details screen : MENU 3 →1 -3
- You can operate also from SMS details screen of UIM.
- Operations from the mail details screen of microSD card : MENU 4
- Registering from Deco-mail may be unavailable.
- When multiple addresses are listed in the mail text, you may not be able to add them.

Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal

◆ Sorting mail automatically <Sort method>

You can set sort methods and automatically sort received/sent mail to specified folders.

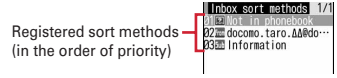
- Up to 30 methods for received/sent mail can be registered.
- When 2in1 is used, 30 sort methods for received/sent mail can be registered for each mode. In Dual mode, in addition to the sort methods for each mode, 30 sort methods for received/sent mail can be registered for Address A/B. All mail messages that match the registered sort methods are sorted regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- Ordinary mails can also be sorted to the folder for Message i-αppli, but message i-αppli sorting method precedes.
- Sent/Received mails are not sorted.

❖Setting whether to sort automatically

1 [✉] [9] [2] ▶ [1] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [●]

❖Setting sort methods

1 [✉] [9] [2] ▶ [2] **or** [3]



- Icon definitions :
  To : Mail address (Outbox sorting)
  From : Mail address (Inbox sorting)
  Subj : Subject No. : Ph.book number : Ph.book group
  ? : Not in phonebook : No method
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the following icons appear.
  A : Address A B : Address B AB : Common

2 [●] ▶ **Set a sort method**

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears.

Specifying a mail address : [1] ▶ [1]-[4]

Sort mails from specified mail addresses. The mail address specifies the entire address including the character succeeding symbol @.

- For [1]-[3], operate for selecting and for [4], enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters) ▶ [●].
- If you add and specify the same mail address in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, it is sorted as the mail address of FOMA terminal phonebook.
- If the specified mail address is i-mode terminal, it is sorted even if it is specified with the domain (@docomo.ne.jp) omitted. However, if the address is "Phone number @docomo.ne.jp", add only the mobile phone number excluding the domain (@docomo.ne.jp).
- When specifying phone numbers, you can sort SMS as well.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if you specify a receiver that is set in different mode from Address A/B in Ph.book 2in1 setting, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

Specifying a subject : [2] ▶ **Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters)** ▶ [●]

Mail containing the specified characters is sorted.

- You cannot sort SMS by subject.
- When 2in1 is used, titles of Area Mail are not sorted according to modes.

Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook number) : [3] ▶ **Enter the phonebook number** ▶ [●] ▶ [●]

Sort mail by mail address or phone number of the specified phonebook number in FOMA terminal phonebook. i-mode mail are sorted by checking mail address with that in the phonebook as sort method. SMS are sorted by checking phone numbers with that in the phonebook.

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if you specify a receiver that is set in different mode from Address A/B in Ph.book 2in1 setting, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook group) : [4] ▶ [1] **or** [2] ▶ **Select a group**

Sort mail by mail address or phone number saved in the group of the phonebook.

Specifying Not in phonebook : [5]

Sort mail from mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook.

Specifying No method : 6
Sort all mail without a sort method set.

3 Select the folder to sort

- When the folder for Message i-αppli is selected, a screen appears notifying the mail is used for i-αppli.

4 Select a priority

A new method is added to the selected row.

- To add the first method, select "Add last".
- Methods are sorted sequentially from the one with the highest priority level.
- When registered methods are changed, "Move to last" is displayed instead of "Add last".
- When Auto-sort ON/OFF is "OFF", a confirmation screen for setting to "ON" appears.

✔INFORMATION

- If multiple conditions are set, judgment is made from the condition with higher priority and sorted to the folder that matched for the condition first. A mail that was not matched for any condition is saved in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

❖Setting sort methods from sent/received mails

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 5 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to a mail** ▶ MENU 8 4 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ **Check the saved contents** ▶ ●

The next procedure→P150 Step 3 and the following steps in "Setting sort methods"

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears. Also, to use a mail address for a sort method, when a mail address that is set in Ph.book 2in1 setting to a different mode from Address A/B is specified, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

❖Checking, changing or deleting sorting methods

<Example> Checking

1 ✉ 9 2 ▶ 2 or 3

2 Select sorting rule

Changing sort methods :

① **Move the cursor to a sort method** ▶ MENU 2 ▶ **Set a sort method**
Operations for setting sort method→P149 Step 2-4 in "Setting sort methods"
② **"Yes"**

Changing sort priority : Move the cursor to the sort method ▶ MENU 5 ▶ **Select the position to move to**

- To move to the end of the list, select "Move to last".

Deleting : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ MENU ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

◆Setting mail signatures

- When 2in1 is used, signatures can be registered for each mode.

❖Setting whether to insert signature automatically

You can set if you automatically insert the signature when composing, replying or forwarding mail.

1 ✉ 9 3 1 ▶ 1 or 2

- When 2in1 is used and "Auto add" is set, a signature is inserted according to a mode in A/B mode or according to a sender's address in Dual mode. If a sender's address is not specified or to create SMS, a signature for Address A is inserted.

❖Registering signature

1 ✉ 9 3 2 ▶ ● ▶ **Enter a signature (up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters)** ▶ ●

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears.

✔INFORMATION

- The background color set for the signature is not applied when decorations and/or characters is already entered in the message text or when quoting the received mail to reply to or forward a mail.
- Signature is also counted as the number of characters of message text.
- Signature cannot be inserted in Decome-Anime.
- Signature cannot be inserted to SMS in the following cases.
  - When Font type is "English"
  - When a signature has been decorated
  - When the text exceeds 70 characters by inserting signature

◆ Setting Check new message

1 ✉ 9 7 ▶ **Select the items to check** ▶ ●

- You cannot save unless you select any of the items.

◆ Setting to select and receive only necessary mail <Receive option>

1 ✉ 9 6 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- When setting to "ON", a screen indicating mail cannot be automatically received appears.

◆ Adding mail group

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, i-mode mail can be sent to multiple receivers by a simple operation.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be added. Up to 5 mail addresses can be added for 1 mail group.

1 ✉ 9 5

2 ●

Creating a mail : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ ✉

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the phonebook 2in1 setting of the last receiver's address when the address is saved in the phonebook, or it is not set when the address is not saved.

Editing a mail group name : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ MENU 2

Copying a mail group : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ MENU 3

Deleting a mail group : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail group.
- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

Operating mail address registered in a mail group : Select a mail group ▶ Go to Step 5

3 **Enter the mail group name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters)** ▶ ●

- Press ● to add other mail group continuously.

4 **Select a mail group for registering a mail address**

5 ✉ ▶ **Set required items**

Address Type : Set "TO", "CC" or "BCC".

Address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering from mail logs or phonebook, press MENU, and press 1-3, and select a destination.

Editing a registered mail address : Move the cursor to the mail address (or name) ▶ MENU 1 ▶ **Edit**

Deleting a registered mail address : Move the cursor to a mail address (or name) ▶ MENU 2 ▶ **"Yes" ▶ Go to Step 7**

Displaying details of registered mail address : MENU 3 ▶ **When finishing checking,** ●

6 ●

- To add another mail address, repeat the operation from Step 5.

7 ●

◆ Setting a quoting method in reply <Reply format>

You can set whether to quote the message text of the received mail when you create the reply mail by pressing ● on the list screen or details screen of received mail/SMS. And, you can set the type of quote characters added to the beginning of the quoted message.

1 ✉ 9 4 1 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Quote : Set if you quote message when replying to a mail.

Quote characters : Up to 1 two-byte (2 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- The quote characters are included in the total character count for the body of the message.
- When a character that cannot be sent has been set, the default quote character is used.

◆ Setting quick reply

You can set if you use Quick reply to reply to i-mode mail.

1 ✉ 9 4 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2

◆ Registering quick reply format

- Up to 5 items can be registered.

1 ✉ 9 4 3

2 **Select a format▶Enter a text (Up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters)▶ 📷 ▶"Yes"**

Viewing the message text : Move the cursor to the message text▶ 📷
Deleting the message text : Move the cursor to the message text▶ MENU 1 ▶"Yes"
Resetting all formats : MENU 2 ▶Authenticate▶"Yes"
Adding new format : "<New reply format>"▶Enter a text▶ 📷

◆ Setting display style of mail list

You can set the style to display a list of Inbox/Outbox mails.

1 ✉ 9 6 5 **▶Set required items▶ 📷**

List style : Set display style.
Display preview : Set if you display message under the mail list.
Auto status change : When all texts are displayed under the received mail list, set if you change them to read.

✔INFORMATION

- The list display style of Unsent messages and SMS of UIM are 2 rows regardless of this setting and Display preview is not displayed.
- For the display style of mail search result screen, Display preview is not displayed regardless of this setting.
- When setting Auto status change to "ON", selecting "Unread item only" from By display type and displaying the received mail list, the mail is not set to Read even if all the message text is displayed under the received mail list.

◆ Setting receiving method of attachments <Incoming msg. attach>

You can set by file types in advance if you receive files attached to i-mode mail at once when receiving i-mode mail.

- Files set not to be received automatically are the received as receive option attachment files.→P140
- Images or melodies attached to message text are automatically received regardless of this setting.

1 ✉ 9 6 3 **▶Select a file item to receive▶ 📷**

- "Tool data" indicates the data of phonebook, bookmark and schedule.
- "Other" indicates Excel, Word, PowerPoint and other data.

◆ Setting playing method of melodies or sound effects <Attachment auto-play>

You can set whether to play melody attached to message text or sound effect of Flash graphics automatically when displaying i-mode mail or MessageR/F.

1 ✉ 9 6 4 **▶1 or 2**

✔INFORMATION

- When a received/sent mail, mail template or MessageR/F with an attached melody is displayed with "Auto play" set, the melody is played once with the volume set in Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. When multiple melodies are attached, they are played in turn. Press ● to stop.
- When "Auto play" is set, if displaying Decome-Anime with sound effect, it is played at the volume set by Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. Press 戻/C to stop. If a melody is attached to the mail, only the melody is played.
  If displaying the preview screen for creating Decome-Anime with sound effect, the retry screen of sent/received Decome-Anime or Decome-Anime template details screen, sound effect is played regardless of this setting.
- When MessageR/F is automatically displayed, the melody is not automatically played even with "Auto play" set.

◆ Displaying mail by type <Display by type>

You can display only the mails of specified type in the received and sent mail lists temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "Display all items".

- You cannot select the display type for unsent messages and SMS of UIM.

1 ✉ **▶1 or 5 ▶Select a folder▶** MENU 7 2 **▶1-4**

- For sent mail, you can select only "Display all items" and "Protected item only".
- For "Read item", protected received mails are not displayed.

◆ Changing font size

You can select a font size from 5 types to display mails.

- The font size for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is not changed.

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 5 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a mail** ▶ MENU 3 1 ▶ 1-5

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from the details screen of Deco-mail template or SMS in UIM : MENU → "Display" → "Font size"
- Operation from the details screen of received/sent/unsent mail in microSD card : MENU 3
- The changed font size remains until the setting is changed again.
- This setting also applies to Mail view in Font size.
- Font size for creating or editing a mail can be changed by Font size.→P99

◆ Setting mail reception notification for terminal in operation <Display priority>

You can set if you display a receiving screen, reception result screen or a screen during Auto-send by priority when i-mode mail, SMS or MessageR/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

1 ✉ 9 6 1 ▶ 1 or 2

Continue operation : Display none of the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

Show message : Display the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

✔INFORMATION

- Even if "Continue operation" is set, "Show message" takes precedence while the menu is displayed.
- Even if "Continue operation" is set, "Show message" takes precedence in Operation lock. However, while using 1Seg, playing MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel, "Continue operation" takes precedence and the screen remains off.
- Even if "Show message" is set, during a voice call or while camera is activated, streaming type i-motion is playing, i-αppli is running, alarm is sounding, Area Mail is received, etc., "Continue operation" takes precedence.

Receive MessageR/F

When MessageR/F is received

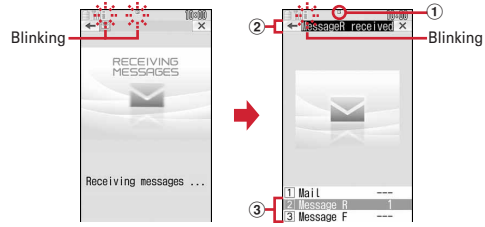
1 **Receive MessageR/F**

and R (blue) or F (green) blink and "Receiving messages…" appears. MessageR/F ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received MessageR is saved in "MessageR" folder. The received MessageF is saved in "MessageF" folder.

- ● : Cancel receiving

May be received depending on the reception conditions.



① **Icon**

R(blue) : Unread MessageR exist F(green) : Unread MessageF exist

② **Reception result ticker**

③ **The number of received MessageR/F**

- The contents of unread MessageR/F are displayed after the reception result screen appears, and if you do not press any key for about 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears.

When reception has failed

"×" appears on the right side of "Message R" or "Message F" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform Check new message.

✔INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When MessageR/F is received, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- In the following cases, received MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center.
  - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
  - During a videophone call
  - Accessing Data Center
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During FirstPass center connection
  - When reception has failed
  - When receiving SMS
  - Infrared communication/iC transmission
  - When the memory space is filled with MessageR/F unread or protected
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, a new MessageR/F overwrites the chronologically oldest message except for unprotected unread messages.
- If there is not enough memory space available because the memory space is filled with unread and protected MessageR/F, reception of MessageR/F is stopped, R (red) or F (red) appears on the screen. To receive, displaying the contents of unread MessageR/F, deleting unnecessary MessageR/F or unprotecting is required.
- If there are remaining MessageR/F in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there are MessageR/F. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of mail items that can be stored, the icon changes to or .

◆ Displaying new MessageR/F

1 On the reception result screen, 2 or 3

- Press 1 to display i-mode mail.

2 Select MessageR/F

Playing when a melody is attached→P152
Displaying MessageR/F→P155

◆ Displaying MessageR/F automatically <Auto-display>

You can set whether to automatically display the content of automatically received Message R/F (for approximately 15 seconds).

- When this option is set to automatically display, the content appears in the following timing.
  - In stand-by, while the menu is displayed : When returning to the operation before the message was received, from the reception result screen
  - During a voice call (except when using Multiaccess/Multitask) : After the call ends

1 9 6 6 ▶ 1-5

✔INFORMATION

- If no key operations are made during automatic display, MessageR/F is saved under unread state.

MessageR / MessageF

Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal

1 1 ▶ "MessageR" or "MessageF"

2 Select MessageR/F to display

Deleting : Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ MENU 1 ▶ 1-4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to MessageR/F.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Protecting/Unprotecting : Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-5

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ .
- The status icon of protected/unprotected Message R/F changes to or .

Displaying by type <Display by type> : MENU 3 ▶ 1-4

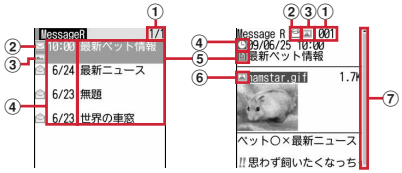
- Protected MessageR/F is not displayed when selecting "Display read only".

Rearranging <Sort> : MENU 4 ▶ 1-3

- When a title contains one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters, kanji and those displayed with URLs, the sort result "By title" may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

Changing font size : Select MessageR/F ▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1-5

◆ MessageR/F list/details screen



MessageR list screen　MessageR details screen

① **Page/Total pages (list screen), MessageR/F No. (details screen)**

② **Status icon**

List screen

: Unread : Read : Protected

Details screen

: Read : Protected

③ **Types of attachment**

List screen

: Image : Melody : ToruCa : Multiple files are attached

Details screen

: Image : Melody : ToruCa : Multiple files are attached

④ **Reception date and time**

- For list screen, the time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on the other day.

⑤ **Title**

⑥ **Types of attachment (details)**

: Image : Image (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

: Image (Data error) : Melody

: Melody (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

: Melody (Data error) : ToruCa : ToruCa (Data error)

⑦ **Scroll bar**

- If pressing [*] for 1 second or more when all the lines are not displayed, the current position relative to the whole display appears temporarily. If pressing [MENU] [7] on MessageR/F details screen, you can switch display/hide.

◆ Displaying/Saving attachment

<Example> Saving

1 Display the list of MessageR/F

Icon definitions→P155 "MessageR/F list/details screen"

2 Select MessageR/F with an attached file

3 Move the cursor to a file name▶ [MENU] [5] [2]

The next procedure for an image→P171 Step 2 in "Downloading image"
The next procedure for melody→P172 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- For ToruCa, the selection screen of the saving destination appears. The save destination becomes "ToruCa" of ToruCa when [1] is pressed and "ToruCa" of microSD card when [2] is pressed. Only one of the destinations above is enabled for some ToruCa.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes can be saved only to microSD card.

Displaying/Playing : Select a file name

- For an image, the image is displayed/hidden.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes cannot be displayed.

Displaying title : Move the cursor to a file▶ [MENU] [5] [3]

- An attached file of image cannot be operated.

✔INFORMATION

- Saving image in the message text or background image : [MENU] [4]→[1] or [2]→Select the image to save
- For some ToruCa, saving is enabled only once.

Early warning "Area Mail"

This is a service that you can receive emergency earthquake flash report etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail can be received even if you do not subscribe to i-mode.
- Area Mail that could not be received cannot be received later.

- It cannot be received in the following cases.
  - When the power is OFF or out of service area
  - During a voice/videophone call
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During accessing Data Center
  - In data transfer mode such as Infrared communication/iC communication/using microSD, etc.
  - In International Roaming
  - While updating software
- It may not be received in the following cases.
  - In i-mode communication
  - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
  - Updating pattern definitions
- While streaming type i-motion is played, the reception completion screen or contents display screen does not appear even after the reception.

Receive Area Mail

When receiving early warning "Area Mail"

◆ When receiving Area Mail of Earthquake Early Warning

turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated buzzer alarm sound is emitted, the vibrator operates and the contents display screen appears.

- The contents display screen is cleared by pressing any of ●, CLR, ⌐.
- The volume of the buzzer alarm sound is set to "Level 6" in Mail/Msg. alert vol. It cannot be changed.
- The vibrator operates with the operating pattern of "Sync melody".
- The alarm sounds even in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) by default. You can also set the alarm not to sound according to modes.→P156

◆ When receiving Area Mail except Earthquake Early Warning

turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated Area Mail ring alert sounds, the reception completion screen or contents display screen appears.

- It depends on the setting of the distributor which of the distribution completion screen or the contents display screen appears when receiving an Area Mail.
- The contents display screen is cleared by pressing any of ●, CLR, ⌐, and the reception completion screen is cleared by pressing any keys, touching the display or performing no operation for approximately 15 seconds.
- The volume of the Area Mail ring tone operates according to Mail/Msg. alert vol. of Adjust volume, the ring time operates according to Ring time (sec) of Mail ring alert of Mail/Msg. ring alert of Ring alerts & Sounds, and the vibrator operates according to Mail vibrate alert of Mail/Msg. vibe alert of Vibrate alert/effect. Note that the vibrator operates with the operating pattern of "Sync melody".
- The alarm sounds even in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) by default. You can also set the alarm not to sound according to modes.→P156

✔INFORMATION

- Area Mail is saved in the folder of Inbox. Regardless of the memory space of whole Inbox, when exceeding the savable number of Area Mail, the unprotected received Area Mail is overwritten chronologically.

Early warning "Area Mail" setting

Setting early warning "Area Mail"

◆ Setting if you use Area Mail <Receive setting>

1 ✉ 7 2 1 ▶ Check "Notice" ▶ Select "Use Early warning "Area Mail" function?" field ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 📷

◆ Setting Beep time

1 ✉ 7 2 2 ▶ Enter the time (1-30 seconds) ▶ 📷

◆ Setting alert method for Silent mode/Public mode <Manner/Public mode setting>

You can set the alert method when receiving Area Mail in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode).

1 ✉ 7 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Checking ring tone

You can check dedicated buzzer alarm and Area Mail ring tone.

1 ✉ 7 2 4 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Adding/Deleting Area Mail to use <Receive entry>

- Up to 20 items can be added.
- Receive entry is not required for receiving emergency information (emergency earthquake flash report, disaster/evacuation information) only.

<Example> Saving

1 ✉ 7 2 5 1

2 📷 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Area Mail name : Enter any name in up to 15 two-byte (30 one-byte) characters.
Message ID : Enter ID of 4 digits provided by the service provider.

Editing : Select Area Mail name ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷

Deleting : Move the cursor to an Area Mail name ▶ MENU 2 **▶ Authenticate**

- "緊急地震情報 (Emergency earthquake flash report)" and "災害・避難情報 (Disaster/evacuation information)" saved by default cannot be edited or deleted.

Composing and sending SMS

Composing and sending SMS

You can send a character message to a mobile phone number as the destination.

- SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas service providers except DOCOMO. For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- Reading received/sent/unsent SMS list/details screen→P143

<Example> Creating/Sending by entering address directly

1 ✉ 7 1 1 **▶ Select the receiver field**

2 **"Direct input" ▶ Enter a phone number (up to 20 one-byte numeric characters)**

- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, you can send SMS after entering 21 characters maximum including "+".
- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, enter "+" (Press 0 for 1 sec. or more), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order or enter "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order (Also enter "+" or "010" when replying to SMS from an overseas sender). Omit "0", if any, at the beginning of the mobile phone number.

Entering from mail logs : Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select a log

Entering by searching phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

3 **Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text**

- The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on Font type in SMS settings.

Inserting Signature : Select the message text field ▶ MENU 4 6

Displaying mail to view : Select the message text field ▶ MENU 7 1 **▶ Select view source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to mail to view ▶** 📷 **▶ "OK"**

- When "OK (Confirm once)" is selected, the instruction screen does not appear again.
- For a view mail while displaying, the following operations are available.
  - Slide up and down by touch operation (or slide quickly) : Scrolling up and down
  - Slide right or left quickly by touch operation/ MENU 7 ▶ 2 or 3 : Switching previous/next mail
  - MENU 7 4 : Changing view mail
  - MENU 7 1 : Canceling view mail
- The melody or sound effect of Flash graphics attached to a view mail or pasted to message text cannot be played.
- Each time you press MENU on the folder list or mail list, received/sent mail displays are changed.

4 📷

- To save SMS without sending it, if pressing MENU 2, it is saved in "Unsent" folder and the confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icon appears.

✔INFORMATION

- When sending is completed correctly, the SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, font type or the terminal of the other party, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Line feeds in message text may be replaced with spaces depending on the other party's terminal.

- When Font type is Japanese, if you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly. If you use pictograms, 💔 is replaced with ♥, and each of pictograms except ☎ is replaced with a space.
- When Font type is English and symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. Moreover, symbol (`) can be entered and sent, but it is replaced with a space on the receiver's terminal.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- If setting SMS report request to "Request" and send SMS, you receive SMS report that notifies you that the other FOMA terminal received SMS. SMS report request is saved in the folder of Inbox.
- Even if Activate/Deactivate of caller ID notification is "Not notify", caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- When the memory space of Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be created. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- When using 2in1, you cannot send SMS for Number B.

❖Editing/Sending sent or saved SMS

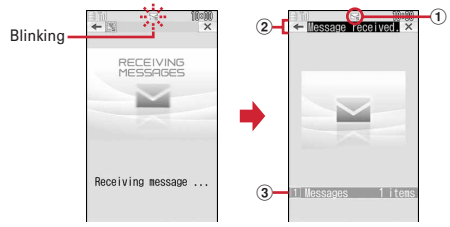
Sent SMS and SMS saved before sending or failed to send can be edited or sent.→P137

Receive SMS

When SMS is received

1 Receive SMS

✉ blinks and "Receiving message..." appears.
Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.
The received SMS is saved in a folder of Inbox.
- While receiving SMS, [Cancel] : Cancel receiving
  May be received depending on the reception conditions.



Receiving screen　Reception result screen

① Icon
✉ : Unread SMS exists ✉ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist
② Reception result ticker
③ Number of received SMS
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

Reading received SMS immediately : On the reception result screen, [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select SMS
- You can reply to and/or forward received SMS.→P139

When reception has failed
"✕" appears on the right side of "Messages" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform check new SMS.

✔INFORMATION
- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically.
- While receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F or Area Mail, automatic reception of SMS is unavailable. Perform Check new SMS.
- When SMS is received from parties of overseas service providers except DOCOMO, "+" is prefixed to the mail address of the sender. When the phone number with prefix "+" is saved in phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook entry is displayed.
- When Message scan of Set scan is "Valid", if you receive and try to display SMS with a phone number or URL, a warning message screen appears.

- If there is not enough memory space available because it is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of SMS is stopped and ✉ or 📧 appears on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If received SMS specified to save to UIM, it is saved directly to UIM. Note that, when the number of SMS saved in UIM has reached 20 items, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary SMS and perform Check new SMS.

Check new SMS

Checking for SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while you were out of service area, the power was turned OFF or other cases.

- If it takes a time to receive or depending on the radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new SMS from SMS Center.

1 ✉ 7 1 5

SMS settings

Setting SMS

It is usually not necessary to change SMS Center, Address and Type of Number settings.

1 ✉ 7 1 4 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Font type : Select the font type of the message to send. When "Japanese" is set, up to 70 characters can be entered. When "English" is set, up to 160 one-byte alphanumeric characters (except ` 。 「」、・゛゜) can be entered.

SMS report request : Select if you request SMS report request of SMS to send.

Keep in SMS center : Select the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS center in cases the receiver cannot receive the SMS.

- When "0 day" is set, SMS is deleted from SMS center after resending of it is repeated for a certain period of time.

SMS Center : Select when using SMS services except DOCOMO.

- When setting to "Others", enter a mail address of up to 20 one-byte characters in Address field.

Type of Number : Select from "International" or "Unknown".

- If selecting "Others" in SMS Center field and setting numbers for Address field, Type of Number needs to be set to "Unknown".

✔INFORMATION

- Operations from SMS creation screen : MENU 3
  In this case, only SMS report request and Keep in SMS center can be set for SMS that is being created.
- Settings of Font type, Keep in SMS center, SMS Center and Type of Number are saved in UIM.

SMS saved to UIM

Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card)

◆ Moving/Copying SMS to UIM

- Unsent SMS cannot be saved in UIM.
- When moving or copying sent SMS, if there are corresponding SMS report requests, they are moved or copied together.
- When protected SMS is moved/copied to UIM, its protection is canceled in the moving/copying destination.

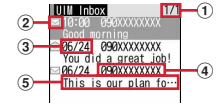
1 ✉ ▶ 1 **or** 5 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to SMS** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ 2 **or** 3 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ 📷.

◆ Displaying SMS of UIM

1 ✉ 7 1 ▶ 2 **or** 3

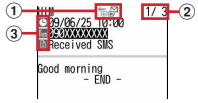


① **Page/Total pages**

② **Status icon**
: Unread (able to reply) : Unread (unable to reply) : Read (able to reply)
: Read (unable to reply) : SMS report request, Notify missed call
: SMS error
③ **Sent/Received date and time**
The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.
Note that except for sent SMS with SMS report request set, the sent date and time are deleted.
④ **Sender/Receiver**
When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.
⑤ **Top of the message**

- Read/Unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS of UIM was displayed. The state of read/unread before moving or copying is also carried over.
- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For SMS which contains error, or appears. For SMS with displayed, the reception date/time appears as "--/--" (only on the day of reception), and the sender or the top of the message is not displayed. SMS that is displayed is SMS that detail cannot be displayed.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

2 Select SMS to display



① **Icon**
: Received (able to reply) : Received (unable to reply) : Sent
: SMS report request, Notify missed call : SMS of UIM
② **Mail No./No. of msgs**
③ **Icon**
: Date and time : Receiver : Sender : Sender (unable to reply)
: Subject "Received SMS", "Sent SMS"

- When sent SMS is moved or copied to UIM, the sent date and time are deleted from sent SMS of UIM. Note that the sent date and time are displayed in sent SMS with SMS report request set.
- For SMS which contains error, appears instead of and except does not appear.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

Moving/Copying SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal :
① **Move the cursor to SMS** ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1-4
- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .

② ● ▶ **Select the destination folder** ▶ **"Yes"**
- When moving or copying sent SMS with SMS report request, the corresponding SMS report request is moved or copied to the folder of Inbox together.

Deleting SMS in UIM : Move the cursor to SMS ▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-4 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to SMS.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items or all SMS report request, authentication is required.
- When deleting sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report request of UIM is deleted together.

✔INFORMATION

- From SMS of UIM, you can also reply to or forward, resend, change the font size, save in the phonebook, etc. The operation is the same as that of received/sent SMS.
- When performing reply/forward, resend, etc. from SMS of UIM, sent SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be moved or copied. Unprotected i-mode mail and/or SMS, if any, are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from folders of Inbox/Outbox.

i-mode/Full Browser

i-mode 162

Displaying site/website

Displaying a site ..... i-mode 162
Displaying web pages designed for PC 164
Switching i-mode/Full Browser 164
Displaying by using log 164
Viewing and operating screen 165
Saving web pages or sites for quick access ..... Bookmark 168
Saving sites or websites contents ..... Screen memo 170
Using RSS reader 170

Using i-mode/Full Browser

Downloading data (file) 171
Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion 173
Convenient Functions 173

Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings

Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings ..... i-mode settings 174
Operating certificate 176

i-mode

With i-mode, you can use online services such as site connection, Internet connection or i-mode mail by the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a charged service requiring subscription.
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites and Internet websites are generally protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a site or website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- When installing a UIM except yours or you turn ON FOMA terminal without UIM, still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail (still image, moving picture, melody, etc.), screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed or played.
- When data with UIM operation restriction is set for the stand-by display or ring alert, replacing UIM with another one or turning the power ON with no UIM installed changes the settings back to the default.

i-mode

Displaying a site

You can connect to i-mode to view various sites.

1 i

During i-mode communication, ▯ blinks at the top of the display.



- ⌐ while starting communication : Stop connecting
- CLR or 📷 while downloading a page : Stop downloading a page.
- Items with numbers such as 1 or 2 may be selected by pressing the keypads corresponding to the item (direct key function).

2 Select an item to view

Display the desired pages using the same procedure.

- For some selected items, a page is displayed with a new tab.→P165

3 When quitting viewing a site, ⌐ ▶ "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- When i-mode button of Common Setting in i-mode settings is set to "Disp. i-mode menu", you can connect by pressing i 1.→P175
- When the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending appears. Select "Yes" to send the serial number. IP (Information Provider) uses the sent serial number for identifying you to provide you with customized information or judging whether the contents provided by IP are available on your mobile phone.
  Since the serial number is sent to the IP (Information Provider) via Internet, there is a possibility that it could be captured during transmission by third parties. This operation causes none of your phone number, address, age or gender to be informed to the IP (Information Provider).
- When information about the music played by your mobile phone is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending music information appears. When "Yes" is selected, the information (title, artist name, play date/time) of the music played by your mobile phone is sent. The music information to be sent is used by the IP (Information Provider) to provide you with customized information etc.

◆Changing i-mode password <Change i-mode password>

i-mode password is required to save to/delete My Menu, use Message Service, use Mail settings, etc.

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" at your subscription, however, please change the password to the unique 4-digit number for safety.
- Be careful never to reveal the i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, it is reset to "0000" at the docomo Shop after checking your official certification (e.g. a driver's license).

1 i ▶"English"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password"▶Select Current Password field▶Enter the current i-mode password

2 Select New Password field▶Enter a new i-mode password

3 Select New Password (Confirmation) field▶Enter the i-mode password entered in Step 2▶"Select"

◆Using My Menu <My Menu>

You can register your favorite sites in My Menu to easily access them from next time.

- Up to 45 i-mode sites can be registered. However, some sites cannot be registered.
- To register, i-mode password is required.→P163
- When you subscribe to a pay site, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.

❖Subscribing to a site in My Menu

1 Display a site▶"マイメニュー登録 (registering in My Menu)"▶Select the i-mode password entry field▶Enter an i-mode password▶"決定 (OK)"

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

❖Displaying sites from My Menu

1 i ▶"English"▶"My Menu"▶Select a site to display

◆Connecting to SSL/TLS page

You can display SSL/TLS compatible sites or websites (SSL/TLS page) using i-mode/Full Browser.

- SSL/TLS is a method for securing safe data communications with authentication/encryption technologies. Encrypted data is sent/received on SSL/TLS pages, and it prevents wiretapping, masquerading and data alteration in the middle of communication so that you can more safely exchange your personal information such as your credit card number and address.
- You may not connect to some SSL/TLS pages when date and time are not set.
- Establishing SSL/TLS sessions may require electronic information called "Certificate" issued by the same certification organization for the connected site and FOMA terminal.→P176
- To connect to FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate from the FirstPass center and save it in UIM.

1 Select a compatible site or website▶A message indicating the start of SSL/TLS session appears

- While SSL/TLS pages are displayed, SSL is displayed at the top of the display.
- While SSL/TLS pages are displayed, press MENU 8 1 1 to view the certificate.
- When proceeding from an SSL/TLS page to an ordinary page, a confirmation screen appears.

❖Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

1 Select a user certificate to send while a compatible site or website is displayed▶Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page appears.

- When correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL/TLS session is disconnected.

✔INFORMATION

- When connecting to an SSL/TLS page, certificate selection screen may appear. In this case, select a certificate to send.
- Packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass compatible page is covered by the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double.

Displaying web pages designed for PC

You can connect to the Internet to display websites created for a PC.

- Communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing many images and downloading require high charges. For details of packet communication fees and charging plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guid [i-mode] FOMA version".

<Example> Connecting to a website at specified address (URL) with Full Browser

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 5 1

2 **Enter a URL (up to 2,048 one-byte characters)**

3 **Select Browser type field** ▶ 2 ▶ ●

- To connect to a website using i-mode, select 1 in Browser type field.
- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again.→P174
- When Full Browser usage setting is "利用しない (do not use)", a confirmation screen for using Full Browser appears.→P174
- From the second time, the URL previously entered or connected to appears.
- ⌐ while starting communication : Stop connecting
- CLR or ● while downloading a page : Stop downloading a page.

4 **After reading a website,** ⌐ ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- Full Browser can load up to 1,536 Kbytes per page.
- No plug-in is supported.
- Some websites may take extra time to be displayed or not be displayed correctly.

Switching i-mode/Full Browser

- i-mode and Full Browser have different charging systems. It is recommended that you subscribe to Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double because a high packet communication fee is required to use Full Browser according to data communication volume.
- You cannot normally display some sites or websites when switching the browser.

<Example> Switching i-mode to Full Browser

1 **While displaying a site,** MENU 5 2

Switching Full Browser to i-mode : While a website is displayed, MENU 7 2

- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again.→P174

Displaying by using log

- If you connect from a log while a site or website is displayed, the browser type used when the log was created is used for connection.

◆ Reconnecting to the page displayed before <Last URL>

You can use display logs of sites or websites for connection.

- Up to 10 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, older logs are overwritten first.

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 4

2 **Select a URL**

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : URL of i-mode : URL of Full Browser
- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again.→P174

Deleting : Move the cursor to a URL ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website : MENU 3
- Some URL may not be accessed or a different website may be displayed.

◆ Displaying pages using URL enter history <URL enter history>

You can use URL entry logs of sites or websites for connection.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, older logs are overwritten first.

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 5 2

2 Select a URL

The next procedure→P164 Step 3 and the following steps in "Displaying web pages designed for PC"

- If you change a browser type on the screen that appears after a URL is selected, a browser type different from a log is used for connection.

Deleting : Move the cursor to a URL ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

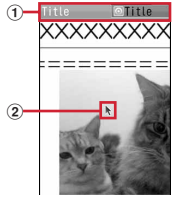
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [camera]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website : MENU 7 2 / MENU 6 2

Viewing and operating screen

◆ Viewing screen



Full Browser screen (Vertical display)

① Status display/Title or URL

: While downloading

: Unread tab after the data is downloaded

② Pointer→P166

✔INFORMATION

- When displaying a site including an image, the following icons may appear instead of the image.

: When Image display setting is "OFF"

: When the image data is invalid or the image cannot be found, or when the image cannot be received because FOMA terminal goes out of service area during image reception

: When displaying is disabled for an incorrect URL of the image etc.

◆ Operating screen

Scrolling : [multi]

Scrolling up/down successively : [multi] **(1 sec. or more)**

Going to previous/next page : [i-mode] / [mail]

Switching tabs : [i-mode] **or** [mail] ▶ [multi] ▶ [●]

Closing a tab/Ending a browser : CLR ▶ **"Yes"**

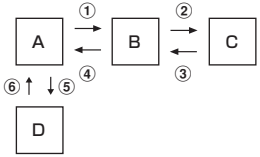
Selecting linked pages and items : The following operations are available.

- Linked page : Highlighted when the cursor is on. Go to the linked page.
- Character entry field : Enter characters.
- Radio button : Select 1 item from options. (●) indicates the selected state.
- Check box : Select multiple items from options. [√] indicates the selected state.
- Pulldown menu : Select items from the displayed menus.
- Button : Execute the assigned function.

✔INFORMATION

- When Motion sensor is "ON", you can scroll a screen by tilting the terminal.→P43
- You can press [multi] for 1 second or more in a vertically long site or website to display the PagePilot screen.→P175
- You can press keypad while Full Browser screen is displayed to use the assigned function. You can check functions assigned to each dial key by using Shortcut of FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings.→P174
- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF".→P174

- A display log is used for moving to other pages. Up to 50 display logs are temporarily saved in the place called "cache" in the terminal. You can change pages with no communication by using the saved log. However, when the terminal cache size is exceeded or when displaying a page which is set to forcibly read the latest information, communications are started.
- You cannot change pages while connecting to FirstPass center (→P177).
- When displaying Page A→B→C in that order (①, ②), return to Page A (③, ④), and proceed to Page D (⑤), the display history of Page A→B→C is erased. You can return to Page A from Page D (⑥) but cannot again return to Page B (①).



- Information such as entered characters or settings is not stored in the cache.
- Selected items or entered contents are not saved in Bookmark, Screen memo, etc.
- When terminating i-mode/Full Browser, all display logs are deleted.

◆ Convenient operations

Connecting to iMenu*1 or Full Browser Home*2 : MENU 4

Reloading information : MENU 6*1 or MENU 5*2

Displaying URL <Display URL> : MENU 7*1 or MENU 6*2 ▶ 3

- Press i-αppli to copy URL.

Displaying/Hiding the guide area : MENU 8 8

Switching vertical/horizontal screens : MENU 8 9 ▶ 1-3

Registering currently displayed website*2 : MENU 8 (Clear) ▶ "Yes"

Sending a URL by i-mode mail : MENU 9 ▶ 1 or 2

- A URL is attached to the message text.

Opening/Closing a new tab, opening a link with a new tab, etc. : 📷 1 ▶ 1-4

Moving to other pages, zooming*2, dragging, selecting/pasting text area, etc. : 📷 2 ▶ 1-9*1 or 1-0*2

Changing font size : 📷 3 ▶ 1-5

Displaying display log/tab list : 📷 5

Displaying PagePilot screen (whole page) : 📷 6

Adding a phone number or mail address to phonebook <Add to phonebook> :

Move the cursor to a phone number or mail address ▶ 📷 7 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Displaying shortcut list*2 : 📷 9

*1 i-mode

*2 Full Browser

❖Displaying multiple sites/websites <Multi window>

You can view up to 5 sites/websites by switching them.

<Example> Displaying a link of site/website with a new tab

1 Move the cursor to a link while a site or website is displayed ▶ 📷 1 2

Closing a tab : 📷 1 3 ▶ **Select a page**

Switching tabs : 📷 1 4 ▶ **Select a page**

- When you change the browser type of the currently displayed tab while displaying multiple tabs, other tabs disappear.

❖Displaying/Hiding the pointer

1 While a site or website is displayed, MENU 8 5 ▶ **1 or 2**

- For websites containing frames, the range the pointer can move may be limited.
- While the pointer is displayed, it is displayed as follows according to operations.

: Displaying pointer : Selecting link

: Selecting text area / : Waiting for dragging/Currently dragging

❖Operating by changing to drag mode

You can switch to drag mode while the pointer is displayed to operate corresponding contents.

- Operations available in drag mode vary by contents.

1 Move pointer onto contents ▶ ● (1 sec. or more) ▶ ●

- Use ✣ to operate. Press CLR to cancel.

❖Displaying a frame compatible website

When you connect to a website that has frames, enlarge the individual frame to operate.

1 On the frame thumbnail screen, ▶Select a frame

🔍 appears at the top of the display.

- During enlarged display of current frame, press CLR to return to the frame thumbnail screen.

❖Copying/Pasting character string on site or website

You can temporarily copy the character in the selected area or search for it by quick search while the pointer is displayed. However, you cannot select characters on some sites or websites.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted to anywhere any number of times.

<Example> Copying a character string

1 While a site or website is displayed, 2 ▶ 7 or 8 ▶Select the start position▶Select the end position▶"Copy"

- Select "Quick search" to start the quick search, "Retry" to select the area to copy again. For i-mode, select "Read map" to activate GPS compatible i-αppli. →P269

Pasting a character string : Move the cursor to the position to paste characters while a site or website is displayed▶ 2 ▶ 9 or 0

❖Searching for character string on site or website

- A search in the current page is unavailable on some websites.

1 While a site or website is displayed, 4 ▶Enter characters in the character string search entry field (up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters)▶

- To discriminate between upper case and lower case, select Case-sensitive field and press 1.
- The search result is highlighted. Press ME NO / to move to the previous or next item.
- Press CLR to end searching.

❖Displaying character correctly <Change character code>

When characters on sites or websites are not displayed correctly, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character code.

1 While a site or website is displayed, ME NO 8 7

- Each press changes the character code in the order of SJIS→EUC→JIS→UTF8.
- When a site or website is displayed, "SJIS" is set.

◆Displaying Flash graphics

Flash graphics can be displayed on FOMA terminals. Flash graphics enhances the expressive power of the site.

- Flash®Video (FLV) is the video that can be played with Adobe Flash Player. The following 2 types can be played.

Type	Description
Progressive replay	Video data that is created separately from Flash graphics is downloaded from the distribution server and played.
Embedded replay	Video data is embedded in Flash graphics as a component.

- It cannot be played on some sites or websites.
- Progressive Flash®Video can be displayed up to 10 Mbytes per item. A large amount of data may be received. Note that communication of a large amount of data requires high charges.
- Flash®Video cannot be saved.
- Streaming replay is unavailable. Also, images or screen memos cannot be saved using the progressive replay.
- Progressive replay is available only on the Browser screen and embedded replay is available on Browser screen and screen memo.
- If Flash graphic including video data is saved and then played except on the Full Browser screen or Screen memo, the video data is not played.

- Replay specification of Flash®Video is as follows. However, some files cannot be downloaded or played even if the file format is supported.

Codec	Video : Sorenson Spark/On2VP6 Audio : MP3
Maximum bit rate*	Video : 400 Kbps Audio : 96 Kbps
Video size	QVGA (horizontal 320×vertical 240)
Maximum frame rate	15 fps

* Indicates the maximum value in FOMA high-speed area and does not guarantee the actual traffic.

- Flash graphics up to the versions equivalent for Flash8 (partially Flash9) are supported. However, some of the corresponding versions cannot be displayed.
- Flash graphics are not displayed when Image display setting of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings is "OFF".
- When Flash graphics are not operated for 5 minutes or more, replay stops.
- While Flash graphics are displayed, operations on a site or website may differ from ordinary ones.
- Some Flash graphics have sound effects. The volume follows the setting of Melody effect sound in Adjust volume. To disable the sound effect, set Sound of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF". Note that the sound effect of the Flash graphics set for the stand-by display or incoming call screen is not emitted.
- Note that FOMA terminal may be vibrated by some Flash graphics even when Vibrate alert/effect is set to "OFF".
- Some Flash graphics use the phone information. You can set whether to use the phone information in Phone info use of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings.
- If Flash graphics do not operate correctly or an error occurs during replay, the Flash graphics may not be saved correctly.
- When Flash graphics are saved in Data Box, Screen memo or microSD card, they may be visually different depending on the saving destination.
- Some Flash graphics can be operated by ⊠ or pointer.
- To save a page that has Flash graphics to Screen memo, added data is also saved by automatic download type but not saved by manual download type.
- Flash graphics cannot be saved using Full Browser.

Bookmark

Saving web pages or sites for quick access

You can register frequently visited sites or websites in Bookmark and thereafter quickly display them.

◆ Registering in Bookmark

- URLs can be registered in Bookmark in up to 256 characters for i-mode and up to 512 characters for Full Browser.
- Bookmarks of i-mode/Full Browser are registered in the same memory space. However, some pages cannot be registered.

1 While a site or website is displayed, MENU 1 2

2 Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶ 📷

- When the same URL is already registered, the confirmation screen for overwriting appears.
- If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.

3 Select a folder where the bookmark is added.

◆ Displaying site or website from Bookmark

1 MENU [i-mode] 2 ▶ Select a folder

- Icon definitions.
  (light blue) : Folders stored by default
  (dark blue) : Created folder
  (dark blue) : Created folder (Secrecy ON)
- During thumbnail display, the number of registered bookmarks is displayed at the end of the folder name.
- To delete all bookmarks, on the folder list,
  MENU 2 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes".

2 Select a bookmark

The browser type that was used for registration is used for connection.

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Bookmark of i-mode : Bookmark of Full Browser

Editing a title : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ MENU 1

The next procedure→P168 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a bookmark.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- If you delete a bookmark registered as Access shortcut, Access shortcut is also canceled.

Displaying a URL : Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 3

- Press ✉ to copy a URL.

Adding URL to phonebook : Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 6 2 ▶ 1 or 2

Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Displaying registering result : MENU 7

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 8

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website : MENU 1 1
- Each time you press MENU 6 on the folder list or MENU 6 1 on the bookmark list, you can switch thumbnail display and list display. When the thumbnail is displayed, icons may appear instead of images.

◆ Managing bookmark folders

- Up to 20 items can be created. However, you cannot delete "Bookmark" folder or change its folder settings.

<Example> Creating

1 MENU **[i-mode] 2**

2 MENU 1 1

Changing a folder setting : Move the cursor to a folder▶ MENU 1 2

Sorting folders : MENU 1 3

Deleting : Move the cursor to a folder▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Authenticate▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a folder.

3 Set required items▶ ●

Folder name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Secrecy: : Set whether to display a folder in Privacy mode (when a Bookmark is set to "Hide secrecy fldrs").

✔INFORMATION

- If Secrecy of a folder containing a bookmark registered with Access shortcuts is set to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

◆ Moving bookmark

You can move saved bookmarks to another folder.

1 MENU **[i-mode] 2 ▶ Select a folder**

2 Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1-3

- To move selected items, select them▶ ●.

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

- If you attempt to move a bookmark registered with Access shortcuts to a folder with Secrecy set to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

◆ Connecting to sites or websites using simple key sequence <Access shortcuts>

You can quickly display a bookmark from the stand-by display by registering it in Access shortcuts.

❖Registering Access shortcuts

- 1 dial key can register 1 shortcut, up to 10 items can be registered. However, a bookmark in a folder whose Secrecy is "ON" cannot be registered.

1 MENU **[i-mode] 8**

2 Move the cursor to Not recorded▶ ●

The icon numbers (0-9) correspond to the keypads (0-9) used for Access shortcuts.

Displaying sites or websites : Select a bookmark

Canceling : Move the cursor to a bookmark▶ MENU 2 ▶ "Yes"

3 Select a folder▶Select an bookmark

For the bookmark of Full Browser registered as access shortcut, appears on the access shortcut list.

✔INFORMATION

- A bookmark of Full Browser can be displayed on Full Browser using Access shortcuts or connecting from Access shortcuts list.

❖Displaying site or website using Access shortcuts

1 0-9▶iR

A site or website corresponding to the keypad appears.

Screen memo

Saving sites or websites contents

Currently displayed contents of a site or website can be saved as a screen memo or captured image.

◆ Saving screen memo

- You can save up to 500 Kbytes for i-mode and up to 1.5 Mbytes for Full Browser per item. However, some sites or websites cannot be registered.

1 While a site or website is displayed, MENU 2 2

2 "Yes"

Saving only captured image : "Only displayed"

Setting screen memo or screen capture to Shortcut icons : Move the cursor to "Yes" or "Only displayed"▶ ●

◆ Displaying screen memo

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 3

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Screen memo of i-mode : Screen memo of Full Browser
  : Protected screen memo

2 Select screen memo

- When a linked page on a screen memo is selected, the browser type used when the screen memo was registered is used for connection.

Protecting/Unprotecting : Move the cursor to a screen memo▶MENU 1▶1-4▶"Yes"

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them▶●.

Deleting : Move the cursor to a screen memo▶MENU 2▶1-3▶"Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a screen memo.
- To delete selected items, select them▶●. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Displaying a URL : Move the cursor to a screen memo▶MENU 3

- Press iR to copy a URL.

Changing a title: Move the cursor to a screen memo▶MENU 4▶Enter a title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)▶●

- If you register with no title, "No title" is displayed in the screen memo list.

Displaying registering result : MENU 5

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website : MENU 2 1
- Operating Flash graphics again on the screen memo display screen : MENU 6 7

RSS reader

Using RSS reader

You can register RSS that is provided by news sites or blogs in RSS reader and get the latest information of registered websites only by updating the RSS.

◆ Registering in RSS reader <RSS registration>

- Up to 20 items can be registered. You can register 100 items per RSS, and information of up to 1,000 items (2 Mbytes) can be saved.
- This function is unavailable in i-mode.

1 While a website is displayed, MENU 0 2▶Select RSS▶"Yes"

- A confirmation screen for updating may appear.
- When the RSS is already registered, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.
- RSS exceeding 2 Mbytes cannot be registered. Also, some websites cannot be registered.

◆Displaying RSS information

1 MENU **[i-mode]** **9**

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : New item exists : Unread item exists
- The number of unread items is displayed beside the title.

2 Select a channel

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Unread item : Protected item

Updating RSS : Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU **1▶ 1**-**3▶ "Yes"**

- To update selected items, select them▶ ●.

Changing a title : Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU **2**

The next procedure→P168 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU **3▶ 1**-**3▶ Authenticate▶ "Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a channel.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ ●.

Displaying details of a channel : Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU **4**

3 Select an item

- The following operations can be performed on the overview screen.
  ● / ✉▶ "Yes" : Connect to website
  MENU **1▶ 1**-**5** : Change a font size
- If there is no item, "No summary" is displayed.

Deleting : Move the cursor to an item▶ MENU **1▶ 1**-**4▶ "Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to an item.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ ●. To delete all read items or all items, authentication is required.

Canceling : Move the cursor to an item▶ MENU **2▶ 1**-**4▶ "Yes"**

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them▶ ●.

Setting all to the read state : MENU **3▶ "Yes"**

Displaying the number of items : MENU **4**

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from a website : MENU **0** **1**

Downloading data (file)

- The data (file) and the maximum size of each data that can be saved are as follows.
  - Image (i-mode : 500 Kbytes, Full Browser : 1.5 Mbytes)
  - Melody, Chara-den, ToruCa (Details), Font : 100 Kbytes
  - PDF data, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files : 2 Mbytes
  - Dictionary : 32 Kbytes
  - ToruCa : 1 Kbytes
  - Schedule/i-schedule : 1 Mbytes
- Some data (files) can be saved to microSD card.
- Some data (files) cannot be correctly saved, displayed, played nor set.
- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P302
  To save data (files) except those in Data Box, delete data (files) stored in FOMA terminal or microSD card.

◆Downloading image

You can save JPEG/GIF/PNG/BMP images, GIF animation and Flash graphics. However, Flash graphics cannot be saved using Full Browser.

- Images larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 While a site or website is displayed, ● 8▶ 1-**5**

- When a confirmation screen for saving an image appears, select "Yes".
- To save an image or a background image, ●▶ Select the image. To save selected image, select them▶ ●.
- Select selected images to save the image at the pointer position.
- Save all images and Save One Background Image are unavailable when images that cannot be saved are included.

2 Set required items▶ ●▶ Select the saving destination

Saving multiple images : Select the saving destination

- Some items in an image cannot be selected or changed.
- Up to 36 characters for Display name, up to 36 characters including alphanumeric characters and ".", "-", "_" for File name, up to 100 characters for Comment can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.
- For images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, "File restricted" is displayed in File restriction. Also, you cannot change File restriction for images downloaded from sites.
- PNG/BMP images are saved in "Other" folder of microSD card, but they cannot be displayed.
- JPEG/GIF images that are 20×20 in size within 90 Kbytes and can be redistributed are saved in a folder under "Deco-mail pict" folder.
- Images with extension "ifm" are saved in "Item" folder.
- When "microSD" appears in the guide area, press [i-αppli] and [📷] to save to microSD card.→P291
- To save to FOMA terminal, press [MENU] and [1]-[7] to set to stand-by display etc.→P280

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from the screen memo display screen : [MENU] [3] → [1]-[5]

◆ Downloading data

- You need to subscribe to i-concier to download schedule/i-schedule.
- Files of Word 2007, Excel 2007 and PowerPoint 2007 cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.
- You can enter up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters for Display name of Melody, up to 36 characters for Display name of PDF data/Kisekae Tool/Machi-chara/Chara-den. Also, up to 100 characters can be entered for Comment of Chara-den.

1 Display a site or website ▶ Select data to download

- You can stop downloading by pressing [●] or [📷] while downloading (the key to press varies by files).

2 "Save"

Saving PDF data :

① [MENU] [2] ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Enter a display name** ▶ [📷]

- To download the remaining part of the PDF data partially downloaded, press [MENU] [8].

② [CLR]

Saving a dictionary/font : "Save" ▶ [●]

Saving ToruCa : "Save" ▶ [1] **or** [2]

- For some data types, display name etc. are displayed on the save screen. Set required items and press [📷] to save. When "microSD" appears in the guide area, press [i-αppli] and [📷] to save to microSD card.
- For some data types, data can be checked be selecting "Display", "Play" or "Preview".
- To cancel saving, "Back" ▶ Select "No".

✔INFORMATION

- When downloading of PDF data, Kisekae Tool or Machi-chara is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. The rest of partially saved data can be downloaded from each saving destination.
- When saving melodies, Kisekae Tool or Machi-chara to FOMA terminal, press [MENU] on the save screen to set it as call alert etc. Note that the set data is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If stopping saving of i-schedule, it may be saved partially. To download it again, delete the partially saved i-schedule.
- You may not download Machi-chara when date and time are not set.
- If you try to download the PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes, downloading confirmation screen appears.
- PDF data with total size of i-mode bookmarks and marks exceeding 100 Kbytes or with unknown size or PDF data inapplicable to this FOMA terminal cannot be downloaded.
- When the same PDF data with different i-mode bookmarks or marks is downloaded again, they are additionally saved. If the number of i-mode bookmarks or marks exceeds 10, a screen appears indicating that the recordable number is exceeded. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number of items becomes lower than the limit.

Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion

- You can upload up to 2,048 Kbytes of JPEG/GIF images and moving pictures/i-motion in the MP4 format (when multiple images or character strings are included : up to 2,128 Kbytes).

1 Displaying site or website ▶ "Browse"

- "View" appears when image or moving picture/i-motion can be uploaded. If browsing the same site or website with a PC etc., it is displayed in different icon.

2 Select File format ▶ Select a file

- When microSD card is installed, select "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- To change or cancel the selected image, press "View" again and select "Change" or "Cancel".

✔INFORMATION

- Uploading method or files that can be uploaded vary by site or website.
- Data except still images, moving pictures/i-motion or character strings cannot be uploaded. And, images or moving pictures/i-motion prohibited to output from FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.
- Moving pictures/i-motion of ASF format or those partially downloaded cannot be uploaded.

Convenient Functions

- Some functions may not be used in certain sites or websites.

◆ Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/SMS To/Web To/ Media To function

1 Display a site or website ▶ Move the cursor to a phone number, mail address, URL or 1Seg watching information

- Only the information which the cursor can be placed on can be selected.

2 ●

Phone To (AV Phone To) :
You can make a call under set conditions.→P62

Mail To :
The i-mode mail to the selected mail address can be created and sent.→P128

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the phonebook 2in1 setting of the selected mail address when the address is saved in the phonebook, or it is not set when the address is not saved.

SMS To : Select Call type ▶ 3 ▶ MENU ▶ "Yes"
SMS to the selected phone number can be created and sent.→P157

Web To :
A site or website is connected.

- When a URL is selected from message text etc., a confirmation screen for connecting to a site appears.

Media To :
You can watch 1Seg or make watching/recording reservation.→P206, 213

✔INFORMATION

- When multiple addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be used correctly.

◆ Using location information

You can select a link item of a location information on the current screen (site or website, screen memo or MessageR/F) to view a map, activate GPS-compatible i-αppli or make mail attachment.

- You can also send Location info by selecting a link for sending Location info.→P268 "■Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

<Example> Viewing a map from a link item of location information on site screen

1 Display a site ▶ Select a location info

2 "Read map"

GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts.
Starting GPS compatible i-αppli : "Map/GPS αppli" ▶ Select i-αppli
Using GPS compatible i-αppli→P269
Attaching location information to mail : "Paste to mail" ▶ "OK"

Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings

You can select "i-modeBrowserSetting"/"FullBrowser Setting" to set items of each browser and select "Common Setting" to set items common to i-mode and Full Browser.

❖i-modeBrowser/FullBrowser Setting

Image display : Set whether to display/hide JPEG/GIF/PNG/BMP images, GIF animation and Flash graphics.
- Set "OFF" to display instead of images.

Sound : Set whether to set off sound.
Movie auto play*1 : Set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion while downloading/after downloading.→P182
Display mode*2 : Set whether to display a screen in the PC screen size (PC layout mode) or aligned with the horizontal display size of FOMA terminal (Keitai mode).
Movie DL in page : Set whether to download moving pictures such as i-motion and a movie.
- When "Confirm always" is set, a confirmation screen appears each time communication request is made.

Script : Set operation of a page containing JavaScript.
- Some websites may not be correctly displayed unless setting Script to Valid.

Phone info use : Set whether to use the phone information in FOMA terminal.
- When "Valid" is set, time and language information may be sent to IP (Information Provider) via Internet and may be known by a third party.

Font size : Set font sizes.
Cookie/Delete Cookies : Set or delete Cookie.
- Cookie is a function that saves website-specified information such as date/time and the number of times the website is displayed in FOMA terminal. Some websites or contents services may not be correctly displayed or used unless setting Cookie to Valid.
- When setting Cookie to Valid, information such as date/time or number of times the website is displayed is sent. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to a third party by this. Please be forewarned.

Referer : Set whether to send Referer.
- Referer is a URL of a website from which a link is selected to move to another website. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to third parties by sending Referer. Please be forewarned.

Window auto-open : Set whether to automatically open a new window.
Pointer Display : Set whether to display/hide pointer.
FullBrowser home*2 : Set a website as Home.
FullBrowser usage*2 : Set whether to use Full Browser.
- To set "Yes", be sure to read "For more information".

FB permission disp*2 : Set whether to display a connection confirmation screen when Full Browser is used for connection.
Zoom To*2 : Set screen magnification to display a website.
Shortcut*2 : Set functions to be assigned to keypads.
Auto NW trans. size*2 : Set whether to permit communication exceeding maximum size for a page.
- When "Restricted" is set, Flash graphics may not be correctly displayed.

*1 Only for i-modeBrowserSetting
*2 Only for FullBrowser Setting

1 MENU **[i-mode]** **7** ▶ **1** **or** **2**

2 Set required items

Setting image display : **1** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting sound : **2** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting display mode* : **3** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting whether to download images in a page : **4** ▶ **1**-**3**
Setting Script operation : **5** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting whether to use phone information : **6** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting a font size : **7** ▶ **1**-**5**
Setting Cookie : **8** ▶ **1**-**5**
Deleting Cookie : **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**
Setting Referer : **0** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting Window auto-open : Press ▷◁ **to display the second page** ▶ **1** ▶ **1** **or** **2**
Setting pointer display : Press ▷◁ **to display the second page** ▶ **2** ▶ **1** **or** **2**

Setting FullBrowser home* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 3 ▶Enter a URL (up to 2,048 one-byte characters)▶ 📷

Setting FullBrowser usage* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 4 ▶"Yes" or "No"▶"OK"

Setting FB permission disp* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting screen magnification* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 6 ▶ 1-7

Editing a shortcut* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 7 ▶Select a shortcut▶Select an item▶ 📷

- Select ✉ ▶"Yes" on the shortcut list to restore the default setting.→P392

Setting sizes for auto transmission* : Press ✉ to display the second page▶ 8 ▶ 1-3

* Only for FullBrowser Setting

✔INFORMATION

- While a site or website is displayed, press MENU 8 ▶ 2-5, 0 to change the following settings.
  - Image display, Sound, Script, Pointer Display, Display mode (only for FullBrowser Setting)

❖Common Setting

Certificate/Issued Certificates : Display or set certificates.→P176

Secure trans. svc : Set user certificates, host, omission of security code input, etc.→P177, 178

Access point : Set an access point.→P175

i-mode button : Set whether to connect to iMenu or display i-mode menu screen when iM is pressed on the stand-by display.

- i-mode menu screen appears overseas regardless of the setting.

Scroll : Set lines of move for one scroll.

PagePilot Display : Set whether to display the PagePilot screen that shows the whole page and the current display position while the pointer is displayed.

Pointer Move Range : Set movement range of pointer.

Pointer Speed : Set pointer speed.

Bookmark Display : Set display method of Bookmark.

Display light : Set the duration of display light time while displaying.

Show/Hide navi keys : Set whether to show/hide the guide area.

1 MENU [i-mode] 7 3

2 Set required items

Setting i-mode button : 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting lines of move for one scroll : 6 ▶ 1-4

Setting whether to display/hide PagePilot : 7 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting movement range of pointer : 8 ▶ 1-3

Setting pointer speed : 9 ▶ 1-3

Setting display method of Bookmark : 0 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting display light : ✉ to display the second page▶ 1 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting whether to show/hide guide area : ✉ to display the second page▶ 2 ▶ 1 or 2

✔INFORMATION

- While a site or website is displayed, press MENU 8 6 to change speed of pointer acceleration.

◆Resetting i-mode setting

You can reset i-mode settings to default states.→P392

1 MENU [i-mode] 7 5 ▶Authenticate▶"Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- Checking current settings : MENU [i-mode] 7 4

◆Changing host (ISP connection communication) <Host selection>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

ISP connection communication

You can connect to the various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DOCOMO. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- You cannot make settings or changes for the host during communication.

Provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to the provider to use ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details of service such as site, Internet connection, mail function.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DOCOMO never charges you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 7 3 4

2 **Move the cursor to User setting** ▶ MENU

Restoring settings for using i-mode : **"i-mode"** ▶ [camera]

Changing to the previously set host : **Select the host** ▶ [camera]

3 **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [camera]

- You can delete all the contents entered for the items all at once by pressing MENU.

Host name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Host number : Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address/Host address2 : Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- Host address 2 is the host for i-Channel.

4 **Select the edited host** ▶ [camera]

✔INFORMATION

- When host is changed, i-Channel information is restored to the default setting and the i-Channel ticker does not appear on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing CLR on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears.
- If you change the host, the program settings of the Music&Video Channel is initialized and the program cannot be obtained automatically. If you select "Set program" on Music&Video Channel screen, the setting confirmation screen appears, and if you select "Yes", the program setting information is received and the program can be obtained automatically.
- When Host number or Host address is changed, Auto-send settings are canceled.
- When the host is changed while using 2in1, i-Channel ticker for each mode is reset to the default settings.

Operating certificate

You can perform the operation of the certificate required for the SSL/TLS session.

◆ Displaying certificate and setting certificate validity/invalidity <Manage certificate>

- The following certificates are required for connecting to SSL/TLS page.

CA Certificate : The certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.

DOCOMO Cert : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM by default.

User Certificate : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. It proves that you subscribe to FOMA service. After requesting a certificate to be issued by FirstPass center and downloading it, the certificate is saved in the UIM.

Original certificate (Issued certificate) : A certificate issued by companies, local governments, etc., and it is saved in FOMA terminal after being downloaded. Downloaded certificates can be used at compatible sites.

- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, certificates except CA Certificate do not appear.

<Example> Setting validity/invalidity

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 7 3 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- Icon definitions are as follows.

: DOCOMO certificate/User certificate : Original certificate

: Original certificate whose chain is broken

: Certificate that is set to Valid

2 **Move the cursor to a certificate** ▶ MENU 2

- DOCOMO Cert2 cannot be set.

Displaying : Move the cursor to a certificate ▶ MENU 1

- Selecting an original certificate displays the certificate list. Select a certificate to view.

✔INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed
  User
  CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
  O= : (Organization) Company name etc.
  C= : (Country) Country name
  Issued by
  CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
  O= : (Organization) Company name etc.
  OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company etc.
  Expiration date
  Serial number
- For a certificate with owner, issuer and/or expiration date items left blank, only their item names are displayed.

◆ Setting FirstPass <Certificate download>

Connect to the FirstPass center, request to issue the user certificate and download it.

- Screens for FirstPass center connection or operations are subject to change.
- Mails cannot be sent/received and MessageR/F cannot be received during connection to the FirstPass center.
- You cannot use this function overseas.

1 MENU **[i-mode]** 7 3 3 1 ▶ **"English"**

2 **"Request your certificate"** ▶ **"Continue"** ▶ **Enter PIN2 code**

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is issued.

Revoking the issued user certificate : "Other settings" ▶ **"Revoke your certificate"** ▶ **Select the certificate to send** ▶ **Enter PIN2 code** ▶ **"OK"** ▶ **"Next"** ▶ **"OK"**

- If PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the application for issuance is canceled.

3 **"Download"** ▶ **"Continue"**

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is downloaded.

- Downloaded user certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P176

✔INFORMATION

- No packet communication fee applies for connection to FirstPass center.
- FirstPass can be used on Full Browser.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DOCOMO's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass is available for Internet communication from a FOMA terminal and Internet communication in the condition the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is required. For details, refer to 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) in CD-ROM. To view 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".
- Before requesting a user certificate, read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code. All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Take extreme care not to let UIM or PIN2 code used incorrectly by any third party.
- If UIM is misplaced or stolen, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- In any circumstances DOCOMO assumes no obligation nor responsibility for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DOCOMO nor certification organizations provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL/TLS. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

◆ Downloading original certificate

- Up to 5 items for original certificate, up to 500 Kbytes in total can be saved.

1 **Display a site▶Select a certificate▶"Yes"**

- [●] while downloading : Stopping download

2 **"Save"**

- Downloaded certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P176
- When password entry is requested, enter the password to the password entry field and select "OK".

Canceling saving : "Back"▶"No"

✔INFORMATION

- Original certificates are issued by companies or local governments, etc. Downloaded certificates can be used at compatible sites.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading original certificates.
- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, Original certificate cannot be downloaded.

❖Changing certificate control name

You can change the control name of a downloaded original certificate.

1 **[MENU] [i-mode] [7] [3] [2]▶Move the cursor to a certificate▶[MENU] [3]**

2 **Enter the name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters)▶[●]**

❖Deleting Certificate

You can delete original certificates downloaded.

1 **[MENU] [i-mode] [7] [3] [2]▶Move the cursor to a certificate▶[MENU] [4]▶"Yes"▶Authenticate**

◆ Skipping password entries <Skip password>

To use an original certificate, enter terminal security code for authentication. You can set whether to skip entry of terminal security code to reuse the original certificate already authenticated.

1 **[MENU] [i-mode] [7] [3] [3] [3]▶[1] or [2]**

◆ Changing host for certificate issue <Center host>

If you use services except the FirstPass, set the center host for certificate. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 **[MENU] [i-mode] [7] [3] [3] [2]**

2 **Select Host field▶[2]**

Restoring a connection to FirstPass : Select host field▶[1]▶[●]

3 **Set required items▶[●]**

User host : Enter up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters for the host.
User host URL : Enter up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters for URL.

i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier

Using i-motion/movie

i-motion/Movie 180
Downloading i-motion/movie 181
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically ..... Movie auto play 182

Using i-Channel

i-Channel 182
Displaying i-Channel 182
Setting i-Channel ticker ..... i-Channel setting 183
Resetting i-Channel ..... Reset i-Channel 183

Using i-concier

i-concier 183
When information is received ..... Receiving information 184
Displaying i-concier details 184
Setting display for information ..... Information display 184

i-motion/Movie

You can obtain movies or sounds such as i-motion/movie from sites or websites.

❖i-motion

- You can play/save up to 10 Mbytes of i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format. i-motion in ASF format is not supported.
- You can play the following i-motion.

Type	Playing action
Normal type (can be saved*)	i-motion data is played while being downloaded. After download, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motion to be played after downloading all data.
	i-motion data is played after downloading all data.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	i-motion data is played while being downloaded. i-motion data is deleted after playing.

* Some i-motion may not allow saving.

❖Movie

- You can play Windows Media Video (WMV) and Windows Media Audio (WMA) up to 10 Mbytes in i-mode and play them unlimitedly in Full Browser. However, you cannot save them.
- Download of a movie may receive a large amount of data. Note that communication of a large amount of data requires high charges. For details of packet communication fees and charging plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Operating environments (browser type, OS, etc.) are checked in some sites or websites and a movie may not be played on FOMA terminal.

- You can play the following movies.

Type	Distribution method	Playing action
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Real-time distribution	Distributed in real time. Pause/Resuming play/Moving play position are unavailable.
	On-demand distribution	Distribute movies that are prepared in advance.

File extension	Windows Media file Metafile : wvx, wax, asx Media data : wma, wmv, asf
Codec	• Windows Media Video 9 (Main Profile : Low level) • Windows Media Audio 2-9 (Windows Media Audio Standard : Level 3)
Maximum bit rate*	Video : 2 Mbps Audio : 320 Kbps
Maximum frame rate	30 fps
Maximum screen size	VGA (horizontal 640×vertical 480)

* Indicates the maximum value in FOMA high-speed area and does not guarantee the actual traffic.

Downloading i-motion/movie

- You can play/save i-motion and can only play movies.

1 Select i-motion/movie while sites or websites are displayed

Replay starts while data is downloaded or when the download is completed. To save the i-motion, go to Step 2. For movies, when the replay ends, site screen automatically reappears.

- During downloading, press [📷] and select "Yes" to stop downloading.
- When a streaming type i-motion/movie is selected, a playing confirmation screen appears.
- When the battery level is low, a confirmation screen for playing may appear when you start playing or while it is played.
- For operation during replay, see Step 3 in "Playing movie/i-motion" (→P282). However, for i-motion/movie that is played while being downloaded, some operations are different as follows.
  - [●] : Pause/Play (only for the replay of normal type i-motion or movies of on-demand distribution)
  - [📷] ▶ "Yes" : Interrupt (only while playing streaming type i-motion or movies)
  - [📷] : Stop (only for normal type i-motion. Press [●] while being stopped to play i-motion from the beginning)
  - [⇄] : Switch horizontal display (full-screen)/horizontal display (normal) in YOKO-MOTION style (when an image size is 320×240 or 640×480, horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (wide-screen)→horizontal display (normal))
  - [MENU] : Display detail information

2 "Save"

Replaying : "Play"
Displaying detail information : "File property"
Detail information→P300
Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

- For streaming type i-motion, if you select "Back", the site screen reappears.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ [📷]

Selected item is saved to "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie.

- When "📱↔microSD" appears in the guide area, press [microSD] and [📷] to save to microSD card.→P282
- To save to FOMA terminal, press [MENU] and [1]-[5] to set to the stand-by display etc.→P285

✔INFORMATION

<Common to i-motion and movie>

- The replay restrictions such as number of replay times or replay expiration may be set.
- When replay expiration or replay period expires while downloading data, you cannot play nor save.
- If data is improper, download may be canceled.
- In File property, items to be displayed differ depending on i-motion/movies.
- When a site has multiple movies, only the first movie is downloaded/played with i-mode, and all the movies are successively downloaded/played with Full Browser.
- When playing streaming type data while being downloaded, if a call comes in or the specified date/time of watching reservation of 1Seg, alarm clock or schedule comes, download is interrupted and the replay is canceled.
- Replay may be paused to wait for data reception while the data is played. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception starts.
- Replay may become unavailable or pictures may be distorted during replay due to radio wave conditions etc. Even in this case, if the data is normally downloaded, it can be played after download. However, downloaded data may not be correctly played.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302

<i-motion>

- When you stop downloading i-motion whose file size is between 500 Kbytes and 10 Mbytes that can be partially saved, the confirmation screen for resuming appears. When "No" is selected, a confirmation screen for partial saving appears. When the data is partially saved, the remainder can be downloaded from the i-motion list.→P283 INFORMATION in "Playing movie/i-motion"
- Even if ticker (text) is included in i-motion, the text cannot be played.
- Even when Ring alert or Receive display is displayed as "Available" in detail information (→P299) before saving i-motion used from i-αppli, it may not be saved. In this case, it cannot be set for ring alert or incoming call image.

<Movie>

- Replay may be stopped if there is an incoming call, alarm operation or operations of other functions during replay.
- Operations for some movies are different.
- You can play a movie that is protected by a license. However, FOMA terminal may not play it due to the license setting.
- When activated from i-mode, a movie is downloaded/played up to 10 Mbytes, and a message indicating the size excess appears after replay.

Movie auto play

Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

You can set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion while downloading or after it is downloaded.

1 MENU **[i-mode] 7 1 3 ▶ 1 or 2**

✔INFORMATION

- Even when "Invalid" is set, i-motion can be played by selecting "Play" on the download completion screen.

i-Channel

(In Japanese only)

This is a service that the information such as news or weather is distributed to terminals compatible with i-Channel. It can automatically receive information and show the latest information as a ticker on the stand-by display or display on the channel list by pressing CLR (Displaying the channel list→P182).

And, there are 2 types; the one is "Basic Channel" provided by DOCOMO and the other is "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" provided by IPs (Information Providers). For "Basic Channel", the packet communication fee for updating the distributed information is not charged. For "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" that you can use by registering your favorite channels, the packet communication fee for updating information is charged. Note that, when viewing detail information for "Basic Channel" and "Okonomi (Favorite) channel", packet communication fee is charged separately. For overseas use, packet communication fee is charged for both automatic update and viewing detail information. Also, for overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.

- i-Channel is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).
- For details of i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Displaying i-Channel

By displaying i-Channel, you can view details of information of the current ticker display.

1 On stand-by display, CLR

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set on the stand-by display, press MENU [i-mode] **6 1**.

2 Select a channel

The site is connected and the detail information appears.

✔INFORMATION

- While receiving information, ((•)) keeps blinking.
- When information is received, none of the ring alert, vibrator, light operates.
- In the following cases, when the i-Channel list appears by pressing CLR on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker appears.
  - When the information cannot be received as FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of service area
  - When moving UIM to another i-Channel compatible terminal
  - When changing the host→P175
  - When initializing i-Channel→P183
- When the i-Channel or i-mode service is canceled, no ticker appears; pressing CLR displays a screen for non-subscribers. However, before the procedure for cancellation is completed, a ticker may appear and pressing CLR may display the last information received in the i-Channel list.
- Under some usage conditions, information may be received when displaying the i-Channel list.
- For operations while displaying i-Channel, see "Viewing and operating screen" (→P165). However, when i-Channel list is displayed, some operations differ as follows.
  - Reloading information : MENU **1**
  - Setting sound : MENU **2**
  - Opening new tab : MENU **3 1 ▶ 2**-**5**
- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF".→P174

i-Channel setting

Setting i-Channel ticker

1 MENU [i-mode] 6 2 ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

✔INFORMATION

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set to the stand-by display and "Display" is selected, a confirmation screen for canceling the stand-by display settings appears.
- When the i-mode service is canceled before canceling the i-Channel service, it remains set to "Yes".
- When using 2in1, i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

Reset i-Channel

Resetting i-Channel

You can reset i-Channel to default states.

1 MENU [i-mode] 6 3 ▶ "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- After i-Channel is reset, no ticker appears on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing CLR on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears on the stand-by display.
- When 2in1 is used, resetting is required for each mode. Note that a ticker or the i-Channel list is reset regardless of modes.

i-concier

i-concier is a service to support your life like a butler or concierge. It stores a variety of your information (area information of your residence, schedules, ToruCa, phonebook, etc.) and offers you information that suits your preferences of your living area and hobby in the right time. Also, it can automatically update schedules and ToruCa stored in FOMA terminal and automatically add useful information such as shop hours to the phonebook. Machi-chara (a character on the stand-by display) informs you of i-concier information on the stand-by display.

- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription (Subscription is required subscription of i-mode).
- If you do not subscribe Data Security Service (→P121), when you subscribe i-concier, you subscribe Data Security Service, too.
- There are 2 types of information; the one is provided by DOCOMO and the other is provided by IP (Information Provider). For the information provided by DOCOMO, a packet communication fee for receiving is not charged. For the information provided by IP (Information Provider), a packet communication fee is required for receiving separately.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to use detail information.
- To use i-concier overseas, International Settings require to be set. "利用しない (Not use)" is set by default, so select MENU [i-concier]→MENU→"設定 (Settings)"→"その他共通設定 (Other common settings)"→"海外利用設定 (International service settings)" to change the settings for using i-concier overseas. Note that, for using i-concier overseas, a packet communication fee is charged for both receiving and viewing detail information. For overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some contents (information, i-schedule, etc.) besides i-concier monthly service fee.
- Automatic updating i-schedule/ToruCa/phonebook requires a packet communication fee separately.
- For details of i-concier, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Downloading Schedule/i-schedule→P172

Receiving information

When information is received

When FOMA terminal is in service area, information is sent automatically.

- Received information is saved up to 50 items in the information list of i-concier. When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

1 Information is received

or lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert sounds then the information is displayed.

- When multiple pieces of information are received, or blinks for 15 seconds.
- When information is selected, information list of i-concier or a linked site is displayed or the screen displayed before receiving information reappears depending on information.
- Press CLR or to return to the screen displayed before receiving information.
- When multiple pieces of information are received, the latest piece appears on stand-by display.

✔INFORMATION

- When Information display is set to "Not display", the information is not displayed.
- For some information, or lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert does not sound.
- When information is received during another operation, the terminal acts according to Display priority of mail. When "Show message" is selected, a message indicating that information arrived appears.
- While information is displayed, Power saved mode is canceled temporarily.

Displaying i-concier details

You can display details of received information and display Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal from i-concier menu easily.

<Example> Displaying details of information

1 MENU [i-concier]

The i-concier information list is displayed.

2 Select a piece of information

- Some information pieces may have schedule or ToruCa attached or contain a link to a site that provides more detailed or related information. To view the content, select an icon.
- When a schedule or ToruCa menu is selected by pressing MENU, Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal can be displayed.

✔INFORMATION

- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF".→P174

Information display

Setting display for information

You can set whether to display information on the stand-by display when i-concier information is received.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 2 1 8 ▶ 1 or 2

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set to stand-by display and "Display" is selected, a confirmation screen for canceling the stand-by display settings appears.

Camera

Before using camera 186
Shooting still images with Camera ..... Still camera 188
Shooting moving pictures with Camera ..... Movie camera 193
Recording voice with Sound recorder ..... Sound recorder 194
Setting image size and saving method of still images/moving pictures ... Still image settings/Recording settings 194
Changing settings for shooting 195
Sending still image shot during call 199
Using bar code reader ..... Bar code reader 200

Copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or movies and site or website information obtained by using FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When releasing shot or recorded work on Internet websites, use with care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking photos and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before using camera

- Shutter sound is emitted even when "Silent" is set for volume settings or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- When camera is used, the shooting indication light turns on and blinks in red in accordance with the light.
- If no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes during shooting stand-by, camera ends.
- For Still camera, contrast is corrected automatically while shooting a subject against the sun etc.
- There are some unavailable functions or settings when Camera is activated from phonebook, mail or i-αppli.
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before taking photos.
- Be careful not to cover the lens with fingers when shooting images.
- Be careful of hand movement. Though FOMA terminal provides shake reduce function, it may become less effective for some shooting environment and/or object. Hold FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move; or use of Auto timer function with FOMA terminal placed in a stable location is recommended. Auto timer is only available when shooting still images.
- There is some time lag after the shutter tone sounds and until the actual shooting takes place. Do not move FOMA terminal for a while after you hear shutter sound.
- Images shot with the camera with i-αppli are saved in the i-αppli ("i-mode" folder or "Deco-mail picture" folder for some i-αppli). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.
- If battery power is low before saving shot image, the shot image is discarded.
- As the camera consumes the battery power very quickly, do not leave the camera activated for a long time or do not leave shot images unsaved for a long time.

■ Shooting procedure

Each available style (→P25) can be used to shoot.

The slide style applies the vertical display, the basic style and YOKO-MOTION style apply the horizontal display for shooting.

◆ Precautions for using camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Images shot under very low light intensity contain increased noise such as white lines, but it is not a malfunction.
- If FOMA terminal is left in a warm place or exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, images to be shot may be deteriorated.
- When attempting to take a photo of a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp, images may become dark or degraded.
- For some characteristics of the lens, distorted images are displayed.
- Shooting images under illumination flickering at high frequency such as fluorescent lamp, mercury vapor lamp or sodium vapor lamp may cause the screen to flicker or stripe patterns to appear on the screen, which is called flicker phenomena, giving different coloring for some shooting timings. Flickers or stripes may be reduced by adjusting the brightness for shooting.
- Images shot may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness.
- If you shoot a fast moving object, the position of the object in the image may differ slightly from the position displayed on the screen when the shutter tone sounded.
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects when shooting a moving picture, the image may be blurred.
- When Movie camera and Sound recorder are used, the sound is recorded from the microphone. Do not cover it with your fingers.
- Some settings may require extra time for displaying shooting screen.

◆ Still image/Moving picture files

Still image file

File format	Extension
JPEG (Exif format, compatible with PRINT Image Matching III*1)	jpg

Moving picture file

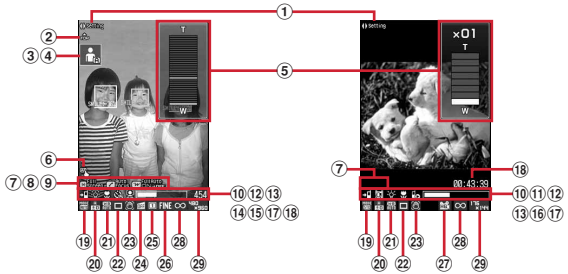
File format	Encoding method	Extension
MP4 (MobileMP4)	Video : MPEG4, H.264*2 Sound : AAC LC	3gp

*1 Not supported when Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch".

*2 Encoding method for image size of "VGA (640×480)".

- Shooting date/time is automatically set to Display name/Title/File name, but it can be changed before or after saving.→P188, 193, 299
- The extension added to the file name is not displayed on FOMA terminal.

◆ Shooting screens



Still image shooting screen　　Moving picture shooting

* The recording screen of Sound recorder is identical with the moving picture shooting screen, however, some icons are not displayed.

• MENU displayed on the top of the still image shooting screen in the basic style indicates that you can display guidance buttons by pressing .→P36

① **Operation guidance when shooting→P188**
Setting : Indicate settings by using icon is available with .

② **Sense orientation→P194**
TOP : Top of △ indicates upward.

③ **Auto optimized shooting mode→P190**
STD : Standard : Portrait : Landscape : Night scene : Macro

④ **Skin tone enhance/Eye enhance (Scene mode/effect)→P196**
: Skin tone enhance : Eye enhance-Lo : Eye enhance-Hi
: Eye+Skin enhance-Lo : Eye+Skin enhance-Hi

⑤ **Zoom→P195**
T : Zoom in W : Normal

⑥ **Touch auto-focus→P199**
AF : Touch AF:ON

⑦ **Full-screen/Standard screen view switch operation guidance→P198**
Full Screen / STD Screen : Indicate switching screen view is available with .
• Note that it is displayed only in YOKO-MOTION style for moving picture shooting screen.

⑧ **Auto focus (Manual)→P191**
Auto Focus : Indicate activating auto focus with .
Auto Focus : Focusing OK Auto Focus / NG Auto Focus : Success/Failure

⑨ **Full auto focus→P191**
Full Auto ON-OFF * / Full Auto ON : Full auto focus is ON
Full Auto OFF-ON * / Full Auto OFF : Full auto focus is OFF
* Indicates switching ON/OFF is available with .

⑩ **Memory to save→P194**
: FOMA terminal : microSD card

⑪ **Recording type→P194**
: Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only

⑫ **Light→P196**
: Light ON

⑬ **Macro shooting→P196**
: Macro shooting ON

⑭ **Auto timer→P198**
/ / / : 2 seconds/5 seconds/10 seconds/15 seconds

⑮ **Smile-finder, Face detection→P198**
: Smile finder OFF (only face detection)
/ / : Group (70%/50%/30% SmileRate)
/ / : Single (70%/50%/30% SmileRate)
: Face detection OFF

⑯ **Compatible mode→P199**
: CompatibleMode:ON

⑰ **Indicator**
During shooting stand-by : Usage ratio of memory space at the saving destination (available space on microSD card may not become 0 even if no files are saved).
During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.
During moving picture shooting : The rate of the currently recorded movie size to the file size set in Size restrictions.

⑱ **Counter**
During shooting stand-by : Approximate number of images/recording time that can be saved under the current settings.
During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.
During shooting in Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama : The number of images currently shot and savable number of images.
During moving picture shooting : Elapsed time/Remaining time (approximate)

⑲ **Scene mode/effect→P196**
- Still camera

AUTO : Auto STD : Standard : Portrait : Landscape
: Night scene : Backlight : Sport ABC : Texts ISO : High sensitivity
: Monotone : Sepia : Monochrome sketch : Colored sketch
: Skin tone enhance : Eye enhance-Lo : Eye enhance-Hi
: Eye+Skin enhance-Lo : Eye+Skin enhance-Hi
- Movie camera

STD : Standard : Landscape : Backlight : Sports : Monotone : Sepia

⑳ **Brightness→P196**
+2/+1/±0/−1/−2 : +2/+1/±0/−1/−2

㉑ **White balance→P196**
AUTO : Auto : Sunlight : Cloudy : Fluorescent light : Bulb light

㉒ **Frame→P197**
: Set : Canceled

㉓ **Reduce shake→P197**
: ON OFF : OFF

㉔ **Correcting skew→P197**
ABC : Typed letter : Hand writing OFF : OFF

㉕ **Continuous/Panorama shooting→P192**
: Continuous (Auto) M : Continuous (Manual) : 4 frames (Auto)
: 4 frames (Manual) P : Panorama 1 : OFF (Shoot 1 image)

㉖ **Image quality→P194**
FINE : Fine ST : Standard ECO : Economy

㉗ **Movie quality→P194**
XQ : XQ (Extra high) HQ : HQ (High quality) STD : STD (Standard)
LP : LP (Long play)

㉘ **Size restriction→P194**
: None : Msg attach:Large : Msg attach:Small

㉙ **Image size→P194**
- Still camera

176×144 : QCIF 240×320 : V-QVGA 320×240 : H-QVGA 480×640 : V-VGA
640×480 : H-VGA 480×960 : V-Stand-by 960×480 : H-Stand-by 768×1280 : V-WXGA
1280×768 : H-WXGA 1080×1920 : V-FullHD 1920×1080 : H-FullHD
1536×2048 : V-3M 2048×1536 : H-3M 1632×3264 : V-5.3M 3264×1632 : H-5.3M
2448×3264 : V-8M 3264×2448 : H-8M
- Movie camera

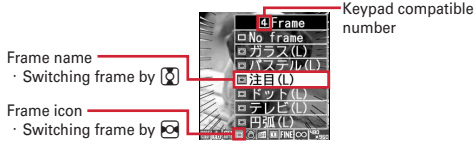
176×144 : QCIF 320×240 : QVGA 640×480 : VGA

❖Setting using icons on display

By using icons ⑲-㉙ on the shooting screen (→P187), you can change the settings directly.
- Setting by using icons is unavailable when FOMA terminal is closed.

<Example> Setting a frame

1 On the shooting screen, or 4



2 ●

Returning to the shooting screen without changing settings : CLR

Still camera

Shooting still images with Camera

1 or (1 sec. or more)

Enters shooting stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

2 Check the settings and frame the shot
- When Smile-finder is set to other than "Face detection OFF", people's faces are detected, and a face detection frame and smile rate are displayed.→P198
- When Sense orientation is "ON", the orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal.→P194
- Auto optimized shooting mode can be used to shoot.→P190
- Auto focus can be used to shoot.→P191
- Settings for shooting can be changed.→P195

Displaying guidance button :
- It is available only when guidance button is hidden with FOMA terminal closed.
- By pressing again or in approximately 10 seconds, the guidance button disappears.

Checking saved still images : [📷]

Still images in the saving destination set in Image settings can be viewed.

Displaying image→P278, 294

- [CLR] on the list screen of still image or the folder : Return to shooting stand-by.

3 ● (When FOMA terminal is closed, ▣ or touch [Shoot])

The shutter tone sounds and still image is shot, then light turns on in red and a confirmation screen for saving the still image appears. For continuous shooting, 4 frames shooting or Panorama shooting, the shutter tone sounds each time an image is shot and the light turns on repeatedly in red, yellow, green, blue, purple and orange in order.

Shooting automatically when people smile (while setting Smile-finder) : ● (When FOMA terminal is closed, ▣ or touch [Detect])

A subject is focused and the smile finder is activated. During activation, a smile finder icon blinks and shooting indication light turns on.

When a SmileRate of shooting subjects reaches specified rate, a still image is shot automatically.

- ● during activation (▣ or touch [Shoot] when FOMA terminal is closed) : Shoot
- [📞] or [CLR] during activation (▣ when FOMA terminal is closed) : Cancel
- Setting procedure of Smile-finder→P198

In Continuous (manual), 4 frames (Manual), Panorama

Repeat Step 3 for the number of images set to be shot.

Press [📷] (when FOMA terminal is closed, ▣) to cancel shooting before the set number of images are shot. Go to Step 4 for Continuous (Manual) or Panorama with multiple images already shot. For 4 frames (Manual) or Panorama with only 1 image already shot, the shooting stand-by reappears and still images already shot are discarded.

4 Check the shot still image

- Still images of QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller are displayed enlarged. Press [🔍] to display in actual size, and press [🔍] to enlarge again.

For Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)

- Each time you press [i-ア], a single image and thumbnails toggle.
- When a single image is displayed, pressing [✉] switches to previous or next still image.
- Only a single image shot with Continuous (Manual) is not displayed in thumbnails.

Reshooting : [CLR]

Switching view to actual size : [i-ア]

- Press [✣] to scroll the screen.
- Press [✂] to switch displaying/hiding the guide area.
- Press any of [CLR], [MENU], [i-ア], [📷] or [✉] to cancel.
- Only images of WXGA (768×1,280, 1,280×768) or larger can be displayed in the actual size.

Scrolling automatically (for Panorama) : [📷]

Attaching to mail : [✉]

A confirmation screen for saving appears.

- Saved to FOMA terminal even when the saving destination is microSD.
- Depending on image size, a confirmation screen may appear for converting to QVGA size.
- For some Image size and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for file size adjustment appears. Selecting "No limit" causes the image to be saved without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" causes the image to be reduced to 90 Kbytes or less in size and saved.
- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.

Setting as the stand-by display : [MENU] [3] [1] ▶ "Vertical view" or "Horizontal view" ▶ "Yes"

The still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

- When image size is QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Saving to a phonebook entry : [MENU] [3] ▶ [2] or [3] ▶ "Yes"

Still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook data entry screen appears. Only images of QCIF(176×144) can be saved.

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be saved to phonebook.

Adding location information : MENU 2

The next procedure→P268 "■Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- When Location info is added, appears on the upper left of the display.

Changing the title : MENU 4 1 ▶ **Enter the title** ▶ 📷

- Up to 31 characters can be entered (up to 30 characters for continuously shot images).
- Display name is changed. The display name can be changed after saving.→P299

Adjusting brightness or color balance : 📷

The edit screen appears.→P280

- Images cannot be adjusted in the following cases.
  - When the image size is VGA (480×640, 640×480) or larger
  - When the frame is set for 4-frame shooting
  - For continuous Panorama
  - When Scene mode/effect is set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

Switching normal/mirror image (with in-camera only) : MENU 5 2

Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card : MENU 9

Displaying the list of saved images : MENU 0 ▶ 1 **or** 2

5 ● (When FOMA terminal is closed,)

The shot still image is saved in "Camera" (for microSD card, "My Picture") folder of My Picture.

Saving a mirror image (with in-camera only) : MENU 6 3

- A mirror image cannot be saved when a frame is set to the image.

Saving only the displayed still image (in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) : ● **(1 sec. or more)** ▶ **"Yes"**

- A still image at cursor position is saved for thumbnail display.
- When shooting with in-camera, select "Save normal" or "Save mirror".

Selecting selected still images to be saved from still images shot continuously (for thumbnail display in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :

① MENU 6 2 ▶ ● **to cancel saving of still image**

- Press ✉ to zoom in the still image at the cursor position. Press ● or CLR to return to thumbnail display.

② 📷 ▶ **"Yes"**

The selected still images are saved.

- When shooting with in-camera, select "Save normal" or "Save mirror".

✔INFORMATION

- When shooting with the following settings, it takes a time for operation by pressing MENU, 📷, ✉ on a confirmation screen for saving.
  - Scene mode/effect is "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi"
  - Reduce shake is "Auto"
  - Skew correction is other than "OFF"
- In the following cases, Sense orientation is unavailable.
  - For shooting in Panorama
  - When the second frame or later is shot in 4 frames (Manual)
  - When Motion sensor is "OFF"
- Saving shot still images takes time for some image sizes, quality or the destinations to save.
- Shooting still image during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- During still image shooting stand-by, when a call is received, the incoming call screen appears.
- If the screen is switched by an incoming call or alarm immediately after shooting, the image may be destroyed.

◆ Using auto optimized shooting mode

For still camera shooting, setting Scene mode/effect (→P196) to "Auto" switches modes (Standard, Portrait, Landscape, Night scene, macro) automatically by recognizing shooting subjects. Recognized scene is displayed with auto optimized shooting mode icon (→P187).

And when camera is rested at shooting subject, auto focus is activated. An orange focus frame appears to focus camera automatically.

- Touch an auto optimized shooting mode icon, and the current recognized scene mode is locked. When it is locked, Ⓐ within the icon disappears and the icon color turns into green.
- When Continuous(Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) is set, scene mode cannot be switched to "Night scene".

◆ Using Auto focus

To shoot still images, you can use full auto focus or manual auto focus to focus automatically.

- The distance that you can focus on the object by auto focus is 30 cm or longer. Note that when simultaneously using Macro shooting mode, the distance is 8 to 40 cm.
- In the following cases, Auto focus may not work.
  - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
  - When shooting a matte object or moving object
  - When shooting in a dark place or shooting in a place where there is light in the shooting area
- When shooting with in-camera or setting Scene mode/effect to "Night scene", this function is unavailable.

❖Switching ON/OFF of full auto focus

When full auto focus is set to "ON", auto focus is activated automatically for shooting, and the shutter clicks after the object is focused. The focus confirmation tone does not sound.

- When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused.
- In the following cases, full auto focus ON/OFF cannot be switched.
  - When Scene mode/effect is "Auto" and Touch AF is OFF
  - When Scene mode/effect is "Night scene"
  - When Smile-finder is set

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 8 4

- You can switch by pressing [*] when FOMA terminal is opened.

❖Activating auto focus manually

1 On the still image shooting screen, [Camera]

When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused. When focused, a confirmation tone sounds.
The next procedure→P189 Step 3 and the following steps in "Shooting still images with Camera"

- When face detection frame is not displayed, an orange focus frame appears. It changes to "+" when focused.

Canceling : [Camera]

❖Focus to the location touched

- This function is available when Touch AF is set to "ON".→P199

1 Touch the location where you want to focus on the still image shooting screen

The touched location or touched face detection frame is focused. When focused, a confirmation tone sounds.
The next procedure→P189 Step 3 and the following steps in "Shooting still images with Camera"

- When full auto focus is "ON", shooting takes place after focusing. The focus confirmation tone does not sound.
- When face detection frame is not displayed, an orange focus frame appears. It changes to "+" when focused.

Canceling : [Camera] **or touch the shooting screen**

◆ Setting Continuous/4 frames/Panorama shooting

Continuous (Auto)/Continuous (Manual) : The set number of images are shot. Images are saved in created animation format when the saving destination is set to FOMA terminal and saved as individual still images to microSD card.

4 frames (Auto)/4 frames (Manual) : 4 continuous images are shot and saved as 1 still image composed with four-frame.

Panorama : 2-8 still images continuously shot shifting the direction of the camera little by little can be form 1 still image connecting the images. During the shooting, approximately one fifth of the previously shot still image is transparently displayed on the seam. Shoot the next image overlaying the transparent part. To connect horizontally, shoot rightward continuously, and to connect vertically, shoot downward continuously.



Overlap the transparent parts

- Still images can be shot at interval of approximately 0.4 seconds in Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto). However, the interval of shooting may differ depending on the shooting condition.
- During Panorama shooting, the transparent part for the next shooting can be checked with grid line displayed.
- Available image sizes and number of images to be shot are as follows.

Image size	Continuous (Auto) Continuous (Manual)	4 frames (Auto) 4 frames (Manual)	Panorama
QCIF (176×144)	2-9*	—	—
QVGA (240×320, 320×240)	2-9*	4	8
VGA (480×640, 640×480)	2-6*	4	4
Stand-by (480×960, 960×480)	2-6*	4	3

* Can be set in Continuous shot photos of Still image settings. However, even if a number larger than the maximum is set, only up to the maximum can be shot.

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 6 ▶ 1-6

- While Panorama shooting stand-by, press i-mode to switch direction to connect. When an icon in the lower left of the guide area is ▭▯, the image is connected horizontally, and when it is ▯▭, the image is connected vertically.

✔INFORMATION

- When Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi", Continuous, 4 frame or Panorama cannot be set.
- When Auto timer is set, Continuous (Manual) or 4 frames (Manual) cannot be set.
- Panorama cannot be set in the following cases.
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - Starting still camera from phonebook or i-αppli
  - Frame in use
  - During i-αppli
  - Size restriction other than "None"
  - Auto timer activated
- When 1 or selected images shot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual) are selected and saved, the images not selected are discarded.
- You can separate an image in create animation format into individual still images. A number from "-1" to "-9" is added to each image file name.→P280
- During continuous shooting or 4 frame shooting, when a call is received, the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes, FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display is rotated, the following actions are performed.
  - Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) shooting continues, and a confirmation screen for saving appears after the call or alarm ends.
  - Continuous (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and a confirmation screen for saving appears.
  - 4 frames (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and still images already shot are discarded.
  - No ring alert or alarm sound is emitted before the shutter sound ends.
- During panorama shooting, when a call is received, the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes, the shooting stops and the shot still images up to that point are discarded.
- During panorama shooting, when FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display is rotated, the shooting is interrupted and a confirmation screen for saving appears.
- Options should be set for in-camera/out-camera separately.

• The maximum image sizes for connecting in Panorama are as follows. Note that, connection sizes depend on the shooting conditions.

Image size	Maximum image size after connection
QVGA (240×320, 320×240)	1,584×320 / 2,112×240
VGA (480×640, 640×480)	1,632×640 / 2,176×480
Stand-by (480×960, 960×480)	1,248×960 / 2,496×480

Movie camera

Shooting moving pictures with Camera

1 [📷] (1 sec. or more)

Shooting stand-by starts, and the light blinks in blue.

2 Check the settings and frame the shot

• Settings for shooting can be changed.→P195

Displaying guidance button : [ｷ]

• It is available only when FOMA terminal is closed with guidance button hidden.

• By pressing [ｷ] again or in approximately 10 seconds, the guidance button disappears.

Checking saved moving picture : [📷]

The moving picture in the saving destination set in Recording settings can be viewed.

Displaying moving picture→P282, 294

• [CLR] on the moving picture or folder list screen : Return to shooting/recording stand-by.

3 [●] (When FOMA terminal is closed, [📷])

Shutter sound is emitted, ● appears on the display and recording starts. The light blinks in red.

Pausing/Resuming : During shooting/recording, [📷]

When paused, the light turns on in green and ● switches to ▮▮.

• When paused or resumed, the shutter sound is emitted.

4 [●] (When FOMA terminal is closed, [📷])

The Shutter tone sounds, shooting/recording ends, and a confirmation screen for saving the moving picture appears.

• When restricted size or time is exceeded, shooting/recording ends. Time is limited to 180 minutes when Codec type is set to "Video + Voice" or "Video only" (80 minutes when movie quality is "XQ" and image size is "VGA (640×480)"), and 720 minutes when Recording Type is "Voice only".

5 Check the shot moving picture

Playing : [📷]

Reshooting : [CLR]

Attaching to mail : [✉]

A saving confirmation screen appears.

• Even when the memory to save is microSD card, the shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal.

• When file size exceeds 2 Mbytes, it cannot be attached to mail.

Setting as the stand-by display (stand-by i-motion) : [MENU] [2] [1] ▶ **"Yes"**

The moving picture is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

• When "Yes (Zoom) is selected, moving picture is enlarged fitting to the screen size and appears on Stand-by display.

• If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

• When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

• When Recording type is "Voice only", the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Saving to phonebook entry : [MENU] [2] ▶ [2] **or** [3] ▶ **"Yes"**

The moving picture is saved to FOMA terminal and phonebook data entry screen appears.

• The movie can be saved to phonebook data, only when the Recording Type is "Video only".

• To update phonebook, select the party to save.

• Saving as phonebook images is disabled in the following cases.

- When the memory to save is microSD card
- When the image size is "VGA (640×480)"

Changing the title : [MENU] [3] ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 characters)** ▶ [📷]

- Display name and title are changed. The display name can be changed after saving.→299

Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card : [MENU] [5]

- For a file whose size is 2 Mbytes or smaller, the saving destination can be switched.

Displaying the list of saved moving picture : [MENU] [6] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

6 ● **(When FOMA terminal is closed,** [📷]**)**

Shot moving pictures are saved in "Camera" folder of i-motion/Movie (if the destination is microSD card, moving pictures are saved to "Movie" and voice is "Other movies").

✔INFORMATION

- When Recording Type is set to "Voice only" in Recording settings, Sound recorder starts.
- Some data cannot be recorded to the maximum size set in Size restrictions.
- Data may not be saved when battery runs out while shooting or recording data.
- If the following cases occur during recording, a confirmation screen for saving appears.
  - When a call is received
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule come
  - When FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display is rotated*

  * Only while moving picture shooting. Sound recording continues.
- Shooting is interrupted if battery level becomes very low.
- If an alarm or battery alarm sounds while shooting/recording and shooting/recording is interrupted, the alarm may be recorded at the end of the saved moving picture.

Sound recorder

Recording voice with Sound recorder

- If setting Recording Type to "Voice only" from Recording settings when recording a movie, Sound recorder starts.
- Precautions on using →P194 INFORMATION in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

1 [MENU] **[LifeKit]** [5]

Enters recording stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.
The next procedure→P193 Step 2 and the following steps in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

Switching to Still camera : [i-α]

Switching to Movie camera : [✉]

Still image settings/Recording settings

Setting image size and saving method of still images/moving pictures

- The functions that can be set differ between still image and moving picture.

1 On the still image shooting screen, [MENU] [9] **or on the moving picture shooting screen,** [MENU] [8]

- When Recording Type is "Voice only", press [MENU] [1] on the recording screen.

2 Set required items ▶ [📷]

Image size : Set image size for shooting/recording.

- For still image shooting, a setting screen appears. Available functions can be checked by the icon appearing on the bottom of the screen. Also, displayed beside the image size indicates there are vertical/horizontal sizes for the image.
- In-camera and out-camera are set separately, however, for moving picture shooting, in-camera is fixed to QCIF (176×144).

Size restrict/restrictions : Set the size limitation of file to shoot.

- Setting "Msg attach:Large" restricts file size to 2 Mbytes.
- Setting "Msg attach:Small" restricts the file size to 90 Kbytes for still image shooting and to 500 Kbytes for moving picture shooting.
- For shooting still images, set this option for in-camera and out-camera separately.

Quality : Set quality of still image to shoot.

Quality : Set quality of moving picture to shoot.

- Set this option for moving picture shooting and sound recorder separately. "XQ (Extra high)" cannot be set for Sound recorder.

Recording Type : Set recording type.
Continuous shot photos : Set the number to shoot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual).→P192
Auto save : Set whether to save automatically after shooting or recording. When setting to "Yes", saving is performed without displaying the confirmation screen for shooting or recording.
Save to: : Set the saving destination of shot image or recorded voice.
Shutter sound : Select the sound to be emitted when shooting.
- When moving the cursor to the shutter sound, the sound is emitted.
- This setting also applies to settings of Shutter sound/Movie camera sound in System sound.

key assign : Set a function to be assigned to .
Sense orientation : Set whether to switch image orientation for saving automatically.
Display light time : Set light time.
- When setting to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

✔INFORMATION
- On the still image settings screen, image size selection screen or recording settings screen, press MENU to display the approximate number of images that can be shot or approximate recording time for movies/sounds.
- For still image shooting, when setting the size of QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or larger, the image is displayed in vertical size on the vertical display and in horizontal size on the horizontal display. Note that, for the setting size in 5.3M (1,632×3,264, 3,264×1,632) or larger, it is displayed in vertical size in YOKO-MOTION style.
- With Still camera, the image size larger than WXGA (768×1,280) and "Msg attach:Small" for size restriction cannot be set at the same time.
- When setting to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" in Scene mode/effect, you cannot set the size of WVGA (768×1,280, 1,280×768) or larger.
- When i-αppli is activated, the following sizes cannot be set.
  Still image shooting : FullHD (1,080×1,920, 1,920×1,080) or larger
  Moving picture shooting : VGA (640×480)
- The screen has the highest brightness with Display light time set to "Always on" and Brightness of FOMA terminal display (→P93) set to "Auto adjust".

Changing settings for shooting

◆ Zooming

Change shooting magnifications and shoot an object by zooming.
- You can change the magnification while shooting a moving picture.
- Display magnifications available for each image size on out-camera are as follows.

Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
	Still camera	Movie camera
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 16.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 16.0 (8 scales)
QVGA (240×320)*	Approx. 8.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 8.0 (5 scales)
VGA (480×640)*	Approx. 4.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 4.0 (3 scales)
Stand-by (480×960)*		—
WXGA (768×1,280)*	Approx. 4.0 (6 scales)	
FullHD (1,080×1,920)*	Approx. 2.0 (6 scales)	
3M (1,536×2,048)*		
5.3M (1,632×3,264)*		
8M (2,448×3,264)*		

* For still image shooting, vertical and horizontal sizes are available.
- Display magnification available for still images and moving pictures on in-camera is approximately 2.0 (2 scales) regardless of the image size.

1 On the shooting screen, ●

Zooming adjustment panel appears and the scale is increased/decreased according to zooming out/in.
- Sliding up and down on the vertical display or left and right on the horizontal display to display the zooming adjustment panel. You can also adjust zoom by sliding on the panel.
- If the slider goes over the orange scale of zooming adjustment panel when shooting a still image, the scale turns into yellow. The yellow scale indicates that an image quality is deteriorated by zooming.

◆ Switching out-camera and in-camra

1 On the shooting screen, [iR]

- Switching is available by pressing [MENU] [8] [1] on the still image shooting screen or [MENU] [6] [1] on the moving picture shooting screen.
- Available sizes for in-camera are as follows.
  Still image shooting : QCIF (176×144), H-VGA (640×480)
  Moving picture shooting : QCIF (176×144)
- Cameras cannot be switched when the quality is set to "XQ(Extra high)" during moving picture shooting.
- After cameras are switched, settings such as Scene mode/effect are retained.
- During moving picture shooting, cameras can be switched during a pause if the image size is identical for in-camra and out-camera.
- When [3] key assign (→P194) is set to "Movie camera"/"Still camera", press [iR] for 1 second or more to switch cameras.
- An image shot with in-camera is displayed as a mirror image, however, it is saved as a normal image.

◆ Turning on/off the light

- The light cannot be turned on when shooting with in-camera.
- You can turn on/off the light while shooting a moving picture.
- While the light turns on, shooting indication light does not work.

1 On the shooting screen, [✉]

- Pressing [MENU] [7] [1] on the still image shooting screen or [MENU] [5] [1] on the moving picture shooting screen turns the light on and off.

◆ Switching macro shooting ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can focus on an object approximately 8-10 cm away from camera.

- With auto focus function, you can focus on an object approximately 8-40 cm away from camera.
- When shooting with in-camera or setting Scene mode/effect to "Auto", this function is unavailable.

1 On the shooting screen, [#]

- Switching is available by pressing [MENU] [7] [2] on the still image shooting screen or [MENU] [5] [2] on the moving picture shooting screen.

◆ Setting Scene mode/effect

- Auto optimized shooting mode→P190
- Effects of "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" can be checked after shooting/recording.

1 On the shooting screen, [MENU] [1] ▶ Select a scene/effect

- When "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi", or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" is set, skin tone enhance/eye enhance icon appears on the shooting screen.

✔INFORMATION

- When shooting with in-camera, "Auto" cannot be set.
- When Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) is set for still image shooting, "Night scene" cannot be set.
- Only images of Stand-by/WVGA (480×960, 960×480) or smaller can be set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" for still image shooting.
- For Continuous/4 frames/Panorama shooting with Still camera, "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" cannot be set.
- When setting to other than "Auto" or "Standard", white balance settings cannot be changed. And, the settings of Brightness are retained until switched to "Auto" or "Standard".
- Effects of "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" and "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" may not work in the following cases or other shooting conditions.
  - A face is turned away or tilted
  - A face is partially covered with eye glasses, a hat, mask or shadow
  - A face is extremely small, large or dark to the entire screen
  - A face is at the edge of the screen

◆ Adjusting brightness

1 On the shooting screen, [MENU] [2] [1] ▶ [1]-[5]

◆ Adjusting white balance

- You can adjust it when Scene mode/effect is set to "Auto" or "Standard".

1 On the shooting screen, [MENU] [2] [2] ▶ [1]-[5]

◆ Adjusting flicker

Adjusting flicker can suppress the flicker phenomena which cause flickering or fringe patterns on the screen under light such as fluorescent lights.

1 On the shooting screen, MENU 2 3 ▶ 1-3

Auto : Adjust automatically to eliminate flickering.
50 Hz (East-Japan) : Adjust to match the power frequency in eastern Japan.
60 Hz (West-Japan) : Adjust to match the power frequency in western Japan.

- If flickering still remains in "Auto", set according to the area you stay.
- This setting is retained even when Camera is ended. This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment of Videophone and Bar code reader.

✔INFORMATION

- The flicker may not disappear in a very bright place such as under fluorescent lights.
- When the shake reduce function is used with Adjust flicker set to "Auto", Adjust flicker may not function satisfactorily. In this case, it is recommended to set Adjust flicker according to the area you stay.

◆ Restoring default settings for Brightness

- The settings of Scene mode/effect, Brightness, White balance and Adjust flicker are reset to the default settings.

1 On the shooting screen, MENU 2 4 ▶ "Yes"

◆ Switching Reduce shake ON/OFF

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 4 1 or on the moving picture shooting screen, MENU 4

✔INFORMATION

- The setting is "OFF" in the following cases.
  - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - When Still camera is activated from i-αppli or while i-αppli is running
- The effect of auto correction is not achieved for some subject or shooting condition.

◆ Correcting skew

For shooting a still image, correct skew of images to make characters more easy to read.

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 4 2 ▶ 1-3

✔INFORMATION

- This function cannot be used with the following functions or settings.
  - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - When Still camera is activated from i-αppli or while i-αppli is running
  - When Scene mode/effect is "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi"
  - When Image size is QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller
- Skew correction function cannot completely correct camera skew. The effect depends on the object and/or shooting states. Some still images may be more natural if not adjusted.
- It is recommended to use auto-focus when using skew correction.

◆ Shooting with frame added

- Frames are available for the following sizes.
  Still image shooting : Stand-by (480×960, 960×480) or smaller
  Moving picture shooting : QCIF (176×144)

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 7 3 or on the moving picture shooting screen, MENU 3

2 1 ▶ Select a frame

Canceling : 2

- You can also cancel by pressing 4 for 1 second or more on the shooting screen.

Rotating : 3
Updating : 4

◆ Switching full–screen and standard screen modes

In full–screen mode, icons and the guide area are not displayed.

- Switching is unavailable during moving picture shooting on the vertical display.

1 On the shooting screen, [✂]

- Switching is available by pressing [MENU] [8] [2] on the still image shooting screen or [MENU] [6] [2] on the moving picture shooting screen.

◆ Switching still image shooting and moving picture shooting

- Switching is not available in continuous panorama shooting.

1 On the shooting screen, [i-αppli] (1 sec. or more)

- Switching is available by pressing [MENU] [0] [1] on the still image shooting screen or [MENU] [9] [1] on the moving picture shooting screen.
- When [8] key assign (→P194) is set to "Movie camera"/"Still camera", press [i-αppli] to switch shooting modes.

◆ Setting Auto timer

You can set so that the shutter clicks after specified time elapses.

- When set, countdown starts while shooting, and the light blinks in green synchronized with the countdown sound. The countdown sound and blinking of the light go faster when the remaining time is reduced to a few seconds.
- With auto focus function, countdown starts after auto focus is activated. When using manual auto focus or touch auto focus, focus is adjusted and countdown starts regardless of the setting of full auto focus.
- To cancel the countdown, press [📷] (when FOMA terminal is closed, [C]).

1 On the still image shooting screen, [MENU] [5] ▶ [1]-[5]

✔INFORMATION

- Countdown is canceled in the following cases.
  - When a call is received
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule come
  - When FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display is rotated
- Auto timer is not available for Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama.

◆ Setting Smile-finder or Face detection

You can use the face detection function to detect people's faces and to measure smile rates. You can also use smile finder that automatically shoots a still image according to the smile rates of subjects.

- Face detection frame and smile rates are displayed on the detected faces and the brightness of face is adjusted automatically.
- Up to 10 face detection frames are displayed. The frame with the highest detection rate is displayed in green. Other frames are displayed in white.
- When a face is not detected, a white frame is displayed at the center of the screen.
- Switching is available only when Scene mode/effect is set to "Auto", "Standard", "Portrait", "Landscape", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi".
- This cannot be switched when shooting with in-camera or setting Skew correction to "OFF".
- When Auto timer is set, setting other than "Smile finder OFF" or "Face detection OFF" is unavailable.

1 On the still image shooting screen, [MENU] [3] ▶ [1]-[8]

Smile finder OFF : Only Face detection operates. Shoot using Auto focus.
Group(70%, 50%, 30% SmileRate) : Shoot when SmileRate of all people for detecting reaches the set rate.
Single (70%, 50%, 30% SmileRate) : Shoot when SmileRate of the person who is in the highest level of detection reaches the set rate.
Face detection OFF : Smile-finder or Face detection does not operate.

- The shooting procedure when using Smile-finder→P189 Step 3 in "Shooting still images with Camera"

✔INFORMATION

- A smile level guide of 70%, 50% and 30% SmileRate indicate big grin on one's face, big smile and smile respectively. However, detected rate varies between individuals.
- Face detection may not work in the following cases or under other shooting conditions.
  - A face is turned away or tilted
  - A face is partially covered with eye glasses, a hat, mask or shadow
  - A face is extremely small, large or dark against the entire screen
  - A face is at the edge of the screen

◆ Switching Touch AF:ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can focus on a touched section.→P191

- When shooting with in-camera or setting Scene mode/effect to "Night scene", this function is unavailable.

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 7 4

◆ Displaying/Hiding grid line

Grid is gridded straight lines that guide shooting. Grids are not displayed on the shot image.

- Grids cannot be displayed when setting a frame.

1 On the still image shooting screen, MENU 8 3

◆ Switching Compatible mode ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can shoot a moving picture that can be played regardless of the model of FOMA terminal.

- Size restrictions, Quality and Image size are restricted to "Msg attach:Small", "HQ(high quality)" or less and "QCIF(176×144)", respectively.

1 On the moving picture shooting screen, MENU 7

Sending still image shot during call

- Even with the saving destination set to "microSD" in Still image settings, images are saved to FOMA terminal.
- Still image cannot be sent if the saving destination is set to "microSD" and Auto save is set to "Yes" in Still image settings.

1 During a call, MENU 9 ▶ Shoot a still image

Shooting method→P188 "Shooting still images with Camera"

- Shot still images are displayed as thumbnails after continuous shooting. Move the cursor to a still image to send.
- When Auto save is "Yes" in Still image settings, a confirmation screen for attaching mail appears.
- If pressing CLR or ☎, shooting ends and the talking screen reappears.

2 ✉ ▶ "Yes"

Still image is saved in FOMA terminal and the mail creation screen appears.

- For some image sizes, a confirmation screen for converting to QVGA appears.
- For some settings in Image sizes and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for adjusting a file size appears. Selecting "No limit" saves the image without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" saves the image reduced to 90 Kbytes or smaller in size.
- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or smaller, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.
- When the mail address of the other party is saved in phonebook, it is automatically entered as the destination.
- When returning to the shooting screen without creating i-mode mail, press CLR or ☎.

3 Edit the i-mode mail ▶ 📷

i-mode mail is sent and the shooting stand-by screen reappears.

Using bar code reader

You can read and use information of JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code and CODE128 code. Up to 5 pieces of information can be saved.

- QR code cannot be scanned for some versions (type and size).
- A large width code may be unfocused and fail in recognition when trying to display the entire code on the screen. Such code is easily recognized when Auto focus is used or FOMA terminal is brought close to the center of the code until it is focused.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.
- You can activate it from the character entry screen and enter the scanned data.→P344

■ JAN code

JAN code is a bar code representing a number with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. The bar code of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 (JAN13) can be read.

■ QR code

QR code is the 2-dimensional codes representing a string of alphanumeric, kanji, hiragana, katakana, pictograms or data such as melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

■ NW7 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

■ CODE39 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters and symbols with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

■ CODE128 code

A bar code representing ASCII characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths.

* To read CODE128 code, downloading i-αppli compatible with the code is required (→P252). Read codes following instructions displayed on the screen. Note that it is unavailable in YOKO-MOTION.

Example of JAN code



Information to be scanned
"4942857315721"

Example of QR code



Information to be scanned
"株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)"

Example of NW7 code



Information to be scanned
"A123456789012A"

Example of CODE39 code



Information to be scanned
"*123456ABC*"

◆ Scanning codes

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 1

After Bar code reader starts, camera automatically switches to Macro shooting and zoom becomes ON. Hold out-camera approximately 8-10 cm away from the code to scan.

- During Bar code reader stand-by, the following operations are available.
  - : Zoom ON : Zoom OFF
  - : Switching Light ON ( )/OFF
  - : Switching Macro shooting OFF/ON ( )
  - , : Switching Auto focus
- Depending on the states, the auto focus icon changes as follows.
  AF(black) : Adjusting focus AF(green)/ AF(red) : Focus succeeded/failed
- Switch to Macro OFF before scanning large size codes. The readability of code may be raised by setting zoom OFF.
- In scanning stand-by, press MENU 2 ▶ 1 - 3 to adjust flicker.
  Flicker adjustment→P197

2 Move out-camera over the code

The code is scanned automatically. A confirmation sound is played when scanning is complete and the scanned data appears.



: Scanning
: On stand-by

Scanning state of divided QR codes*
Gray : Not yet scanned Blue : Already scanned
Green : Scanned the last

The remaining number to be scanned/Total number*

* Displayed when scanning divided QR codes

- If scanned data exceeds 5,500 two-byte (11,000 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but they are saved.

Scanning divided QR codes

When one data item is divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes, scan them one by one following the instructions on the display.

- Canceling scanning : CLR ▶ "Yes"

Switching to still image shooting or moving picture shooting : MENU 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- When Bar code reader has not been started from Camera or the stand-by display, the switching is unavailable.

3 Use the scanned data

Saving data : MENU 4

- Up to 5 items can be saved. When 5 items are already saved or there is insufficient memory space, a confirmation screen for deleting saved data appears.

Rescanning code : 📷

Copying text : MENU 1 ▶ **Select a range to copy**

Copy/Paste information→P345

Adding information to phonebook : Move the cursor to information ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 1 or 2

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.

Saving all data to phonebook at a time : "Add to phonebook" ▶ 1 or 2

The phonebook entry screen appears with the information entered.

Creating i-mode mail : Select a mail address or "Compose message"

Connecting site or Internet website : Select a URL ▶ **"i-mode" or "Full Browser"**

Registering URL as bookmark :

① **Move the cursor to a URL** ▶ MENU 3 3

- Select "Add bookmark" to save.

② **Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)** ▶ 📷 ▶ **Select a folder to register**

Starting i-αppli : "Start i-αppli"

Making a call : Select a phone number ▶ **Set a condition for dialing** ▶ MENU

Making a call under set conditions→P62

Creating SMS : Select a phone number ▶ **Select Call type field** ▶ 3 ▶ MENU ▶ **"Yes"**

Saving a still image file : Select a still image file ▶ **"Save"**

The next procedure→P171 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

- Selecting "Display" displays the still image file.

Saving melody data : Select melody data

The next procedure→P172 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- When saving to phone, the saving destination is "Data transfer" folder of Melody.

Saving ToruCa : Select ToruCa

The next procedure→P172 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

✔INFORMATION

- If the code is not scanned well, try to change the distance between the code and camera, the angle or direction of camera, or to use auto focus.
- In the following cases, the confirmation sound is not emitted when the code is read.
  - In Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode)
  - When Key/touch sound is set to "OFF" (including the setting of Personalized silent mode)
  - When "Operation sound" in Adjust volume is set to "Silent"
- When Bar code reader is activated from i-αppli, the scanned data is saved and used by i-αppli.

◆ Using the scanned data saved

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 1 ▶ 📷

2 **Select the scanned data**

Using scanned data→P201 Step 3 in "Scanning codes"

Deleting scanned data : Move the cursor to the scanned data ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

✔INFORMATION

- A data file is named as scanned date/time + file number + extension. The extension is "jan" (JAN code), "qr" (QR code), "nw7" (NW7 code) or "c39" (CODE39 code). When there is already a data saved on the same date/time, the file number is incremented by 1. The file name cannot be changed.

1Seg

1Seg 204
Before using 1Seg 204
Setting channels 205
Watching 1Seg ..... Activate 1Seg 206
Using i-αppli program guide 209
Using Data Broadcasting ..... Data broadcasting 210
Using TV link ..... TVlink 210
Watching 1Seg with Multi window 211
Recording 1Seg ..... Recording 1Seg 212
Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program ..... Watching reservation/Recording reservation 213
Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings ..... User setting 216
Using Remote controller with microphone F01 ..... Remote controller with microphone 216

1Seg

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service that allows mobile devices to receive broadcasted data along with images and sounds. You can also use i-mode to acquire detailed program information, participate in quiz programs, enjoy TV shopping, etc.

- For details of "1Seg" service, refer to the following websites.
  The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  PC : http://www.dpa.or.jp/
  i-mode : http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

◆ Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc. A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees.
- There are 2 types of information displayed in the data broadcasting area : "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed using airwave along with images and sounds; while "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc., using information of data broadcasting. Sometimes, you may connect to "i-mode site" etc. You need to subscribe to i-mode to connect to the site.
- For viewing "Data broadcasting site", "i-mode site", etc., packet communication fees are charged. Some sites require information fees (i-mode pay sites).
- While watching 1Seg, ToruCa may be saved automatically. To download details from saved ToruCa, packet communication charges apply.

◆ Radio waves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, regardless of whether you are in or out of FOMA service area, it cannot be received where airwaves do not reach or during broadcasting interruptions.
Also, even in FOMA service area, reception condition may be poor or reception may be unavailable in the following places.

- A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
- Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
- Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach

To receive stronger radio waves, try to move FOMA terminal closer or further from your body, or move to another location.

◆ Screen appearing when using 1Seg for the first time

When you use 1Seg for the first time, a confirmation screen for disclaimers appears. If you agree and then press "OK", the confirmation screen does not appear again.

◆ Storage area

Storage area is an area dedicated to 1Seg only in the terminal. Based on the settings made by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), the storage area saves information entered by customers according to instructions of data broadcasting. Saved information may contain personal information such as answers to quizzes, membership number, gender, age, occupation, etc.
Saved information, without reentry, may be displayed when viewing data broadcasting sites or sent to TV broadcasting enterprises (stations).
Deleting storage area→P216
If UIM is replaced or un-inserted, a confirmation screen for initializing the storage area appears. Select "Yes" and initialize the storage area. When "No" is selected, services using the storage area are unavailable.

■ Screen appearing when reading storage area

When using information saved in the storage area while watching a program, "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same affiliate." appears. Select "Yes" to display no confirmation screens subsequently when reading saved information while watching the same program. Select "Yes (Always)" to display no confirmation screens subsequently for different programs.

Before using 1Seg

■ 1Seg watching procedures

① Create and set the channel list corresponding to the area where you watch 1Seg.→P205
② Start 1Seg.→P206

■ **1Seg antenna**

The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna. To best use 1Seg, do not cover the antenna with your hand.→P22

✔INFORMATION

- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any loss or modification of saved contents resulting from malfunction, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal.
  When changing the model of or repairing FOMA terminal, information (still images recorded by 1Seg, TVlink, information saved in the storage area, etc.) saved in the terminal cannot be transferred.
- Watching 1Seg long time while charging may reduce the battery pack lifetime.

Setting channels

To watch 1Seg, you need to create a channel list of broadcasting stations and saved channels, and set it according to the area. Up to 10 items can be saved.

◆ Creating Channel list

Channel list can be created in either of the following ways.

Use preset : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received are saved in advance by area. Select from the area list.

Auto setting : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received in your current location, are automatically searched and set. Perform this within the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

- Channels in a preset may not be available depending on the place you watch. In that case, use Auto setting.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 7 ▶ 📷

- A confirmation screen for creating a channel list appears if there is none.

2 Select a method to create

Setting from a preset : "Use preset" ▶ Select an area ▶ Select a prefecture ▶ Select a local municipality

- For some areas, selecting prefecture or local municipality may be omitted.

Creating by automatic search : "Auto setting" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select an area

Auto setting starts and, upon completion, a confirmation screen appears.

- When "No" is selected on the confirmation screen to select an area, an auto-scanning channel setting screen remains displayed. At this time, channel list is named after the date and time of creating.
- When an area is selected, channels of the selected area are searched first.
- To interrupt Auto setting, press ● and select "Yes".

3 "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- It takes approximately 60 seconds to search for channels in Auto setting. It may take longer time depending on the number of broadcasting stations and airwave conditions.
- Auto setting performed near a noise source such as a PC or LCD TV may require a time.
- While Auto setting is set, system sound is not generated.
- Auto setting is unavailable while recording.

◆ Specifying Channel list

- When there is only one Channel list saved, it is automatically set as the one to be used.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 7

A list of Channel list appears.

2 Move the cursor to Channel list ▶ ✉

Channel list to be used is set and channel number list appears.

- If setting while watching 1Seg, 1Seg watching screen appears immediately.
- For the list of Channel lists, ☑ appears in the set Channel list.

◆ Using Channel list

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 7

2 Perform necessary operations

Opening the channel number list : Select Channel list

Updating Channel list : Move the cursor to Channel list ▶ MENU 4

The next procedure→P205 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating Channel list"

Deleting channel list : Move the cursor to a channel list▶ MENU 5 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶"Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a channel list.
- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

Changing Channel list name : Move the cursor to Channel list▶ MENU 2 ▶Enter Channel list name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)▶ [camera]

Activating 1Seg watching : Select a channel list▶Select a channel

Changing a channel number : Select a channel list▶Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU 1 ▶Select a new channel

Deleting a channel : Select a channel list▶Move the cursor to a channel▶ MENU 2 ▶"Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- While watching 1Seg, the following operations are unavailable for the currently active Channel list.
  - Updating or deleting Channel list
  - Changing channel numbers
  - Deleting registered channels

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

- A confirmation screen appears when you watch 1Seg for the first time.→P204

1 [1Seg] (1 sec. or more)

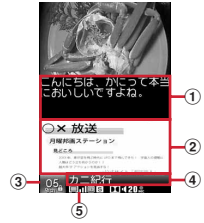
- A confirmation screen for creating a channel list appears if a channel list is not set. Select "OK" to create a channel list.→P205 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating Channel list"

✔INFORMATION

- You can also activate 1Seg watching in the following ways.
  - Selecting 1Seg watching information etc. displayed on Program guide i-αppli, mail, MessageR/F, i-Channel, site, website, etc. (Media To)→P173
  - Watching reservation→P213
- A confirmation screen which "Yes (Always)" is selected during use of 1Seg use, storage area, etc. does not appear again unless any of the UIM replacement or Reset (Preferences), Delete all data, Reset check setting is performed.
- If you select "Yes (default)" on a confirmation screen, data broadcasting or data broadcasting site information may be updated etc. without confirmation and packet communication fees may be charged.

◆1Seg screens

<Vertical standard screen>



<Horizontal display (full-screen)>



<Horizontal display (video with data broadcasting)>

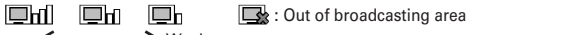


1Seg watching screen

① **Captions (if any)**
② **Data broadcasting or data broadcasting site**
③ **Currently selected remote controller number**
④ **TV station name (currently selected)/Program name (station selection finished)**

- When a program being watched is interrupted, "Unavailable channel" appears.
- On the horizontal display, the name of the next program and starting time are also displayed.

⑤ **1Seg reception level**



- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Unavailable to select because recording is in progress
  : Available to switch services to view→P208
  PLAY / REW : Time shift playback in progress
  / : Time shift normal playback/time shift fast forward playback in progress
  : 1Seg Eco-mode activated
  S / M / 主 / 副 / 主・副 : Sound status (Stereo/Monaural/Main sound/Sub sound/Main+Sub sounds)
  : Dolby Mobile is ON
  + a number : Sound volume : Sound not available
  : Recording in progress
  + Remaining time : Off timer is activated, or "End time" is set in watching reservation (only appears if the remaining time exceeds 99 minutes)
  + : Off timer is activated (until the end of the program), or "End time" is set to "Auto-delay adjust" in watching reservation
  DATA : Available to select items by using the keypad during data broadcasting or at a data broadcasting site
  : Available to switch the watching screen
  : Available to switch to Multi window or concurrently running function→P211
  : Message from TV station
- Icons displayed on horizontal display (zoom in) are identical as on horizontal display (full-screen). On horizontal display (zoom in), because the image is enlarged to fit to the display width, the top and bottom of the image may not be displayed.
- Some icons may not be displayed depending on screens.
- Subtitles on horizontal display (video with data broadcasting) is shown at the bottom of the screen and icons are displayed at the top of the screen.
- When going outside broadcasting service area while selecting a channel, a black screen is displayed for both video and data broadcasting.

◆ Operations while watching TV

Switching watching screens : [ ]
- For vertical display, the screen view switches between vertical standard display and data broadcasting full-screen.
- For horizontal display, the screen view is switched in the following order of horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (zoom in)→horizontal display (video with data broadcasting).

Adjusting volume : [ ], [ ]
- For data broadcasting full-screen, press [ ] and slide on the volume adjust panel to up and down to operate.
- You can also press [ ] to operate when data broadcasting display area is not displayed.

Setting Silent : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)***
- You can also press [ ] for 1 second or more to operate when data broadcasting display area is not displayed.

Starting Program guide i-αppli : [ ]

Switching to Multi window or other function : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)**
- It can be operated while other function is performed at the same time.

Selecting one-key channel : [1]-[9], [ ], [0], [#]*
- Channels after 13 can be selected from the channel number list.
- You cannot select a channel when DATA is displayed.

Selecting previous/next channel : [ ]*

Searching previous/next frequency that can be received : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)***
- Searching channels, after you move etc., may enable you to receive waves from a broadcasting station that is not saved. When you cannot receive waves, the previously watched channel reappears. A broadcasting station that is found through wave reception can be saved to a channel. Note that the channels may not be searched in the order of the remote controller numbers because channels are searched in the order of frequency.

Recording a still image : [ ]→**P213***

Starting/Canceling recording a video : [ ] **(1 sec. or more)→P212***

Scrolling data broadcasting : [ ]

Displaying a link destination of data broadcasting : [ ]

Moving a previous/next page of data broadcasting : ●

- Available when previous and next pages are stored in the cache on the data broadcasting full-screen.

Returning to the first page of data broadcasting : CLR

- By the displayed contents, an operation such as returning to the previous page may be performed.

Terminating 1Seg watching : ⌐ ▶ **"Yes"**

* Unavailable on the data broadcasting full-screen.

■ Operations from submenu

Checking TV station list : MENU 1

Checking program information : MENU 2

- Note that information not yet set or read may not be displayed.

Switching Channel list : MENU 3

The next procedure→P205 Step 2 in "Specifying Channel list"
Operation of the Channel list→P205 Step 2 in "Using Channel list"

Reserving watching/recording : MENU 4 2

The next procedure→P214 Step 3 and the following steps in "Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program"

Checking recordable time/number of items : MENU 4 3

Deleting a recorded video/still image : MENU 4 4 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a video/still image** ▶ **"Yes"**

Activating/Cancelling Off timer : MENU 5 ▶ 1 - 5

Creating introduction mail : MENU 6 2

A mail creation screen appears with information for 1Seg watching of the currently watched program already entered in the message text.

- If a receiver is the terminal that supports Media To function, 1Seg can be activated when information for 1Seg watching is selected.

Moving to the previous/next page of data broadcasting : MENU 7 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- Available when previous and next pages are stored in the cache.

Reloading data broadcasting : MENU 7 3

Displaying details of a certificate : MENU 7 4

- It can be operated while displaying an SSL/TLS page.

Setting Image&Effect : MENU 7 5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Image & Effect→P216

Displaying TV link : MENU 7 6 ▶ **Select a folder**

The next procedure→P210 Step 2 in "Displaying saved TV link"

Returning to the first page of data broadcasting : MENU 7 7

Setting Display setting, Sound setting, Record setting : MENU 8 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Settings→P216

Adding the currently viewed channel to the channel list : MENU 8 4 ▶ **Select a channel**

- When a channel already saved is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Up to 62 items can be registered.

Switching services to view : MENU 8 5 ▶ 1 - 3

- You can operate when other programs (services) are broadcasted in the same channel.

Switching Smooth image ON/OFF : MENU 8 6

When "ON" is set, the image becomes smooth by frame rate enhancement function.

- It is available on the horizontal display (except during 1Seg Eco-mode or while displaying with Multi window).

Switching 1Seg Eco-mode ON/OFF : MENU 8 7

Light becomes disabled when this mode is set to ON to darken the display for power saving. In a well-lighted area, power saving effects may not be great.

Outputting audio using a Bluetooth device : MENU 8 8

The Bluetooth device list appears.
The next procedure→P335 Step 2 and the following steps in "Connecting with registered Bluetooth device"

- If a Bluetooth device is connected, a confirmation screen for outputting sound appears when Voice output to BT is set to "Display".→P216

Displaying key function help : MENU 9

Displaying/Hiding Subtitles : MENU 0

- This is not available when there are no Subtitles.

❖Touch operations

Selecting a previous/next channel : Slide right or left on the image display area ▶ Touch ◁ / ▷

Adjusting volume : Slide up or down on the image display area ▶ Slide up or down on the volume adjust panel

Listing Channel numbers : Touch the image display area ▶ Touch [CH list]

Switching vertical/horizontal display : Touch the image display area▶Touch [Rotate view]

- It is available when FOMA terminal is closed.

Switching watching screens : Touch the image display area▶Touch [ViewSW]

- For vertical display, the screen view is switched from vertical standard screen to data broadcasting full-screen and by touching [ViewSW] in the guide area it is switched from data broadcasting full-screen to vertical standard screen.
- For horizontal display, the screen view is switched in the following order of horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (zoom in)→horizontal display (movie with data broadcasting).

Switching displaying/hiding Subtitles : Touch the image display area▶Touch [Subtitles]

Switching to Multi window or other function : Touch the image display area▶Touch [Multi-task]

- It can be operated while other function is performed at the same time on the horizontal display.

Displaying submenu : Touch [MENU] on the guide area on the vertical display/ Touch the image display area on the horizontal display▶Touch [MENU]

Operations from submenu→P208

Scrolling data broadcasting : Slide in the data broadcasting display area

Displaying a link destination of data broadcasting : Touch an item in data broadcasting area

Enlarging data broadcasting : Double-touch in the data broadcasting display area

- Double-touch again to cancel enlarged display. Moving a previous/next page of data broadcasting cancels enlarged display.

Ending 1Seg watching : Touch [×]▶Touch [Yes] on the vertical display/Touch the image display area▶Touch [×]▶Touch [Yes] on the horizontal display.

✔INFORMATION

- Some channels cannot be received depending on areas. They may be received by updating Channel list or performing Auto setting.→P205
- Depending on airwave strength, a audio may be interrupted, data broadcasting may not be received, or the video picture may contain block noise or may stop.
- When activating 1Seg watching or a channel is switched, it takes a time before watching is enabled.
- When OFF timer end time comes, a confirmation screen for ending the watching appears. When 30 seconds elapse without doing any operations, 1Seg watching stops.
- If 1Seg is started from information for 1Seg watching or Program guide displayed in watching reservation, site or mail, OFF timer is automatically activated if the information contains an end date/time.
- When another channel is selected with OFF timer set to "Complete program", the end date/time set in OFF timer changes to the end date/time of the program broadcasted on the channel selected. Note that, the end date/time does not change unless there is information.

◆ Time shift function

When receiving a call while watching 1Seg, the program can be recorded automatically from that time, and you can watch it after the call ends.

- Time shift recording is available for approximately 1 minutes, and a new recording always overwrites the old one.
- Time shift is not activated while selecting a channel.
- Data broadcast is unavailable during Time shift playback.
- During fast forward play, audio may not be heard clearly.

1 End the call▶"Yes" on a confirmation screen to play the video recorded during the call

- During Time shift playback, the following operations are available.
  [▶] (or slide to right on the image display area) : Switch from normal play to fast forward play*
  [◀] (or slide to left on the image display area) : Switch from fast forward play to normal play*
  [CLR]▶"Yes" (or touch the image display area▶[Back to TV]▶Touch [Yes]) : Return to normal watching from Time shift play

* You can operate on the horizontal display by pressing [▶].

Using i-αppli program guide

You can activate 1Seg watching and make a watching reservation or recording reservation from Program guide.

- "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)" is saved by default as Program guide i-αppli (→P240). You can set Program guide i-αppli to use in Program guide key setting in Software settings of i-αppli (→P235).

• When using Program guide i-αppli for the first time, you must make initial settings.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 2

The i-αppli starts and the program guide appears.

Data broadcasting

Using Data Broadcasting

You can use various information on the site which is linked to a program.

• Data broadcasting and data broadcasting site→P204 "Using 1Seg"

1 **On the screen with data broadcasting, ▶ Select an item**

Data broadcasting is shifted to data broadcasting site display.
Operation during site display→P165

✔INFORMATION

• Depending on selected items, a confirmation screen may appear. Selecting "Yes (Always)" may automatically update data broadcasting/data broadcasting site information without a confirmation from next time. Note that in this case, packet communication fee may be charged.
• If there is not enough available space in the storage area, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

TVlink

Using TV link

For some data broadcasting and/or data broadcasting site, site and memo information can be saved in TVlink. The site or memo information saved in TVlink can be directly displayed.

• Saved contents can be used only by 1Seg.

◆ Saving in TV link

• Up to 50 items can be saved.

1 **Select a savable item in TVlink ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a folder**

• If you attempt to register an already registered URL or Text info, there is not enough available space, or the savable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

◆ Displaying saved TV link

• While data broadcasting/data broadcasting site is displaying, a confirmation screen of TV link list display may appear automatically.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 6 **▶ Select a folder**

• Icon definitions :
: TV link exists : No TV link

2 **Select a TV link ▶ "Yes"**

• Icon definitions are as follows.
: Link to data broadcasting
: Link to a site or website of i-mode or Full Browser
: Text info
• When Text info is selected, selecting "Yes" is not required.

Displaying detail information : Move the cursor to a TV link ▶ ●

Deleting : MENU 2 **▶** 1**-**3 **▶ "Yes"**

• To delete 1 item, move the cursor to TVlink.
• To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.
• To delete all items, on the folder list, MENU 4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select "Yes".

Moving to an other folder : Move the cursor to a TV link ▶ MENU 3 **▶** 1 **or** 2 **▶ Select a destination folder**

• To move selected items, select them ▶ ●.

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

• Up to 20 folders can be created.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 6

2 MENU 1 **▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶** ●

Deleting : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [MENU] [2] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"
- When there is only 1 folder, it cannot be deleted.

Changing a folder name : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [MENU] [3] ▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ [●]

Changing the order of folders : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [MENU] ▶ [5] or [6]

Watching 1Seg with Multi window

You can divide the display into 2 to perform another task while watching 1Seg.
- This is available on horizontal display.
- It is unavailable during Time shift playback.

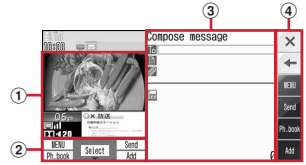
❖Using another function while watching 1Seg

When the following functions are used at the same time, they are displayed in Multi window. However, even for available function, some operation is unavailable in Multi window.
- A call*1, Fake call
- Displaying mail, MessageR/F, SMS*2, mail/SMS creation, Check new message, Check new SMS, Receive option
- i-mode, Full Browser, i-Channel
- i-αppli list, i-αppli Display light time, Vibrate effect
- Phonebook, Received calls, Redial, Record message, Voice memos, Mail logs, User information
- Displaying image list, list/detail information of My Document, list/detail information of Other, PDF data, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files
- Infrared communication/iC transmission, packet communication with a PC, microSD card, Data Security service, GPS, Pedometer/ACT monitor, IC card list, 1Seg reservation list
- Notepad, Alarm clock, Calculator, Dictionaries, Countdown timer
- Call alert volume, Mail/Msg. alert vol., i-concier ring alert, i-αppli effect sound, Melody effect sound

*1 1Seg watching is interrupted.

*2 For received mail, attached melody and the sound effect of Flash graphics in Deco-mail or Decome-Anime cannot be played.
Detail display is not available for mail or SMS received from parties not saved in phonebook.

1 While watching 1Seg, [1Seg] ▶ Select a function



Creating mail during 1Seg watching

① 1Seg watching screen
② Guide area on mail creation screen
③ Mail creation screen
④ Guidance buttons on mail creation screen

Switching between Multi window and 1Seg watching screen : [1Seg](1 sec. or more)
- When 1Seg watching is used together with any of displaying i-mode, Full Browser, PDF data, Word/Excel/PowerPoint files concurrently, the screen is switched each time you press [1Seg] for 1 second or more in the order of Multi window→the screen of the function used concurrently→1Seg watching screen.

Displaying only 1Seg watching screen : Touch 1Seg watching screen

✔INFORMATION
- Even when Multi window is activated by selecting another function, no 1Seg image may appear or 1Seg sound may remain sounding during display of other functions.

❖When receiving a call etc. while watching 1Seg

When receiving a call or when alarm of Schedule or Alarm clock is activated while watching 1Seg, Multi window opens automatically. When receiving a mail, messageR/F, or SMS with Display priority set to "Show message", Multi window opens automatically. After the task is terminated, 1Seg resumes.
- On vertical display, the new task starts.
- 1Seg watching is interrupted during a call or when the alarm sound is set to i-motion.
- You can watch a program received during a call with Time shift function.→P209

Recording 1Seg

You can record movies, sounds and data broadcasting (video recording) or save movies being broadcasted as still images (still image recording).

- Video is saved to "Video(Phone memory)" or "Video(microSD)" folder in "1Seg" of Data Box, and a still image is saved to "Image(Phone memory)" folder in "1Seg".
- Program name is used as a display name for video, the saved date and time are used as a display name for a still image. Saved date and time are used as a file name. However, it does not apply to the file name for the video saved in microSD. →P291
- Programs whose recording is prohibited cannot be recorded. When airwave reception condition is not good, recording may be unavailable.
- Recorded data cannot be sent via mail attachment or infrared communication/iC transmission. They cannot be set to the stand-by display etc.
- Viewing recorded video or still images→P309
- Recording ends when the recorded data reaches 2 Gbytes. It is approximately 11 hours in terms of time. Recording time may vary depending on program contents etc.

◆ Recording video

- Recording is unavailable during Time shift playback or on the data broadcasting full-screen.
- Record setting→P216
- Recording reservation→P213

1 On 1Seg watching screen, [●] (1 sec. or more)

Recording starts.

2 [●] (1 sec. or more)

Recording stops and watching continues.

Continuing recording only with terminating watching : [☎] ▶ "End only reception"

[REC] appears on the stand-by display.

- For touch operation, touch [×] ▶ Touch [End only reception] on the vertical display, or touch the image display area ▶ Touch [×] ▶ Touch [End only reception] on the horizontal display.
- To stop recording, select [REC] and press "Yes".

Terminating both of 1Seg watching and recording : [☎] ▶ "Yes"

- For touch operation, touch [×] ▶ Touch [Yes] on the vertical display, or touch the image display area ▶ Touch [×] ▶ Touch [Yes] on the horizontal display.

✔INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, recording is unavailable. Delete unnecessary recorded video.→P208
- Recording stops when storage area is exhausted while recording.
- In case the saving destination is microSD card, recording may not be performed while functions such as PDF data browsing with a heavy workload on FOMA terminal or other functions using microSD card are operating.
- While recording 1Seg, channel list switching, Auto setting, OFF timer using and service switching cannot be performed.
- In the following cases, both or either of movie and sound stops, however, recording continues.
  - When a call or 64K data communication is received
  - When a call is made
  - When the date and time specified in Alarm clock or schedule*1 come
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority of Mail set to "Show message")
  - When a melody is played
  - When i-αppli is activated from data broadcasting*2

  *1 When using watching reservation schedule, when you select "Yes" on a confirmation screen, recording is stopped if the channel is different from the one being recorded.

  *2 When i-αppli that cannot be used concurrently with recording is started, a confirmation screen for watching and continuation of recording appears
- When a link to 1Seg watching information displayed on a site or mail is selected while recording, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen to stop recording and start watching the linked channel. If the linked channel is the same as the one being recorded, recording continues.

- At the time for recording reservation while recording, reserved recording starts. When the channel currently recording and the channel for recording reservation are different, a confirmation screen appears if Record setting of recording reservation is set to "Operation".
- To record data broadcasting, record it for approximately 1 minute or more under strong wave reception conditions. If the recording time is too short, data broadcasting may not be displayed.
- If FOMA terminal goes outside broadcasting service area immediately after starting recording and the recording is stopped without receiving the airwave, the recorded data may not be saved.
- For some programs, movie and/or sound may be recorded from a point a little before recording operation is done.
- While a function that cannot be activated at the same time as recording is running, a confirmation screen appears.

◆ Recording still image

- Recording is unavailable during Time shift playback or video recording or on the data broadcasting full-screen. Subtitles and data broadcasting are not saved.

1 On 1Seg watching screen, [●]

- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302
- If a videophone is received immediately after pressing [●], still images may not be recorded.

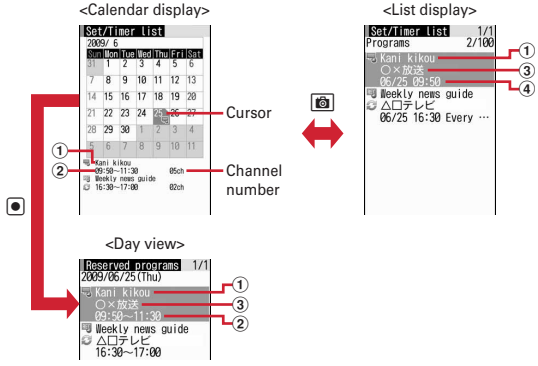
Watching reservation/Recording reservation

Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program

You can start 1Seg watching, receive notification of start of a program or start recording automatically.

- Up to 100 watching and/or recording reservations can be saved in total, but the savable number varies by the number of saved items in Scheduler.→P430
- You can also use channel information shown in Program guide i-αppli, site or mail to register reservations.

1 [MENU] [LifeKit] [9] [4]



Reservation list screen

① **Program name**
② **Start time - End time***
③ **TV station**
④ **Start time**

* In the case of a long-term schedule, the start time is displayed only on the start date and the end time is displayed only on the end date. The start and end dates are displayed between those days.

- In Calendar display, use [✉] / [✉] to switch months.
- Icon definitions are as follows.
  : Watching reservation : Recording reservation
  / : Repeated schedule ⟷ / : Long-term schedule
- At the bottom of calendar display, list display and Day view screen, icons of programs which have already passed start time and date are displayed in gray.

Setting calendar display format : In calendar display, [MENU] [6] [2] ▶ Set required items ▶ [●]

Set required items→P317 "Setting view" (Scheduler type cannot be set)

Displaying key function help : In calendar display, [MENU] [7]

2 In list view or Daily view, ✉

The reservation method selection screen appears.

- In calendar display, press MENU 1.

3 Select a reservation method

Reserving from Program guide i-αppli : "By program guide"

Program guide i-αppli starts. You can reserve watching or recording.

Reserving 1Seg watching : "Manual reception" ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.
- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- Set notify alarm icon definitions.
  🔔 (yellow)/ 🔔 (gray) : Start-alarm setting activated/deactivated
  ON : Start after confirm AUTO : Auto start OFF : Not start
- MENU : Change to recording reservation

Reserving 1Seg recording : "Manual recording" ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.
- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- You can use REC setting to set whether to prioritize recording or operation when using the function that cannot be used with recording. When "Operation" is set, a confirmation screen for recording appears when the time of recording reservation comes.
- REC setting icon definitions.
  REC : Recording : Operation
  : Save to phone : Save to microSD
- MENU : Change to watching reservation

4 📷

- If the start time has already passed when you make watching reservation, the program starts immediately.
- If 1 minute before the start time has already passed when you make recording reservation, preparation of recording starts.

Changing the reservation : MENU

✔INFORMATION

- Long-term schedule is defined as there being 24 hours or more from the start to end time. Long-term schedule and repeated schedule cannot be set concurrently.
- Watching reservation and recording reservation are also displayed in Scheduler.

◆ When the reserved date and time come

❖When the time set in watching reservation comes

The saved reserved contents appear on the display.

- When pressing any keys except 📞, 🔇, 🔍, 🔕, 🔦 while the alarm sounds, you can display the activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching.
- At the watching reservation time during recording, a confirmation screen appears.
- Operations while watching →P206

✔INFORMATION

- Operations for the reserved contents are the same as those for the schedule reminder. →P318
- When multiple watching reservation items or schedules are saved, the alarm of the watching reservation or schedule saved the last becomes effective. 1Seg watching may not be activated according to Sync TV start depending on the order of saving. The Schedules or watching reservation not activated can be confirmed by pressing ✉ after the alarm sound is stopped.
- In the following cases, even if 1Seg is set to be activated with "Auto start" in Set notify alarm, 1Seg is not activated and activation notification screen appears. Pressing ● on the activation notification screen can display the activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching.
  - When the specified date and time come during a call (in this case, an alert sounds)
  - When other function is activated while the alarm sounds
- When the specified date and time come during activating moving picture/i-motion or Music&Video Channel, 1Seg watching cannot be activated regardless of Activate 1Seg setting. To watch, terminate moving picture/i-motion or Music&Video Channel.

❖When the time set in recording reservation comes

REC blinks on the stand-by display 1 minute before the start time. When the specified time comes, blinking stops and recording starts automatically. REC appears on the stand-by display during recording .

- To stop recording, select REC and press "Yes".

✔INFORMATION

- Preparations for recording are made under poor condition of airwave reception, and recording is started when the wave reception condition becomes better.
- When reserving times are overlapped, a reservation with earlier start time is interrupted by the one with later start time. Note that, if the start times are the same, the later reservation is given priority.
- When recording reservation was made without the confirmation screen for using 1Seg displayed, recording is not performed.→P206
- When reserved recording starts while any of the following functions is running, recording starts according to Priority (→P214) interrupting the running function or a confirmation screen appears. Active data in the interrupted function may be discarded.
  - Camera, Sound recorder, Bar code reader
  - Music&Video Channel, MUSIC Player
  - Moving picture/i-motion
  - Some i-αppli (A confirmation screen appears regardless of Priority).
- When reserved recording is started during downloading music data, the music data cannot be saved until the end of recording.

◆ When reserved recording ends

The icon (/ : Recording reservation completed/failed) appears on the standby display. Select to check recording results.→P215

- When multiple programs are reserved to be recorded, an icon for the last recording result is displayed.
- The saving destination, file names and precautions are the same as for recording while watching.→P212

◆ Checking/Operating reservation

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 4 **▶ Perform necessary operations**

Displaying the reservation details screen : Select the reservation

Editing : Move the cursor to reservation ▶ MENU 2 **▶ Edit reservation ▶** ● **▶** ●

- You cannot operate reservations in calendar display.

Deleting : MENU 3 **▶ Select an item ▶ "Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the reservation.
- If a long-term schedule is included when performing One day, select whether to delete all except the long-term schedule.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- The type of deletion that can be operated varies depending the display.

Rearranging <Sort> : MENU 4 **▶** 1-4

- "Name(Ascending)" sorts program names in the order of Unicode.
- Can be operated only in list display.

Displaying recording result : MENU 5

The next procedure→P215

- Cannot be operated on Day view screen.

Setting display/operation : MENU 6 1 **▶ Set required items ▶** ●

- When Auto-del past items is set to "Auto delete", reservations that already passed the reserved time are deleted without confirmation.
- Cannot be operated on Day view screen.

✔INFORMATION

- In list display, reservations with the start date/time already passed appear after those not passed. However, this does not apply when items are sorted or Sort of Display/Operation is set to other than "Air date(new→old)".

◆ Checking result of recording reservation <Recording result>

- Up to 50 items can be saved. When the maximum is exceeded, items are overwritten chronologically.
- Reserved recording result is not recorded if reservation is canceled because other reservation was set for the same time or because FOMA terminal was not turned ON at the start time.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 9 5

Recording result list appears.

- Icon definitions
  : Recording reservation completed : Recording reservation failed

2 Move the cursor to a result ▶ ●

Recording result details appear.

Playing a recorded program : Select a completed recording result

- Playing is unavailable when recorded program is moved or deleted.

Deleting a log : Move the cursor to a log▶ MENU ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a history.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

User setting

Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings

Display setting : Set brightness of light, display of subtitle or icon, display of ticker when the information of mail or i-concier is received. With Display icon always, you can set whether to always display icons at the top of the horizontal display.

Sound setting : Set whether to display a confirmation screen for outputting sound when voice sound is switched or a Bluetooth device is connected, or set ON/OFF of Dolby Mobile

- This setting of Dolby Mobile also applies to 1Seg of Stereo sound effect.

Image & Effect : Set whether to display image of data broadcasting or to play sound effect.

ToruCa from 1Seg : Set whether to automatically save ToruCa distributed while watching or recording 1Seg to "ToruCa" of FOMA terminal.

- Even when Duplication check (→P262) is "OFF", no ToruCa is saved if it is identical to the existing one.

Restore storage area : Delete the information of Storage area.

Reset permit status : Redisplay a confirmation screen that "Yes (Confirm once)" is selected on the confirmation screen of data broadcasting.

Play setting : Set whether to skip CM or the part that is not recorded while playing a video or to display a confirmation screen when skipping

Record setting : Set destination to be saved or time for ending Video.

- It is unavailable for recording reservation.

1 MENU **[LifeKit] 9 8**

2 Perform necessary operations

Setting Display setting : 1 ▶ Set required items▶ 📷

- If setting Display subtitle to "In silent mode", subtitle appears when "No" is selected from a sound play confirmation screen appearing when watching 1Seg in Silent mode.
- When Subtitle size is set to "Large", data broadcasting is not displayed on the vertical standard display.
- For the horizontal display (movie with data broadcasting), the subtitle size remains unchanged.

Setting Sound setting : 2 ▶ Set required items▶ 📷

Setting Image & Effect : 3 1 ▶ Set required items▶ 📷

Setting Receiving ToruCa from 1Seg : 3 2 ▶ 1 or 2

Performing Restore storage area : 3 3 ▶ Move the cursor to affiliate broadcasting station or individual enterprise▶ MENU ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- When there are storage areas of individual enterprises, select an affiliate broadcasting station.
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to an information item.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

Resetting permit status : 3 4 ▶ Authenticate▶ "Yes"

Setting Play setting : 4 ▶ Set required items▶ 📷

Setting Record setting : 5 ▶ Set required items▶ 📷

- Record time is the time from starting recording or changing the setting of recording until recording ends.

✔INFORMATION

- Display light is not applied while 1Seg ECO mode is ON.
- Recording destination of Record setting is applied from the recording performed after the setting. Record time is applied from the time of setting.

Remote controller with microphone

Using Remote controller with microphone F01

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate during 1Seg watching.

▶/II during time shift fast forward play : Time shift ordinary play

▶/II (1 sec. or more)*1 : End 1Seg watching (including data broadcasting site)

+ − : Adjust volume

While watching, + (1 sec. or more) *1 : Select the next channel

During time shift play, + (1 sec. or more)*2 : Time shift fast forward play

While watching, − (1 sec. or more) *1 : Select the previous channel

◂HOLD (Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable ▶/II, + and − keys.

◂HOLD (Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

*1 Available only on 1Seg watching screen.

*2 Unavailable during displaying detail program information.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel ..... Music&Video Channel 218
Setting/Checking/Canceling programs 218
Playing a program 219
Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box 221

MUSIC Player

MUSIC Player 222
Saving music data or Uta-moji Lyrics 222
Viewing MUSIC Player screen 224
Playing music data 225
Managing folder/playlist/data 226

Enjoying music by various operations

Using i-αppli while playing music ..... BGM play 229
Using Remote controller with microphone F01
..... Remote controller with microphone 229

Handling music data

- This manual refers to Chaku-uta full® and WMA (Windows Media® Audio) files played with MUSIC Player as "music data".
- FOMA terminal can play WMA file or Chaku-uta full® protected by copyright protection technologies.
- When downloading music data from Internet websites etc., check the use conditions (permitted, prohibited actions, etc.).
- WMA files protected by copyright protection technologies are played using information specific to FOMA terminal. When information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to failure, repair or modifications of the terminal, existing WMA files may not be played.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for handling of copy control CD (CCCD) or for reactions to disability of converting music data to WMA files.
- Music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card is allowed for personal use only. When using the music data, take extreme care not to infringe intellectual property rights of a third party such as copyrights etc. Do not move or copy music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card to other devices such as a PC.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service which automatically distributes a program of up to approximately 1 hour at night just by setting your favorite music program etc. in advance. You can also enjoy high-quality video program of up to approximately 30 minutes. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program at your convenient time such as on commuting.

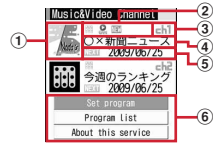
■ Using Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a charged service requiring subscription. To subscribe to the Music&Video Channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double in advance.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some programs besides Music&Video Channel service fee.
- If UIM is used on a Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal after subscribing to Music&Video Channel, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. Note that the service fee is charged unless Music&Video Channel is unsubscribed.
- Program setting and downloading are unavailable during international roaming*. Stop distribution of programs before leaving Japan. Also, restart distribution of programs after returning to Japan.
  * Note that attempting program setting or downloading during international roaming requires packet communication fee for i-mode connection.
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music with Music&Video Channel (Background play). Note that it is unavailable for video programs. Combination of functions that can be used together→P408
- For details of Music&Video Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Setting/Checking/Canceling programs

- Up to 2 programs can be set. To set, Music&Video Channel program site must be registered in My Menu.→P163

1 MENU [MUSIC] 2



Music&Video Channel screen

① **Image of a set program**
- appears if it is not displayed.

② **State of program**
: Program completely downloaded : Program partially downloaded
: Replay restricted, trick play restricted
/ : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution
NEW : Program not played yet : Download failed

③ **Channel number**

④ **Display name of programs**
"No program" appears before a program is downloaded, and "Updating program" appears while a program is being downloaded.

⑤ **Schedule of next program update**

⑥ **Service menu**

2 "Set program"▶Set, check or cancel the program according to instructions on the screen

- If you select the service menu at the time of purchase of this FOMA terminal or if the UIM is replaced, a confirmation screen for program setting appears.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

✔INFORMATION

- To set a program with a different UIM installed, first check the program setting information from Set program. Checking the program setting information may delete programs not moved to Saved program folder.
- Even when canceling the setting of program, the site registered in My Menu is not deleted.

❖When program is set

appears on the stand-by display 12 hours before program distribution time. Program is automatically downloaded at night.

- On the stand-by display, appears when the download was successful, if failed. If you select the icon, you can open Music&Video Channel screen.

✔INFORMATION

- If the battery level is low, programs cannot be downloaded. Because downloading program may take time, charge full well and use under good radio wave conditions.
- If communication is interrupted during download of a program, the program is automatically downloaded up to 5 times every 3 minutes.
- If downloading failed because FOMA terminal is not turned ON, the battery level is low, out of service area or in the bad radio wave conditions, downloading is attempted again at the same time of the night, the next day.
- Downloading cannot be performed automatically in the following cases. Set the program again from Music&Video Channel screen.
  - If another UIM is inserted after you set a program, or the UIM is inserted to another FOMA terminal compatible with Music&Video Channel
  - If all data on FOMA terminal is deleted
- Downloaded programs are saved by channel temporarily to Delivered program folder in Music&Video Channel of Data Box. Programs of Delivered program folder are deleted and cannot be played when the channel containing that program is updated. Programs can be enjoyed during their valid period by moving them to another folder before updating (→P221, 298). Note that some programs may not be moved.
- Canceling Music&Video Channel or i-mode may delete programs in Delivered program folder.
- Checking memory space→P302

❖Downloading programs manually

When program downloading fails, the rest of the program can be manually downloaded.

- A message appears for a time slot which could not be downloaded.
- Even if program download is interrupted, downloaded chapters can be played partially.

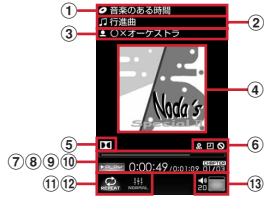
1 MENU [MUSIC] 2 ▶ **Select a program** ▶ **"Yes"**

Playing a program

- Operation from Saved program folder in Data Box→P221

1 MENU [MUSIC] 2 ▶ **Select a program**

Music&Video Channel player is activated and the program is played from the beginning or from the beginning of the chapter previously stopped. A time link distribution program is played at the linked time.



Music&Video Channel player screen

① **Program title**
② **Chapter title**
③ **Artist's name or creator's name of the chapter**
④ **Chapter image/Video or program image**
- Some may not be displayed.

⑤ **Dolby Mobile is ON**
⑥ **: Replay restricted : Time link distribution : Trick play restricted**

⑦ **Play position indicator**
⑧ **Play state**
▶PLAY : In play ⏸PAUSE : In pause
▶▶FF : In fast forward ◀◀REW : In rewind
⑨ **Play time/Total time**
⑩ **Current chapter number/Number of total chapters**
⑪ **Repeat play***
⑫ **Equalizer***
⑬ **Play volume**

* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray.

- The following operations are available on the Music&Video Channel player screen.
  ● : Pause/Play*
  ▲ : Adjust volume
  ◀ ▶ (1 sec. or more) : Rewind*/Fast forward*
  ◀ : Jump to the beginning of the chapter, or jump to the previous chapter if play time is within 3 seconds*
  ▶ : Move to the next chapter*
  ✉ : Connect a site if URL information is contained in the program
  CLR : Stop playing and end Music&Video Channel player screen

  * Unavailable for time link distribution program
- The light turns on or blinks by some operations.

Setting/Canceling repeat : MENU 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- This is not available for a time link distribution program.

Setting Display light time : MENU 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- When "Phone setting" is specified, the light turns on according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.
- This setting also applies to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light and Display light time of Settings for i-motion.

Setting/Canceling Dolby Mobile : MENU 6 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- This setting also applies to Music&Video Channel of Stereo sound effect.

Setting Equalizer : MENU 7 ▶ 1-8

- This is not available for video programs. Also, when playing using Bluetooth device, it is not available.
- "In-a-train" reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.

Playing using a Bluetooth device : MENU 9 1
The Bluetooth device list appears.
The next procedure→P335 Step 2 and the following steps in "Connecting with registered Bluetooth device"

Setting whether to display Voice output to BT screen : MENU 9 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2

❖Programs with replay restrictions

Some programs are subject to replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play programs which exceed the restrictions.

- When setting both replay expiration and replay period, the date closer to the current date is displayed.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.
- If you use in other than Japan, replay period may be expired before or after the displayed expiration.

✔INFORMATION

- In the following cases, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
  - When a call is received
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority set to "Show message")
  - When i-mode inquiry is performed
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- Time link distribution programs have available time to play already assigned. Playing these programs requires auto time adjust.
- When a program that was partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining section appears. Selecting "Play" plays up to the downloaded chapter. An entire time link distribution program needs to be downloaded before playing.
- When a program that has failed updating is selected, a confirmation screen for re-downloading appears. Selecting "Play" plays the previously downloaded program.
- With Rewind, Fast forward, Chapter back or Chapter skip, the operation with the restriction is unavailable. When the remaining replay count is 0 while playing, the operation of rewinding, returning to chapter or playing from the chapter list is unavailable.
- If the battery level is low, a confirmation screen for playing appears.

◆ Checking program chapter list

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ MENU 1

Playing a chapter : Select a chapter
Checking details of chapter : Move the cursor to a chapter ▶ MENU

◆ Checking program information

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ MENU 2

- When the program name is unknown, "musicchX" (where X is a channel number) is displayed.

◆ Moving a program

A program is moved to Saved program folder of Music&Video Channel in Data Box.

- Up to 10 items can be saved.

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, a program cannot be moved. Delete unnecessary programs from Saved program folder.
- Data failed in downloading, data with Move restriction set, data with replay restriction reached, or a time link distribution program cannot be moved.
- Data cannot be moved to microSD card.

◆ Deleting a program

- Deleting a program does not cancel Program setting.

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **"Yes"**

◆ Connecting to sites

You can connect to the site for the program with URL.

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a program** ▶ MENU 5 ▶ **"Yes"**

Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box

From Data Box, you can display or play a distributed program or program saved in Saved program folder, or manage folders or programs.

- Folder operations are the same as for other data in Data Box. Note that Delivered program folder and Saved program folder cannot be deleted.
  - Creating/Deleting folders→P298
  - Moving (→P298), Deleting (→P301), Sorting (→P301) programs
- Programs cannot be copied.

◆ Playing from program list

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 3

: Delivered program folder : Saved program folder : User-created folder

2 **Select a folder**



Thumbnails display　　List display

- In the thumbnail view, the file size at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

① **Replay restriction**
: Replay restricted, trick play restricted
/ : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution

② **Display name of programs**

③ **State of program**
: Program completely downloaded : Program partially downloaded
: Program unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

④ **File restriction**
: File restricted

⑤ **Program image**
When program images cannot be displayed, the following icons appear.
: No image : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

3 Select a program

Music&Video Channel player is activated and the program is played.→P219

◆ Changing program display name

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [3] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor a program ▶ [MENU] [5] ▶ Enter a program display name (up to 128 two-byte or 256 one-byte characters) ▶ [●]

MUSIC Player

You can play Chaku-uta full® downloaded from a site and Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files imported from music CDs, the Internet, etc. to a PC. You can also set Link lyrics & song to display Uta-moji Lyrics downloaded from a site on the player screen.

- i-motion containing only sound downloaded from i-mode is played from Data Box (→P282). Playing is available from microSD card when i-motion is saved on the card (→P294).
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music (Background play). →P312
- You can play music in stereo using a Bluetooth device or stereo earphone set (or stereo speaker).
- Precautions for using microSD card→P290
- For details of MUSIC Player, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- For Windows Media Player, contact the manufacturer of your PC.

❖ Uta-hodai

This is a flat-rate service with replay expiration provided by a music distribution company.
Music expired or that with service registration stopped etc. cannot be played. To play, updating license is required.

Saving music data or Uta-moji Lyrics

- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302
- Checking memory space of FOMA terminal, microSD card→P296, 302

◆ Downloading Chaku-uta full® or Uta-moji Lyrics

- For Chaku-uta full® can be saved up to 5 Mbytes per item and up to 100 items to FOMA terminal or 1,000 items to microSD card.
- Uta-moji Lyrics can be saved up to 50 Kbytes per item and up to 100 items in FOMA terminal. It cannot be saved in microSD card.
- A lyrics & song link can be set to downloaded Uta-moji Lyrics.→P228
- Some Chaku-uta full® contains Uta-moji Lyrics.
- When replay expiration or replay period expires while downloading, you cannot play nor save.

1 Display a site including Chaku-uta full® or Uta-moji Lyrics ▶ Select Chaku-uta full® or Uta-moji Lyrics

Download starts. Uta-hodai download starts after the replay expiration information is downloaded.

Stopping downloading Chaku-uta full® : [●] ▶ "No"
Stopping downloading Uta-moji Lyrics : [●] ▶ "Yes"

2 "Save"

Playing : "Play"
- The operation is unavailable for Uta-moji Lyrics.

Saving the partially downloaded Chaku-uta full® : "Save temporary".
- It appears if "No" is selected on the confirmation screen for resuming when downloading is interrupted. The rest of data can be downloaded from the data list screen.→P225 Step 2 in "Playing music data"

Displaying detail information : "File property"→P228
Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 Enter the display name (up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters) ▶ [●]

- When "📱↔💾" appears in the lower-left corner of the guide area, the saving destination can be switched by pressing [i-α]. When "SDSave" is displayed, press [●] to save to microSD card.

- When music data or Uta-moji Lyrics that available lyrics & song link is included, a confirmation screen for lyrics & song link appears. Select "Yes" and subsequently select music data or Uta-moji Lyrics to set lyrics & song link.

◆ Saving WMA files

You can save WMA files saved on a PC to microSD card using Windows Media Player. Be sure to check the version of Windows Media Player before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.

- **It is recommended that you use PC's OS and Windows Media Player in combination of the following versions.**
  - **For Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later as PC's OS**
    Windows Media Player 10 (version 10.00.00.3802 or later) or Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.5721.5145 or later)
  - **For Windows Vista**
    Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.6000.6324 or later)
- For operations, refer to the help of Windows Media Player 10/11.
- It is recommended that you keep Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows Media Player updated to ensure better performance of operating or displaying forwarded WMA files.
- Up to 1,000 items can be saved. They cannot be saved on FOMA terminal.
- Playlists can be transferred from a PC. However, up to 400 items in the playlist can be transferred.
- WMA file saved to microSD card with another FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played on F-09A. And, if you use a microSD card used for transferring a WMA file from a different FOMA terminal, it may not be recognized by a PC even if you switch to MTP mode. In these cases, perform Delete all WMAs (→P229), or initialize the microSD card (→P296). Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the data other than music files are also deleted.

1 Set USB mode settings to "MTP mode"

USB mode settings→P297

2 With Windows Media Player activated, connect FOMA terminal to a PC using USB cable ▶ Send WMA file from the PC

- For connecting method, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when transferring a WMA file, installation of the FOMA communication configuration file described in "Manual for PC Connection" is not required.

Napster® application

Using Napster® application, music data can be saved.

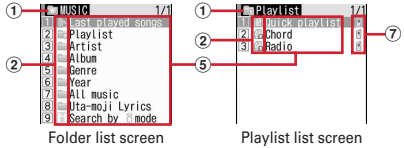
- Napster® application can be downloaded from the website below.
  http://www.napster.jp/
- For more detailed information about Napster® application, refer to the website below.
  http://www.napster.jp/support/

✔INFORMATION

- Do not remove the USB cable during data transfer. It may cause malfunction or data loss.
- While a PC is accessing microSD card in FOMA terminal, only MTP mode can be switched.
- WMA files saved in microSD card in FOMA terminal can be deleted using Windows Media Player while FOMA terminal is connected to a PC.
- When music data cannot be transferred from a PC, you can check the optimum configuration for your PC by using "ポータブルデバイス用パソコン環境診断 (PC environment diagnosis for a portable device)".
  For ポータブルデバイス用パソコン環境診断, refer to the following website.
  FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→WMP環境診断ツール (WPM environment diagnostic tool)
- When Windows Media Player and Napster® application are used at the same time on a PC, processing speed of the PC may be lowered.
- AAC format files can be played only in "Other movie" in Multimedia on microSD card.
  Set the copying destination of AAC format files to directly under the PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE or MUDxxx in MMFILE on microSD card (→P291).
  * Files named other than "MMFxxxx" or files with extension of "m4a" cannot be displayed or played even after they are copied.
  * When you copy files, it is recommended that you use SD utility of FOMA F series. SD utility automatically converts file names.
    For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the following website from a PC.
    FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→データリンクソフト (Data link software)

Viewing MUSIC Player screen

■ **Folder list screen/Playlist list screen/Data list screen**



Folder list screen　　Playlist list screen



Data list screen (Jacket image display)　　Data list screen (List display)

- On the jacket image display screen, the file size (actual memory size) of the data at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

① **Current folder/playlist**

② **Folder/Playlist/Types of functions**

: Play previous tune / : Playlist folder

: Folder

- "Artist", "Album", "Genre", "Year" folders : Create a folder to organize data (except Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link) according to category
- "All music" folder : Display all data (except Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link)
- "Uta-moji Lyrics" folder : Display all Uta-moji Lyrics (except Uta-moji Lyrics in Chaku-uta full®)

: Searching songs from i-mode sites→P222

: Quick playlist / : Playlist created by FOMA terminal

: Playlist transferred from a PC

③ **Originated**

: i-mode / : Data exchange

④ **Replay restriction**

(orange) : Replay unrestricted (music data)

: Replay unrestricted (partially saved music data)

: Replay unrestricted (Uta-moji Lyrics)

/ / : Number of times/Expiration/Period (only Chaku-uta Full®)

/ : License not expired/License expired, no expiration, replay prohibited (Uta-hodai only)

(gray) : Replay prohibited

⑤ **Folder name/Playlist name/Function name/Music display name**

⑥ **File format and copyright management**

: Chaku-uta full®, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® with Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: WMA file, Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM)

: WMA file with lyrics & song link, Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM)

: WMA file, no copyright management

: WMA file with lyrics & song link, no copyright management

: Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

⑦ **Save location**

: FOMA terminal : microSD card

⑧ **File restriction**

: File restricted

⑨ **Jacket image**

When images cannot be displayed, the following icons appear.

(Music data)/ (Uta-moji Lyrics) : No jacket image

: Music data partially saved

(Music data)/ (Uta-moji Lyrics) : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

■ **Player screen**



Player screen

① **Tune number/Number of tunes in folder or playlist**
② **Tune title/Artist name**
③ **Jacket image of tune**
④ **Uta-moji Lyrics**
⑤ **Play time/Total time**
⑥ **Play position indicator**
⑦ **Play state**
PLAY : Normal play FF : Fast forward REW : Rewind
PAUSE : In pause
⑧ **Dolby Mobile is ON**
⑨ **Play volume**
⑩ **Repeat play***
REPEAT : Play one REPEAT : Play all
⑪ **Shuffle***
⑫ **Equalizer***

* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray.

✓INFORMATION

- If the original song saved to a Playlist on FOMA terminal cannot be recognized, "--" appears as a song name in the Playlist and the song cannot be played.

Playing music data

- The light is always on for the playback in the slide style or YOKO-MOTION style. It operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display & Key light for the playback in the basic style.

1 MENU **[MUSIC]** 1 ▶ **Select a folder or Playlist**

2 **Select music data**

Playback starts. The light turns on or blinks depending on operations.

- When Chaku-uta full® failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading remaining data appears. If the remaining data cannot be downloaded again, partially saved data is deleted.
- When Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link set is selected, you can check the music data that the link set to. When Uta-moji Lyrics without lyrics & song link is selected, a confirmation screen for setting appears. Select "Yes" and select music data to set lyrics & song link.
- The following operations are available on the player screen.
  - ●, [i] : Play/Pause
  - ▲▼ : Adjust volume
  - ◀▶ (1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward
  - ◀ : Jump to the beginning of the song, or jump to the previous song if play time is within 3 seconds
  - ▶ : Move to the next song
  - [c] : Display whole Uta-moji Lyrics (only available during playing)/Access a site to search Uta-moji Lyrics if Uta-moji Lyrics is not saved
  - When whole Uta-moji Lyrics is displayed, a title, artist name, lyric writer and lyrics are displayed.
  - [✉] : Switch between data list screen and player screen without stopping playback
  - CLR : Stop playing and display data list screen
  - 1 : Changing the repeat setting
  - 2 : Changing the shuffle setting
  - 3 : Changing the equalizer settings (cannot be changed during playback)
  - 4 : Changing Dolby Mobile (cannot be changed during playback)
  - [i] (Press twice quickly) : Save the current song or song in pause to Quick playlist→P227

(1 sec. or more) : Stop MUSIC Player

When Uta-hodai is selected

When you need to update the replay period in the selected file or other files, a confirmation screen appears. After update is completed, Uta-hodai is played.

Playing using a Bluetooth device : MENU 4

The Bluetooth device list appears.

The next procedure→P335 Step 2 and the following steps in "Connecting with registered Bluetooth device"

✔INFORMATION

- In the following cases, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
  - When a call is received
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority set to "Show message")
  - When i-mode inquiry is performed
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- If the battery level is low, a confirmation screen appears.

❖When music data has replay restriction set

Some music data has replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play music that exceeds the restrictions.

- The remaining replay count, replay expiration and replay period of Chaku-uta full® can be checked by viewing the detail information.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.

■ Uta-hodai replay expiration

After expiration, a confirmation screen appears. Updating the replay expiration requires site connection. Packet communication fee is charged to connect to a site.

✔INFORMATION

- The replay expiration of Uta-hodai may contain a renewal period of several days after the specified expiration. In this period, the service is available without updating the replay expiration information.
- When MUSIC Player is used with a different UIM from the one used for downloading Uta-hodai, it is recommended to delete all data at once.→P123
- When Uta-hodai is attempted to be downloaded from a site for which FOMA terminal does not have an updated license, a confirmation screen appears before downloading. Select "Yes" and update license to download.
- The default tone sounds when Uta-hodai set to ring alert or alarm sound cannot be played.
- Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double is not applicable to packet communication fee to be charged for updating the replay expiration during international roaming.
- To play a WMA file which cannot be played, check that it has not expired yet using a PC, and connect FOMA terminal to the PC to synchronize.→P223
- In a place overseas with time difference, the replay expiration of Uta-hodai is displayed with local time. Note that, the replay expiration is passed in Japan time, playing is unavailable regardless of the local time displayed.

◆MUSIC Player setting <Settings>

1 MENU [MUSIC] 1 ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

- "In-a-train" of Equalizer reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.
- With Start at connected BT, you can set whether to start/stop MUSIC Player automatically when an audio device is connected. It applies to Start MUSIC Player in Bluetooth settings.

Managing folder/playlist/data

◆Moving Chaku-uta full®

You can move Chaku-uta full® between FOMA terminal and microSD card.

1 **Move the cursor to Chaku-uta full® on the data list screen other than Playlist** ▶ MENU 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**

Chaku-uta full® is moved, and and are switched.

- To move selected items, select them ▶ ●.

✔INFORMATION

- Chaku-uta full® partially saved or exceeded replay restriction cannot be moved. WMA file or Uta-moji Lyrics cannot be moved, too.
- If Chaku-uta full® set for ring alert is moved from FOMA terminal to microSD card, the ring alert setting returns to default.

◆ Deleting data

1 Move the cursor to data on the data list screen other than Playlist ▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.

✔INFORMATION

- When all data is deleted in a folder, the folder itself is also deleted. However, a folder stored by default is not deleted.
- If music data set for ring alert is deleted, the ring alert setting returns to default.
- When data with lyrics & song link is deleted, the Link lyrics & song is also canceled.

◆ Creating/Deleting playlist

You can manage music data in your preferred playing order. Up to 20 in FOMA terminal and up to 100 in microSD card can be saved.

- Playlists created on a PC can be transferred.→P223

1 Select Playlist folder on the folder list screen

2 MENU 1

Deleting : Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ MENU 3 ▶ "Yes"

- Quick playlist cannot be deleted.

Displaying name : Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ MENU 4

Changing name : Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ MENU 5

- Quick Playlist and Playlist transferred from a PC cannot be renamed.

3 Enter the Playlist name (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶ ●

◆ Creating playlist from music data to save

1 Move the cursor to music data on the data screen other than Playlist ▶ MENU 3 1 ▶ 1-3

The next procedure→P227 Step 3 in "Creating/Deleting playlist"

- Selecting operation ▶ ● is required for registering selected items.

◆ Saving music data to playlist

Up to 100 songs can be saved in 1 Playlist.

- Songs cannot be saved in a Playlist transferred from a PC.

❖Operating from playlist to save data

1 On the folder list screen, select Playlist folder ▶ Select a playlist

2 MENU 3 1 ▶ 1-3 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data

- To save selected items, select them ▶ ●. To save all items, ● is required.
- All music data is displayed as selected for registering all items.

Saving to playlist that no music date is saved : "Yes" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data ▶ ●

❖Operating from the music data to save

1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen other than Playlist ▶ MENU 3 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ Select a playlist

- To save selected items, select them ▶ ●.

◆ Saving music data to Quick playlist on the player screen

You can add a song in playback or paused to dedicated Playlist (Quick Playlist). Up to 100 songs can be saved.

- Quick playlist cannot be newly created.
- A song being played from a Playlist cannot be saved to Quick Playlist.

1 On the player screen, press ▣ twice

When saved, the confirmation sound is emitted.

◆ Removing music data from playlist

- Music data cannot be removed from a Playlist transferred from a PC.
- Removing music data from a Playlist does not delete the data.

1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen in Playlist ▶ MENU 3 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To remove selected items, select them ▶ ●.

◆ Copying playlist

1 On the folder list screen, select the Playlist folder ▶ Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ MENU 2

- When copying Playlists transferred from a PC, press 2 and select "Yes". These are saved to FOMA terminal as Playlists created on FOMA terminal.

◆ Sorting play order in playlist freely

- Sorting is unavailable for playlist transferred from a PC.

1 On the data list screen in Playlist, MENU 3 3 ▶ Move the cursor to music data ▶ i-αppli or mail ▶ ●

◆ Rearranging the display order of data <Sort>

1 On the data list screen other than playlist, MENU 7 ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

◆ Setting Link lyrics & song to Uta-moji Lyrics

This function allows you to synchronize music data playback to display lyrics on the player screen.

- If music data contains Uta-moji Lyrics in advance, setting or canceling is unavailable.

1 Move the cursor to Uta-moji Lyrics/music data on the data list screen other than playlist ▶ MENU 4 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data/Uta-moji Lyrics ▶ "Yes"

Canceling : **Move the cursor to Uta-moji Lyrics/music data on the data list screen other than playlist ▶ MENU 4 3 ▶ "Yes"**

- Link lyrics & song for the currently played data can be canceled by pressing MENU 3 3 on the player screen.

◆ Setting music data as ring alert

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

- You cannot set WMA files and music data in which Full song ring tone and Point ring tone are set to "No" in Detail info.

<Example> Setting music data on FOMA terminal

1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen ▶ MENU 1 ▶ 1-8

2 1 or 2

- To set as Point ring tone, select a section to set.
- When setting as a contact alert (call, mail), select a phonebook entry and press ●.

Setting music data of microSD card to full song ring tone : **1 ▶ "Yes"**
The music data moves to FOMA terminal and is set as ring alert.

Setting music data on microSD card as Point ring tone :

① **2 ▶ Select the part to set ▶ "Yes"**

- When setting the music data in "Music (subscription required)", the data moves to FOMA terminal. No more operation is required.

② **Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ ●**

- When selecting the music data in "Music", the selected part of the music data is saved in "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie on FOMA terminal as i-motion compatible with contents transfer.

◆ Displaying detail information of data <Displaying detail information>

1 On the data list screen, move the cursor to data ▶ MENU 2 1 ▶ ○ to display various information

- Detail information of the currently played music data can be checked by pressing MENU 1 on the player screen.
- Different types of information are displayed depending on data.
- "Display name" is the name to be displayed on the data list screen, "Title" is the original name of the data.
- "Track number" indicates a song number in album/total number of songs in album.
- A file extension is not displayed in "File name".
- In "File type", "Music" indicates Chaku-uta full®, and "Music(subscription)" indicates Uta-hodai files respectively.
- "Sound" indicates a format and bit rate of the music data. Bit rate is not displayed for a WMA file.

- While File of detail information is being displayed, press [MENU] to display a confirmation screen for connecting to a site indicated in "URL".

Changing detail information of data : Move the cursor to data on the data list screen ▶ [MENU] [2] [2] ▶ Select an item ▶ Enter new data ▶ [📷]

- If detail information of music data in pause is changed (however, detail information of Chaku-uta full® saved in the microSD card cannot be changed in pause), the music data may not be played by using "Last played songs" when MUSIC Player is activated next time.
- Detail information of WMA file cannot be changed.
- Items that can be changed and the number of characters that can be entered to individual saving destinations are as follows. Note that, only display name can be changed in Uta-moji Lyrics.

Item	F-09A	microSD card
Display name	25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters	
Title	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters
Artist		126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Album		
Year	4 one-byte digits	
Genre	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Comment		
Track number	3 one-byte digits	
Total track number		

- Selecting "Restore original" causes the item above the button to return to the information as downloaded.

◆ Displaying images or lyrics contained in music data

- Images in JPEG or GIF format can be displayed.
- You can display up to 1 Jacket image, 2 images and 7 lyrics. Some images or lyrics can be saved. However, only jacket image can be displayed for WMA file.

1 On the player screen, [MENU] [2] ▶ [1]-[3]

- While displaying image, the following operations are available.
  [ezweb] : Display on a full-screen
  [0] : Display the previous or next image or lyrics
  [📷] : Save to "i-mode" folder of My Picture
  [●] / [CLR] : Return to the player screen
- You can also operate by moving the cursor to music data on the data list screen and then pressing [MENU] [2] [3], but the lyrics cannot be displayed.

◆ Deleting WMA files all at once <Delete all WMAs>

1 On the folder list screen, [MENU] [1] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

WMA files saved in microSD card and playlists transferred from a PC are deleted and the Link lyrics & song is canceled.

✔INFORMATION

- Performing Delete all WMAs deletes the WM folder in microSD card, WM_SYSTEM folders and all data from these folders. Note that data not used by MUSIC Player is also deleted.

BGM play

Using i-αppli while playing music

You can set whether background play of Music&Video Channel programs or MUSIC Player songs is available while using i-αppli.

- Background play is not available unless the volume of the running i-αppli is set to 0. Background play may not be available even when the volume of some i-αppli is set to 0.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [1] [7] ▶ [1] or [2]

Remote controller with microphone

Using Remote controller with microphone F01

Using Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional), you can operate Music&Video Channel player and MUSIC Player.

[▶/II] (1 sec. or more)*1 : Start/Stop
[▶/II] : Play/Pause
[▶/II] (Pressing twice quickly on the player screen)*1 : Save the current or paused tune to Quick playlist
[+] [−] (Player screen) : Adjust volume
[+] [−] (Folder list screen, playlist list screen, data list screen)*1 : Move the cursor

[+] (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter/tune
[−] (1 sec. or more)*2 : Jump to the beginning the next chapter/song
[HOLD] (Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable [▶/II], [+] and [−] keys.
[HOLD] (Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

*1 This is available only for MUSIC Player.

*2 If playing time is within 3 seconds, move to the previous chapter/tune.

i-αppli

i-αppli 232
Downloading i-αppli 232
Starting i-αppli 233
Starting i-αppli quickly 247
Starting i-αppli automatically 248
Using i-αppli call 248
Starting i-αppli from site, mail or ToruCa ..... i-αppli To 249
Operating i-αppli stand-by display ..... i-αppli stand-by display 250
Managing i-αppli 250
Using various i-αppli functions 251

i-Widget

i-Widget 252
Using i-Widget 253
Downloading Widget Appli 254

i-αppli

"i-αppli" is a software for i-mode compatible mobile phones. By downloading various software from i-mode site, you can update the information of stock price or weather automatically, enjoy the games without connecting network or use FOMA terminal more conveniently.
Moreover, i-αppli Online which enables online communication among multiplayer by using real-time communication or i-αppli call (→P248) is supported to enjoy a versus game or chat application etc.
Also, some i-αppli support i-Widget (→P252).

- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- When using overseas, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan. Also, i-mode packet flat-rate services are not applied. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

✔INFORMATION

- Any images or moving pictures saved by i-αppli or i-αppliDX are saved in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" folder or a folder under "Deco-mail pict"of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie, added album or in the i-αppli, respectively. Any ToruCa saved by i-αppli is saved in "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.
- When ring tone is saved by i-αppliDX, it is saved in "i-mode" folder of Melody or in the i-αppli.
- Press MENU [i-αppli] 5 to display the registered trademarks regarding i-αppli.

Downloading i-αppli

You can download i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum size of i-αppli that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.

1 Displaying a site ▶ Select an i-αppli

i-αppli is downloaded.

- Press ● and select "Yes" while downloading to stop downloading.
- When downloading is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. When partially saved, the remainder can be downloaded from Software list.→P233 Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli"

When Software info disp. is "ON"

A confirmation screen of i-αppli information and downloading appears.

- The detail information of the i-αppli to be downloaded can be displayed by pressing 📷.

When i-αppli that uses and sends the saved data, the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM, data in IC card (including a unique number of IC card) or microSD card is download

A downloading confirmation screen appears.

- With "Guide" displayed on the guide area, press 📷 to check details of the data used by the i-αppli.

When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded.

A screen indicating that the data is already downloaded appears. When the new version of the i-αppli is released, upgrading confirmation screen appears. When already downloaded with another UIM, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

When the setting screen for Set stand-by disp. (i-αppli stand-by), Use network, Use location info. (Location usage setting), Program guide key setting or i-αppli call setting appears.

Set required items.
Setting items→P235 Step 1 in "Setting operating condition of i-αppli"

2 After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"

Select "Yes" to activate i-αppli and select "No" to return to the site display.

- Downloaded i-αppli is saved to "My folder" of Software list.
- When Set stand-by disp. is set to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears. When it is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display".

✔INFORMATION

- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302
- Checking memory space→P302
- Downloading of i-αppli may be unavailable if memory space in the IC card is not sufficient (regardless of memory space in the i-αppli storage area) or the i-αppli to be downloaded is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that uses the same services as those used by another Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli already saved. Delete the i-αppli following instructions displayed on the screen. Note that, some types of i-αppli may not be displayed as ones to be deleted or may require to be started or downloaded again and the data in the IC card to be deleted.

◆ Downloading Message i-αppli

When Message i-αppli is downloaded, the folders for Message i-αppli are automatically created in the folder list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages. The automatically created folder name is set to the name of the Message i-αppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli can be saved (included in the savable number, 100 of i-αppli). When exceeding the savable number, follow the instructions on the screen and delete stored folder for Message i-αppli.
- If Message i-αppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, it cannot be downloaded.
- If a Message i-αppli is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-αppli folder remains, a confirmation screen for using mail folder appears. If you do not use, download after deleting the mail folder.
- If a mail that supports Message i-αppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for moving to the folder created automatically when downloading appears.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, the site screen reappears when downloading Message i-αppli is completed. When the setting screen is displayed, press [📷] to return to the site screen.

◆ Setting whether to display i-αppli information when downloading <Software info disp.>

1 [MENU] **[i-αppli]** [3] [3] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

Starting i-αppli

1 [iα] **(1 sec. or more)**

Displaying only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli : [MENU] **[Osaifu-Keitai]** [1] ▶ **Go to Step 3**

Displaying only GPS compatible i-αppli : **→P269**

2 **Select a folder**

- Icon definitions
  - / : Stored folder by default with/without i-αppli
  - / : Created folder with/without i-αppli

Checking number of i-αppli in folder <Count software> : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [📷]

- For icon definitions, see Step 3.

Checking current settings : [✉]

The settings such as saved number, i-αppli stand-by display, one-key shortcut and auto start are displayed.

3 **Select i-αppli to start**

<Software list> <IC card content>



Graphical display

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  - : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli
  - : IC card data transferred by iC transfer service
  - : Unset Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

: Message i-αppli : i-αppliDX
(orange) : i-αppli
/ : i-αppli setting available/currently set for i-αppli stand-by display
: Auto start set
(upper half in gray, lower half in orange) : i-αppli partially saved
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
: Stopped by IP (Information Provider)
: i-αppli downloaded from SSL/TLS page
: Unable to start because 2in1 is in B mode
: i-αppli registered as one-key shortcut
: i-αppli registered as two-key shortcut
: Individual IC card lock is set : GPS compatible i-αppli
/ : Program guide key setting available/set to ON
/ / : Search i-mode site for i-αppli→P232

- Icons may be displayed instead of thumbnails.
- Each time you press [i☆], the view switches in the order of graphical display →list display→thumbnail display.
- When Widget Appli is activated, an operation screen for the Widget Appli appears.→P253
- When partially saved i-αppli is selected, a downloading confirmation screen asking if you download the rest appears. The i-αppli can be started after the rest is downloaded; when download is disabled, the i-αppli partially saved may be deleted.
- When IC card data transferred by iC transfer service is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading or connecting to the site appears. The related Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli can be started after it is downloaded.
- To exit i-αppli, follow the procedure specified for each i-αppli. You can also quit i-αppli by pressing [⌐] and then selecting "Yes".

✔INFORMATION

- For some i-αppli, display area differs or horizontal display is applied. Note that keypad operations for the horizontal display are the same as those for the vertical display.
- i-αppli that horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) size is less than 240×480 dots are displayed with horizontal and vertical size doubled.
- For i-αppli in a full-screen, you can display/hide the battery icon each time you press [↙].
- You can adjust the volume that sounds while i-αppli is running. Note that some i-αppli does not emit sounds.→P236
- Some i-αppli can activate another specified i-αppli while running i-αppli (when not specified, select i-αppli). Note that, if the specified i-αppli in not on the Software list, it must be downloaded.
- Images used on i-αppli (shot using the camera from i-αppli, obtained using the i-αppli infrared communication/iC transmission function) or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet.
- i-αppli that uses microSD card can save data in microSD card from the i-αppli, but the saved data may not be used for other models. Select "i-αppli data" in microSD card to check for the i-αppli that uses microSD card.→P294
- i-αppli may be interrupted when any of the following conditions occur. When the operating function ends, i-αppli restarts, but some i-αppli does not return to the state of the time of interruption.
  - When a call is received
  - When Security lock is activated
  - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-αppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may access i-αppli saved in the mobile phone and directly set operation disabled state. In this case, i-αppli startup, stand-by display settings, upgrading, etc. are disabled, enabling only deletion and software description display. To resume using i-αppli, notification of i-αppli enabled must be received; contact the IP (Information Provider).
- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may send data to i-αppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information Provider) requests i-αppli for stopping or restarting or sends data to i-αppli, FOMA terminal makes communications and blinks. In this case, no communication fee is charged.
- For i-αppli builders
  If i-αppli does not operate normally while building, trace information may help. Press [MENU] [i-αppli] [4] [4] on the stand-by display to display Trace information. Note that Trace information cannot be displayed if i-αppli that records Trace information is not in the software list.
  To delete Trace information, press [📷] and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying Security error history

When i-αppli ended with an error because i-αppli cannot use the saved data, the name of the i-αppli, date and time, and cause of security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 MENU **[i-αppli]** **4** **3**

- To delete histories, press [●] and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying i-αppli description <Software description>

1 i-α **(1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder▶Move the cursor to i-αppli▶** [●]

- Displayed items differ by i-αppli.
- To check the site certificate of the i-αppli downloaded from SSL/TLS page, press [●] on Software description screen.

◆ Setting operating condition of i-αppli <Software settings>

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i-αppli.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, "Set i-αppli display" and "Set NW transmission during i-αppli display" cannot be selected.

1 i-α **(1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder▶Move the cursor to i-αppli▶** MENU **6** **▶Set required items▶** [●]

Set i-αppli display : Set if you set i-αppli to stand-by display. Only one i-αppli can be set.

Set NW transmission during i-αppli display : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli stand-by display is running.

Set NW transmission : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli is running.

Use icons : Set if you allow i-αppli to use icons for mail, MessageR/F, battery, Silent mode and signal level.

Start from browser : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from site (i-αppli To).

Start from ToruCa : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from ToruCa (i-αppli To).

Start from mailer : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from mail (i-αppli To).

Start from Location Service menu : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from link item of location information in site, MessageR/F or ToruCa (i-αppli To).

Start from external : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from external device (i-αppli To).

Start from data broadcasting site : Set if you permit activation from 1Seg data broadcasting site (i-αppli To).

Allow ring tone / image changes by software* : Set if you allow i-αppli to change settings such as ring tone and images for the stand-by display.

Confirm all changes* : Set if you display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alert or images are changed.

Allow access to phone book / call records by software* : Set if you allow i-αppli to refer to phonebook, redial or received call logs automatically. This setting also applies to ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal.

Location usage setting* : Set if you allow GPS compatible i-αppli to use location information automatically.

Program guide key setting* : Set if you set i-αppli in program guide i-αppli activated from 1Seg. Only one i-αppli can be set.

Map setting* : Set if you set i-αppli to be the i-αppli used for viewing a map. Only one i-αppli can be set.

- This setting also applies to Select map.→P275
- Only i-αppli compatible with GPS supported this setting can be set.

i-αppli call setting* : Set if you activate i-αppli from i-αppli call.

* Available only for i-αppliDX.

✔INFORMATION

- When setting Set i-αppli display to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears (except when the i-αppli is already set for the stand-by display). When it is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display". When Set i-αppli display is set to "No", Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "Yes/Display".
- If you set "No" for Set NW transmission, i-αppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather information may not be provided by i-αppli.
- If you set "Yes" for Use icons, since icons for unread messages, unread MessageR/F, remaining battery level, Silent mode, and antenna icon may be sent to IPs (Information Providers) through the Internet, it may give the information to a third party. Some i-αppli requiring icons may not operate when "No" is set.
- When "No" is selected in Program guide key setting, a cancellation confirmation screen appears.
- When "Yes" is selected in Map setting, a message appears indicating that selected location information may not be displayed.
- Some i-αppli are unavailable even when i-αppli call setting is set to "Yes".

◆ Setting operations while i-αppli is active

❖ Setting Display light time

1 MENU [i-αppli] 3 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- When setting to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

✔INFORMATION

- Even if "Software" is set, the light turns off in Public mode (Drive mode) when the time specified in Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light has elapsed.
- This setting also applies to Display light time (i-αppli) of Display & Key light.

❖ Setting vibrator

You can set if you allow the vibrator operation by i-αppli.

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect of Vibrate effect.

1 MENU [i-αppli] 3 5 ▶ 1 or 2

❖ Setting volume

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect sound of Adjust volume.

1 MENU [i-αppli] 3 7 ▶ ◎ ▶ ●

◆ Electronic compass

This FOMA terminal supports i-αppli using electronic compass that can sense the magnetic field of the Earth.

- If the display of FOMA terminal is faced downward, the accurate direction cannot be displayed.
- Electronic compass calculates the direction by sensing the weak magnetic field of the Earth. Therefore, the magnetic field may not be sensed or the accurate direction may not be displayed under the following environments.

After placing the terminal for a long time under the following environments, it is recommended that you move the terminal to the place where the magnetic field can be sensed easily and adjust the electronic compass to maintain measurement accuracy.

- In or near buildings (including underground mall), vehicles, or metallic facilities (elevator etc.)
- Near metallic installation (guardrail, pedestrian bridge etc.), high-voltage cable, overhead wire, or magnetic bedrock
- Near metal (iron desk, locker etc.), permanent magnet (magnetic necklace, catch of bag etc.), electrical home appliance (TV, PC, speaker etc.)

- Direction may not be displayed accurately in the following cases. To maintain accuracy of measurement, it is recommended to adjust the electronic compass.
  - Immediately after activating the electronic compass
  - When FOMA terminal is opened/closed
  - When the terminal is placed in a place under rapid temperature change for a long time
  - When connecting AC/DC adapter, desktop holder
- Do not bring FOMA terminal close to the magnetized objects such as permanent magnet (magnetic necklace, catch of bag etc.) or electrical home appliance (TV, PC, speaker etc.). Note that, if FOMA terminal becomes magnetized, it may affect measurement accuracy.

✔INFORMATION

- Do not use it for life-threatening sports such as mountaineering. Also, do not walk while watching a screen because it is dangerous.

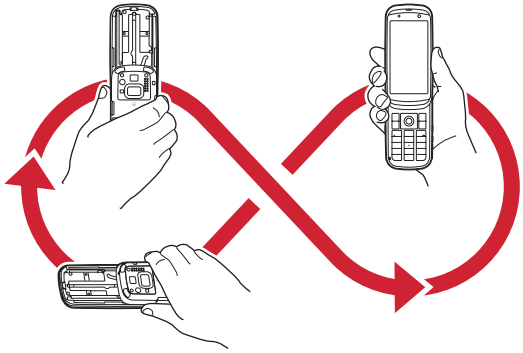
❖ Adjusting electronic compass

- When you adjust the electronic compass, hold FOMA terminal firmly and confirm the safety around you.

■ Operating procedure

While using the electronic compass function, move FOMA terminal by twisting your wrist like tracing out a large figure of eight for approximately 10 seconds.

- Perform it in both of basic style and slide style.



◆ Motion tracking

This FOMA terminal supports motion tracking to operate i-αppli (by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal) using recognition technology of in-camera.

- May be unavailable in the following cases.
  - When the lens of in-camera is soiled
  - When your clothing looks similar to the background
  - When the background is not fixed like when moving
  - When in a dark place or where back ground is too bright

WARNING

Play motion tracking compatible applications by shaking FOMA terminal etc. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing an accident or damage. When you play, grip FOMA terminal firmly, do not shake it too much and confirm the safety around you while playing.

◆ i-αppli touch

When you play a versus game etc., this function allows you to easily register FOMA terminal by facing marks of FOMA terminals that are provided with this function to each other.

◆ Using preinstalled i-αppli

- If you delete stored i-αppli, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.→P301

Precautions related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the information set in the IC card.

❖タッチDEゲームパック (touch de game pack)



This is an i-αppli packaging 3 games of "アーチェリー (archery)", "ボールジャンプ (ball jump)" and "タッチシュート (touch and shoot)" that you can enjoy intuitively by touch operation.

- For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)" on the menu screen of each game.

❖ロジックパズルF (LOGIC PUZZLE F)



Solve clue numbers and create a correct picture by locating square blocks (■). This is a puzzle game that can everyone enjoy with simple rule.

• For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of ゲーム設定 (Game settings) on the title screen

©T2i Entertainment

❖プチプチズーキーパー ver.F (Puchipuchi Zookeeper ver.F)

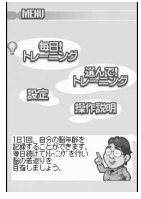


This is an action puzzle game to fulfill the norm by erasing the specified number of adjacent animal panels within a time limit.

• For operation method, see "HOW TO PLAY" on the title screen.

© 2008 ROBOT

❖ケータイ脳力ストレッチング2 (Keitai Brain Stretching 2 (editing supervised by Professor Ryuta Kawashima at Tohoku University))



You solve various problems to estimate your brain age or train brain.

• For operation method, see "操作説明 (Operation)" on the menu screen.

❖日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)



By voice entry, translate words mainly used for travelling from Japanese to English and vice versa.

• To use, you are required to agree to the Terms of Service.

• A packet communication fee is charged separately.

• For operation method, refer to "チュートリアル (Tutorial)" by pressing [#] on the title screen.

• All functions are free till the 60th day from the first activation. You are charged from 61st day to use all the functions, and My Menu registration is required from " しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)" site of ATR-Trek.

i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→辞書/学習/便利ツール (Dictionary/Learning/Convenient tool)→しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)

QR code for site access

© ATR-Trek Co., Ltd. 2007

❖いっしょにデコ (Decoration together)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

This is i-αppli touch compatible application that allows you to decorate the same still image with another person by pasting stamps, drawing lines, writing characters, etc. only by facing marks of FOMA terminals to each other.

- The decorated image can be saved in a folder of My Picture.
- For details, see "ヘルプ (Help)" on the title screen.

❖iアバターメーカー (iavatar maker)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

Functions available with iavatar maker

■ Creating avatar

Avatar can be created by using parts for iavatar maker.
You can create avatar while watching camera photos or images in Data Box or by selecting from samples provided beforehand.

■ Using avatar

With the created avatar, you can use as materials for Deco-mail, Deco-mail pictogram or Decome-Anime, and it can be converted to Machi-chara compatible with i-concier.
By registering to iavatar site, the created avatar can be changed various clothes items or publicized on competition or compatible sites.

- A packet communication fee is separately required to convert avatar to Decome-Anime.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to register an avatar to iavatar.
- To dress it up on iavatar site, you may be required to purchase items on the site.
- iavatar is a trademark of D2 Communications Inc.
- アバターメーカー (Avatar maker) is a trademark of Acrodea, Inc.

©2009 Acrodea,Inc./©eitarosoft

❖ロケーションレーダー (Vicinity viewer)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

You can search facilities around the current location to display a distance in a straight from the current location to destination or direction of destination. Additionally guiding with arrow mark, etc. that shows a distance in a straight or direction to the destination, or displaying a route on a map with Map Application are available.

- To use, you are required to agree to the Terms of Service.
- A packet communication fee is charged separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double for this application.
- This application supports electronic compass.
- This i-αppli is unavailable overseas.
- For operation method, press [📷] and refer to "ヘルプ (Help)".

❖モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)

You can search for area information, shop information or user created contents by displaying a map. You can also switch to aerial photograph mode or see the street view. Moreover, you can check the means of transportation to a destination by route search to navigate to the destination.

■ **Map screen**



MENU : Display "メニュー (menu)"
📷 : Search (Search shop or service information or location of the area and display it on the map)
● : Context menu (現在地の住所 (Address of current location), ここまでの経路 (Route to here), ここからの経路 (Route from here), ストリートビュー (Street view), お気に入りに保存 (Save to favorite), 付近を検索 (Search nearby))
✥ : Move of the cursor
1 : Zoom out
2 : Switch map/aerial photo
3 : Zoom in
0 : Display current location
✂ : Save to/display お気に入り (your favorite)

- You are required to agree to the Terms of Service at the first time you use this application.
- A packet communication fee is charged separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double for this application.
- For details, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of メニュー (Menu).

©2009 Google - Map data ©2009 ZENRIN

❖Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)





* The display is an example. It may differ from actual display.
· Program guide available in the area you live is displayed.

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and AV remote controller function with no monthly fee.
You can easily obtain the TV program information of terrestrial digital, terrestrial analog or BS digital of your preferred time any time and anywhere. You can check the title, contents, start/end time, etc. of TV programs. Also, you can activate 1Seg from Program guide, and Program guide from 1Seg. If there is any program you are interested in, you can make a watching reservation of the program to DVD recorder etc. via Internet (DVD recorder etc. compatible with remote watching reservation function is required. When using, the initial setting of this application is required). Moreover, you can search program information by keyword of TV category or favorite personalities, or pickup keyword at the top of the main display, etc. You can also perform remote controlling operation of TV, video or DVD player (→P305) (some models does not support this function). Even on horizontal display, viewing and operating a program guide are available (some function does not support to horizontal display).

- The first time you use this i-αppli, initial setup and agreement to the Terms of Service are required.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- When using overseas, set Date & time of FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ **Watching reservation function**

You can select a program from Program guide of this i-αppli and reserve 1Seg watching.

Watching reservation :

Activate this i-αppli, select a program to reserve, select "視聴予約 (Reserve)" from "予約実行 (Reserved program)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated.

■ **Recording reservation function**

You can select a program to record from Program guide of this i-αppli and make a recording reservation of 1Seg.

Recording reservation :

Activate this application, select a program to make a recording reservation, select "予約実行 (Reserved program)" from "#ワンセグ録画予約 (1Seg recording reservation)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated (recording reservation can also be made by selecting a program to make a recording reservation and pressing [#]).

■ **Remote recording reservation function**

If a DVD recorder etc. applicable with remote recording reservation is available, you can make recording reservation from a program table of this application even while going out.

For remote recording reservation, initialization in this application is necessary.

Initialization procedure :

① Set DVD recorder etc. for Internet connection (See the operation manual of the DVD recorder etc.).

② Start this application, select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu) and perform initialization according to the prompt displayed.

Reserving program :

After initialization has completed, specify your favorite program and select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu). Thus, you are connected with the DVD recorder etc. set in this application via Internet and can make recording reservation.

❖iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"iD" is a convenient electronic money by credit clearance scheme. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with credit information set or the iD-compatible card over the IC card reader in stores. Because up to 2 types of credit information can be registered in Osaifu-Keitai, you can use them according to the benefit of store etc. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use "iD" with Osaifu-Keitai, subscribing to a card issuer that supports iD, settings for iD-αppli or card i-αppli are required. For some cards, after completing iD-αppli settings, you may need to make card i-αppli settings.
- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" cannot be deleted. For resetting IC owner, perform "iD アプリ初期化 (Reset iD application)" from "設定メニュー (Setting menu)" of iD appli beforehand.
- For information regarding iD, refer to the iD i-mode site.
- i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→"iD"

QR code for site access

❖DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"DCMX" is a credit service compatible with "iD" provided by NTT DOCOMO.

There are 2 types of DCMX : DCMX mini that allows you to use up to ￥10,000 per month and DCMX/DCMX GOLD that allows you to use more amount of money than DCMX mini while saving DOCOMO points.

Using DCMX mini, a credit payment service becomes available right now by making application from this application.

Membership application and examination*1

▼

Setting card information

▼

Use

No need for a troublesome charge!
You can enjoy shopping with no signature*2 only by setting the card information for your terminal only once and placing it over the reader in the store that has the below iD mark.

Check

You can check DCMX services, available amount for the current month*3 and usage details from application!

Change

You can set for the model change and update the expiration date from application!

*1 A membership examination is carried out online at your application for DCMX mini. For application for services except DCMX mini, you are connected to i-mode application page.

*2 Entry of security code may be required under certain conditions.

*3 Only DCMX mini is available.

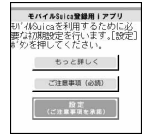
• For details of the service and application, refer to i-mode site of DCMX.
i-mode site : iMenu → DCMX iD

QR code for site access

✔INFORMATION

- When card information is not set, "未設定 (not set)" or 未設定 is displayed on the software list.
- When starting this application for the first time, agreement with "Precautions on Usage" is necessary.
- A packet communication fee is required for various settings and operations.

❖モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-αppli)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-αppli)" is an i-αppli that is provided by NTT DOCOMO for making initial setting of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service "モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)" that is provided by JR East Japan Railway Company before using. After initial setting by this application, download Mobile Suica application from JR East Japan Railway Company's site with following the instruction on the screen and make member registration.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "ご注意事項(必読) (Notice (essential reading))".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- You can delete this application after completion of initial setting, but the area in IC card for setting remains occupied. For using this area for other service, formatting all of data in IC card (hereinafter, Full-format) is required.
- For performing Full-format, it is necessary to come to the docomo shop.
- When Full-format is performed, all of data in IC card is deleted.
- For using Mobile Suica service again after performing Full-format, an initial setting by this application is required again.

- For information about Mobile Suica, refer to i-mode site.
  i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)→対応サービス (Services)→モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)
- "モバイルSuica" (Mobile Suica) is a registered trademark of East Japan Railway Company.

❖FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

FOMA communication environment check application is an application to check if FOMA terminal can use FOMA high-speed area.

- When using FOMA communication environment check application, agreement with "ご利用上の注意 (Precautions on Usage)" is necessary.
- Depending on the communication condition (weather, radio wave conditions or congestion of the network) at the time of communication confirmation, different communication results or the result of out of service area may be displayed even if the place or the time zone is the same.
- If you activate another function while using this application, you may not confirm correctly.

❖ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)

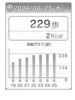


This is an i-αppli that manage data of number of steps, activity amount, frequency of pulse, blood pressure, and body compositions. You can display them with graph or by specified date etc., send automatically the data of steps or activity amount by mail or use a health advice by "からだカルテ (medical record)".

- This application supports Pedometer/ACT monitor.
- You can measure your frequency of pulse by using Pulse checker.
- By using Infrared communication, data of manometer (marketed product) or body composition measure (marketed product) can be received.
- For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of メニュー (Menu).
- To use, it is recommended to set User information at first. It is necessary for judging the details of measured data. If it is not set, acquiring data by using Infrared communication, entering body compositions such as frequency of pulse blood pressure or weight manually, or using からだカルテサービス (medical record service) are unavailable. Also, setting "アスリート (athlete)" is recommended for those who meet the following conditions.
  - Those who exercise 12 hours or more per week
  - Professional sports players or their equivalents
  - Those who train muscles
- Information for the past 1,098 days including the current day can be recorded in ヘルスチェッカー . When exceeding 1,098 days, the record is deleted chronologically.
- When mail is automatically sent, i-αppli automatically starts.
- Precautions for auto start→P248
- For details of カルテサービス, refer to "からだカルテ" site.
  "からだカルテ" site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)"→健康/ビューティ /医学 (Health/Beauty/Medicine)→健康 (Health)→TANITAからだカルテ (TANITA medical record)

QR code for site access

■ Widget Appli compatible



You can quickly check the walking state or activity amount on i-Widget screen. To use, activate from i-Widget.→P253

- While running, the following operations are available.
  MENU : Activate ヘルスチェッカー (i-αppli)
  : Switch steps/activity amounts
  : Change the date

✔INFORMATION

- This FOMA terminal is not a medical device. Use the displayed information by ヘルスチェッカー just as guides.
- When using からだカルテサービス, the information set to User information such as height or measuring mode is sent to the server of からだカルテサービス. The received information is not used for purposes except からだカルテサービス.

Precautions for using パルスチェッカー (Pulse checker)

- Perform measurement in the place with normal brightness such as under fluorescent lights, etc. If it is too bright or too dark, measurement may be failed.
- Measurement may not be done correctly depending on finger placement or strength of finger touch. Perform adjustment such as changing finger placement point or touching strength.
- The following finger conditions may reduce measurement performance. Taking measures according to the condition of your finger including washing hands, wiping hands, using a different finger, etc. may improve the measurement performance.
  - Wet, sweated or wrinkled
  - Dirt with oil or mud
  - Rough or damaged (cuts, sore, etc.)
- Perform measurement in resting condition without walking or moving.
- Wipe out a fingerprint or fat, etc. attached to the lens of inside camera with soft cloth after measurement.

❖ROIDウィジェット (ROID widget)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"ROIDウィジェット" is Widget Appli that a character named ROIKUN introduces updated information (trial version of a game/moving pictures/update of a site) of the mobile site "ROID".

Entertaining actions or comments of ROIKUN are updated by the information of the mobile site "ROID". You can see details of updated information by connecting from "ROIDウィジェット" to the mobile site "ROID".

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is charged separately.

©team ROID

❖Start! ｉウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"Start! ｉウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)" is an application for viewing how to use i-Widget by movie.

You can display sites to download application other than the ones saved in FOMA terminal by connecting i-mode.

- A packet communication fee is separately required when selecting "ダウンロード (Download)" to connect i-mode.

❖iWウォッチ (iW Watch)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"iWウォッチ (iW Watch)" is an application that you can check the graphical watch or battery level at i-Widget.

You can change the design and the color to your preference.

❖地図アプリ (Map Application)

A useful application that allows you to search the destination or display means of transportation by using GPS function equipped with FOMA terminal.

Operating procedure of "地図アプリ (Map Application)"→P269

❖楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)" is a convenient application for easily auctioning in Rakuoku any time, anywhere. With guide display for auctioning operation and "体験出品 (Auctioning trial)", it is available even to beginners of auction at ease. With using "かんたん入力 (Easy entry)" function for composing description or convenient functions for image shooting, editing, log saving, etc., you can make auctioning from a site in a shorter period of time.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of Rakuoku, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Auctioning in Rakuoku requires your subscription for a membership of Rakuten and registering to My Menu.
- For information about Rakuoku, see i-mode site.

  i-mode site : iMenu →オークション (Auction)

QR code for site access

■ Widget Appli compatible



You can check the auction state easily with displaying Rakuoku recommendation items or the information of your selling/bidding items.

❖iアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

i-αppli banking is a service that allows you to use mobile banking (checking the balance, details of deposits and withdrawals, transferring and other operations on your own account) from your FOMA terminal conveniently. When activating i-αppli, you are only required to enter a password set by yourself; after that, you can use mobile banking for up to 2 financial institutions. A payment for invoice/payment notice by Pay-easy is also available.

- Before using mobile banking by i-αppli banking, you are required to have an account of and make a subscription to one of financial institutions applicable to the Internet banking service.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of i-αppli banking, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For information about i-αppli banking, visit i-mode site.

  i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→モバイルバンキング (Mobile banking)→iアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)

QR code for site access

■ **Widget Appli compatible**



iアプリバンキングウィジェット (i-αppli banking widget) allows you to easily activate iアプリバンキング only by entering passwords on the widget, and you can use financial institutions and option functions that you registered more conveniently.

❖マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)



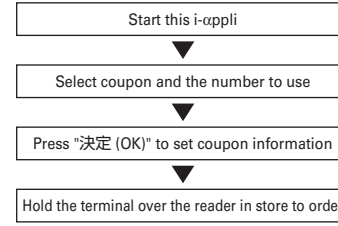
* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

You can check recommended information such as McDonald's new product instantaneously or download to use discount coupon "かざすクーポン (Hold over coupon)" that is available at McDonald's.

For using "かざすクーポン", register "トクするケータイサイト (TOKUSURU KEITAI site)" and select/set your favorite coupon from the application, and hold it over the reader in McDonald's store.

- For information of マクドナルド トクするアプリ, refer to McDonald's official site "トクするケータイサイト".
  i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→グルメ/レシピ (Gourmet/Recipe)→マクドナルドトクする (McDonald's TOKUSURU)
- "かざすクーポン" is unavailable in some stores.
- For the area "かざすクーポン" is unavailable, "見せるクーポン (Show coupon)" is available.
- For "おすすめ情報 (Recommendation)", it is available even for nonmember of "トクするケータイサイト".
- The function or service of "マクドナルド トクするアプリ" may be changed.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.

■ **Using かざすクーポン**



■ **Widget Appli compatible**

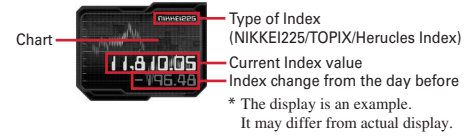


When "おすすめ情報" of McDonald's is updated, the sign of McDonald's of Widget Appli turns and informs you of that.

Select the sign to display the recommendation. By pressing "もっと詳しくボタン (For more details button)" to see more detailed information.

©2009 McDonald's

❖株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)" is an application that you can see the stock price information easily at i-Widget.

The stock price information that can be displayed is 3 indexes of "日経225／TOPIX／ヘラクレス指数 (Nikkei 225/TOPIX/Hercules)". A recent price and change on each index can be displayed.

For chart information, "日中足／日足／週足／月足 (intra-day/daily/weekly/monthly)" can be switched.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For recent index value, it is the information of approximately 20 minutes late.
- The information of this application is not for trading stocks etc. and for assisting trade.
- The information of this application expands all possible means for its contents but no assurance. DOCOMO and the information providers assume no responsibility for damages resulted from this information.

❖Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)



* The display is an example.
It may differ from actual display.

"Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)" is an application that you can use mobile web search function. It is convenient because entering the search word entered in the past or the trend word can be entered simply.

And you can call for convenient Google service such as mail service (Gmail) or transfer guide etc. easily.

- A packet communication fee is required separately.

Starting i-αppli quickly

i-αppli can be started by a simple operation from the stand-by display.

◆ Registering i-αppli as one-key/two-key shortcut

- You can register one item of one-key shortcut.
- You can register one item of two-key shortcut for each key of keypad, up to 10 items in total.

1 [i-αppli] **(1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to i-αppli▶[MENU] [8]▶[1] or [2]**

- Same operations are required also for canceling.
- No more operation is required to register i-αppli shortcut.

3 **Select a destination to register**

- Icon numbers ([1]-[9]) correspond to keypads ([0]-[9]) used to activate two-key shortcut.
- When a destination already registered is selected, an overwriting confirmation screen appears.

✔INFORMATION

- Press [MENU] [i-αppli] [3] [6] on the stand-by display to display the Shortcut list. Detail info can be displayed and perform Cancel two-key s.cut from the submenu of the list screen.

◆ Starting i-αppli using one-key/two-key shortcut

<Example> Starting i-αppli using two-key shortcut

1 **[0]-[9]▶[i-αppli] (1 sec. or more)**

Starting i-αppli using one-key shortcut : [●] (1 sec. or more)

Starting i-αppli automatically

◆ Setting whether to start automatically <Auto start>

You can set whether to automatically start all i-αppli which are set to "ON" for User in Set auto start info.

1 MENU **[i-αppli]** **3** **2** ▶ **1** **or** **2**

◆ Setting date and time of auto start <Set auto start info.>

Set the conditions such as ON/OFF of automatic start or start time for each i-αppli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli may not be able to start automatically.
- This function cannot be set when Auto start is "OFF".

1 i (1 sec. or more) ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to i-αppli** ▶ MENU **5** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

User : Select if you perform auto start with the following conditions.
Time : Enter the time for auto start of the i-αppli.
Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive auto start of the i-αppli.
Weekly : Set the day of the week when Repeat is set to "Weekly".
Date : Set the date when Repeat is set to "Onetime".
Software : Set if you automatically start at the intervals preset for the i-αppli.
i-αppli 1-4 : For some i-αppliDX, up to 4 conditions of auto start can be set while it is running. You can set if you enable those settings.

✔INFORMATION

- Even with auto start set, automatic activation does not occur in the following cases, causing ✗ to appear on the stand-by display and to be recorded in Start failure hist.
  - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
  - When it is unavailable due to UIM operation restriction (except for preinstalled i-αppli) or UIM cannot be recognized.
  - When the interval of auto start is too short
  - When All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-αppli is "Authorized access")
  - When 2in1 is in B mode (only for Message i-αppli)
  - When i-αppli usage is stopped by IP (Information Provider)
- Even if you change "Repeat" to set multiple i-αppli to be automatically started at the same time, only one of them can be activated at one time. The information of the i-αppli that failed to be activated is recorded in Start failure hist., however, ✗ does not appear on the stand-by display.

◆ Displaying the start failure history

When auto start of the i-αppli fails, ✗ appears on the stand-by display and the name of the i-αppli, date and time, and causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When displaying Start failure hist. or when the next auto start is successful, ✗ on the stand-by display disappears.

1 MENU **[i-αppli]** **4** **1**

- To delete histories, press ● and select "Yes".

Using i-αppli call

This is a function to ask activation of i-αppli from a third party in order to call the opponent when playing a versus game connecting to a network.

- You can use this function with i-αppli call compatible i-αppli.
- You can reject reception of i-αppli call collectively. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone Use's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

◆ Sending i-αppli call for calling

1 **Operate i-αppli and select "Yes" on a confirmation screen for sending i-αppli call.**

◆ Receiving i-αppli call

1 Receive i-αppli call

»ᗡ turns on, the light turns on or blinks according to Mail alert, the ring alert sounds and a confirmation screen for responding appears. On the confirmation screen for responding, the phone number (the name when saved in phonebook) of the sender and i-αppli name are displayed.

- The volume when receiving i-αppli call follows the setting of Mail/Msg. alert vol. of Adjust volume.
- When i-motion is set to mail ring alert, it operates according to the default setting of Mail alert.

2 "Respond"

Targeted i-αppli starts.

- When the targeted i-αppli is not saved, a confirmation screen for downloading it or connecting to a site appears. Select "Yes" to download. A packet communication fee is charged separately.

Not activating i-αppli : "Reject"

Holding calling : "Hold"

You can respond from i-αppli call log. Note that you cannot respond after expiration date.

✔INFORMATION

- A confirmation screen for responding does not appear in the following cases.
  - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
  - When date and time are not set
  - In Public mode (Drive mode)
  - In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when i-αppli is "Authorized access") or Security lock
  - When "No" is set for i-αppli call setting of targeted i-αppli.
  - When the targeted i-αppli is not saved and i-αppli call DL set is "Reject"
- Some i-αppli starts without displaying a confirmation screen for responding.
- Responding to i-αppli call may require packet communication fees.

◆ Operating i-αppli call log

When i-αppli call is received, reception date, response state, i-αppli name, expiration date and phone number of the sender (the name when saved in phonebook) are recorded.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded. The oldest expired item is overwritten when exceeding this limit.

<Example> Responding to i-αppli call on hold

1 ME NU [i-αppli] 2

- Icon definitions

  On hold : Select "Hold" on a confirmation screen for responding/No operation for approximately 15 seconds.

  Accepted : Respond Rejected : Reject Expired : Expired

2 Select the log on hold ▶ "Respond"

Deleting : ME NU 1 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

◆ Setting download for i-αppli call <i-αppli call DL set>

You can set if you download the targeted i-αppli if it is not saved when receiving i-αppli call.

1 ME NU [i-αppli] 3 9 ▶ 1 or 2

i-αppli To

Starting i-αppli from site, mail or ToruCa

1 Display site, i-mode mail or ToruCa ▶ Select a link item enabling to start i-αppli ▶ "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- i-αppli not saved in FOMA terminal cannot be started with i-αppli To. Some i-αppli can be started immediately after being downloaded from a site, without saving.
- Partially saved i-αppli cannot be started from mail with i-αppli To.
- For i-αppli starting just after downloading from sites, a communication confirmation screen while they are activated may appear.
- Some i-αppli program may not be saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the i-αppli is set not to start with i-αppli To, the i-αppli cannot be started.→P235

Operating i-αppli stand-by display

You can set i-αppli to the stand-by display and start it from the stand-by display to operate.

- While displaying i-αppli stand-by display, 📶 or 📶 appears on the top of the display in gray.
- Setting i-αppli stand-by display→P90, 235

◆ Starting i-αppli of i-αppli stand-by display

1 On the i-αppli stand-by display, CLR ▶ Operate the i-αppli

📶 or 📶 on the top of the display flash in orange.

✔INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned ON while setting the i-αppli stand-by display, an activating confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears. The display starts when selecting "Yes" or performing no operations for approximately 5 seconds. Selecting "No" cancels i-αppli stand-by display. Note that when the power is turned ON by Auto power ON, the i-αppli stand-by display automatically appears, without displaying the confirmation screen.
- When setting i-αppli that performs communication to i-αppli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions etc.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when i-αppli is "Authorized access") or when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, the i-αppli stand-by display is temporarily canceled and the default image is displayed.
- When an error that cancels the i-αppli stand-by display occurs, a canceling confirmation screen for the i-αppli stand-by display appears. If you select "Yes", it is canceled and recorded in Abnormal exit hist.

◆ Quitting i-αppli and returning to the i-αppli stand-by display

1 While running i-αppli, 📞 ▶ "End"

📶 or 📶 on the top of the display changes from orange to gray.
The procedure to exit i-αppli and return to the i-αppli stand-by display depends on the i-αppli.

- When selecting "Cancel", the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled. 📶 or 📶 on the top of display disappears.

✔INFORMATION

- Operation from Software list : MENU 7

Managing i-αppli

◆ Upgrading

When the i-αppli is updated, upgrade is available.

1 i-mode (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-αppli ▶ MENU 4 ▶ "Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- When upgrading i-αppli, data such as game scores stored in i-αppli may be erased.
- Some i-αppli may inquire the DOCOMO server about the availability depending on the length of time of use and number of times of use. If the server notifies you there is upgraded i-αppli, you can upgrade it.
- Some i-αppli is automatically upgraded.

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- Stored folders by default cannot be deleted. Also, folder names cannot be changed.

<Example> Creating folders

1 i-mode (1 sec. or more)

2 MENU 4

Changing a folder name : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ MENU 1
Changing the order : Move the cursor to the folder ▶ MENU ▶ 5 or 6
Deleting folders :
① Move the cursor to a folder ▶ MENU 2 1

- When i-αppli is saved in the folder, authentication is required.

② "Yes"

- For some i-αppli saved in the folder, a confirmation screen for deleting i-αppli or mail folder appears.→P251 Step 3 in "Deleting i-αppli".

3 **Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters)▶[📷]**

◆ Moving i-αppli to another folder

1 **[i-αppli] (1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to i-αppli▶[MENU] 3 ▶ 1-3**

- To move selected items, select them▶[📷].

3 **Select a folder to move to▶"Yes"**

◆ Deleting i-αppli

- "iD設定アプリ (iD appli)" and "ロケーションレーダー (Vicinity viewer)" stored by default cannot be deleted.
- For some Osaifu Keitai compatible i-αppli, the data in the IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-αppli before being deleted.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be deleted.

1 **[i-αppli] (1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to i-αppli▶[MENU] 2 ▶ 1-3**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-αppli.
- To delete selected items, select them▶[📷]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 **"Yes"**

- When attempting to delete Message i-αppli, a deleting confirmation screen for the message folder appears.
  - "Yes" : Deletes the message folder and all messages stored in the folder.
  - "No" : Deletes i-αppli only.

  However, if there is any protected mail in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even if "Yes" is selected.
- If i-αppli to be deleted by "Selected items" or "All items" includes Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli which needs to delete data in the IC card beforehand, a confirmation screen for deleting other i-αppli appears.
- When deleting i-αppli set in Program guide key setting or Map setting, a deleting confirmation screen appears.
- When deleting i-αppli that uses data of microSD card, a deleting confirmation screen for data of microSD card may appear.
  - "Yes" : Deletes the data of microSD card.
  - "No" : Deletes i-αppli only.

✔INFORMATION

- When the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is not deleted, the mail can be displayed from the submenu of the mail folder list.→P142
- When the folder for Message i-αppli to be deleted is being used (including displaying list), the i-αppli may not be deleted.

◆ Sorting i-αppli <Sort software>

1 **[MENU] [i-αppli] 3 1 ▶ 1-5**

✔INFORMATION

- Operations from the Software list : [MENU] 9
- If one- and two-byte characters/alphanumeric are included in the name of i-αppli, the result of sort "By name" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- The access frequency is carried over when upgrading the i-αppli version.
- The access frequency does not include the number of starts as i-αppli stand-by display.
- Selecting "By software size" sorts the i-αppli from large to small.

◆ Displaying Abnormal exit history

When an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by display or prevents Widget Appli from running on the Widget Appli list screen occurs, the i-αppli name, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 **[MENU] [i-αppli] 4 2**

- To delete histories, press [📷] and select "Yes".

Using various i-αppli functions

- i-αppli that supports each function is required.
- Some i-αppli may need different operation or be unavailable.

◆ Making a call from i-αppli

1 Select a phone number ▶ Set a condition for dialing ▶ MENU

Making a call under set conditions→P62

◆ Using camera function from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to use camera function

✔INFORMATION

- When activating camera from i-αppli, the still image/moving picture is saved in i-αppli (for some i-αppli, in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" folder or a folder under "Deco-mail pict" of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie or in added album). Also, they may be automatically sent to the server.

◆ Using bar code reader from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to read a bar code (JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code or CODE128 code)

- The scanned data is used by i-αppli and saved.
- To read CODE128, downloading compatible i-αppli is required.

◆ Using infrared communication from i-αppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other party's device even if it has infrared communication function.

1 "Yes" on a confirmation screen of infrared communication

- i-αppli can also be executed by receiving i-αppli starting data via infrared communication.

◆ Using ToruCa from i-αppli

From i-αppli, you can save ToruCa, use or search ToruCa in the folder.

<Example> Saving

1 Select "Yes (NewEntry)" on a confirmation screen of saving the ToruCa

The ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.

Overwriting ToruCa : "Yes (OverWrite)" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa to be overwritten

Displaying : "Preview"

i-Widget

i-Widget is a convenient function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (Widget Appli) such as calculator, clock and stock price information with the i-Widget/TV key (i).

Widget Appli can be added by downloading from sites provided by IP (Information Provider) etc. Up to 8 Widget Appli can be pasted to make customized screen.

- When i-Widget screen is displayed, multiple Widget Appli may communicate.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to download Widget Appli or display i-Widget screen.
- A packet communication fee for overseas use differs from the one in Japan.
- For details of i-Widget, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The following preinstalled i-αppli are compatible with i-Widget.
  - ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)→P243
  - ROIDウィジェット (ROID widget)→P244
  - Start! ｉウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)→P244
  - iWウォッチ (iW Watch)→P244
  - 地図アプリ (Map Application)→P269
  - 楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)→P245
  - iアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)→P245
  - マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)→P246
  - 株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)→P246
  - Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)→P247
- i-αppli other than "楽オク☆アプリ", "iアプリバンキング", "マクドナルド トクするアプリ", "株価アプリ" are pasted on i-Widget screen by default.

Using i-Widget

◆ Starting i-Widget

• Operations on each screen→P253

1

i-Widget starts and i-Widget screen appears when Widget Appli are pasted on i-Widget screen. The Widget Appli list screen appears when no Widget Appli is pasted.

- When i-Widget screen is displayed, all Widget Appli pasted on i-Widget screen start.
- To use overseas, a setting screen of i-Widget roaming set (→P254) appears on the first activation. Pressing [CLR] on the setting screen displays the Widget Appli operation screen without establishing communication as you select "No".

2 Select Widget Appli

The Widget Appli operation screen appears.

- When Widget Appli is selected from the Widget Appli list screen, the Widget Appli starts.
- To paste Widget Appli on the i-Widget screen, press [i-α] on the Widget Appli operation screen to display the i-Widget screen with the Widget Appli activated. When 8 items are already pasted, exit other Widget Appli and then paste.
- i-Widget can be activated or the Widget Appli operation screen can be displayed from Software list.→P233

◆ Viewing and operating screens



i-Widget screen



Widget Appli list screen



Widget Appli list screen
(e.g. : WALKING CHECKER)

■ Operating i-Widget screen

: Move the cursor
: Display Widget Appli operation screen at the cursor position
[MENU] : Display the Widget Appli list screen
: Shuffle (when 2 or more items are pasted)

i-mode / C : Return to the stand-by display
Mail ▶ "YES" : Exit Widget Appli at the cursor position (delete from i-Widget screen)

■ **Operating Widget Appli list screen**

Navigation / ● / C : Operate in the same way as i-Widget screen
i-mode : Display i-Widget screen when Widget Appli is pasted. Return to the stand-by display when no Widget Appli is pasted.
- When selecting "全てのアプリ (All applications)" on the Widget Appli list screen, i-αppli folder list is displayed.

The next procedure→P233 Step 2 in "Starting i-αppli"

■ **Operating Widget Appli operation screen**

- For some Widget Appli, you can also operate with keys except the following.

i-mode* : Display i-Widget screen (paste on i-Widget screen)
Mail ▶ "YES" : Exit Widget Appli (delete Widget Appli from i-Widget screen when pasted on i-Widget screen)

* When 9 items are already started, press i-mode ▶ "YES" to exit Widget Appli.

✔INFORMATION

- When no operation is performed for approximately 3 minutes while displaying i-Widget screen or the Widget Appli list screen, stand-by display automatically reappears.
- When you execute Delete all data or replace UIM, the status of pasting to i-Widget screen returns to the default. However, updated, deleted or re-downloaded Widget Appli cannot be pasted.

◆ Setting i-Widget sound effect <i-Widget sound effect>

You can set if you play a sound effect when activating i-Widget by pressing C.
- The volume follows the setting of Sound effect volume.

1 MENU **[i-αppli]** 3 8 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2

◆ Setting communication method during international roaming <i-Widget roaming set>

You can set if you allow Widget Appli to communicate when activating Widget Appli with i-Widget during international roaming.

1 MENU **[i-αppli]** 3 8 2 ▶ **"Yes" or "No"**

Downloading Widget Appli

You can download Widget Appli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.
- For precautions on downloading, see "Downloading i-αppli".→P232
- Using downloaded Widget Appli→P253

1 Display a site ▶ Select Widget Appli

Widget Appli is downloaded.

2 After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"

When selecting "Yes", Widget Appli starts and an operation screen for the Widget Appli appears. Select "No" to return to the site display.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai 256
iC transfer service 257
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli 257
Checking owner information of IC card ..... Check IC owner 257
Preventing use of IC card function ..... IC card lock 258

Using ToruCa

ToruCa 259
Receiving ToruCa ..... ToruCa download 260
Displaying ToruCa ..... ToruCa list 260
Setting ToruCa functions 262

Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai is equipped with IC card and allows you to pay money only by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc.
Moreover, by using communication, you can credit electronic money in a bank account and check the balance or usage history, etc. Various security systems* are also equipped for your safe usage. For details of Osaifu-Keitai, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

* Omakase Lock and IC card lock can be used.→P107, 258

- To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, you are required to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli from Osaifu-Keitai compatible site*, and make settings.
  * iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→"おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)"
- The data (including electronic money, points, etc.) in the IC card may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of FOMA terminal (When we take your Osaifu-Keitai for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data except transfer by iC transfer service, confirm with Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If FOMA terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

◆ Using Osaifu-Keitai

Step 1

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli→P232

iD 設定アプリ (iD appli), DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli), モバイルSuica 登録用 i アプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-αppli) and マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application) are stored by default. Press [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [8] to connect to the site for downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

Step 2

Make initial settings of the service by starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli→P257

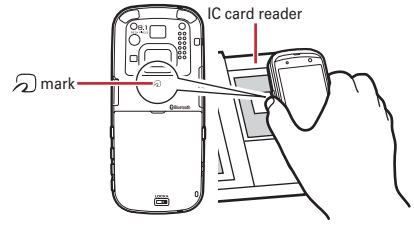
After starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and make settings following the instruction on the screen, you can charge (credit) money or check the balance or the usage history using the mobile phone.

Step 3

Holding mark over IC card reader

You can use the i-mode terminal as electronic money to purchase, or use as a passenger ticket by placing mark of Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader. This function can be used without starting the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

* No communication fee is charged.



✔INFORMATION

- With IC card light of Light alert set to "ON", when holding mark over the IC card reader scanning area, the light blinks.
- If the recognition is not performed successfully by scanning mark of FOMA terminal with the IC card reader, shift the mark back and forth or right and left when scanning.
- Even when the power is turned OFF or battery is exhausted, you can use the functions of Osaifu-Keitai by holding mark over the IC card reader. Note that, when the battery pack is not installed, or even when the battery pack is installed, if it has not been used for a long time or if it was left alone after battery alarm sounded without charging, Osaifu-Keitai may not be used.
- You cannot start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to read/write data in the IC card or download ToruCa with the power OFF.
- i-αppli may be started when holding mark over the IC card reader.
- When scanning mark with the IC card reader, take care not to give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.

iC transfer service

iC transfer service*1 is a service that, when replacing Osaifu-Keitai in such cases as model change or repair, transfers data in an IC card collectively*2 to a new Osaifu-Keitai *3.

After data in IC card is transferred, Osaifu-Keitai compatible services can be continuously used only by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli*4. iC transfer service is available at a sales outlet such as docomo Shop near you.

For details of iC transfer service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

*1 Both the source and the destination of the data need to be iC transfer service compatible FOMA terminal. For using iC transfer service, visit available sales outlet such as docomo Shop near you.

*2 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not covered by iC transfer service, so only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible data saved in IC card covered by iC transfer service can be transferred.

*3 As this service is "transfer", not "copy", the data saved in IC card does not remain in the original FOMA terminal. There may be a case that you cannot use iC transfer service, use the backup service for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service etc.

*4 i-αppli downloading and settings require packet communication fee.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

- When first starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai. After that, IC card function cannot be used unless the UIM registered as the IC owner is installed. Note that, when replacing UIM with another one, IC card function cannot be used unless the IC owner is changed.→P258

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** **1**

The next procedure→P233 Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli"

✔INFORMATION

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is running, Osaifu-Keitai may be unavailable by placing mark over the IC card reader.
- Active Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may be interrupted in the following cases. In that case, the data being read/written may be discarded.
  - When a call is received
  - When Security lock is activated
  - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Press MENU [Osaifu-Keitai] **2** to activate DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli).

Check IC owner

Checking owner information of IC card

You can check if the UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** **6**

- If not registered, install a UIM registered as IC owner, or select "How to reset IC owner" and change IC owner.→P258 Step 2 in "Changing IC owner"

❖Changing IC owner

To change IC owner, IC owner requires to be reset. If it is reset, iD 設定アプリ (iD appli) is restored to the default and Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli other than iD 設定アプリ is deleted. Note that, for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that the data in IC card is saved, the data in IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-αppli before being reset. After reset, if starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, it is registered as IC owner.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 7

2 **"Reset IC owner"▶"Yes"▶Authenticate▶"Yes"**

IC card lock

Preventing use of IC card function

- Activation of IC card lock disables using IC card, obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader, downloading/using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, resetting IC owner, iC transmission or i-αppli touch.
- To activate both IC card lock and All lock, first start IC card lock and then start All lock.

1 C **(1 sec. or more)▶"Yes"**

When activating IC card lock, FeliCa OFF or FeliCa (for individual IC card lock) appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : C **(1 sec. or more)▶Authenticate**

✔INFORMATION

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.
- During IC card lock, deletion of some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may be disabled.

◆Setting functions related to IC card lock

Lock preference : You can set so that only the IC card function for specified Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is locked when activating IC card lock (Individual IC card lock).

Timed lock : You can set to activate IC card lock automatically after the specified time elapses.

IC lock(power-off) : You can select if you continue the IC card lock state before turning the power OFF or lock all IC card functions.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 4

2 **Perform necessary operation**

Performing Lock preference : 2 2 **▶Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli▶** ●

- To lock all the IC card functions, press 2 1.
- For selected Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, FeliCa OFF appears on IC card content. →P233
- The selecting targets are Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that the service is already registered in the IC card and the service is available.

Performing Timed lock : 3 **▶Set required items▶** ●

- If the power is turned OFF manually or due to exhaustion of the battery while this function is "ON", IC card lock is activated before the specified time.
- When locking time comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

Performing IC lock(power-off) : 5 **▶Authenticate▶** 1 **or** 2

◆Canceling IC card lock at specified time <Programed activation>

You can set so that you can use IC card only in the specified period of time in IC card lock.

- Up to 7 items can be registered.
- This function operates only while the power is ON.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 4 4 ▶**Authenticate**▶ 1 -7

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to the title▶ MENU

- While this function is set, 🕒 appears on the left of the title.

2 **Set required items**▶ 📷

Time : Enter the start time and end time (it can be set to the following day over 24 o'clock) to deactivate IC card lock.

Repeat : When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press 📷.

Title : Up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters can be entered.

✔INFORMATION

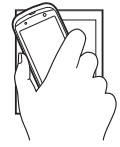
- When the end time for canceling IC card lock comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.
- IC card lock can be started in the period for which IC card lock is deactivated, but cannot be automatically activated by Timed lock.

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai; it can be used conveniently as a flier, restaurant card, coupon ticket, etc.
ToruCa can be downloaded from the IC card reader, site, etc. and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared communication/iC transmission or microSD card.

- For details of ToruCa, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

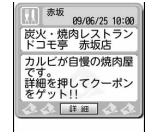
❖Flow of using ToruCa



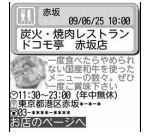
Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader to obtain ToruCa



Select ToruCa from ToruCa list



Press the "詳細 (Details)" button to download detailed information



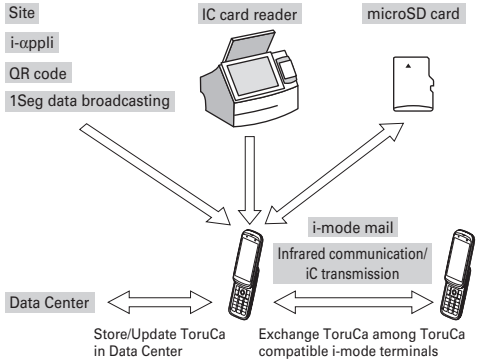
ToruCa (Details)

ToruCa download

Receiving ToruCa

- The savable size of each ToruCa is 1 Kbyte. The maximum size of each ToruCa (Details) is 100 Kbytes.

❖ToruCa download method



- The procedure for obtaining from IC card reader is the same as Step 3 in "Using Osaifu-Keitai".→P256
- Saving/Updating ToruCa in Data Center→P122
- Attaching to i-mode mail/saving→P134, 141
- Downloading from a site→P172
- Reading QR code→P200
- Obtaining from 1Seg data broadcasting→P216
- Saving from i-αppli→P252
- Moving/Copying to microSD card→P292
- Infrared communication/iC transmission→P303, 304

✔INFORMATION

- When obtaining ToruCa with an IC card reader, operations are performed according to the settings of ToruCa from IC card, ToruCa alert, ToruCa auto-read, ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume, and ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert.
- The obtained/downloaded ToruCa is saved in "ToruCa". However, if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, it is saved according to ToruCa sort rule.
- When Auto-display of ToruCa from IC card is "ON", if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, a confirmation screen for connecting to the site to download details may appear. If no key operations are made during automatic display, ToruCa is saved under unread state.
- ToruCa that are obtained by receiving i-mode mail, downloading from a site, reading QR code and receiving read ToruCa via infrared communication/iC transmission are saved as read ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (Details) is attached to mail, moved/copied to microSD card or sent via infrared communication/iC transmission, a screen may appear indicating that the detail information is not included or saved.
- For some ToruCa, updating, moving/copying, transmission through mail attachment or infrared communication may be disabled.
- Checking memory space→P302
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302

ToruCa list

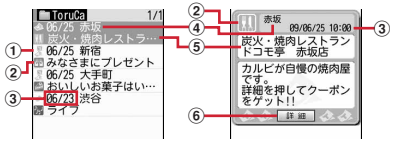
Displaying ToruCa

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 3 **▶Select a folder**

(gray) : No ToruCa (blue) : No unread ToruCa
NEW : Unread ToruCa exists (gray) : No used ToruCa
(blue) : Used ToruCa exists

Displaying all ToruCa : [Camera] on the folder list

2 **Select ToruCa**



① **Status icon**
: Unread : Read
② **Category icon**
③ **Download date**
④ **Index**
⑤ **Title**
⑥ **"詳細 (Details)" button**
Displayed when there is detail information. Detail information can be downloaded from a site.

Deleting : Move the cursor to ToruCa▶ [MENU] [3] ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ "Yes"
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to ToruCa.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ [📷]. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- To delete all (except ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder), on the folder list, [📷] ▶ [MENU] [2] [3] ▶ authenticate, then select "Yes".
- To delete ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder, move the cursor to the ToruCa, press [●] and select "Yes".

Moving to another folder : Move the cursor to ToruCa▶ [MENU] [4] [1] ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ Select the destination folder▶ "Yes"
- To move selected items, select them▶ [📷].
- ToruCa cannot be moved to "Used ToruCa" folder.

Changing order (sorting) : [MENU] [5] [2] ▶ [1]-[5]
- They are sorted temporarily. When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of ToruCa, the sort result by "By title" and "By index" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When selecting "By name", the ToruCa list is sorted in the order of ID included as data in ToruCa (ID cannot be displayed).

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to ToruCa▶ [✉]
- Operations for attaching to mail→P135 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

❖Operations while displaying ToruCa (Details)

Updating the display : [MENU] [1] ▶ "Yes"

Adding phone number or mail address to phonebook : Move the cursor to the phone number or mail address▶ [MENU] [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] or [2]
Phonebook new entry→P75
- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Registering URL in bookmark : Move the cursor to the URL▶ [MENU] [4] [3] ▶ Select a destination folder
The next procedure →P168 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

Saving image : [MENU] [4] [4] ▶ Select the image
- Press [MENU] [4] [5] to save a background image.

The next procedure→P171 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

Using location information : Select location information
The next procedure→P173 Step 2 in "Using location information"

Replaying Flash graphics or GIF animation : [MENU] [7]

Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion : "View"
The next procedure→P173 Step 2 in "Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion"

✔INFORMATION
- For some ToruCa, an expiration date is set. After expiration, the background of the ToruCa list is displayed in different color.
- If ToruCa includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- Category marks specific to ToruCa issuers may appear on the ToruCa list and ToruCa (Details) (they are not included in category marks in "Category", searching and/or ToruCa sorting method).
- When Flash graphics are not in place within ToruCa (Details), the operation starts when they are in place within the display by scrolling.
- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be displayed.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading detail information.
- ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.
- The operation when a confirmation screen for sending music information appears is the same as during site display.→P162 INFORMATION in "Displaying a site"

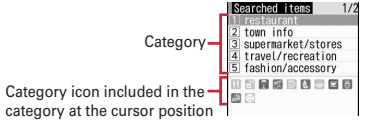
◆ Searching ToruCa

• ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be searched for.

<Example> Searching by category

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 3 ▶ MENU 1 ▶ **Select Search method field**

2 1 ▶ **Select Category field** ▶ 1 - 5



Category selection screen

Searching by title : 2 ▶ **Enter a part of the title in the entry filed for Search text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)**

Searching by index : 3 ▶ **Enter a part of the index in the entry filed for Search text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)**

3 ●

• To search in the folder, press MENU 2.

◆ Creating/Deleting folders

• Up to 20 folders can be created in addition to "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders.
• "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders cannot be renamed, sorted or deleted.

<Example> Creating folders

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 3

2 MENU 2

Changing a folder name : **Move the cursor to the folder** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **Go to Step 3**

Changing the order : **Move the cursor to the folder** ▶ MENU ▶ 8 **or** 9

Deleting : **Move the cursor to the folder** ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

3 **Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters)** ▶ ●

◆ Checking the number of ToruCa <Check No. of items>

• ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder are not included in the number of saved items.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 3 ▶ MENU 6

• To check the number of items in the folder, press MENU 5 1.

Setting ToruCa functions

◆ Setting operation for obtaining ToruCa <ToruCa from IC card>

You can set actions when you obtain ToruCa from IC card reader, or operations to obtain ToruCa from IC card reader.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 5 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

ToruCa receive : When setting to "ON", ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader.
• When setting to "OFF", ToruCa cannot be obtained via iC transmission either.

Duplication check : When setting to "ON", a new ToruCa is not downloaded if it is duplicated with the existing one.

Auto-sort : When setting to "ON", sort ToruCa according to ToruCa sort rule.

Auto-display : When setting to "ON", downloaded ToruCa is automatically displayed for 15 seconds only when the stand-by display is active.

◆ Setting operations for checking completion of obtainment <ToruCa alert>

You can set lighting and/or sound volume for notifying completion of ToruCa obtaining from the IC card reader.

- This setting also applies to ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume and ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 5 1 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Light alert : Set if you make the light blink when obtaining is completed.
Light color : Set the lighting color of the light.
Receive alert volume : Set the volume of the alert activated when obtaining ToruCa has completed.

◆ Using ToruCa auto-read <ToruCa auto-read>

You can set if you automatically read enabled ToruCa when using it by placing FOMA terminal over an IC card reader. When set to "ON", enabled ToruCa is automatically recognized and moved to "Used ToruCa" folder. If not setting this function to "ON", some ToruCa may not be able to use.

- Up to 20 ToruCa can be stored into "Used ToruCa" folder. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 5 3 ▶ 1 **or** 2

✓INFORMATION

- When this function is "OFF", if you hold FOMA terminal over an IC card reader, a confirmation screen for using ToruCa auto-read or a screen indicating that ToruCa auto-read is disabled may appear. When using ToruCa, set to "ON".

◆ Setting sort method <ToruCa sort rule>

You can set sort method of ToruCa obtained with an IC card reader to specified folders.

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- To execute this function, Auto-sort of ToruCa from IC card should be "ON".
- "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be specified to the folder to sort.

<Example> Sorting by category

1 MENU **[Osaifu-Keitai]** 5 4

List of methods is displayed. Registered sort methods are displayed in order of priority.
: Category TITLE : Title INDEX : Index No icon : No method

2 📷 ▶ **Select Sort by: field**

Checking sort methods : Select a sort method
Changing : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Select Sort by: field ▶ Go to Step 3
Deleting : Move the cursor to the sort method ▶ MENU ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Changing sort priority : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ MENU 5 ▶ Go to Step 5

3 1 ▶ **Select Category field** ▶ 1-5

Category selection screen→P262
Sorting by title : 2 ▶ Enter a part of the title in the field for Enter text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)
Sorting by index : 3 ▶ Enter a part of the index in the field for Enter text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)
Sorting by no method : 4

4 **Select Location: field ▶ Select a folder** ▶ 📷

5 **Select a priority**

Sort method is added above the selected row.

- When registering the first sort method, select "Add to last" (When changing a registered method, "Move to last" is displayed).

Map/GPS Function

Using GPS Function 266
Read map ..... Map 267
Checking your location ..... Position location 267
Using GPS compatible i-αppli 269
Providing location information on request ..... Location request 270
Notifying your current location information ..... Notify location 273
Displaying history of checked location information ..... Loc. history 274
Setting i-αppli and operations for reading map ..... Map setting 275
Setting GPS 275

Using GPS Function

- This function is unavailable as a navigation device for aircraft, vehicles or persons or as high-precision location surveying GPS. DOCOMO is not liable to any purely economic damages including troubles, if any, caused by missing opportunities of viewing positioning results or making communications due to failures or malfunctions of FOMA terminal or external events such as power interruption (including battery exhaustion) in using FOMA terminal for purposes including but not limited to the above.
- Because GPS is managed by U.S. Department of Defense, GPS wave conditions may be controlled (accuracy degraded or wave stopped) for security reasons of the U.S. And, wave conditions differ by satellite locations; therefore, positioning operations in the same location under the same environmental conditions may not yield the same result.
- GPS uses waves transmitted from satellites and it may be disabled or become hard to receive waves in the following conditions, causing to have an error of 300 m or more in location information.
  - Under or inside forest, on street of large buildings or in an area packed with many houses
  - Inside or beneath a building
  - Underground, in a tunnel or underwater
  - Near a high-voltage cable
  - Inside an automobile, train, etc.
  - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
  - Covered with hand etc., or placed in a bag etc.
  - FOMA terminal closed
  - FOMA terminal surrounded by obstacles or persons
- When using Location request and Notify location functions, check instructions and precautions given in website of GPS service providers and NTT DOCOMO. And, you may be charged for using these functions.
- The GPS function except Position location is unavailable out of service area.

◆ Using GPS function overseas

- You cannot use functions of location request and location notification overseas.
- You can check the current location in the 3G/GPRS network overseas.
- When date and time are not set, positioning location function cannot be used overseas.
- To perform Position location overseas, setting i-mode services Settings is required.
  i-mode usage overseas→P366
- When you connect to a service usage setup site of Request setting overseas, you can connect to the site, but an error screen appears and the site is unavailable. A packet communication fee is charged even in that case.
- Display on a map based on the obtained location information (latitude/longitude) may not be correct due to legal systems etc. of countries or areas.

■ Read map

- Operating procedure→P267
- A method selection screen for viewing map appears. When "i-mode site" or "i-αppli" is selected, a map is displayed. Note that, a map is not provided for some places or is not displayed properly, but a packet communication fee is required even in that case.

■ Checking your location

- Operating procedure→P267
- Quality mode is used for positioning overseas regardless of the setting of the positioning mode.
- You cannot use location information halfway positioning overseas.
- When the positioning is failed, it may be succeeded by selecting neighboring city (in order of area, country, city) on the displayed screen.

- When you select "Read map" from the location information menu after positioning or from location history, a method selection screen for viewing map appears. When "i-mode site" or "i-αppli" is selected, a map is displayed. Note that, a map is not provided for some places or is not displayed properly, but a packet communication fee is required even in that case.→P268"■Location information usage menu"

■ Setting actions to be taken after Position location

- Operating procedure→P269
- If "Read map" is set, a method selection screen for viewing map appears when performing Position location. Select "i-mode site" or "i-αppli" to display a map.

■ Using GPS compatible i-αppli

- Operating procedure→P269
- A map is not provided for some applications or is not displayed properly, but a packet communication fee is required even in that case.

■ Displaying history of checked location information

- Operating procedure→P274
- If Position location is performed overseas, icon is displayed in Loc. history. Note that, appears when positioning is performed out of area.
- When you select "Read map" in the location information menu from Loc. history, a screen for selecting a method to view a map appears. Select "i-mode site" or "i-αppli" to display a map.

Map

Read map

You can start GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting to display maps.

- By default, "地図アプリ (Map Application)" is set and you can view a map of your current location or another specified location.→P269

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 7 1

- When Map activate setting in Map setting is set to "ON", your current location is determined, then a map is displayed.
- If GPS compatible i-αppli is not set, the Map setting screen appears.

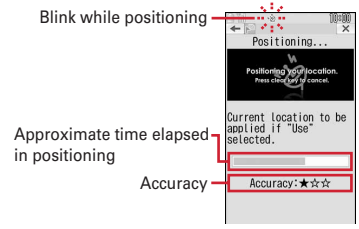
Position location

Checking your location

- No packet communication fee applies for positioning of Position location. Note that, a packet communication fee is required separately with map displayed using location information.
- Positioning is unavailable while positioning with Location request or Notify location.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 7 2

Positioning starts.



- Accuracy icon definitions.

★★★ : Nearly accurate location information (with an error of less than 50 m)
★★☆ : Comparatively accurate location information (with an error of less than 300 m)
★☆☆ : Approximate location information (with an error of 300 m or more)
Accuracy is merely approximate indication. Actual accuracy may vary by the environmental wave and other conditions.

- When positioning, press CLR or [-] to stop it.
- To use the location information currently acquired while positioning, press [📷].

2 Select a function from Use location info menu after positioning

Operating Use location info menu→P268 "■Location information usage menu"

✔INFORMATION

- A message may appear indicating that positioning takes time. Select "Yes" to continue positioning which takes time. Select "Retry" to retry positioning in Quality mode regardless of the setting of the positioning mode.

◆ Using location information

■ Location information usage menu

This menu appears after performing Position location, selecting "Use location" from the submenu of Loc. history, selecting "Detail info"→"Use location" from the submenu in displaying image or selecting the location information on the details screen of phonebook or User information.



1 On the menu screen, 1-7

Reading map : 1

GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts and a map is displayed using location information.

Running i-αppli : 2 ▶ Select i-αppli

i-αppli starts.

Pasting to a mail : 3

A mail creation screen with a Location information in the form of URL entered in the mail message is displayed.

- When the mail creation screen is displayed from Position location or Loc. history, "位置メール (Location mail)" is entered in the subject field.
- A Location information URL pasted to a mail can be displayed only on i-mode compatible terminals.

Adding to phonebook : 4 or 5

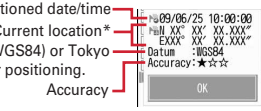
Phonebook new entry→P75

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Adding to image : 6 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ "Yes"

Checking location information : 7

The following screen appears.



* The information is shown in degrees (°), minutes (′), and seconds (″). "N", "S", "E" and "W" indicate a north latitude, south latitude, east longitude and west longitude, respectively.

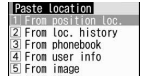
■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu

Displayed for pasting/attaching/sending Location information of individual items in the following cases.

Paste location menu : Selecting "Quote phrase/passw"→"Paste location" after pressing MENU while entering message text or editing a signature

Attach location menu : Selecting "Location info" on the new data entry, data edit or User information edit screen of FOMA terminal phonebook, pressing MENU while displaying image to select "Detail info"→"Attach location", or pressing MENU on the screen after shooting still image to select "Attach location"

Send location info menu : Selecting a link item for sending location information from i-mode or ToruCa



1 From Paste/Attach/Send location menu, 1-5

Using Location information of Position location : 1 ▶ "Yes" from a confirmation screen after activating Position location

Using Location information of Loc. history : 2 ▶ Select Loc. history ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of phonebook : 3 ▶ Select a phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook list with Location information entered ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of User information : 4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information entered to an image : 5 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ "Yes"

◆ Setting actions to be taken after Position location <Post-Position task>

Set actions after Position location when pressing 1 for 1 second or more on stand-by display (the setting of Shortcut menu in default state) or starting Position location from Shortcut icons.

- It is also applicable when Custom menu settings are changed and Position location is assigned to another dial key (the first level).

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 6 1 ▶ 1-6

Read map : GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts and a map is displayed using positioned location information.

Run Map/GPS αppli : Display a list of GPS compatible i-αppli.

Paste to mail : A mail creation screen appears, with "位置メール (Location mail)" entered in the subject field, and with a Location information in the form of URL entered in the message text.

Add to phonebook : Display a screen for selecting "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook". You can add new phonebook entry with location information set or update location information to an existing phonebook entry.

Add to image : Display image folder list. Positioned location information can be added to an image.

Confirm each time : Display accuracy and location information menu.→P268

Using GPS compatible i-αppli

- Using GPS compatible i-αppli sends location information to the Information Provider of the i-αppli to be used.
- When using the GPS function with GPS compatible i-αppli, "Location usage setting" of i-αppli to be used must be set to "Yes".
- "地図アプリ (Map Application)", "モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)" and "ロケーションレーダー (Vicinity viewer) are stored by default as GPS compatible i-αppli.

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 3 ▶ Select GPS compatible i-αppli to start

- To exit GPS compatible i-αppli, use the procedure specified for each i-αppli.

◆ Using 地図アプリ (Map Application)

"地図アプリ (Map Application)" is a useful i-αppli that allows you to look up a map of current location or specified place, search information around the place, perform navigation to the destination, etc. by using location information. You can also search the facilities helpful in case of disaster. Using Chizu Talk function, you can exchange messages with the companies on a map.



TOP menu screen


Map display screen

©2009 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

- A packet communication fee is required separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double for this software.
- In case of deleting it, you can download it from "ｉエリアー周辺情報ー (i-area -Peripheral information -)" site.

- DOCOMO gives no assurances of accuracy, immediacy, etc. of the map or routing information. Please be forewarned.
- Make sure that other than the driver operate this software while driving.
- This application supports electronic compass and the motion tracking.
- The display shown here is an example. Screens are given only for information purposes and may differ from actual displays.

❖Service fee

The service that this i-αppli provides is classified in charge-free function and charged function.

■ Charge-free function

- Displaying map and searching information around the location are available. Searching Gourmet coupon is available, too.
- Paint and display the map of the city/village you have positioned before by GPS function on a prefectural basis. This function allows you to check the city you visited at first sight.
- Change the mode to not only a normal map, but also to various types of maps such as a 3D map, a map emphasizing railroads, a map in day or night mode, etc.

■ Charged function

For 60 days from the first day of activating Map Application, it is a charge-free period and you can use all services except the traffic jam information free of charge. After the charge-free period, you are required to subscribe to My menu (charged) of "ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビ" provided by ZENRIN DataCom.

- You can perform the total navigation including by car, by train and on foot altogether. Searching the route considering the traffic jam information is available.
- Transfer information or timetable of the railway system is available.
- You can exchange messages with displaying the company's location on the map.
- You can also search the facilities helpful in case of disaster. And a communication-free i-αppli; 災害用地図アプリ (Map application for disaster) is also available. It is useful in case of emergency for downloading an evacuation map for disaster of neighborhood area etc. beforehand.

Location request

Providing location information on request

This is a service related to Location request; you can set so that location information is provided upon request from other set parties.

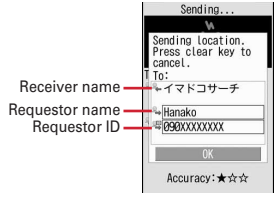
- To use a service related to Location request, a subscription to the service provider may be required. You may be charged for using the service.
- To use a service related to Location request, you must set Request permit/deny to "Always permit" or "Deny unsaved contact". Settings for using location information in "各種設定（確認・変更・利用）(Settings (Check/Change/Use))" of "お客様サポート (Support)" from i-mode may be required.

◆ When Location request is issued

<Example> When "許可 (Permit)" is set for 位置情報利用設定 (location information usage settings) from i-mode

Location request starts. blinks, the light turns on, the GPS alert sounds, and vibrator operates.

- Press CLR or ⌐ to stop Location request. Location information is sent under some timing.



- When the requestor ID matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name saved in phonebook appears. Note that, when the requestor ID matches the user information, the requestor name does not appear.
- Requestor ID may not be displayed.

• When "毎回確認 (Check each time)" is set for location information usage settings from i-mode, the following screen appears. Select "Yes" to start Location request.



✔INFORMATION

- Sending Location information requires no charge.
- Location request is unavailable while positioning with Position location or Notify location, while FOMA terminal is out of service area or during Self mode, i-mode communication with i-αppli or infrared communication/iC transmission. If the battery is exhausted or Omakase Lock is activated while positioning, it is stopped.
- Information is not delivered to the other party under some wave conditions.
- If "毎回確認 (Check each time)" is set for location information usage settings from i-mode when location request is issued during Public mode (Drive mode), location information is not sent. If "許可 (Permit)" is set, a screen appears and location information is sent, but the GPS alert sound is not emitted, and the light or vibrator does not operate.
- When using 2in1, Location request for Number A is available regardless of mode of 2in1.
- When you are required to provide the location information by a party using imadocokantan search, it operates as follows.
  - Every time you are required, a confirmation screen for location information appears. If you select "Yes", a rough positioning result is immediately notified to the other party. After the positioning, high-precision positioning results are notified to the other party.
  - Even if the location request is interrupted after selecting "Yes" on the confirmation screen of location request, a rough positioning result is notified to the other party. In this case, although it is recorded in Loc. history, the location information is not displayed.

◆ Setting whether to permit/deny Location request <Request permit/deny>

You can set if you provide location information when there is a request from other parties.

• This can also be set in Initial setting.→P51

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **7** **7** **2** **1** ▶ **Authenticate**

2 **1** **or** **3** ▶ **"No"**

- When "Always permit" is specified, any Location request is permitted. Without performing operations, Location information may be sent, and the searcher may be given information.
- When "Deny unsaved contact" is set, a location request is permitted, however, the location request from a phone number that is not saved in phonebook or User information is automatically rejected.

Canceling Location request or Deny unsaved contact : **2**

Setting permission period : **1** **or** **3** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Start : Set time for starting Location request.

End : Set time for ending Location request.

- You can set the next day exceeding 24:00.

Repeat : Set repetition of operation of the set time.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select the day of the week to perform Location request and press 📷.

Date : Set a period of time to perform Location request. When "Specify start date" or "Specify start/end" is set, the following items can be set.

Start : Set day for starting Location request.

End : Set day for ending Location request.

- GPS (blue) appears on the stand-by display when "Always permit" or "Deny unsaved contact" is set. When permission period is outside a valid period, GPS (gray) appears.

❖Operations of Location request with Permission period set

When Permission period is set, the following list describes location information provided periods.

- The column titled Location provided period shows periods with years omitted in which location information provided is active if Permission period is set at 9:00, July 03, 2009.
- If Repeat is set to "Day of week", the function is activated only on the specified day of the week in the period specified in the field for Location provided period.

■ When time after the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	07/03 10:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	After 07/03 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/07/01	After 07/03 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/08/01	After 08/01 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/07/01 End : 2009/07/31	07/03-07/31 10:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/08/01 End : 2009/08/31	08/01-08/31 10:00-18:00

■ When time before the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	07/03 09:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	07/03 09:00-18:00 After 07/04 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/07/01	07/03 09:00-18:00 After 07/04 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/08/01	After 08/01 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/07/01 End : 2009/07/31	07/03 09:00-18:00 07/04-07/31 08:00-18:00
	Start : 2009/08/01 End : 2009/08/31	08/01-08/31 08:00-18:00

■ When time after the current time is set as Start and one on the next day over 24 o'clock is set as End

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	07/03 10:00-07/04 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	After 07/03 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/07/01	After 07/03 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/08/01	After 08/01 10:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/07/01 End : 2009/07/31	07/03-07/31 10:00-02:00 next day (until 08/01 02:00)
	Start : 2009/08/01 End : 2009/08/31	08/01-08/31 10:00-02:00 next day (until 09/01 02:00)

■ When time before the current time is set as Start and one on the next day over 24 o'clock is set as End

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	Location provided period
None	—	07/03 09:00-07/04 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	07/03 09:00-07/04 02:00 After 07/04 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/07/01	07/03 09:00-07/04 02:00 After 07/04 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/08/01	After 08/01 08:00-02:00 next day
	Start : 2009/07/01 End : 2009/07/31	07/03 09:00-07/04 02:00 07/04-07/31 08:00-02:00 next day (until 08/01 02:00)
	Start : 2009/08/01 End : 2009/08/31	08/01-08/31 08:00-02:00 next day (until 09/01 02:00)

◆Making settings for using service <Service settings>

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 7 7 2 3

- For next procedure, contact a related service provider.

◆Changing host of service usage setup site <Service host URL>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 [MENU] **[LifeKit]** [7] [7] [2] [4] ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [📷]

Host : Select a host.
- When "User setting" is selected, the following items can be set.

User host : Enter up to 99 one-byte characters for the host.
User host URL : Enter up to 100 one-byte characters for URL.

Notify location

Notifying your current location information

You can notify current location information to others (service providers applicable to Notify location function).
- To use Notify location, a subscription to a service provider applicable to Notify location function may be required. And, you may be charged for using the service.
- Notify location requires usage fee.
- Notify location is unavailable while positioning with Position location or Location request, when FOMA terminal is out of service area or in Self mode. Notification by entering a service client is unavailable in Keypad dial lock.

<Example> Notifying by entering a service client

1 [MENU] **[LifeKit]** [7] [5]

2 [2] ▶ **Enter a service client ID (up to 12 one-byte characters)** ▶ [●]

When positioning, 🛰 blinks and the light turns on. The GPS alert sound is emitted and the vibrator operates on completion of positioning.
- Positioning is stopped when [📞] is pressed while a message is being displayed indicating that a location and phone number are sent or [CLR] or [📞] is pressed while positioning.
- Even if positioning is interrupted, the location information is notified under some timing.

Notifying to saved service client : [1] ▶ [1]-[5] ▶ [●]

3 **Check send result** ▶ [●]

❖Saving service client to LCS clients list

For Notify location, a service client can be selected from a list of those saved, if any. You can also set so that your current location is notified to saved service client ID of a specified party by making a voice/videophone call.
- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- No LCS client can be saved, edited or deleted with UIM not inserted.

1 [MENU] **[LifeKit]** [7] [7] [1] [1] ▶ **"<New LCS client>"**
- When checking a service client already saved, select the service client to check and press [📷] to edit.
- Press [MENU] and select "Delete" to delete a service client already saved. You can also save it to phonebook, send it via infrared or iC transmission, or copy it to microSD card from a submenu.

2 **Set required items** ▶ [📷]
- While "Quote phonebook" is selected from the submenu, a service client name and phone number can be quoted from a phonebook.

Service client name : Enter the service client name in up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters.
Service client ID : Enter a number specified by a service provider you subscribed to in up to 12 one-byte characters.
- Numerals, "#" and "*" can be entered.

Phone number : Enter a phone number of the other party in up to 26 one-byte characters.
- Numerals, "P", "T", "+", "#" and "*" can be entered. You can set Notify when calling when a phone number is entered.

Notify when calling : Set if you notify your location to a saved service client ID when making a voice/videophone call to that client.
- Set to "ON" to notify the location when making a call.
- Set to "Confirm each calling" to display a confirmation screen asking if you notify the location when making a call.

✔INFORMATION

- Information is not delivered to the other party under some wave conditions.
- Even with Notify location set in LCS clients list, location cannot be notified in the following cases.
  - When a call is made without notifying caller ID
  - When call is not connected because the other party is busy or out of service area
- When using 2in1, location information is notified as Number A regardless of mode of 2in1.

Loc. history

Displaying history of checked location information

You can display histories of positioning performed by Position location, Location request or Notify location function. Using location information in the log, you can save location information in phonebook or create a message containing location information URL.

- Up to 50 location histories are saved. When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **7** **4**

- Icon definitions.
  : Positioning location / (gray) : Location request/positioning failure
  / (gray) : Notify location/positioning failure

2 Select a history to display

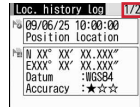
Using Location information : Move the cursor to the history to use ▶ MENU **1**

The next procedure→P268 "■Location information usage menu"

Deleting : Move the cursor to a history ▶ MENU **2** ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a history.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [camera]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

❖Reading Loc. history log details screen



Page/Total pages

Loc. history log details screen for Position location

: Positioning date/time and function
: Receiver name for Location request/Service client name for Notify location
: Service client ID for Notify location : Location information : Requester's name of Location request
: Requestor ID for Location request

- From a submenu, you can display the Use location menu to use location information or delete histories. When phone number or mail address information of the requestor ID is contained in Location request history, the information can be saved to phonebook.

✔INFORMATION

- When positioning with Position location is stopped or fails, it is not saved in history. And, location information is unavailable from histories of failing positioning with Location request or Notify location.
- When failed in positioning in Location request or Notify location, the location information is not displayed.
- Location information, if any, saved in histories of Location request or Notify location is not sent to a service provider under some wave conditions.
- When the requestor ID of a Location request matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name saved in phonebook appears.
- The location information recorded in the Loc. history differs from the location information that was sent to the provide of the location or LCS client by wave conditions etc.

Setting i-αppli and operations for reading map

You can specify i-αppli and its operations when it is started to read a map.

◆ Setting i-αppli to be used <Select map>

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 8 1 ▶ **Select i-αppli**



Graphical display

- Icon definitions are as follows.
  / : Available to be set as map viewer i-αppli/Activated
  : i-αppli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.
  : Unable to start because 2in1 is in B mode
  : Individual IC card locked
  : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli
  : Unset Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli
  : GPS compatible i-αppli
  : Message i-αppli : i-αppliDX
  (orange) : i-αppli
  / / : Search for i-αppli from i-mode site→P232
- Each time you press i, the view switches in the order of graphical display →list display→thumbnail display.

◆ Setting whether to position when starting <Map activate setting>

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 8 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2

Setting GPS

◆ Setting positioning mode <Position accuracy>

- In "Standard mode", positioning is performed in a short period of time.
- "Quality mode" takes time for positioning. As a result, it may provide higher accuracy than "Standard mode".

<Example> Setting positioning mode for Position location

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 6 2

Setting positioning mode for Notify location : MENU [LifeKit] 7 7 1 2

Setting positioning mode for Location request : MENU [LifeKit] 7 7 2 2

2 1 **or** 2

◆ Setting actions in positioning <Positioning alert>

<Example> Setting actions for Position location

1 MENU [LifeKit] 7 6 3

Setting operation for Notify location : MENU [LifeKit] 7 7 1 3

Setting operation for Loc. request-accept : MENU [LifeKit] 7 7 2 5 1

Setting operation for Loc. request-verify : MENU [LifeKit] 7 7 2 5 2

2 Set required items▶ 📷

Ring alert : Set if you sound melody.

- When "Melody" is set, select a melody.

Vibrate alert : Set a vibrator operation pattern.

Ring time (sec) : Set time in range of 0-30 seconds.

- Set time in range of 0-20 seconds for Loc. request-verify.

Light alert : Set a lighting or blinking pattern and color of the light.

- "Sync melody" cannot be selected. "OFF" cannot be selected for the case of Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.

✔INFORMATION

- When positioning is made again or retried with Position location due to wave conditions etc. only lighting/blinking of the light occurs.

Data Management

Making full use of image

Displaying image 278
Editing still images 280

Making full use of moving picture/i-motion

Playing moving picture/i-motion 282
Editing moving picture/i-motion 285
Moving i-motion to microSD card .... Compatible with contents transfer 286

Making full use of Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara 287

Making full use of Chara-den

Displaying Chara-den 288

Making full use of melody

Playing a melody 289

Making full use of microSD card

microSD card 290
Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card 292
Displaying data in microSD card 294
Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once 295
Managing microSD card 296
Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC ..... USB mode settings 297

Managing various data

Using folder or album 298
Viewing/Editing data detail information ..... Detail information/Edit detail information 299
Deleting data 301
Sorting data ..... Sort 301
Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal ..... Memory status 302
When exceeding the savable number/area 302

Making full use of infrared communication/iC transmission

Using infrared communication/iC transmission 302
Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission ..... Send Ir data or iC transmission 303
Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission ..... Receive Ir data or iC transmission 304
Using infrared remote control function 305
Setting operations for data exchange ..... Data exchange settings 306

Displaying PDF data

Displaying PDF data ..... My Document 306

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files ..... Other 308

Displaying recording data of 1Seg

Viewing recorded video or still images 309

Displaying image

- Images (JPEG or GIF format), animations (GIF animations or Flash graphics), and created animations can be displayed. Note that, images with sizes larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or larger than 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be displayed.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1

- The folder contents are as follows.

Camera : Images shot with Camera or cut out of moving pictures/i-motion or PDF data

i-mode : Images downloaded from sites, websites, mail or i-αppli or saved by MUSIC Player

Deco-mail picture : Images stored by default, downloaded from sites, websites, mail or i-αppli, or read with Bar code reader

Deco-mail pict : Images stored by default or Deco-mail pictogram downloaded from the site

- Images are classified by type.
- When obtaining an image conforming to the standard of Deco-mail pictogram (image size is 20×20, the file size is up to 90 Kbytes, permitted to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal and JPEG or GIF format), it is stored to this folder. Images not conforming to the standards cannot be saved.

Item : Frame images stored by default, frame or stamp images downloaded from sites

Preinstalled : Images stored by default

Data transfer : Images read with Bar code reader, acquired from microSD card or external devices or downloaded via infrared communication/iC transmission

My album : Images moved from another folder

- Appears when album is added.→P298
- When secret attribute is set, is displayed.

Search by i-mode : Searching images from i-mode sites→P171

2 **Select a folder**

- When "Deco-mail pict" is selected, additionally select a folder.



Thumbnail display　　List display

① **Originated**
: Preinstalled
: i-mode, Full Browser, Mail, i-αppli
: Camera : Frame, Stamp : Data transfer
: Searching images from i-mode sites→P171

② **Type of image**
No icon : Still image : Created animation
: GIF animation/Flash graphics : Image with location information

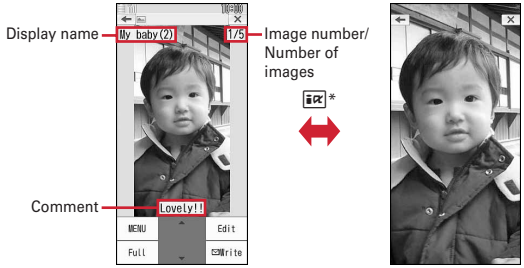
③ **File format**
No icon : Create animation JPG : JPEG image
GIF : GIF image, GIF animation : SWF (Flash graphics)
* If unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, appears in the lower right of the icon.

④ **File restriction**
/ : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the image at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the following icons are displayed.
: No preview image
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

Switching to microSD card list :

3 **Select an image**



* On the full-screen display, press any of [MENU], [📷], [CLR], [✉] to return to the previous display.

- Press [◎] to switch to the previous/next image.
- While playing animation or created animation, press [●] to pause/play, press [MENU] [7] to play from the beginning (except in full-screen display). Also, while created animation is stopped or while playing created animation after a stop, press [📷] to play it in slow motion.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to an image▶ [✉]

Operations for attaching files→P135 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

Using location information attached to an image : Move the cursor to an image▶ [MENU] [3] [3] ([MENU] [2] [3] on the microSD card image list)

The next procedure→P268 "■Location information usage menu"

Adding location information to an image : Move the cursor to the image▶ [MENU] [3] [4] ([MENU] [2] [4] on the microSD card image list)▶Add location information▶Select a JPEG image to attach the location information▶ [📷] ▶"Yes"

Pasting location information→P268 "■Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

Deleting location information added to an image : Move the cursor to the image▶ [MENU] [3] [5] ([MENU] [2] [5] on the microSD card image list)▶Select an image to delete location information from▶ [📷] ▶"Yes"

✔INFORMATION

- Video data included in Flash graphics is not played.
- If the still image is larger than the display area, it is scaled to fit the area.
- An image with vertical and horizontal (or vice versa) size of less than 240×480 dots is displayed with its size doubled. If the image is larger than the display area when enlarged, the image is displayed being adjusted to the display area. Press [↩] to display in the actual size. Press [C] to restore the double-size display.
- You can use zooming in or out to view a JPEG image larger than the screen size by pressing [●] on the image display screen. When an image is zoomed in or out, press [◎] to scroll, [MENU] to zoom out by 20 %, [📷] to zoom in/out by 20 %, [✂] to show/hide the guide area and [●] to restore the actual size view. Press [MENU] to restore actual size from enlarged size.
- When a JPEG image has the rotation correction information, the image is rotated and displayed. However, it is not rotated in the thumbnail display or when set for the stand-by display.
- You can save images using Data Security Service.→P121

◆ Setting operating conditions of image

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1] ▶ [MENU] [6] ▶Set required items▶ [📷]

Display icons : Set if you use thumbnail display on the image list.

Display title/Display number/Display comments : Set if you display name/image number and number of images/comment on the image display screen.

Scale up image : Set if you zoom in on an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

Scale down image : Set if you zoom out from an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

Sound effect : Set whether to play sound effects set to an image (except slide show).

Auto scroll mode : Set whether to automatically scroll the display if a still image is smaller than full-screen display.

- While scrolling, use [●] to pause/play and [✂] to show/hide the scroll bar.

Slideshow speed : Set how quickly switch images.

Slideshow random : Set whether to display slides randomly.

Slideshow effect : Set effects on the slide show.

◆ Displaying slide show

Display images in a folder sequentially in a full-screen.

1 [MENU] **[Data Box]** [1] ▶ **Move the cursor to a folder** ▶ [MENU] [7]

- When display of all images is complete or you press one of [CLR], [MENU], [i-mode], [📷], [✉], the folder list screen reappears.

◆ Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 [MENU] **[Data Box]** [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to an image** ▶ [MENU] [2]

2 [1] ▶ **"Vertical view" or "Horizontal view"** ▶ **"Yes"**

- For an image smaller than the screen size that can be enlarged, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook : [2] **or** [3]

Phonebook new entry→P75

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

Setting as Calling image : [4] ▶ [1] **or** [2]

Setting as Video-phone image : [5] ▶ [1]-[7]

- Animations, still images in size larger than 176×144 or images that cannot be output from FOMA terminal can be set only for outgoing/incoming call image.

Setting as Mail image : [6] ▶ [1]-[4]

- The images set to Mail image also appear when MessageR/F or SMS is sent or received.

Setting as Basic menu icon : [7] ▶ **Select a function or "Background"**

- Flash graphics, images in "Item" folder or created animation cannot be set.
- When the displayed menu is set to other than Basic menu, a confirmation screen for switching to Basic menu appears.

◆ Creating animation

You can select up to 9 still images smaller than 480×960 from the same folder and create an animation.

- Still images saved cannot be displayed or edited individually. Also, unless canceled, they cannot be saved to microSD card or external device or attached to i-mode mail to send.

1 [MENU] **[Data Box]** [1] ▶ **Select a folder**

2 [MENU] [4] [1]

Canceling : Move the cursor to a created animation ▶ [MENU] [4] [2]

3 **Select images to save to Create animation**

Selected images are numbered ❶-❾ in the order of selections.

[●] : Deselect the target [MENU] : Deselect all

4 [📷] ▶ **Enter a display name (up to 36 characters)** ▶ [📷]

Editing still images

1 [MENU] **[Data Box]** [1] ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to a still image** ▶ [📷]

2 **Perform necessary operations**

Changing display size by specifying the size : [MENU] [1] ▶ [1]-[8]

- If the aspect ratio is different from that of the original image, a blue frame appears. Press [MENU] to change to the specified size without saving the aspect ratio, and press [📷] to save the aspect ratio and put the image within the specified size. If moving the frame by [✥] and pressing [●], the image can be cut out by the specified size.

Changing display size by zooming in/out : [MENU] [1] [9] ▶ **Zoom out or in by** [✥] ▶ [●]

- Press [MENU] / [📷] to zoom out/in by 20 %. By the display on the upper right of the screen, the size after the change and the rate of zooming out/in can be checked.
- Zooming in up to 960×960 and zooming out up to 8×8 are possible.

Cutting out by specifying the size : MENU 2 ▶ 1-8 ▶ **Move the frame by** ▶ ●

- If pressing i-αppli, the frame size can be changed, and if pressing 📷, the vertical and horizontal sides of the frame can be switched. By the display on the upper right of the screen, the size after cutting out can be checked.
- If pressing MENU, you can change to the screen for cutting out by specifying the range.

Cutting out by specifying the range : MENU 2 9 ▶ **Specify the upper left by** ● ▶ **Specify the lower right by** ● ▶ ●

Changing brightness : MENU 3 1 ▶ **Adjust the brightness by** ▶ ●

- If pressing MENU / 📷, brightness can be adjusted to the highest/lowest.

Setting monotone/sepia : MENU 3 ▶ 2 **or** 3

Applying effect : MENU 4 ▶ 1-6

Applying sketch effect : MENU 4 ▶ 7 **or** 8 ▶ ●

- Effect can be adjusted by one step by ✉ or to the highest/lowest by i-αppli / ✉. And, if pressing 📷, the thickness of the line can be changed.

Reversing : MENU 5 ▶ **Use to reverse** ▶ ●

Rotating : MENU 5 ▶ MENU **or** 📷 ▶ ●

Adding frames : MENU 6 ▶ **Select a frame** ▶ ●

- If pressing MENU with the frames added, the frames can be rotated by 180 degrees, and if pressing C, the frames can be changed.

Pasting stamps :

① MENU 7 ▶ **Select a stamp** ▶ **Specify the position by** ● **and** ●

- When pasted, a sound effect is played.
- The same stamp can be pasted to multiple locations.
- If pressing MENU, all the stamps can be erased.

② 📷

Pasting text :

① MENU 8 ▶ **Enter text in up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- If setting Paste method to "By character", one character can be pasted each time you press ●.

② **Specify the position by** ● **and** ●

- When pasted, a sound effect is played.
- The same text can be pasted to multiple locations.
- If pressing MENU, all the texts can be erased.

③ 📷

Cutting out adjacent similar color area : MENU 9 ▶ **Move to the color to cut out using** ● **and press** ● ▶ 📷

Restricting the file size : MENU 0 ▶ 1 **or** 2

- A still image file size is changed to within 90 Kbytes for "Msg attach:Small" and 2 Mbytes for "Msg attach:Large", and the changed image is saved as a new image in the same folder as the original. Omit Step 3.

Adjusting :

① 📷

② MENU ▶ 1-7

- By the display on the upper right of the screen, the selected adjustment type can be checked.
- You can also change adjustment type by pressing C.
- Effect can be adjusted by one step by ✉ or to the highest/lowest by i-αppli / ✉.

③ ●

3 ● ▶ "Save"

Saved as a new still image in the same folder as the original still image.

- When the image size after editing is 20×20 and the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, the image is saved to "Face/i-pictogram" folder in "Deco-mail pict".
- Select "As frame/stamp" to save the image for frame or stamp.

✔INFORMATION

- Image sizes that can be edited are as follows.
  Specify the size in Change size, attaching mail (Large) of Size limitation : 8×8-2,448×3,264
  Specify cut out size : 16×16-2,448×3,264
  Specify cut out range : 16×16-768×1,280
  Items other than the above : 8×8-480×960
- Still images saved in microSD card, or in "Item" or "Preinstalled" folder, or still images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except still images with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal) cannot be edited.
- When the image size is larger than the display area as edited, the image is displayed with reduced magnification. However, images are displayed with the same magnification in Zoom in/out of Change size, Paste stamp or Paste text.
- After editing, the file size may become larger or the quality may be deteriorated. And, if displaying it on PC etc., the transparently displayed portion is displayed in white.
- When selecting frame or stamp, some frame or stamp is not displayed because of the size of the image to edit.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P302

Playing moving picture/i-motion

- In the following formats, moving pictures/i-motion with image size of 48×48 - 640×480 can be played.

File format (Extension)	Encoding format	
MP4 (MP4, 3GP)	Movie	MPEG4, H.263*1, H.264
	Sound	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (ASF)	Movie	MPEG4*2
	Sound	G.726

*1 Supported to the image size of 128×96, 176×144 only.
*2 Supported to the image size of 176×144, 320×240 and 640×480 only.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4

- The folder contents are as follows.

Playlist : Playlist→P284
Camera : Moving picture shot by camera, sound recorded with Sound recorder and moving picture memo
i-mode : i-motion downloaded from sites or mail, i-motion cut out of i-motion or music data and i-motion compatible with contents transfer moved from microSD card
Preinstalled : Moving pictures stored by default
Data transfer : Moving picture/i-motion (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer) acquired from microSD card or external device
My album : Moving pictures/i-motion moved from other folders
- Appears when album is added.→P298
- When secret attribute is set, is displayed.
Search by i-mode : Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P181

2 **Select a folder**



Thumbnail display　List display

① **Originated**
: Preinstalled : i-mode, Mail, i-αppli
: Camera : Data transfer : Videophone
: Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P181

② **Replay restriction**
: No restriction
/ / : Restriction on the number of times/expiration/period

③ **File type**
MP4 (white)/ MP4 (yellow) : MP4/MP4 with bookmark
MP4* : Replay unavailable due to replay restriction
: MP4 partially saved
MP4 : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
ASF (white)/ ASF (yellow) : ASF/ASF with bookmark

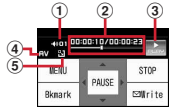
④ **File restriction**
/ : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the moving picture at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the following icons are displayed.
: Moving picture/i-motion containing only sound, recorded voice
: Moving picture/i-motion with thumbnail images unavailable
*: Replay unavailable due to replay restriction
*: Replay unavailable due to errors of data for management
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

* Only i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be displayed

Switching to microSD card list :

3 **Select moving picture/i-motion**



① **Play volume**
- is displayed on the left of play volume when Dolby Mobile in Settings is "ON".

② **Play time/Total time and the play position indicator**

③ **Play state**
: In play : In stop : In pause

④ **File type**
: Sound : Movie

⑤ **Zooming in/out display**
: Zoomed in display : Zoomed out display

- For the moving picture/i-motion with a bookmark set, the confirmation screen appears for playing from the bookmark. Select "No" to play from the beginning or play stopped position.
- While playing, the following operations are available.
  : Adjust volume
  : Reverse/Fast play
  : Pause/Play/Play from the beginning (In stop)
  ▶"Yes" : Set a bookmark
  - To cancel, press during pause.
  - A bookmark cannot be set to i-motion with replay restriction.

  : Stop
  CLR : Return to list screen
  1 : Rewind for 10 seconds (Starting playing from the beginning if the time from it is less than 10 seconds)
  3 : Fast forward for 30 seconds (Starting playing from a point approximately 1 second before the end position if the time to the end position is less than 30 seconds)
  4*/6* : Play from the beginning of previous/next chapter
  MENU 2* : Play the selected chapter

  * Enabled only for moving picture/i-motion with chapter information
- During pause, press to display a tab for specifying position on the play position indicator. Move by and press to play from the specified position.
- Pressing during play in YOKO-MOTION style switches between horizontal display (full-screen) and horizontal display (normal). When image size is 320×240 or 640×480, it switches in order of horizontal display (full-screen)→horizontal display (wide-screen)→horizontal display (normal).

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to moving picture/i-motion▶

◆Using Remote controller with microphone F01 <Remote controller with microphone>

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate during playing moving picture/i-motion.
: Pause/Play
+ − : Adjust volume
HOLD (Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable , +, and − keys
HOLD (Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

✔INFORMATION

- For some i-motion on which "--:--:--" may appear as the full play duration on the play screen, fast-forwarding/rewinding, playing operation from the bookmark or play stop position, or playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.
- When i-motion with replay restriction set is selected, the replay restriction state appears. When replay is unavailable due to the replay restriction, a message appears for confirming deletion (except before the replay period). When replay period or expiration is restricted, replaying is not available by changing the date and time of FOMA terminal.
- When i-motion failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. When it cannot be downloaded by retry, partially saved data is deleted. For partially downloaded i-motion that the replay period or replay expiration expired, a confirmation screen for deleting appears and redownloading is unavailable.
- When playing is stopped by pressing CLR or while playing or by other functions, the stop position is saved and used for the next playback. The stop position of playback is saved in up to 5 moving pictures/i-motion videos in each of FOMA terminal and microSD card. When new information is saved, old information is deleted chronologically. When playing while downloading data or in preview play or for playing i-motion with replay restriction, the stop position cannot be saved.

◆Setting operating conditions of moving picture/i-motion

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 ▶ MENU 6 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

View thumbnails : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the moving picture/i-motion list.
Size adjustment : Set whether to zoom in/out an image to fit the display area maintaining the image aspect ratio.
Repeat play : Set whether to repeat playing when playing playlist.
Display light time : Set light operations during playback. When setting to "Phone setting", backlight operates according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light. This setting is also applied to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light as well as Display light time of Music&Video Channel.
Volume : Set the sound volume during playback.
Dolby Mobile : Set whether to enable surround effects and low/high tone adjustment function etc. This setting also applies to Movie (i-motion) in Stereo sound effect.
Voice output to BT : Set whether to display the confirmation screen for audio output to Bluetooth device.

◆Creating/Playing playlists

Saving and managing the titles of moving picture/i-motion.
- 100 titles can be saved in 1 playlist.
- Moving picture/i-motion saved in microSD card, i-motion partially saved, i-motion titles restricted by Replay restriction option, or i-motion title unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be registered.

❖Creating/Deleting playlist

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 ▶ **Select "Playlist" folder**

2 MENU 1

When no playlist is created : "Yes"
Changing name : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ MENU 2 ▶ **Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ ●
Deleting : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a playlist.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 **Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ ●
- "PlaylistYYYYMMDD (year, month and day of creation)" is preset.

4 **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a moving picture/i-motion** ▶ ● ▶ **"Yes"**

❖Adding/Deleting titles of moving pictures/i-motion to/from playlist

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 ▶ **Select "Playlist" folder** ▶ **Select a playlist**

2 MENU 3 1

Canceling : Move the cursor to a title ▶ MENU 3 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**
- To cancel 1 item, move the cursor to a title.
- To cancel selected items, select them ▶ ●. To cancel all items, authentication is required.

3 1-3 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a moving picture/i-motion** ▶ ● ▶ **"Yes"**
- To add one item, pressing ● is not required after selection.

✔INFORMATION
- Removing a title of moving picture/i-motion in a playlist does not delete the data itself. When moving picture/i-motion is deleted or moved to microSD card, they are removed from the playlist.

❖Playing playlist

You can continuously play moving pictures/i-motion starting from the selected title.
- Fast forwarding/Rewinding, operation of playing from the bookmark or play stop position, playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 ▶ **Select "Playlist" folder** ▶ **Select a playlist**

2 Selecting title to play first

- On the screen for playing, the icons (ON/OFF) indicating the settings of Repeat play appear beside ones normally appear.
- While playing, the following operations are available.
  - : Adjust volume
  - ● : Pause/Play/Play from the beginning of the current title (when paused)
  - i : Play from the beginning of data (pressing within 3 seconds after playback starts plays the previous data)
  - ■ : Stop
  - ✉ : Play the next data
  - CLR : Return to list screen

Sorting play order : MENU 3 3 ▶ Move the cursor to a title ▶ i or ✉ ▶ ■

◆ Setting moving picture/i-motion to stand-by display or the phonebook

Some types of moving picture/i-motion can be used for the following settings.

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Type	Stand-by display	Phonebook	Ring alert	Alert image
Sound + Movie	○	×	○*	×
Movie only	○	○	×	○
Sound only	×	×	○	×

* Excluding i-concier ring alert

- i-motion that Replay restriction is set, or moving picture/i-motion whose file size is larger than 10 Mbytes are unavailable.
- The following moving picture/i-motion are unavailable for phonebook, ring alert or incoming call image.
  - Other than the image size of 128×96, 176×144 or 320×240
  - ASF format
  - With ticker (text)
  - Those transferred to an external device or another FOMA terminal and transferred back
  - Those moved or copied from microSD card to FOMA terminal (including those moved or copied from FOMA terminal to microSD card and then returned) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer
- Moving picture/i-motion for which Receive display of Detail information is "Unavailable" is not applicable to phonebook or incoming call image. And, moving picture/i-motion that Ring alert is "No" is not applicable to ring alert.

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 MENU [Data Box] 4 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶ MENU 2

2 1 ▶ "Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook : 2 or 3

Phonebook new entry→P75

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

Setting to ring alert : 4 ▶ 1-8

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press ■.

Setting to alert image : 5 ▶ 1-3

Editing moving picture/i-motion

- The following moving picture/i-motion cannot be edited. Downloaded i-motion may not be edited by encoding formats.
  - Moving picture/i-motion with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except moving picture set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)
  - i-motion with replay restrictions
  - Moving picture in ASF format
- Edited moving picture/i-motion is saved as new data to the folder where the original data is saved. The cut out data is saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture. It also applies when moving picture/i-motion is attached to mail after editing.

◆ Cutting out still image (Capture)

Specify a range and cut out as a still image.

- The size of the still image cut out is same as the display size when it is played.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion**

2 At the position to cut out, MENU 3 **▶** 📷

- Pressing ● resumes a play.

Attaching to mail : At the position to cut out, MENU 3 **▶** ✉

Operations for attaching files→P135 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

◆ Cutting out moving picture/i-motion (Custom edit)

Cut out from the beginning to the specified location.

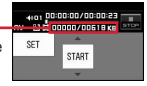
- Moving picture/i-motion that the file size is 11–2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶** MENU 4 1

appears below a replay time.

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 ● **▶** ● **at the cutting position**



CLR : Retry

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press MENU and select "Msg attachment S" to cut out a file of 500 Kbytes, press MENU and select "No settings" to cut out a file approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum size. For a file of 2,048 Kbytes, press MENU and select "Msg attachment L" to cut out a file of 2,047 Kbytes.
- When data is cut out up to the end without pressing ●, the end point is set at the position approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum file size.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ 📷

Playing : 🎞

Attaching to mail : ✉

◆ Specifying file size for cutting out moving picture/i-motion (Edit by size)

Cut out a specified file size from the beginning.

- Moving picture/i-motion that the file size is 11–2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶** MENU 4 2

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 Enter size to cut out

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press MENU and select "Msg attachment S" to enter 500, or press MENU and select "Msg attachment L" to enter 2047 for a file of 2,048 Kbytes.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ 📷

Playing : 🎞

Attaching to mail : ✉

Compatible with contents transfer

Moving i-motion to microSD card

Of copyrighted i-motion items downloaded from a site, you can move those compatible with contents transfer to microSD card. It cannot be copied.

- i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be moved only when Moved to microSD in detail information is set to "Yes" or "Yes (Same model only)".

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 4 **▶ Select "i-mode" folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-motion ▶** MENU 5 4 **▶** 1 **-** 3

- To move selected items, select them **▶** 📷.

2 Move the cursor to the destination folder▶[📷]▶"Yes"

- When saving to a subfolder, select a folder▶Move the cursor to the destination subfolder▶Press [📷]. When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a selecting screen for moving to current position or creating a folder appears.
- If i-motions incompatible with contents transfer are included in Selected items or All items, a message appears to notify that only encrypted files to be moved to specified folder. If you select "Yes" to move them, i-motion incompatible with contents transfer is saved in "Movie" or "Other movie" folder on microSD card.

✔INFORMATION

- If data is moved to a created folder, it may not be checked from other FOMA terminals.
- While moving data, do not remove microSD card or turn the power OFF. It may make all data compatible with contents transfer in microSD card unavailable.

❖Moving to folder in the FOMA terminal or others

Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer saved in microSD card

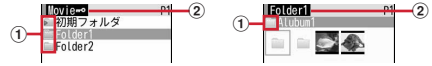
- Moving is available only when installing the same UIM as when obtaining from the site or moving to microSD card (the model also must be the same for some i-motion).

1 [MENU] [LifeKit] [3] [1] [5]▶Select a folder▶Move the cursor to i-motion▶[MENU] [3]▶[1] or [2]

2 [1]-[3]▶"Yes"

- To move selected items, select them▶[📷]. To move all items, authentication is required.
- To move to another folder, move the cursor to a folder▶Press [📷].
- When moving to the terminal, i-motion is saved in "i-mode" folder in i-motion/Movie.

❖Folders to store i-motion compatible with contents transfer in the micro SD card



Root folder list screen　Sub-folder list screen

① **Folder**

: Folder : Home folder

- The folder in pink is the initial folder. The initial folder is in light pink if it has no data. The folders in light blue are the ordinary folders. They are in light grey if they have no data. Initial folder is created when "Movie" folder is displayed for the first time. The folder name can be changed.

② **Folder name**

- "Movie" is a root folder.

Switching to folder list of FOMA terminal : On the root folder list, [i-α].

Setting as home folder : Move the cursor to a folder▶[📷]▶"Yes"

Moving to home folder : [✉]

Displaying Machi-chara

You can display a character to be set on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

- Setting Machi-chara→P94

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [8]

- The folder contents are as follows.

i-mode : Machi-chara downloaded from sites

Preinstalled : Machi-chara stored by default

My folder : Machi-chara moved from other folders

- Appears if a folder is added.→P298

Search by i-mode : Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites→P172

2 Select a folder



Thumbnail display

"ひつじのしつじくん®
(Butler of sheep)"
©NTT DOCOMO

List display

① **Originated**
: Preinstalled : i-mode
: Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites→P172

② **File type**
: Machi-chara (upper half is gray) : Partially saved Machi-chara
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ **File restriction**
: File restricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of Machi-chara at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. If thumbnail display is not available, an icon with the same design of "② File type" appears.

3 Select Machi-chara

- When partially saved Machi-chara is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Machi-chara partially saved may be deleted.

◆ Setting operating conditions of Machi-chara

1 MENU **[Data Box]** **8** ▶ MENU **5** ▶ **1** **or** **2**

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on Machi-chara list.

Displaying Chara-den

You can display a character instead of camera image during videophone call.

- Using Chara-den during videophone call→P69

1 MENU **[Data Box]** **9**

- The folder contents are as follows.
i-mode : Chara-den downloaded from sites
Preinstalled : Chara-den stored by default
My folder : Chara-den moved from other folders
  - Appears if a folder is added.→P298

2 Select a folder



① **Originated**
: Preinstalled : i-mode

② **File type**
AFD / : AFD/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ **File restriction**
: File restricted

3 Select Chara-den

- While displaying Chara-den, the following operations are available.
: Large size/Same size
1-**9**, **#** : Perform applicable action
0 : Stop action
: List actions
(1 sec. or more) : Switch Action/Action of Parts
  - The current action type is indicated with the following icons appearing in the lower-left corner in the screen.
Action : Action Parts : Action of Parts

**Making a videophone call : Move the cursor to Chara-den ▶ ▶ Enter a phone number or press to select from phonebook ▶ **

- To make a videophone call specifying conditions, enter a phone number and press MENU.→P62

Setting as Substitute image : Move the cursor to Chara-den▶ ✉

◆ Setting operating conditions of Chara-den

1 MENU [Data Box] 9 ▶ MENU 5 ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷

Display size : Set whether to zoom.

Display light time : Set light operations during playback. When "Terminal settings" is set, it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display & Key light.

Playing a melody

- Melody in SMF or MFi format can be played.

1 MENU [Data Box] 5

- The folder contents are as follows.

i-mode : Melody downloaded from a site or a mail

Preinstalled : Melodies for ring tone stored by default→P393

Mail attach melody : Melodies for mail attachment stored by default→P394

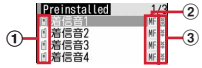
Data transfer : Melody read with Bar code reader, acquired from microSD card or external devices or downloaded via infrared communication/iC transmission

My album : Melodies moved from another folder

- Appears when album is added.→P298

Search by i-mode : Searching melodies from i-mode sites→P172

2 Select a folder



① Originated

MFi / MFi : Preinstalled, Mail attach melody/3D sound supported

MFi / MFi : i-mode, mail/3D sound supported

SMF / SMF : Data transfer/3D sound supported

: Searching melodies from i-mode sites→P172

② File type

MFi / MFi : MFi/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

SMF / SMF : SMF/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

③ File restriction

/ : File restricted/unrestricted

Switching to microSD card list : 📷

3 Select a melody



- While playing, the following operations are available.

: Adjust volume

: Play the previous/next melody

●, CLR : Return to the list screen

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a melody▶ ✉

◆ Setting melody for ring alert

- Melodies in "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be set as ring alert.

1 MENU [Data Box] 5 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a melody ▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-8

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press 📷.

◆ Setting operating conditions of melody

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 5 ▶ MENU 7 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- If setting Light alert to "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. Note that some melodies may not be synchronized.
- When Play position is set to "Play portion", the melody is partially played. Note that some melodies are not played partially.
- When setting Play background to "Select", you can select an image saved in Image folders.
- Stereo/3D sound settings are enabled only when an earphone/microphone (optional) etc.is connected. This setting also applies to a melody of Stereo sound effect.

microSD card

You can save data such as still images, moving pictures or melodies or make a backup of data such as phonebook or schedule to microSD card. Moving pictures created with external devices can be saved in microSD card and played with FOMA terminal (→P410) or the data can be operated from a PC with microSD card in FOMA terminal recognized as a drive (→P297).

- A microSD card is required. If you have none, purchase it in an electric appliance store.
- microSD card formatted by this FOMA terminal can be used (→P296). Note that the operation of microSD card formatted by other FOMA terminal, a PC, etc., or that formatted half way is not guaranteed.
- Data in microSD card except i-motion compatible with contents transfer cannot be set as stand-by display, ring alert or incoming image.
- F-09A supports microSD card of up to 2 Gbytes, and microSDHC card of up to 16 Gbytes (as of April, 2009). For information about manufacturers or available sizes of compatible microSD cards, or latest operation check results, read "メモリーカード対応情報 (Memory card compatibility)" in "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F Mobile phone supporters) (→P301)" at i-mode, or visit the following website.
  FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→microSD対応状況 (microSD compatibility) (In Japanese only)
  Note that microSD cards not listed as compatible may not work. Information provided is a result of operation check and does not guarantee all operations.

◆ Precautions for using microSD card

- Do not subject FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when a microSD card is attached. Doing so may pull out microSD card or damage data.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the microSD card.
- The terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same condition as out of service area) while data is being copied, moved, backed up/restored or deleted, or microSD card is being formatted, information is being updated or microSD card is being scanned.
- When write protection is set for the microSD card by other devices such as a PC, saving data into the card, deleting data and format cannot be performed.
- Data saved from other devices such as a PC into a microSD card may not be displayed or played with FOMA terminal. Also, data saved in the microSD card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Data of file size exceeding 2 Gbytes cannot be used.
- With some microSD card, the saved moving picture is distorted.
- It is recommended that data saved in microSD card should be separately backed up for storage. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for accidental loss or alteration of data.
- Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the saved data are deleted.

◆ Installing/Removing microSD card

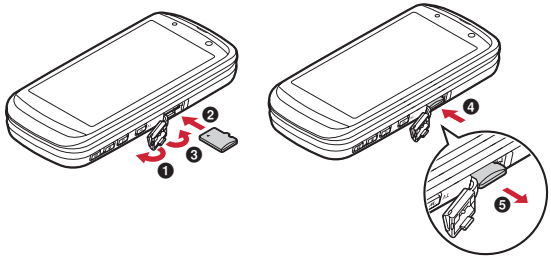
- Be sure to turn off the power before installing/removing microSD card.
- In the microSD card slot, do not install anything except microSD card. Do not install microSD card with scratches, deformation or stain. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Install the microSD card correctly with care for the direction into FOMA terminal. Installing it to wrong direction may cause damage the microSD card or slot, or the microSD card may not be pulled out. You cannot perform operation such as copying or backing up data, if you have not installed microSD card correctly.
- Be careful to avoid touching metal connectors of microSD card.
- When installing/removing the microSD card, it may pop out of the slot occasionally.

■ **Installing**

Open the cover in the direction of ❶, and insert microSD card with metal connectors side down slowly into the slot (❷). Push the card until it clicks, then close the cover in the direction of ❸.

■ **Removing**

Open the cover in the direction of ❶, and press the center of microSD card lightly in the direction of ❹. Pull out the ejected card straight in the direction of ❺, then close the cover in the direction of ❸.



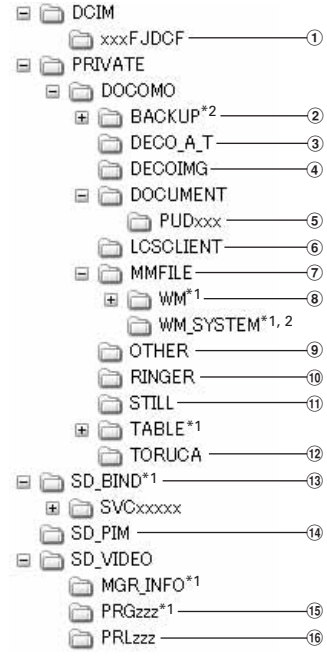
◆ microSD card folder structure

When data is moved/copied to microSD card from FOMA terminal or a recorded still image or video is saved directly to microSD card, a folder associated with the file is automatically created. The folder structure and files names displayed on a PC are as follows.

To save data from a PC, use this folder structure and file names. Also, after data is saved, information on FOMA terminal must be updated.→P296

- If a folder is renamed, or a file of data for management is renamed/deleted, FOMA terminal cannot display or play data correctly.
- The savable number may be reduced depending on the size of microSD card.
- Naming rules for folders and files are as follows. Characters to use should be one-byte characters except "＊" and upper cases for alphabetic characters.
  "a" alphanumeric, _ (Under bar)
  "xxx" 3-digit number between 001-999 (100-999 only for "xxxFJDCF")
  "xxxx" 4-digit number between 0001-9999
  "xxxxx" 5-digit number between 00001-65535
  "zzz" 3 alphanumeric characters between 001-FFF (Hexadecimal)

"＊" Any string



*1 Including data for management. Do not edit/delete.
*2 A hidden folder. It does not appear with some PC settings.

① **My Picture in Multimedia (shot still images, JPEG of DCF standard or GIF)**
File name : aaaaxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items
② **Backup**
③ **Decome-Anime template**
File name : DEATxxxx.VGT Savable number : 9,999 items
④ **Multimedia Deco-mail pictogram**
File name : DIMGxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items
⑤ **My Document (PDF data)**
File name : ＊.PDF Savable number : 999 items
- A long file name format of up to 64 one-byte characters including extension is supported. If a file name is duplicated etc., the file name may be changed to "PDFDCxxx.PDF" format.
- Files with extensions except "PDF" are also saved. Meanings of extensions are as follows.
"$DF" : PDF data failed in downloading
"DDF" : File for managing i-mode bookmark or mark information
"JPG" : File for thumbnail display

⑥ **LCS client**
File name : LSCDCxxx.LSC Savable number : 999 items
⑦ **Other moving picture of Multimedia (audio only moving pictures/i-motion)**
File name : MMFxxxx.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 9,999 items
- Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.
- Music data of AAC format can be saved.

⑧ **MUSIC of Multimedia (WMA)**
File name : ＊.WMA Savable number : 1,000 items
- Up to 94 characters (including extension) are allowed for a file name.
- To save, use Windows Media Player. No information update is necessary after saving.

⑨ **Other (files of Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.)**
File name : aaaaaaaa.aaa Savable number : 999 items
- The number of characters for file name and for extension are 8 and 3, respectively.

⑩ **Melody of Multimedia**
File name : RINGxxxx.MID/MLD/SMF Savable number : 9,999 items
⑪ **Other image of Multimedia (JPEG out of DCF standards, GIF animation, Flash graphics)**
File name : STILxxxx.JPG/GIF/SWF Savable number : 9,999 items
⑫ **ToruCa**
File name : TORUCxxx.TRC Savable number : 999 items
⑬ **Data compatible with contents transfer (Movie in Multimedia, MUSIC in Multimedia (Chaku-uta full®), i-αppli data)**
File name : aaaaaaaa.SB1/SB2/aaa
Savable number : 1,000 items for each of i-motion and Chaku-uta full®, 1,200 items for i-αppli data
- The number of characters for file name and for extension are 1-8 and 3 or less, respectively.

⑭ **Folders in PIM**
File name : PIMxxxxx.VBM/VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT
Savable number : 9,999 items in total
- For management of PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark), files with extension "PIM" are also saved.

⑮ **1Seg of Multimedia (1Seg video)**
File name : MOVzzz.MAI/MOI/SB1, PRGzzz.PGI
Savable number : 99 items
⑯ **Moving pictures of Multimedia (Moving picture/i-motion)**
File name : MOLzzz.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 4,095 items
- Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.

Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card

- Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer→P286
- Moving the music data of MUSIC→P226
- The following data can be moved or copied.
  - Image (except created animation), Deco-mail pictogram, Moving picture/i-motion, Melody, PDF data (except partially downloaded data), ToruCa (including Details), Decome-Anime template (except moving to microSD cards), Word, Excel, PowerPoint files, 1Seg video (only moving/copying to microSD card)
- The following data can be copied or backed up.
  - Phonebook entries, schedule, mail, notepad, bookmarks, LCS client of GPS (only copying)

◆ Moving/Copying data from the FOMA terminal to microSD card

- You cannot move or copy data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer").
- Data cannot be moved/copied during recording 1Seg with recording reservation or recording 1Seg.

<Example> Moving/Copying images

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1 **▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to data**

2 MENU 5 ▶ 4 **or** 5

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. "Move/Copy" ▶ Select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD". On 1Seg Video(Phone memory) list, select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD", on Decome-Anime template list, select "Copy to microSD".

3 1-3 **▶ "Yes"**

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ ●.
- Step 1 to 3 are not required to copy 1Seg video stored in the FOMA terminal).

✓INFORMATION

- When data in My Picture, i-motion/Movie, Melody, 1Seg, Other or Decome-Anime template is moved/copied, the file name is automatically changed according to the rules for saving data to a PC. Also, some PDF data may be renamed.→P292
- The memory size of the moved/copied still image may become larger than the size displayed on FOMA terminal. In this case, the size displayed on microSD card is the actual size.
- TV program video that supports Dubbing+10 can be copied up to 9 times. Only moving is available in the 10th operation.

◆ Moving/Copying data from microSD card to the FOMA terminal

- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P302

<Example> Moving/Copying My Document data

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 3 3

2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the data

- When "Multimedia" is selected, select data type before selecting a folder.

3 MENU 3 **▶** 1 **or** 2

- When "ToruCa" or "Decome-Anime Template" is selected, press MENU 2.

4 1-3 **▶ "Yes"**

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ ●.
- Data is saved in the following folders on FOMA terminal.
  My Document, Multimedia data : "Data transfer" folder for each data
  Deco-mail pictogram : "Smiley/Pict" under "Deco-mail pict" folder in My Picture
  ToruCa : "ToruCa"
  Decome-Anime template : "Decome-Anime" folder in Template
  Others : The top folder in Other

◆ Copying PIM data or LCS client

- You can copy PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark) and LCS client of GPS.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 3 2 **▶** 1-7 **▶ Move the cursor to data ▶** MENU 1 **▶** 1-3

Copying LCS client : MENU **[LifeKit]** 3 6 **▶ Select a folder ▶** MENU 1 **▶** 1, 2 **or** 5

- If no LCS client is saved in microSD card, this operation is not available. Operate from LCS clients list on FOMA terminal.

Add to phone : Copy data from microSD card to FOMA terminal.
Update phone : Overwrite the current data on FOMA terminal with all data on microSD card.
Copy all to microSD : Save all data of selected types to microSD card collectively.

2 Authenticate▶"Yes"

- Authentication is not required for "Add to phone" of 1 item.
- When all phonebook entires are copied to microSD card, a confirmation screen for copying User information appears.
- You can copy all to microSD card by selecting the following submenu on a list screen of each data in FOMA terminal. You can also perform Copy one to microSD on a list screen.
  Phonebook entry list, Day view screen of Schedule : "Copy/Store data"
  Note list : "Ir/iC/microSD"
  Mail list : "Move/Copy"▶"Copy to microSD"
  Bookmark list : "Move/microSD"▶"Copy to microSD"
  LCS clients list : "Copy to microSD"

✔INFORMATION

- Copying phonebook entry does not copy the registered moving picture. Still images are copied but cannot be displayed on other than FOMA terminal. If you copy one item, the secret attribute is disabled.
- When you copy a mail, i-mode mail protection is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not copied.
- When schedule item is copied, contact or image is not copied. When all items of schedule are copied, watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg are not copied.
- LCS client with the same phone number as existing LCS client on FOMA terminal cannot be saved on the terminal.

Displaying data in microSD card

- Playing the music data of MUSIC→P225
- Viewing backed-up data→P296
- 1Seg display→P309
- Update information when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices. →P296

1 MENU [LifeKit] 3▶1-9

2 Select a folder

- When you select "Multimedia" or "PIM", select a folder after you select data type.
- "Movie" folder (i-motion compatible with content transfer)→P287

Switching to FOMA terminal folder list : i-mode

- Only folders of Multimedia, My Document, ToruCa, and Other can be operated.

3 Select data

Displaying all copied data in PIM and LCS : Select all copied data▶Select data

- The icon of all copied data is displayed as overlapping icons.

Switching between thumbnail and list view : i-mode

- Only Multimedia (except Melody) and My Document data can be operated.

Jumping by specifying a page : i-αppli

- Press ● without entering a page number to jump to page 1 (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-αppli data).

Attaching to mail : Mail

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer), Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark, My Document, ToruCa, and Other folders.

Searching data : MENU 5▶Enter date▶i-αppli

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer) and My Document folders.
- The same operation is available by pressing MENU 3 in PIM data list or pressing MENU 4 in Decome-Anime template list.

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as the stand-by display : Move the cursor to data▶MENU 1 1▶"Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as ring alert : Move the cursor to data▶MENU 1 2▶1-8▶"Yes"

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry▶Select "Yes".

Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as Movie alert : Move the cursor to data ▶ MENU 1 3 ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

Playing moving picture/i-motion continuously : MENU 6

- During continuous play, the following operations are available.
  - ◯ : Adjust volume
  - ● : Pause/Play
  - ◁ / ▷ : Play the previous/next moving picture
  - C : Stop continuous play

✔INFORMATION

- Alarm does not sound for schedules saved in microSD card even when the specified time comes.
- Detail information cannot be downloaded from the ToruCa saved in microSD card.
- i-motion compatible with content transfer can be played only when the same UIM as downloading i-motion from a site or moving to microSD card is inserted (the model also must be the same for some i-motion). Note that, when i-αppli using microSD card is set for the stand-by display, playing may be unavailable.
- When you attempt to display data of i-αppli that was used with a different model or UIM, the reason not available is displayed. When only Restricted operation is set to "Yes", downloaded i-αppli may be used.
- Checking User information or View preference is available from the submenu of the phonebook details screen.
- Changing font size, adding mail address to phonebook or updating, showing/hiding attached file or checking title is available from the submenu of the mail details screen. Replying or forwarding received message is available.
- Copying URL or adding to phonebook or updating is available from the submenu of Bookmark details screen.

Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once

You can back up Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad, Bookmark and setting item data all at once in microSD card and restore them to FOMA terminal when necessary.

- It may take time to back up/restore depending on data volume. Operate after you check that remaining battery is sufficient.
- When there is no data to be backed up/restored, it is unavailable.
- The following setting information is backed up/restored.
  Inbox sort, Outbox sort, Font size (Mail view), Signature (Auto add, Edit signature), Receive option, Display priority, Auto-display, Incoming msg. attach, Attachment auto-play, Early warning "Area Mail" setting (Receive setting, Beep time, Manner/Public mode setting), Check msg. option, Specified caller, Unregistered caller, Anonymous caller* (Anonymous, Payphone, Unavailable), Record message (ON/OFF, Set response time), Redial, Received calls, Sent msg. log, Received msg. log, Text input (Save word, conversion prediction), Alarm clock

* When setting except "Call Rejection", it is backed up/restored as "Disable settings".

◆ Backing up in microSD card

- Data is overwritten in backing up. Note that backup data saved last time is deleted and only the latest backup data is saved.

1 MENU **[LifeKit] 3 8 1**

2 **"Yes" ▶ Authenticate**

- Step 3 is not required when no phonebook data is saved User information cannot be backed up when no phonebook data is saved.

3 **"Yes" or "No"**

- When you press ● or CLR to interrupt, data backed up last time is deleted and data halfway backed up is saved. Back up again to save the correct backup data.
- When a message indicating the lack of memory appears, delete unnecessary data or operate after installing another microSD card that has sufficient memory.

✔INFORMATION

- Moving pictures saved in phonebook are not backed up. Still images are backed up but cannot be displayed.
- Protection of i-mode mail is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not backed up.
- Contacts and images in the schedule are not backed up. Also, watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg are not backed up.

◆ Restoring to the FOMA terminal

Backed-up data is restored after the Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad, Bookmark and setting item data is deleted.

- Note that the latest data in FOMA terminal is deleted when restored.
- If backup is interrupted due to turning off during backup etc., do not restore by using the backup data. Partially backup data may be restored into the FOMA terminal.
- When the setting item data is restored to other than this FOMA terminal, some setting information is not restored.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **3** **8** **2** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Authenticate**

- When you press ● or CLR to interrupt, FOMA terminal is restored with the data processed before the interruption.
- When the memory space in FOMA terminal is insufficient or the backup data includes data that FOMA terminal does not support, a message appears indicating there was data not restored.

◆ Displaying backup data

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **3** **8** **3** ▶ **1** - **8** ▶ ● ▶ **Select data**

- Only the back-up date is displayed for setting items. You cannot refer the data.

◆ Deleting backup data

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **3** **8** **4** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Authenticate**

Managing microSD card

◆ Checking the memory space of microSD card

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **3** ▶ MENU

✔**INFORMATION**

- The actually available memory space of microSD card is smaller than the displayed memory space.
- Size of data that cannot be recognized by FOMA terminal is also included in the used memory space.

◆ Formatting microSD card

To use a new microSD card on FOMA terminal or delete all data saved in a microSD card, format it.

- The data is not formatted by some conditions of microSD card.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **3** ▶ ▶ **"Quick format" or "Regular format"**

Quick format : Only the data management area is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. All the data saved is deleted. Use this method only when the microSD card is already formatted and has no problem.

Regular format : Both the data management area and data areas are formatted. All the data saved is deleted. To format a new microSD card, use this method.

2 **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

◆ Updating the microSD card information

Perform this operation when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices.

- When information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows.
  - Data in "My Picture", "Other image", "Deco-mail pict" or "Decome-Anime template" is renamed to the same name as the file name.
  - Data in "Melody", "Movie", "Other movie", "My Document" or "ToruCa" is renamed to the same name as the title. When no title name is set, the name is changed to the same name ("No title" for ToruCa) as the file name.
  - Single data in "LCS client" is renamed to the same name as the service client name. If service client name does not exist, the display name does not appear.
  - Data in "Other" is renamed to the name that the file name with extension added.

- Updating information causes moving picture/i-motion containing only sound, if any, saved in "Movie" folder not to appear in a list. It is recommended that you move the moving picture/i-motion with only sounds in "Movie" before updating the information, or change the file name and save the file in PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE folder of microSD card or MUDxxx (xxx is 001-999) in MMFILE using a PC etc.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 3 ▶ iα ▶ **Select a data type** ▶ 📷 ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- Information update is not applicable to data in "Movie m-o", "MUSIC", "1Seg", "i-αppli data" or "Backup/Restore".
- If microSD card has much data, updating information takes time.
- If available space becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a microSD card with other devices, data saved in the microSD card may not be displayed correctly on FOMA terminal.

◆ Restoring data in microSD card <Scan card>

- The data is not restored by some conditions of microSD card.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 3 ▶ ✉ ▶ **"Yes"**

USB mode settings

Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC

- To connect FOMA terminal to a PC, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required.
- Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista are applicable.
- For MTP mode→P223 "Saving WMA files"

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 2 6

2 2 **or** 3

microSD mode : Set for recognizing microSD card in FOMA terminal as a drive and operating data.

MTP mode : Set for transferring music data using Windows Media Player to microSD card.

Setting Communication mode : 1

- Make this setting for packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting a PC.

3 **"Yes"**

The following icons appear on the stand-by display. Displayed in gray when microSD card is not installed.

: microSD mode : MTP mode

◆ Connecting to a PC

For connecting method, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when using in "microSD mode" or "MTP mode", installation of the FOMA communication configuration file described in "Manual for PC Connection" is not required.

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the stand-by display. Press ● and select to display USB mode settings screen. At this time, other mode than "Communication mode" may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when a FOMA terminal is connected.
- In microSD mode or MTP mode, the light blinks in green.
- When data is transferred using DOCOMO keitai datalink in Communication mode, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same state as out of service area).

✔INFORMATION

- Applying an excessive force to pull the USB cable may give damage to it. And, removing the USB cable during data transfer may cause malfunction or data loss.
- When disconnecting the USB cable from a PC in microSD mode, click in the task tray in the lower-right corner of a PC screen, click "USB大容量記憶装置デバイスードライブ (E :) を安全に取り外します (または停止します) (Safely Remove (or stop) USB Mass Storage Device-Drive (E :) *)" and check that message "'USB大容量記憶装置デバイス'は安全に取り外すことができます (The USB Storage Device can now be safely removed from the system)" appears.

* The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of a PC.

Using folder or album

- The fixed folders stored by default cannot be deleted and the folder names cannot be changed. Note that, changing the name of folder in Other, and deleting folder or changing the name of folders other than "Face/i-pictogram" under "Deco-mail pict" in My Picture are available.

◆ Adding folder or album

- A folder can be added to the following list.
  - Music&Video Channel, My Document, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, Chara-den, Other in Data Box and Deco-mail pict in My Picture
  - Multimedia (except MUSIC and 1Seg) of microSD card, My Document, ToruCa, LCS client, Decome-Anime template, Other.
- An album can be added to the lists of My Picture, i-motion/Movie and Melody in Data Box.
- Up to 100 items can be added to My Picture of Data Box, up to 9 items can be added to others and 10 data items of each data type can be added to other. Deco-mail pict folders in My Picture can be added up to 10 items. Up to 900 items can be added to My Picture of microSD card, up to 4,095 items for moving pictures, up to 999 items for My Document, and up to 1,000 items of each data type can be added for other.

<Example> Adding an album of My Picture

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1

2 MENU 1 (MENU 2 **on Melody folder list)**

Deleting an album : Move the cursor to an album ▶ MENU 2 (MENU 3 **on Melody folder list) ▶ "Yes"**

- When the data is saved, perform authentication.

Changing album name or secret attribute : Move the cursor to an album ▶ MENU 3 (MENU 4 **on Melody folder list)**

3 **Set required items ▶** 📷

Album name : Enter an album name with up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters (up to 10 characters for Machi-chara or Chara-den).

- However, up to 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters available for a folder (except "Movie" folder) on microSD card.

Secrecy : Set whether to display an album in Privacy mode (with "Hide secrecy album" set for My Picture).

- Only My Picture (except Deco-mail pict), i-motion/Movie, My Document and Other on FOMA terminal (except default folders) can be set.

✔INFORMATION

- Deleting a folder in "Movie" of microSD card causes the following actions to occur.
  - When an attempt is made to delete the initial folder, only sub-folders and data of the initial folder are deleted.
  - When a folder set as home folder is deleted, the initial folder is set as home folder.
  - If the folder to be deleted contains an invalid file (not displayed on the list screen) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-motion compatible with contents transfer is deleted from the folder, but the folder is not deleted. Operate the microSD card from a PC etc. to eliminate such an invalid file and retry deleting the folder.

◆ Moving/Copying data to folder or album

❖ Moving data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled", "Item" or "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be moved.
- Data saved in "Deco-mail pict" cannot be moved to other than the folders under "Deco-mail pict".

<Example> Moving data of My Picture

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1 **▶ Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to data ▶** MENU 5 1

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekae Tool) ▶ "Move to album" or "Move to folder". On Music&Video Channel program list, Machi-chara list and Chara-den list, select "Move". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy" or "Move" ▶ "Move to folder".

3 1-3

- To move selected items, select them ▶ 📷.

4 Select destination album▶"Yes"

- When moving data compatible with contents transfer to "Movie" on microSD card, move the cursor to the destination folder▶Press [📷]. When saving to a subfolder, select a folder▶Move the cursor to the destination subfolder▶Press [📷]. When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a confirmation screen for creating a subfolder appears.

❖Restoring data to fixed folder

- The data of Music&Video Channel, Machi-chara, Chara-den, Other, or Deco-mail pict in My Picture, or data on microSD card cannot be back to a fixed folder.

<Example> Restoring album data in My Picture to fixed folder

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1]▶Select an album

2 Move the cursor to data▶[MENU] [5] [2]

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekae Tool)▶"Restore to folder".

3 [1]-[3]▶"Yes"

- To restore selected items, select them▶[📷].

✔INFORMATION

- Images read by bar code reader in "Deco-mail picture" folder move to "Data transfer" folder, and other images moves to "i-mode" folder.
- Data copied in album or folder moves to the fixed folder that the source data was saved.

❖Copying data

In My Picture, i-motion/Movie or My Document, data can be copied to the same album or folder. Data in microSD card can be copied to other folders.

- The following data cannot be copied.
  - Data in "Preinstalled" folder
  - Created animation in My Picture, images in "Item" folder
  - i-motion with replay restrictions or i-motion compatible with contents transfer
  - Data with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except data set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)

<Example> Copying data of My Picture

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1]▶Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to data▶[MENU] [5] [3]

Data is saved to the same album or folder as the source.

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy"▶"Copy". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy"▶"Copy to folder"▶[1]-[3]▶Select destination album▶Select "Yes".

◆Playing album

You can play all melodies in the album collectively.

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [5]▶Move the cursor to an album▶[MENU] [1]

- While playing album, the following operations are available.
  - [⏮][⏭]: Play the previous/next data
  - [🔉][🔊]: Adjust volume
  - [●], [CLR]: Stop

Detail information/Edit detail information

Viewing/Editing data detail information

- Details of the chapter of Music&Video Channel, program information→P221
- Data information of MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P228

◆Viewing detail information <Detail information>

<Example> Viewing the detail information of image

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1]▶Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image▶[MENU] [3] [1]

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info"▶"View".

◆Changing detail information <Edit detail info>

<Example> Changing the detail information of image

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1]▶Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image▶ MENU 3 2 ▶Set required items▶ [camera]

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info"▶"Edit".

◆ List of display items and changeability

Detail information contains the following items. Data detail information saved on microSD card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

Display name : Title displayed on FOMA terminal

- Decome-Anime template can be edited within 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters, Melody within 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters, 1Seg within 50 characters, and others within 36 characters.
- For microSD card data, movie 🔑 can be changed within 36 characters, 1Seg within 50 characters and other within 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters. Note that, if moving/copying to FOMA terminal, the characters exceeded the limit of number of characters for changing the display name on FOMA terminal are deleted.

Title : * : Original title of data

- If no title is set, the file name or "---" appears.

File name : File name displayed when attaching to mail

- Only for image, moving picture/i-motion or melody, up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumeric characters, ".", "-" and "_" can be changed. A dot "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

File restriction : For a file sent by mail attachment, you can set restriction of transfer from the receiver mobile phone to another mobile phone.

- You can change only image, moving picture/i-motion and melody. However, you cannot change moving pictures exceeding 2 Mbytes or downloaded files.

Move to microSD/phone* : Restriction of transfer between FOMA terminal and microSD card

File type */format : File type

- It appears as "---" for Flash graphics.

Display size* : Display size of data

Size (Bytes), Size on disk (Bytes) : Data file size, size of memory used for data saving

- For PDF data, files for managing i-mode bookmarks and mark information are included.
- The actual memory size of the same data in FOMA terminal and microSD card may be different.

Saved date & time/Created date & time : Date and time when data is saved/created

Originated : Data source

* Do not appear for some data types.

■ Items displayed for Kisekae Tool

Font : Font information

Receive : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

■ Items displayed for image and Chara-den

Comment : Data description, etc.

- You can change within 100 characters.

■ Items displayed for an image

Type : Type of image

Msg attach size(Bytes) : Attachment size of data that can be attached to mail

Use as frame, Use as stamp : Indicate whether they can be pasted as a frame or stamp.

- You can change only JPEG or GIF images. However, an image composed with an image in "Item"folder cannot be changed to "Yes". Also, an image exceeding 480×960 used as a frame, and an image exceeding 480×960 used as a stamp cannot be changed to "Yes".
- Even setting to "Yes", the image is saved in the original folder, not in "Item" folder.

Location info : Indicate whether the location information is set

■ Items displayed for moving picture/i-motion

Creator*1 : Creator information

- For moving picture shot with the local terminal, the name of User information appears. If no name is saved, "---" appears.

Copyright*1 : Author's name/Release date etc.

Description*1 : Data description

Sound : Sound data type

Video picture : Codec type

Quality : Bit rate of the data

Ring alert*2 : Indicate whether it can be set for a ring alert

- Moving picture shot with Recording Type set to "Voice only", moving picture shot with Recording Type set to "Video + Voice" with image size of 320×240 or less, or moving pictures cut out of these moving pictures are set to "Available".

Receive display[*2] **:** Indicate whether it can be set for an incoming image

- For moving picture shot with the local terminal with Recording Type set to "Video only" or a moving picture cut out of it is set to "Available".

Replay restriction : Restriction on replay

*1 Can be edited within 256 characters. Note that some data such as moving pictures in ASF format cannot be edited.

*2 For i-motion compatible with contents transfer, the item which is "Unavailable" in microSD card may become "Available" after moving to FOMA terminal.

■ Items displayed for Machi-chara

Receive : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

■ Items displayed for a melody

Playing time : Data play time

■ Items displayed for Other

Extension : File extension

- Not displayed on FOMA terminal.

■ Items displayed for video

TV station name, Program name : Names of a TV station and a program

Recorded time : Recorded time

Copy restriction : Copy permit

- It is not displayed in video (microSD).

Deleting data

- Deleting MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P227
- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, Melody or Kisekae Tool cannot be deleted.

<Example> Deleting data in My Picture

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to data** ▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Delete" and operate. Also on microSD card list screen, you can select "Delete" and operate.

✔INFORMATION

- If you delete created animation, the composing original images are also deleted.
- If data set for stand-by display or ring alert is deleted, each setting returns to default or standard setting. When data set to phonebook is deleted, the operation depends on the settings of the ring alert or incoming/outgoing image.
- "OFF" is set when you delete Machi-chara already set.
- Deleting a Kisekae Tool already set returns items related to it to default states.
- If you delete data stored by default, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.
  "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters)" (as of April 2009)
  iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → @Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)

QR code for site access

* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

Sort

Sorting data

- Sorting MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P228

<Example> Sorting data of My Picture

1 MENU **[Data Box]** 1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 MENU 7 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Sort".

By : Select a sort type. Available items vary depending on data.

- If changing to "Display name", they are sorted in the Unicode order. May not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.
- If changing to "File format", sorting is performed in the order of Word→Excel →PowerPoint when the Sorting order is "Ascending".
- If changing to "Originated", sorting is performed in the order of Preinstalled →i-mode→Camera→Data transfer when the Sorting order is "Ascending".

Order : Select sorting order.

Memory status

Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 6 3 ▶ Move the cursor to a data type

i-α : Change unit

- "Total: " indicates the space of the common area shared by the entire data.

When exceeding the savable number/area

If exceeding the savable number (→P430) or shared memory space when downloading or saving data, delete unnecessary saved data following instructions on the screen.

You can perform the same operation if the savable number (→P292) is exceeded or memory space is insufficient when saving 1 data item in microSD card.

1 On a deletion confirmation screen, "Yes" or "Delete"

Delete data from screen appears, showing the size that requires to be deleted and the size currently used for each data type. For microSD card, the size or number of items that requires to be deleted is displayed.

- When exceeding the savable number on FOMA terminal, Delete data from: screen does not appear. Go to Step 3.
- When you delete data on FOMA terminal while recording 1Seg video (when storing to "Phone memory"), a message appears indicating that data cannot be deleted. Select "Yes" to stop 1Seg recording and the data can be deleted.

2 Select data type

3 Select a folder ▶ Select a file ▶ "Yes"

- For microSD card, select files ▶ [camera].

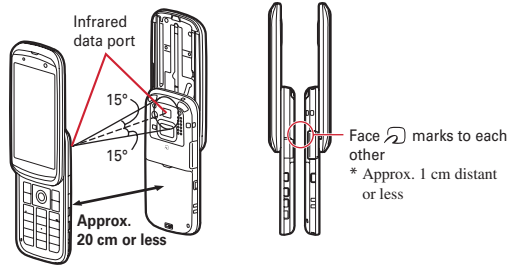
Using infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals or mobile phone, PCs equipped with infrared communication function or send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals equipped with iC transmission function by placing mark close to each other. And, i-αppli compatible with Infrared communication/iC transmission is also available.

- Bluetooth communication, or Packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with a PC cannot be used simultaneously.
- During infrared communication or iC transmission, or while INBOX data is being used, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same state as out of service area).
- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1. Even if the other party's terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1, data is not received/sent for some data type.

◆ Using infrared communication/iC transmission

- The communication range for infrared communication is about 20 cm or less, and the infrared ray radiation angle is 15 degrees or less from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until data sending/receiving completes.
- When doing iC transmission, make marks of the sender and receiver terminals face close to each other with a distance of about 1 cm or less. Do not move FOMA terminals before data sending/receiving completes.



Infrared communication　　iC transmission

✔INFORMATION

- When placing marks close to each other for iC transmission, do not give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.
- If communication is not started by facing mark of both terminals over each other for iC transmission, shift the facing position approximately 5-10 mm.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.
- It is difficult to exchange data with some terminal of the other party.

Send Ir data or iC transmission

Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send data individually or collectively by data types.

- The following data can be sent.
  - All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, moving pictures/i-motion, melodies or PDF data can be sent at once via infrared communications. However, all items may not be sent at once depending on the other party's terminal.

Data types	Precaution
Phonebook/User information	• Images are not sent by some other parties' terminals. And, when Contact image sending is "OFF" for Data exchange settings, images are not sent for sending all data items. • When all data items are sent, User information (except My phone number) is also sent. Secret attribute of a phonebook group is canceled, and individual phonebook entries are sent with secret attribute set.
Schedule	• Birthday or watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg cannot be sent. • i-schedule cannot be sent. • When sending one schedule event, it is regarded as an i-schedule-independent event.
Received/Sent/Unsent messages	• The link items, attached to a mail, that can activate i-αppli are deleted. • The whole title is not received with some other receiving terminals.
Decome-Anime template	—
Note	—
Bookmark	• Folder settings do not apply to some other parties' terminals.
LCS client	—
ToruCa	• Sending is unavailable by some settings of IP (Information Provider). • ToruCa (Details) is not sent to some other parties' terminal.
Image	• A display name with up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters is sent with excessive characters deleted. • Data larger than 3 Mbytes cannot be sent when sending one item.
Moving picture/i-motion	
Melody	—
PDF data	• PDF data partially downloaded and failed in downloading cannot be sent. • Data larger than 512 Kbytes except i-mode bookmarks and mark information cannot be sent when sending one item.

- You cannot send data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer" folder).
- When data is sent to i-mode terminal except F-09A or to infrared communication device, items that cannot be saved by the receiving side are discarded.
- When data containing pictograms is sent to a terminal except i-mode terminal, the data may not be displayed correctly. If the receiving terminal is an i-mode terminal not supporting Pictogram 2, Pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly.

◆ Sending single data

- For infrared communications, the other party's terminal must be ready for communications.

<Example> Sending a phonebook entry

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ MENU 8 ▶ 1 or 3 ▶ "Yes"

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission" and operate. For some screens, select "Send via Ir/iC" or "Ir/iC/microSD" and then select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission".
- On LCS clients list, select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission"▶"Send".

Sending User information : MENU 0 ▶ MENU or iC ▶ **"Yes"**

◆ Sending all data

You can send all data of selected items.

- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- For infrared communications, the other party's terminal must be ready for communications.

1 MENU [LifeKit] 2 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Select an item to send ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes"

- The order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

Receive Ir data or iC transmission

Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can receive data individually, or collectively by data types.

- Data cannot be received in iC transmission with other functions activated. Perform reception operation on the stand-by display.
- The following data can be received.
  - All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, moving pictures/i-motion, melodies or PDF data can be received at once via infrared communications.

Data types	Storage after reception
Phonebook/User information	Phonebook • For receiving single data item, data is saved to the smallest free phonebook entry number. • When all data items are received, User information (except My phone number) is also overwritten.
Schedule	Scheduler
Received/Sent/Unsent messages	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages • The folder name set by the other terminal is not used even when all mail messages are received from F2102V, F2051.
Decome-Anime template	"Decome-Anime" of Template
Note	Notepad
Bookmark	Bookmark • Select Receive all to receive data including folders created on other party's terminal. However, the setting to sort folders may not be applied depending on other party's terminals.
LCS client	LCS clients list
ToruCa	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content
Image	"Data transfer" folder of My Picture "Face/i-pictogram" folder under "Deco-mail pict" of My Picture for Deco-mail pictogram
Moving picture/i-motion	"Data transfer" folder of i-motion/Movie
Melody	"Data transfer" folder of Melody
PDF data	"Data transfer" folder of My Document

- Images, moving pictures/i-motion or melodies, if any, received from terminals except FOMA F series may be saved as notes.
- When receiving all items of bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser), ToruCa, images, moving picture/i-motion, melodies and PDF data, the data is received including folders created on other party's terminal. The folder with no data cannot be received. Also, the data saved in "Camera" folder or "i-mode" folder is additionally saved to "Camera" or "i-mode" folder of each data.

◆ Receiving single data

- You cannot receive data larger than 3 Mbytes.

❖Receiving a data item via infrared communication

1 **[MENU] [LifeKit] 2 1 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ A data item is sent from the sender side**

The next procedure→P305 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

❖Receiving a data item via iC transmission

1 **Send a data item from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place marks close to each other**

The next procedure→P305 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

◆ Saving received data

You can save received data stored temporarily in INBOX to FOMA terminal.

- Up to 3 Mbytes can be saved in INBOX.
- Images larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format, GIF animations or images larger than 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 **[MENU] [LifeKit] 2 4**

- Icon definitions :
  : Phonebook, User information : Schedule : Mail
  : Decome-Anime template : Notes
  / : Bookmark (i-mode)/(Full Browser)
  : ToruCa : LCS client : Image : SWF (Flash graphics)
  : Moving picture/i-motion : Melody : PDF data

2 **Select data ▶ "Yes"**

Deleting : Move the cursor to data ▶ [MENU] ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

◆ Receiving all data

You can receive data collectively by data type.

- The data saved at the receiving side is deleted, and only the received data is saved.
- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.

❖Receiving all data via infrared communication

1 **[MENU] [LifeKit] 2 1 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes" ▶ Send all data from sender ▶ "Yes"**

❖Receiving all data via iC transmission

1 **Send all data from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place marks close to each other ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ Place marks again ▶ "Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

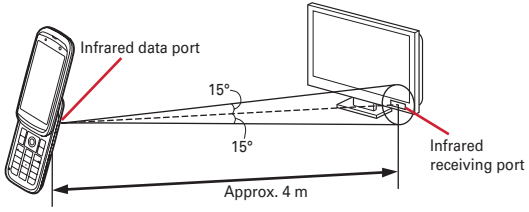
- ToDo data (list function to manage errands) cannot be saved to FOMA terminal. If all items of ToDo and schedule are received, only the schedule is saved.
- Receiving time differs by the type or number of received data items. If you receive large size data or a lot of data items, receiving may take time.
- For some sizes of data saved, the number that can be received becomes fewer than the savable number of FOMA terminal.
- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P302
- Mail messages received from a device that can save messages by folder may be saved in the folder for Message i-αppli. Move the cursor to the folder for Message i-αppli and press → [MENU] 1 to check saved mail.

Using infrared remote control function

- Download i-αppli applicable to each model for Infrared remote control. Operations differ by i-αppli.
- If activating preinstalled i-αppli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) (→P240), FOMA terminal can be used as infrared remote control for TV.
- Even devices compatible with infrared remote control may not work. Communication may also be affected depending on the supported device used or ambient luminance.

❖Remote control

To use remote control, point the infrared data port of FOMA terminal at the infrared receiver of the supported device. Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and distance is up to approximately 4 m. However, the allowable angle and distance depend on the operated device or ambient luminance.



Data exchange settings

Setting operations for data exchange

Operations for data exchange via infrared communication, iC transmission or data transfer by connecting with a PC can be set.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **2** **5** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [📷]

End alert : Set whether to sound the end tone at the end of communications.

Auto authentication : Set whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party for data transfer by connecting a PC.

- To set to "ON", perform authentication and enter 4-8 digit Auth code: terminal (FOMA terminal) and Auth code: PC (the other party) and press [📷].

Ph.book image sending : Set whether to send images saved in phonebook with all phonebook entries.

My Document

Displaying PDF data

1 MENU **[Data Box]** **6**

- The folder contents are as follows.

i-mode : PDF data acquired from a site or mail
Preinstalled : PDF data stored by default
Data transfer : PDF data acquired from microSD card or external device
My folder : PDF data moved from other folders

- Appears if a folder is added.→P298
- When secret attribute is set, 🔒 is displayed.

2 Select a folder



① Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode, mail : Full Browser
: Data transfer (including data attached to mail acquired by data transfer)

② File type

/ : PDF data/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
: PDF data partially saved
: PDF data failed in downloading

③ File restriction

/ : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the following icons are displayed.

: PDF data not displayed after downloading or unable to acquire thumbnail images
: PDF data partially saved and the thumbnail cannot be displayed
: PDF data failed in downloading
: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

Switching to microSD card list : [i-mode]

3 Select PDF data

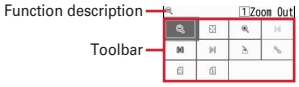
- When PDF data with password set is selected, a password entry screen appears.
- When a PDF data failed in downloading is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading data appears.
- At the bottom of the display, the current page number/total number of pages and magnification are displayed.

Attaching to mail : **Move the cursor to PDF data ▶ [Mail]**

❖Operation while displaying PDF data

Scrolling : **(Continuous scroll while pressing down)**

Using the toolbar : **[Toolbar] ▶ [Scroll] ▶ [●]**



- In the toolbar, icons indicating functions that can be activated by pressing keypad numbers appear. Function description contains a function of the icon at the cursor position and the corresponding keypad number.
- Press [CLR] to disable toolbar operations.

Changing pages : [MENU] **1 ▶ 1-5**

- When "Specified page" is selected, enter a page to move to and press [●].

Saving changed information : [MENU] **2 ▶ "Yes"**

Cutting out image : [MENU] **3 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Set required items ▶ [Camera] ▶ Select the saving destination**

- When "[microSD] [Other]" appears in the guide area, press [i-mode] and [Camera] to save to "Other image" on microSD card.
- The image size of cut out image is the same as the image area in PDF data. PDF data setting is applied when attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal.

Moving using a bookmark : [MENU] **4 1 ▶ Select a bookmark**

Using i-mode bookmark : [MENU] **4 2 1**

- Select an i-mode bookmark to display a page.
- You can change information or delete i-mode bookmarks from submenu.

Registering i-mode bookmarks : [MENU] **4 2 2 on a page to add ▶ Enter information (up to 64 two-byte or 128 one-byte characters) ▶ [Camera]**

- Display magnification, rotation direction and display range on each page is registered. Up to 10 items can be saved for each PDF data.

Using icons : [MENU] **4 2 3**

- Select the icon to display a page.
- You can delete icons from submenu.

Registering icons : [MENU] **4 2 4**

- [Lock] is registered in the center of the screen when an icon is registered. Up to 10 items can be saved for each PDF data.

Searching for a character string : [MENU] **5 ▶ Enter a character string (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ Set required items ▶ [Camera]**

- A matched word is highlighted in green. Press [MENU] / [Camera] to move to the previous/next option, press [CLR] to return to the original display. You can search it again by pressing [●].

Switching the display of guide area : [MENU] **6 1**

Displaying according to the orientation of FOMA terminal : [MENU] **6 2 ▶ 1-3**

- You cannot operate when FOMA terminal is opened.

Zooming in/out the display : [MENU] **6 3 ▶ 1-3**

Specifying the display magnification : [MENU] **6 4 ▶ Enter the magnification**

Rotating display : [MENU] **6 5 ▶ 1-3**

Changing the layout of the page : [MENU] **6 6 ▶ 1-3**

Using a link item : [MENU] **6 7 ▶ Move the cursor to a link item**

- A link item is surrounded with a blue frame (a red frame for the item at the cursor position). Press [CLR] to return to the original display.
- The next procedure→P173 Step 2 in "Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/SMS To/Web To/Media To function"

Setting whether to display scroll bar etc. : [MENU] **7 ▶ Set required items ▶ [Camera]**

Downloading the remaining of partially saved PDF : [MENU] **8 ▶ "Yes"**

Displaying detail information : [MENU] **9**

Displaying key function help : [MENU] **0**

- Press [CLR] to return to the original display.

Using i-mode/Full Browser : **[Camera] ▶ 1-3**

✔INFORMATION
- Some PDF data such as one containing a lot of images may take extra time to appear. When unsupported format, complicated design, etc. is included, it may not be displayed correctly.
- Cutting out image cannot be operated for some security settings of PDF data.
- Registered i-mode bookmark or marks may not be displayed on a PC.

◆Setting operating conditions of PDF data

1 MENU [Data Box] 6 ▶ MENU 6 ▶ 1 or 2

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on the data list.

Other

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

- File requiring password or file of Word 2007, Excel 2007 or PowerPoint 2007 cannot be displayed.

1 MENU [Data Box] 0

- There is a folder by default. Folders can be added.→P298
- When secret attribute is set to the additional folder, is displayed.

2 Select a folder



Thumbnail display　　List display

① **Originated**
: i-mode, Full Browser, mail
: Data transfer (including data attached to mail acquired by Data transfer)

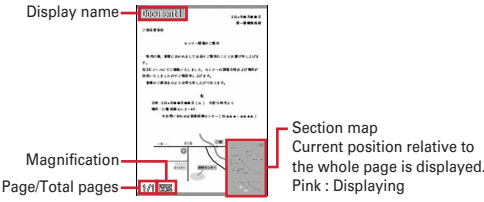
② **File type**
: Word file : Excel file : PowerPoint file
* If unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, appears in the lower right of the icon.

③ **File restriction**
: File unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. When thumbnail display is unavailable since the data is never displayed after downloading or UIM operation restriction is set, icons of the same design as in "② File type" appear.

Switching to microSD card list :

3 Select data



Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to data ▶

❖Operation while displaying Word, Excel, PowerPoint files

Scrolling : (Continuous scroll while pressing down)

Displaying key function help :
- Key operation is available with key function help displayed. Press ● to return to the original display.

Changing pages : MENU 1 ▶ 1-5
- When "Specified page" is selected, enter a page to move to and press ●.

Searching for a character string : MENU 2 ▶ **Enter a character string (up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters) ▶ Set required items ▶**
- A matched word is highlighted in green. Press / to move to the previous/next option, press MENU to return to the original display.

Specifying the display magnification : MENU 3 ▶ 1-3
- When "Zoom to" is selected, enter magnification ratio. It does not displayed smaller than a magnification for Fit page.

Rotating display : MENU 4 ▶ 1-3

Switching the display of guide area : MENU 5

Setting Display setting : MENU 6 ▶ 1 or 2

- Set whether to display a page number/total pages and magnification ratio for Status or display name for Title. This setting is retained even when displaying data is ended.

Setting section map display : MENU 7

- This setting is retained even when displaying data is ended.

Setting mode : MENU 8

- Data is displayed in the screen size for a PC when "PC layout mode" is set, and displayed adjusted to the lateral size of FOMA terminal display when "Keitai mode" is set.
- It can be set to Word files only.

Displaying according to the orientation of FOMA terminal : MENU 9 ▶ 1-3

- You cannot operate when FOMA terminal is opened.

✔INFORMATION

- Some data such as one containing a lot of images may take extra time to appear. When unsupported format, complicated design, etc. is included, it may not be displayed correctly.

◆ Setting operating conditions of Word, Excel and PowerPoint

1 MENU [Data Box] 0 ▶ MENU 5 ▶ 1 or 2

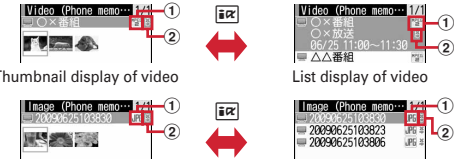
- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on the data list.

Viewing recorded video or still images

1 MENU [Data Box] ✂

- The folder contents are as follows.
  - **Video (microSD) :** Video recorded in microSD card
  - **Video(Phone memory) :** Video recorded in FOMA terminal
  - **Image(Phone memory) :** Still image (JPEG format image) saved in FOMA terminal

2 1-3



① **File format**

MPEG2(white)/ MPEG2(yellow) : MP2 (video)/MP2 (video) available for continuous play

JPG : Image in JPEG format (image)

② **File restriction**

: File restricted

- It is not displayed in Video (microSD).

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and recorded date/time of video, image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display.

3 Select data

- When a still image is selected, it is enlarged and the display name and the image number/total number of images appear at the top of the display. Press ○ to display in the actual size and C to return to the enlarged display. Press ◇ to switch to the previous/next image.
- If a video that was stopped after being partially played the last time is selected, a confirmation screen to play from where it stopped appears. Note that, video is not displayed if its total time is within approximately 15 seconds or if the previous play time was within 5 seconds.
- When selecting a video divided into multiple files recorded with another FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen appears indicating that fast forwarding/rewinding cannot be performed.

❖Video screen



*1 The following icons appear for some playing conditions.
▷ : Playing ‖ : In pause or playing completed
◁◁ / ◁◁ / ◁◁ : Reverse playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed
▷ : Fast playing in 1.3 times speed
▷▷ / ▷▷ / ▷▷ : Fast playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed

*2 When Auto CM skip of Play setting in User setting of 1Seg is set to "ON", CM appears.
Other icons definitions→P206

❖Operations while playing a video

Skipping : MENU 2 ▶ 1-3

Switching to the previous/next video : MENU ▶ 3 or 4

Checking program information : MENU 5

Using data broadcasting : MENU 6 ▶ 1-7

- The operation is the same as that of 1Seg watching.

Setting operations : MENU 7 ▶ 1-5

- The operation is the same as that of 1Seg watching.

Displaying key function help : MENU 8

- Key operation is available with key function help displayed. Press ● to return to the original screen.

Displaying/Hiding Subtitles : MENU 9

- You cannot operate when there are no Subtitles.

✔INFORMATION

- When Auto CM skip of Play setting in User setting of 1Seg is set to "ON", the operations are as follows.
  - CM is skipped and a video is played. Note that the 50th CM or later within 1 video cannot be skipped.
  - Commercials may not be correctly recognized due to the airwave reception condition of the recorded programs, programming, contents, etc.
  - For the video saved to microSD card from the terminal without CM auto-skip function, CM cannot be skipped. And the video may not be played correctly.
  - For some video saved to microSD card from the other terminal without CM auto-skip function, CM cannot be skipped.
- Thumbnails of video images may not be correctly displayed while using Multitask etc.

◆Using Remote controller with microphone F01 <Remote controller with microphone>

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate video watching.

▶/II : Pause*/Play
▶/II (1 sec. or more) : Exit video play
+ − : Adjust volume
+ (1 sec. or more)*/− (1 sec. or more)* : Fast forward/Rewind (except when stopped)
◀HOLD (Slide in the direction of ▲) : Disable ▶/II, +, and − keys.
◀HOLD (Slide in the opposite direction of ▲) : Enable unavailable keys

* Unavailable while a data broadcasting site is displayed in full-screen mode.

◆Setting operating conditions of recorded still image

1 MENU **[Data Box]** ✂ 3 ▶ MENU 5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

View thumbnails : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the data list.
- The data list of Video is displayed according to this setting.

Display title : Set whether to display the display name on the display screen.

Display number : Set whether to display the image number/number of items in the folder on the display screen.

Convenient Functions

Multiaccess 312
Multitask 312
Searching with a simple operation ..... Quick search 313
Turning power ON/OFF automatically ..... Auto power ON/OFF 314
Setting the timer with a simple operation ..... Countdown timer 314
Ringing alarm clock at specified time ..... Alarm clock 315
Turning power ON at the set alarm time ..... Alarm auto power ON 316
Managing schedules ..... Scheduler 316
Starting often-used function quickly ..... Shortcut icons 321
Registering often-used function ..... Custom menu 322
Setting a function that displays an edit screen when FOMA terminal is opened ..... Slide and edit 323
Setting a function to activate/operate by rotating display ..... Turn-display option 324
Setting a function to be activated by holding down the search key ..... Search key shortcut 324
Using FOMA terminal light as a small light ..... Simple light 324
Saving your own name ..... User information 324
Pretending to be receiving a call and talking ..... Fake call 325
Recording voice/image ..... Voice memo/Movie memo 326
Checking call duration/charge ..... Call duration/Call cost 327
Using the FOMA terminal as calculator ..... Calculator 328
Creating notes ..... Notepad 328
Using Dictionaries ..... Dictionaries 329
Measuring number of steps or activity amount ..... Pedometer/ACT monitor 330
Using earphone/microphone with switch ..... Earphone/Microphone with switch 332
Using Bluetooth function ..... Bluetooth function 333

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use voice call and i-mode/data communications simultaneously.

- Combinations of Multiaccess functions→P407
- You are charged separately for each communication when using the Multiaccess function.

<Example> Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 During a voice call, [2] [1]

New Task start menu



- You can talk while displaying the site screen.
- Press [ ] to end the current function on the display.

Multitask

Multitask allows you to perform multiple functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- Up to 2 functions can be performed at the same time. However, Dial, User information, Dictionaries or Silent mode ON/OFF may be started even while 2 other functions are active.
- Combinations of Multitask functions→P408
- Pressing [ ] on the horizontal display with FOMA terminal closed temporarily switches to the vertical display.

◆ While performing a function, perform another function

<Example> Saving schedule during a call

1 During a call, [7] [1] ▶ Save schedule

- You can talk while displaying the schedule screen.
- Press [ ] to end the current function on the display.
- Press [ ] ▶ [ ] and select "Yes" to terminate all running functions.

✔INFORMATION

- If many functions are performed at a time while playing moving picture, operating camera, playing Flash graphics, watching/recording 1Seg, playing Music&Video Channel program or playing tune by MUSIC Player, the movements displayed on the screen may not perform smoothly or the sound may be distorted during play.

◆ Switching tasks to operate

Displaying the Switch Task menu allows you to operate while switching screens.

- Some items in the Switch Task menu are different from the names of the menu item.

<Example> Switching from a voice call screen to site screen

1 During a voice call, [ ] ▶ "i-mode"

Switch Task menu
・Active functions are listed.



- Press [MENU] on Switch Task menu to switch New Task start menu and Switch Task menu.

Quick search

Searching with a simple operation

You can use search functions by pressing [search] on the stand-by display or while running functions.

- Some running functions may not allow search result display function to be activated at the same time, and search may be unavailable.→P408
- You can search in the middle of the operation to copy/cut characters.→P167, 345
- For some search operation or connecting condition, search may be unavailable or the search result may not be displayed correctly.
- Pressing [search] on the horizontal display with FOMA terminal closed temporarily switches to the vertical display.

<Example> Searching on Full Browser screen

1 [search]

- If you searched at previous time, the search screen you performed immediately before is displayed. If not searching the entered keyword, displayed with the keyword entered.

2 [mail] to switch to Full Browser search ▶ Select the search service selection field ▶ [1]-[0] ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search" ▶ "Yes" or "Yes(Always)"

Full Browser starts, and the search result screen on the selected search service site is displayed.



Selection field of search engine/ category/ dictionary/mail search

Full Browser search screen

i-mode search/Full Browser search/ Vicinity viewer (map) search/Dictionary search/Phonebook search/Mail search

Entry field
Up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters (up to 9 one-byte characters for phonebook search/mail search (phonebook reading))

Searching by i-mode : [mail] to switch to i-mode search ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

i-mode starts, and the search result screen by the i-mode search is displayed.

- If selecting "Connect to iMenu", iMenu is displayed.

Searching by Vicinity viewer : [mail] to switch to Vicinity viewer (map) search ▶ Select the category selection filed ▶ [1]-[5] ▶ "Search"

Vicinity viewer starts, and the search result screen appears.

- Vicinity viewer→P239
- When "フリーワード (Free word)" is selected, enter a keyword to the entry field (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters).

Searching by map : [mail] to switch to Vicinity viewer (map) search ▶ "Map" ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts, and the search result screen appears.

- For some GPS compatible i-αppli, you can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Selecting "Read map" activates the GPS compatible i-αppli selected in Select map from Map setting.
- Selecting "Vicinity viewer" returns to the vicinity viewer search.

Searching by dictionary : [mail] to switch to dictionary search ▶ Select dictionary selection field ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Dictionary starts, and the search result screen appears.

Searching phonebook : [mail] to switch to phonebook search ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 9 one-byte characters) ▶ "Search"

The search result screen of name search appears.

- If selecting "Search in phonebook", phonebook search screen appears.

Searching mail by subject/message text : [mail] to switch to mail search ▶ Select mail search selection field ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

- You can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Select "Advanced search" to search under more detailed conditions.→P145

Searching mail by phonebook : **to switch to mail search ▶ Select mail search selection field ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 9 one-byte characters) ▶ "Search"**

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

Switching searching function : After entering the keyword, ▶ "Search"

- The common keyword can be used for i-mode search, Full Browser search, Vicinity viewer (map) search and dictionary search, and another common keyword can be used for phonebook search and mail search (one-byte title/message text and phonebook reading) even after they are switched.

Using key word history : **to switch to the function to search ▶ ▶ 1-5 ▶ "Search"**

- Up to 5 logs common to i-mode search, Full Browser search, Vicinity viewer (map) search and dictionary search are recorded, and up to 5 logs common to phonebook search and mail search (one-byte title/message text and phonebook reading) are recorded (including two-byte characters for logs of mail search (title/message test)). When exceeding the limit, logs are overwritten chronologically.
- To delete keyword histories, press MENU 2 and select "Yes". To delete from Full Browser search, press MENU 4.

Pasting copied character in the entry field : **to switch to the function to search ▶ ▶ "Search"**

- For phonebook search and mail search, pasting character is unavailable.

◆ Managing search service of Full Browser

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

<Example> Adding search service

1 **▶ to switch to Full Browser search**

2 **MENU 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a search service**

Changing the title name :

① **MENU 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶**

② **Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶**

- To reset to the original title, select "Restore original".

Deleting : MENU 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ MENU 2 ▶ "Yes"

Switching the order : MENU 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ MENU ▶ 3 or 4

3 **"Save" ▶ Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶**

- When exceeding the savable number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

Auto power ON/OFF

Turning power ON/OFF automatically

1 **MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 3 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Set required items ▶**

✔INFORMATION

- Even when Auto power OFF is set to "ON", the power is not turned OFF while using other functions.
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep Auto power ON set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in airplanes, medical facilities or hospitals.

Countdown timer

Setting the timer with a simple operation

On the stand-by display, you can enter and set the time (minutes) to elapse before the timer sounds.

1 **Enter time (1-60 minutes) ▶**

The countdown starts.

- When CLR or is pressed during the countdown, a screen for confirming the end appears.

❖When the specified time has elapsed

"Timer Countdown ended" appears on the display, and the timer sounds at Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to the settings to Alarm Clock in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert.

- Press to stop the timer.
- To stop timer, perform no operations for approximately 1 minute, press a key other than , and , perform the touch operation (→P41) or double-tap (→P43).

✔INFORMATION
- When the specified time comes during a call, a warning sound is emitted and a timer screen appears.
- When the specified time comes during a fake call, the timer does not sound and the vibrator operates.
- When the specified time while making/receiving a call, calling, disconnecting, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode, while using infrared remote control comes, the timer is activated after termination of current operations.

Alarm clock

Ringing alarm clock at specified time

- You can set 1Seg to start after Alarm clock sounds.
- Up to 9 items can be set.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 1-7

Setting/Canceling : Move the cursor to a set alarm clock ▶ MENU
- appears at the left of the time when Alarm clock is set.

2 Set required items

Time : Enter the time to sound an alarm clock.
Repeat : When setting Repeat, appears at the right of Snz in the alarm clock list.
- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

Message : Up to 7 two-byte (14 one-byte) characters can be entered.
Snooze(Snz) : Set whether to use snooze (alarm sounds for approx. 1 minute and stops) for approx. 30 minutes with the specified intervals.

3 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Set required items

Alarm sound : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Ring alerts & Sounds.
Setting Music→P83
Volume : If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume.

4 to switch to 1Seg alarm screen ▶ Set required items

Activate 1Seg : When this is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts when Alarm clock is deactivated or stopped (including paused when snooze is activated) (1Seg alarm clock).
Volume : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of 1Seg alarm sound.
Channel : Set the channel to start with.
Time out : When the set time elapses, 1Seg is terminated.

5 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Set required items

Vibrate alert : Setting "Phone setting" applies to Alarm clock in Vibrate alert/effect.
Light pattern : When "Sync melody" is specified, the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.
Light color : Set the lighting color of the light.

6
- When alarm clock is set, or (when a schedule reminder is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

❖When the specified time arrives

The message and time appears on the display and the settings apply to the operation.
- Press to terminate the alarm clock. When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- To stop alam clock or start snooze operation, perform no operations for approximately 1 minute, press a key other than , and , perform the touch operation (→P41) or double-tap (→P43). When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- While alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, "スヌーズ中 Snooze" appears on the display and the light blinks slowly.
- While alarm clock is stopped, press CLR or to deactivate it. While alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, press to deactivate.

✔INFORMATION
- With moving picture/i-motion set for Alarm sound, moving picture/i-motion appears on the screen when the alarm clock operates.
- When starting 1Seg, a program not specified may be displayed.
- If alarm clock and a schedule reminder are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.

- In Personalized silent mode, 1Seg alarm clock operates according to Alarm clock sound in Personalized silent mode.
- The same operation as Countdown timer is made at the specified time during a call, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode or while using infrared remote control.

Alarm auto power ON

Turning power ON at the set alarm time

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 3 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2

✔INFORMATION

- This function does not operate if power supply to FOMA terminal is stopped in a way except power OFF operation or Auto power OFF settings (e.g. by removing the battery pack).
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep this function set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities or airplanes.

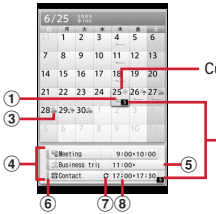
Scheduler

Managing schedules

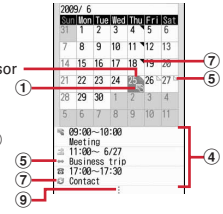
- Scheduler displays vary depending on Scheduler type in Scheduler view type. When "Normal" is set, i-schedule downloaded from i-concier, birthdays saved in the phonebook, etc. can be displayed in the scheduler. When "Classic" is set, you can change Scroll mode and Zoom style.
- "Normal" does not support horizontal display.
- Displaying and operating i-schedule→P320

◆ Displaying calendar

1 ○



Calendar screen (Normal)



Calendar screen (Classic)

- While displaying a calendar screen, the following operations are available.
  ⊠ : Moving of the cursor
  ◁ / ▷ : Switch previous/next month
- When ○ is pressed in "Normal", i-schedule list is displayed.→P320
- When MENU 7 2 is pressed in "Classic", Key function help is displayed.
- Reading the screen is as follows.

① **Schedule event exists**
- In "Normal", ▬ (light blue) appears when a normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) is registered, ▬ (orange) appears when a schedule in i-schedule is registered.
- In "Classic", an item icon of schedule event set for the earliest time is displayed. appears for saved watching reservation of 1Seg and REC appears for saved recording reservation.

② **Number of Schedule events**

③ **Weather report for a week**
- If you subscribe to i-concier, the weather report for the next 8 days (at longest) will be distributed.

④ **List of schedule events saved for the date at the cursor position**
- In "Normal", in addition to saved schedules, schedules in i-schedule and birthdays saved in phonebook are displayed.
- In "Classic", it is not displayed on the horizontal display or in the zoom style.

⑤ **Long-term schedule**

⑥ **Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)**
⑦ **Repeat schedule**
⑧ **Schedule reminder set**
⑨ **4 or more schedules exist**

Specifying a certain date to display : MENU 4 2 ▶ **Enter year/month/day** ▶ ●
- Press MENU 4 1 to restore the current date.

Checking the number of schedule events : MENU 7 1

✔INFORMATION
- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.
- Holidays of Calendar are based on "The Public Holiday Law and the Law to Amend Parts of Old-age Persons' Welfare Law (Up to No.43 of 2005)". Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ since their dates are announced by the government gazette on February 1 of the previous year (as of April, 2009). Note that the above laws came into effect as of January, 2007, and some of the national holidays and compensating holidays by 2006 are not displayed as the dates before the amendment.
- Operations such as change, delete, copy and set secret attribute are not available for birthdays. Also, birthdays are not included in the number displayed in No. of items.
- Operations such as changing, deleting, displaying item by type, copying, operating mail and setting secret attribute are not available for watching/recording reservation of 1Seg.
- Data Security Service is available.→P121

◆ Setting view <Scheduler view type>

1 ○ ▶ MENU 6 1 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Scheduler type : When "Classic" is selected, you can set Scroll mode and Zoom style.
Display mode : Specify the first day of a week (displayed at the left).
Scroll mode : Set whether to switch the screen by a month or scroll by week when ⊠ is pressed.
Zoom style : Set to "Weekly zoom" for enlarging based on weeks in 4 levels, and "Daily zoom" for enlarging based on days in 7 levels. In "Normal", the display cannot be enlarged on the vertical display, however it is enlarged in Weekly zoom with horizontal display.
- The registered schedule information is displayed by zooming it in (vary by the zoom style and scale factor).

◆ Setting days off/weekly off/holidays <Days off/Day off of week/Holiday settings>

- Up to 30 items can be set for days off.
- Up to 5 items can be set for holidays.

1 ○ ▶ MENU 6 ▶ **Perform necessary operation**

Setting days off to a fixed day/every year : 2 ▶ **Move the cursor to a day on Holiday settings screen** ▶ ● **or** ✉
- When moving the cursor to the holiday on Holiday settings screen, "Day off" or "Day off-EveryYr" appears at the right of the date.
- Each time you press ✉, every year/fixed holiday can be switched.

Canceling day off : Move the cursor to the holiday on Holiday settings screen ▶ ●
- Press C and select "Yes" to cancel all items on the holiday setting screen.

Setting weekly off : 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●
- Press MENU on the day of week selection screen to restore the original setting.

Setting holiday : 4 ▶ ● ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●
- Up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters can be entered for a holiday name.
- Set Mark on calendar to "ON" to display a holiday name on the calendar screen or Day view screen.

Changing holiday : 4 ▶ **Select a holiday** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●
- Holiday names set by default cannot be changed.
- Select "Change" in Date field and enter a date to change the date of a holiday set by default.

Deleting a holiday : 4 ▶ **Move the cursor to a holiday** ▶ MENU ▶ **"Yes"**
- Holidays set by default cannot be deleted.

◆ Saving schedules

You can set to display the new event entry screen by opening FOMA terminal.→P323

1 ○ ▶ MENU 1

2 **Set required items**

: Select an item icon. A schedule event corresponding to the selected item icon appears in the entry field. It can be changed with up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters.

All day : To set all day schedule without specifying the hour, select "ON".
Start date and time : Enter a start date/time.
End date and time : Enter an end date/time. Enter a date that is after the Start time to register as a Long-term schedule.
Place : Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters can be entered.
Details : Up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3 ✉ to switch to Schedule contact screen ▶ "<Add contact>" ▶ Select a contact from the phonebook

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- To delete an item, move the cursor to it and press [MENU].

4 ✉ to switch to Reminder screen ▶ Set required items

Alarm : To set a reminder, select "Yes" and select an alarm sound (schedule reminder).
- If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Schedule reminder of Ring alerts & Sounds.
  Setting Music→P83

Alarm before time : Set the time to sound alarm prior to the schedule event with 0-99 minutes.

5 ✉ to switch to Other settings screen ▶ Set required items

Repeat : The schedule event is registered as repeated one except when "None" is selected.
- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press [📷].
- When a "31st" day or "February 29" in a leap year is set as the start date and "Every month" or "Every year" is selected for repeat, the schedule is repeated on the last day of the same year/month instead of the specified date (that is, "30th" or "February 28").

Alarm image : To change the schedule reminder screen, select "Yes", select "Image" and select the image.

6 [📷]

- When a schedule event with Alarm set is saved, ⌨ or 🔧 (when alarm clock is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

❖Saving schedule events from stand-by display <Quick schedule>

You can save schedule events with simple key sequence without using calendar screen.

1 Enter date/time in 8-digit number ▶ [⏰]

Main (New) screen of schedule appears.
- For 10:00 on June 25, enter [0][6][2][5][1][0][0][0].
- For the current day, enter 4 digits : 2 digits for hour, 2 digits for minute.
- When the date and time before the current day are entered, Main (New) screen for the next year or next day appears.

The next procedure→P317 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

❖When the specified date and time come

The image, date/time and schedule appears on the display and the timer starts sounding at a Schedule reminder set in Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to the settings to Schedule reminder in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert.
- Press [📞] to stop the alarm.
- To stop alarm, perform no operations for approximately 1 minute, press a key other than [📞], [音] and [音], perform the touch operation (→P41) or double-tap (→P43).
- While the alarm is stopped, press [●] to display the details screen.

✔INFORMATION

- The schedule with All day set to "ON" operates the schedule reminder at 0 o'clock on the specified day.
- With moving picture/i-motion set for schedule reminder, moving picture/i-motion appears on the screen when the schedule reminder operates.
- When multiple schedule reminders are set for the same date and time, the contents of other schedules can be checked by pressing ✉ after stopping the alarm.
- If a schedule reminder and alarm clock are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- The same operation as Countdown timer is made at the specified date and time during a call, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode or while using infrared remote control.

◆ Setting default value for schedule reminder <Reminder option>

1 ▶ MENU 6 5 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

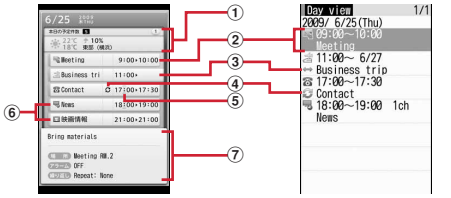
Set by scheduler : Set default values for saving a schedule event from the calendar screen.

Set by quick-schedule : Set default values for saving by quick-schedule.

◆ Checking registered schedule

- Schedules in i-schedule can also be displayed, but submenu operations etc. are different or restricted.→P320

1 ▶ **Select the saved schedule day**



Day view screen (Normal) Day view screen (Classic)

- Press ⇔ to switch the date.
- Descriptions of the screen are as follows.

① **The number of schedule events, weather report for a week**
- When displayed in Display by type, "本日のフィルタリング後の予定件数 (Number of todays schedules after filtering)" is displayed.

② **Item icon, Schedule, Start time-End time**
- For watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, watching/recording reservation icon, program name, start time-end time, channel ("Classic" only) are displayed.

③ **Long-term schedule**

④ **Repeat schedule**

⑤ **Schedule reminder set**

⑥ **Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)**

⑦ **Schedule details**

2 **Select a schedule event**



Details screen (Normal) Details screen (Classic)

Changing : Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ MENU 2

The next procedure→P317 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

- You can set to display an edit screen by opening FOMA terminal.→P323

Deleting : Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 - 5 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 📷. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- When Long-term schedule events including the selected date have been saved and "One day" or "Before date" is selected, a confirmation screen to delete the Long term schedule events appears.

Displaying after specifying an item <Display by type> : MENU 4 2 ▶ **Select an item icon**

The selected item icon appears in the upper-right corner of the calendar or Day view screen and only the schedule for the item icon appears.

- Press MENU 4 1 to restore the display.

Copying and pasting : Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ MENU 6 1 ▶ CLR ▶ **Move the cursor to the date to paste** ▶ MENU 5

- Only the latest copied schedule event is retained until the Scheduler is ended, allowing the pasting of the event to other dates repeatedly.

Creating mail : Move the cursor to a schedule event▶ MENU 7 1 ▶ 1-3

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format. If the schedule to be entered exceeds the number of characters that can be entered in the message text, the excess part is deleted.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a schedule event▶ ✉

Searching mail : MENU 7 2 ▶ 1 or 2

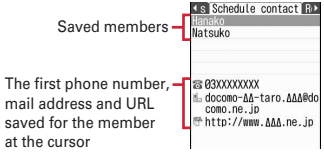
✔INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule data includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To or Web To functions can be used.
- To check an alarm image in "Normal", press i-αppli on the details screen.
- You can make a call or send mail to the birthday person on the birthday details screen.
- When displayed in Display by type, only the displayed items are deleted or informed via mail.

◆ Using schedule contact

In "Normal", select the phone number or mail address from the contact items in the detail screen. In "Classic", perform the following operations.

1 ● ▶ Select the saved schedule day ▶ Select a schedule ▶ ○ to display the schedule contact



2 Move the cursor to a contact ▶ Perform necessary operation

Making calls : ☎ or i-αppli

- Press MENU 4 to make a call specifying conditions.→P62

Attaching to mail : ✉

- Press MENU 5 2 to send mail to all contacts.

Displaying a site : MENU 6 ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"

✔INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number or mail address saved in phonebook, select a contact from Schedule contact screen and display the target phone number or mail address from the phonebook details screen.

◆ Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute>

Set secret attribute to a schedule. In Privacy mode ("Hide set schedule" set for Schedule), the schedule with secret attribute does not appear.

1 ● ▶ Select the saved day of schedule ▶ Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ MENU 0

- While setting secret attribute, 🔑 is blinking.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

◆ Displaying/Operating i-schedule

Multiple schedules are included in an i-schedule (schedules in i-schedule). i-schedule is updated when a new schedule is downloaded or the data saved in Data Center is updated/restored.

- Individual schedules in i-schedule are not deleted. To delete them, delete i-schedule.

1 ● ▶ 📷

The i-schedule list is displayed.

- If no i-schedule is registered, the description of i-schedule is displayed.
- Select "To i-schedule list" to connect to the i-schedule site.

2 Move the cursor to i-schedule ▶ 📷

The schedule list in the i-schedule is displayed.

Overviewing i-schedule : Select i-schedule

Deleting i-schedule : Move the cursor to i-schedule ▶ MENU ▶ 1-3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 📷. To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 Select a schedule in i-schedule

The schedule details screen in the i-schedule is displayed.

Copying and editing : Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule ▶ [📷] ▶ "OK"

The next procedure→P317 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

- It is saved as a normal schedule.

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule ▶ [✉]

- It is attached as a normal schedule.

Creating mail : Move the cursor to an event in i-schedule ▶ [MENU] [2] [1]

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format.

✔INFORMATION

- Operations such as displaying item by type, copying, mail operation, setting secret attribute are not available for i-schedule. Some operations such as setting secret attribute are not available for events in i-schedule.
- When Scheduler is activated from i-concier or exceeding the savable number by downloading i-schedule, select "Yes" on the confirmation screen for deleting and perform one of the following operations.
  - Select unnecessary schedule in Day view screen (Press [iR] in Day view screen to display the details screen)
  - Press [📷] and select unnecessary i-schedule in the i-schedule list (Press [iR] in the i-schedule list to display overview)
  - To delete i-schedule in "Classic", press [MENU] [3] [3] on the calendar screen to switch to "Normal", press [📷] and select unnecessary i-schedule on the i-schedule list

Shortcut icons

Starting often-used function quickly

Frequently-used functions, folders, files, etc. can be pasted as icons on the stand-by display (shortcut). You can activate quickly by selecting the shortcut.

- A shortcut does not appear on the horizontal display.

◆ Pasting shortcuts

When pasting shortcuts of functions, operate from the function selecting screen. When pasting shortcuts of folders, files, etc., operate from the list screen of folders, files, etc.

- Up to 15 items can be pasted. If pasting a shortcut, it is added to Shortcut icons list.

<Example> Pasting shortcuts of functions

1 [●] ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶ [MENU]



Shortcut icons list

① **Icons displayed on the stand-by display**

② **Title (function name, folder name, file name, data name, etc.)**

- When moving the cursor to the shortcut on stand-by display, it is displayed as a balloon.

③ **Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)**

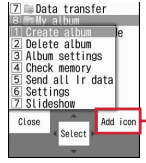
- On the stand-by shortcut list, press [✉] to check the pasting method.

2 [📷] ▶ Move the cursor to a function on the function selection screen ▶ [📷]

- A function without menu on lower levels can be pasted also by selecting the function.

<Example> Pasting shortcut of folder of My Picture

1 [MENU] [Data Box] [1] ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [MENU]



When the folder, file, data, etc. at the cursor position can be pasted, after pressing [MENU] to display submenu, "Add icon" is displayed on the guide area.

- When pasting phone number or mail address, display phone number or mail address on the details screen of FOMA terminal and press [MENU] to display "Add icon".
- When pasting alarm clock, display alarm clock list to display "Add icon".

2 [📷]

✔INFORMATION

- If the name of function or data to paste exceeds 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are deleted and before registration.
- Also when saving i-mode mail, SMS or a screen memo, you can paste shortcuts.→P136, 157, 170
- When 15 functions including ones that secrete attribute is set are pasted, if pasting in Privacy mode, hidden shortcut is deleted and a shortcut is newly pasted.

◆ Activating from shortcut

1 [●] ▶ Select a shortcut

When shortcuts other than displayed ones exist (displayed by [✉])



Title registered in the shortcut icons list (shortcut title at the cursor position is displayed with a balloon), icon

◆ Editing a shortcut

1 [●] ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶ [MENU]

2 Move the cursor to an item ▶ Perform necessary operation

Sorting the order : [MENU] [2] ▶ [◎] to move to the destination ▶ [●]

Changing the icon : [MENU] [3] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an icon

- You can select a JPEG or GIF image within 20×20 - 40×40 dots (images smaller than 39×39 dots are enlarged). Images in "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture can be selected.
- Press [MENU] [3] [2] to restore to the original icon.

Changing the title : [MENU] [4] ▶ Enter the title (up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters) ▶ [📷]

Deleting an item : [i-α] ▶ "Yes"

Setting display of shortcut <Shortcut icon setting> : [MENU] [6] ▶ [1] or [2]

- When "Press to display" is selected, press [●] to display shortcuts only in Focus mode.

✔INFORMATION

- When deleting a folder or file, the shortcut is also deleted.
- Even after changing or deleting a phone number or mail address in phonebook, the information you registered to a shortcut remains. Note that, if a phonebook entry is deleted or overwritten, the shortcut is deleted.
- Even if deleting a shortcut, its functions or folders are not deleted.
- Activation is available from a shortcut even if a file is moved, but activation becomes unavailable if moved to microSD card or UIM, and its shortcut is deleted.
- Even if the title of a shortcut is changed, the name of folder or file is not changed. And, if the name of a folder or a file is changed after pasting the shortcut, it does not apply to the title.

Custom menu

Registering often-used function

You can register frequently used functions and make your own menu.

- Functions of the first level of Custom menu can be activated by pressing the corresponding keypad ([1]-[9]) for 1 second or more on the stand-by display. However, a function with menus in its lower level, person or group registered cannot be activated.

◆ Creating Custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in 1 layer.

1 [MENU] ▶ [📷]

2 Perform necessary operation

Adding a function to item : [MENU] [1] [1] ▶ Move the cursor to a function ▶ [📷]

- A function without menu of lower levels can be registered also by selecting the function.

Adding a person to item : [MENU] [1] [2] ▶ Select a person from phonebook

- The image (except Flash graphics and moving pictures/i-motion) or character icon registered in the phonebook appears on the menu screen.

Adding a group to item : [MENU] [1] [3] ▶ Enter a group name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters) ▶ [📷]

Adding to a group :

No group can be added to the third level.

① **Select a group.**

② MENU 1 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **Perform registering operation**
- When no menu items are registered to a group, select one from "Save (Person)" - "Save (Menu group)".

Replacing menu item : Move the cursor to a menu item ▶ MENU 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **Perform registering procedure**
- When replacing a group, a screen for confirming the overwrite appears.

◆ Using Custom menu

1 MENU ▶ 📷 ▶ **Select a menu item**
- When a function is selected, the function is activated or menu items in lower levels appear.
- When a group is selected, the menu items registered in the group appear.

❖ Using person

1 MENU ▶ 📷

2 Move the cursor to a person ▶ Perform necessary operation

Making calls* : ✆ or iモード
- Select a person and press 1 to make a call specifying conditions.→P62

Creating mail* : ✉

Creating SMS* : ✉ (1 sec. or more)

Displaying a site : Select a person ▶ 4 ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"

Display detail information : Select a person ▶ 5

* When 2 or more phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, select a phone number or mail address to use from the phonebook details screen after the operation.

◆ Editing Custom menu

- Reset to default→P97 "Resetting menu"

1 MENU ▶ 📷

2 Move the cursor to a menu item ▶ MENU **▶ Perform necessary operation**

Replacing menu items : 3 ▶ Select the destination ▶ "Yes"

Changing icon : 4 ▶ Select an icon
- Press 4 📷 to restore to the original icon.

Renaming a group : 5 ▶ Rename a group ▶ 📷

Deleting menu item : 6 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a menu item.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

Slide and edit

Setting a function that displays an edit screen when FOMA terminal is opened

You can set so that opening FOMA terminal displays an edit screen etc. when the function set to "ON" in this option is running.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services] 7 1 ▶ Set required items ▶** 📷

Received message : When FOMA terminal is opened on the list screen and details screen, the Quick reply selection screen for the highlighted or opened mail message (for SMS, the SMS creation screen) appears. When the mail message has multiple addresses, the address selection screen appears before the Quick reply selection screen.

Sent message : When FOMA terminal is opened on the list screen and details screen, an editing screen for the highlighted or opened mail message appears.

Unsent message : When FOMA terminal is opened on the list screen, an editing screen for the highlighted mail message appears.

Schedule : When FOMA terminal is opened on the calendar screen and Day view screen, the new event entry screen appears. On the details screen, the edit screen for the displayed schedule event appears. On the schedule list and the schedule event details screen in i-schedule, a confirmation screen for copying before editing appears.

Notepad : When FOMA terminal is opened on the list screen and notepad screen, an editing screen for the highlighted or displayed notepad appears. If no memo is saved, the new memo entry screen appears.

Turn-display option

Setting a function to activate/operate by rotating display

You can set a function to activate or operate by rotating the display clockwise 90 degrees to YOKO-MOTION.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Stand-by display : Select a function to activate by rotating in stand-by display on the vertical display.

- When selecting "1Seg", a confirmation screen for activating other than stand-by display appears. Select "Yes" to activate 1Seg by rotating display during the other function that can be performed at the same time with 1Seg.
- Select "Others" to activate "Others" of Data Box.

Mailer : Select an entry function that is invoked by rotating during character entry on the vertical display.

- Move the cursor to the invoked character or symbol by entry function and return the display to vertical, or press ● to enter a character or symbol on the character entry screen.

Receiving call : Set if you answer a call by rotating the display to vertical when you received the call in YOKO-MOTION style.

- If the call can be answered in horizontal display, and Select language is set to 日本語 (Japanese), "(スイング)" appears. However, it does not appear while activating Record message, but you can answer the call.

✔INFORMATION

- While using camera or editing or saving data, incoming call may not be answered by rotating operation.
- For some character entry screens, the entry function cannot be activated.

Search key shortcut

Setting a function to be activated by holding down the search key

You can set a function so that it is activated by pressing ○P for 1 second or more.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 7 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Simple light

Using FOMA terminal light as a small light

- Search key shortcut needs to be set to "Simple light" before using this option.

1 ○P **(1 sec. or more)**

The light stays on while ○P is being pressed.

User information

Saving your own name

In addition to the phone number, you can also save your name and mail addresses.

1 MENU **[User information]**

- For My phone number, the subscribing terminal phone number appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press ✉ to switch User information between Number A and B.

2 ● ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ ●

Setting items→P75 Step 2 and the following steps in "Adding entries to phonebook" (None of phonebook number or group can be set.)

- My phone number appears in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.
- When mail address is selected, an entry method selection screen is displayed. When "Mail address auto reception" is selected, you can download the subscribed mail address from i-mode Center. Note that, that is unavailable for the second or subsequent mail address or the mail address of Number B.

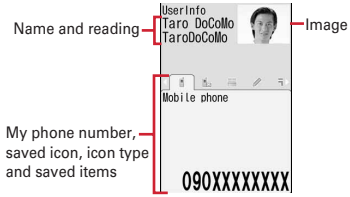
✔INFORMATION

- My phone number is saved to UIM and other items to FOMA terminal.
- Changing the mail address in User information does not change your i-mode mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode mail address does not change the saved mail address in User information.

◆ Checking user information details

1 MENU **[User information]▶ ● ▶Authenticate**

- Each time you press ✉, the details screen is switched.
- When the saved phone number has Caller ID settings, 🔔 appears at the top of the details screen.



User information details screen

Displaying User information : MENU 8 1
The phone number, mail address, etc., of the first entry appear.
Switching display of details screen : MENU 8 2 ▶ 1-3
Editing the saved data : MENU 2 ▶ **Edit and** 📷
Resetting the saved data : MENU 3 ▶ **"Yes"**
- When using 2in1, only the displayed user information is reset.

◆ Using user information details

1 MENU **[User information]▶ ● ▶Authenticate**

2 **Perform necessary operation**

Making call : Display the phone number details screen▶ 📞 **or** iモード
- Calls cannot be made to My phone number.
- Press MENU 4 to make a call specifying conditions.→P62

Setting Call ID settings : Display the phone number details screen▶ MENU 7 1 ▶ 1-3
Creating mail : Display the mail address details screen▶ ✉
Changing the mail address order : MENU 7 2 ▶ **Select a mail address to be set as the first one**
Creating SMS : Display the phone number details screen▶ ✉
Displaying a site : Display the URL details screen▶ ● ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"
Copying a saved data : MENU 5 ▶ 1-8
- To copy the second phone number/mail address or later, display the details screen for them, press MENU 5 and press 2 or 3.

Displaying a map from an address : Display the Postal code/Address details screen▶ 📷
GPS compatible i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts.
Using location information : Display the location information details screen▶ ●
The next procedure→P268 "■Location information usage menu"

◆ Obtaining Number B

With 2in1 activated and Number B displayed, you can obtain Number B.

<Example> Operating in B mode

1 MENU **[User information]▶ ● ▶Authenticate▶** MENU 0 **▶ "Yes"▶ ●**

- In Dual mode, press [UserInfo] then ✉ to display Number B.

Fake call

Pretending to be receiving a call and talking

Fake call is a function that allows you to pretend you are receiving a call or calling.
- Since voice line is not used, it can be used regardless of the radio wave conditions. And, the call cost is not charged.

◆ Setting Fake call

1 MENU **[Accessory]** 7 2 **▶Set required items▶** 📷

- When setting Call start time to other than "Ring now", a countdown screen appears when you start a fake call. The incoming operation is performed when the specified time elapses.

◆ Starting Fake call

1 MENU **[Accessory]** 7 1

Ring alert sounds according to Alert&Time settings, and the incoming fake call screen appears. And, it operates according to Call in the Light alert of Light alert (blinks in "OFF").

- If ⊡ is pressed while receiving Fake call, the terminal operates in silence.

2 ✆

The fake call talking screen appears and the fake call guidance follows. And, even if Call session light of Light alert is "OFF", the light blinks according to Light color of Call session light.

✔INFORMATION

- When starting a fake call by pressing ⊡ for 1 second or more with Search key shortcut set to "Fake call" and with Call start time of Alert&Time settings set to other than "Ring now", the terminal starts vibrating before countdown starts.
- In Silent mode, the ring alert does not sound and the vibrator operates. Press ⊡ to stop the vibrator.
- The ring alert is heard from the speaker even in Public mode (Drive mode) or when Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
- You can receive Fake call by pressing ●, 0-9, ✉ or #.
- When Slide and answer is set to "ON", you can answer a Fake call by opening FOMA terminal.
- If there is any of the following operations during a fake call, ring tone or alarm sound is not sounded, and vibrator operates.
  - A call is received
  - Mail or MessageR/F is received
  - At the set date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or Schedule
  - At the specified time for 1Seg watching reservation (except when Alarm setting is set to "No")

Voice memo/Movie memo

Recording voice/image

You can record voice or images while talking over a call or in stand-by mode.

- Up to 4 voice memo while talking or voice memo in stand-by can be recorded in total, with up to 30 seconds for each memo.
- Moving picture memos up to 30 seconds each can be recorded.
- Some guidances cannot be recorded.
- The recording of the voice memo while talking or moving picture memo may be distorted or the image may be blurred if the radio waves are poor.
- Playing of voice memo→P69
- Playing moving picture memo→P282

◆ Recording the other party's voice/image during a call

1 During a call, ⊡ (1 sec. or more)

Recording starts. When the remaining time is about 5 seconds, two short beeps indicating the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears at the bottom of the screen.
- During moving picture memo recording, the image is sent to the other party according to the settings of Movie memo image in Image setting (videophone image).
- During moving picture memo recording, pressing ● switches display between lapse of the recording time and call duration.
- To stop in the middle of recording, press ⊡ for 1 second or more.

◆ Recording your own voice during stand-by

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 7 3

After about 3 seconds, a long beep sounds and recording starts. When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, 2 short beeps noticing the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- Press any of ●, CLR or ⌐ to stop in the middle of recording.

Checking call duration/charge

Last and total call durations and costs for voice and videophone calls can be checked.

- The call durations are displayed for voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication, by the counting both outgoing and incoming calls.
- Call costs are only counted for outgoing calls. However "0 YEN" or "******YEN" appears when a call is made to toll free numbers such as Free-dial or to Directory assistance (104).
- Because the call costs are stored on UIM, the stored total calls cost appears (totaling from December, 2004) when UIM is replaced.
- The call durations and costs displayed are approximate values and may be different from the actual durations and costs.
- The call costs displayed do not include consumption tax.

◆ Checking call duration

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 1 1

Last call : Duration of last incoming/outgoing voice call, videophone or data session
Total voice calls : The total duration of voice calls made
Total videophone calls : The total duration of videophone calls made
Total data sessions : The total duration of data communication established
Reset:day&time(Voice) : Last date and time the total duration of voice calls was reset
Reset:day&time(VP) : Last date and time the total duration of videophone calls was reset
Reset:day&time(Data) : Last date and time the total duration of data communications was reset
Resetting total calls : On the call duration check screen, 📷 **▶ Authenticate ▶** 1 **-** 4 **▶ "Yes"**

◆ Checking call cost

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 1 2 1

- If there is no last call cost information, "******YEN" appears.

Last call cost: Voice : Charge for the previous voice call
Last call cost: VP : Charge for the previous videophone call
Last call cost: Data : Charge for the previous data session
Total calls cost : The total cost of voice/videophone calls or data communication
Reset: day & time : Last date and time the total duration was reset
Resetting total calls cost : On the call cost check screen, 📷 **▶ Enter the PIN2 code ▶ "Yes"**

❖ Automatically resetting Total calls cost <Reset call cost>

You can set whether to automatically reset Total calls cost at 0:00 on the first day of every month.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 1 2 4 **▶ Authenticate ▶** 1 **or** 2 **▶ Enter PIN2 code**

✔INFORMATION

- The duration of received calls or that for establishing call with the other party is not counted.
- Transmission charge for Chaku-moji messages is not counted.
- For i-mode and packet communications, the communication duration or costs are not counted. For the procedure for confirming i-mode fees, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The international call fee for using WORLD CALL is counted. It is not counted for using other international call service.
- When FOMA terminal is turned OFF, the previous call cost appears as "******YEN".
- When last or total duration for the voice/videophone call or data communication has exceeded 9,999 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds, counting restarts from 0 second.
- If voice and videophone call is switched during the call, the last call cost shows the total charge for each of voice and videophone calls. No call cost is charged while switching.
- The total of Number A and Number B appears for the total call duration and total calls cost with 2in1 subscribed.

<When Reset call cost is "ON">

- The call cost is reset after the terminal is turned ON or ending the call if the power is OFF or a call is being made at 0:00 on the first day of the month.
- The call cost is immediately reset when date and time in the next or subsequent month are set in Date & time.
- PIN2 code is required when turning the power ON or authentication is required when performing Date & time.

◆ Notifying call cost upper limit <Call cost limit>

When Total calls cost has exceeded the set limit, it is notified with an alarm, icon display, etc.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 1 2 2 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Alert : Set this option to "ON" to be notified when the limit is exceeded.
Limit : Enter the upper limit cost in the range of 10 yen-100,000 yen omitting the one's place.
Alert method : Set to use both an alarm and icon or only an icon for notification.
Alert sound : Select a sound to be notified.
Alert time : Set the period of time to sound the alarm in the range of 1-60 seconds.

❖When the call cost has exceeded the limit

- During a call or communication, ¥ appears at the top of the display.
- When the stand-by display reappears after completion of a call or communication with Alert method set to "Sound + icon display", an alarm sounds and message "Call cost reached limit." appears.
- The alarm operates according to Call alert volume of Adjust volume.

❖Hiding call cost icon <Hide call cost icon>

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 6 1 2 3 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

✔INFORMATION

- Even with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, the alarm does not sound or no messages appear when a call exceeding the call cost limit is made at 0:00 on the first day of the month with Reset call cost set to "ON".

Calculator

Using the FOMA terminal as calculator

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from entry field of Scheduler or Notepad.→P344

1 MENU **[Accessory]** 4 ▶ **Calculate**

Functions assigned to keys appear on the calculator screen.
Deleting 1 digit from the entered number : ✉
Copying/Pasting numbers : MENU ▶ 1 **or** 2
- Among the copied numbers, only the latest one remains recorded until the terminal is turned OFF, allowing you to paste to other locations any number of times.

✔INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" appears when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits or a divide-by-zero occurs. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded off.

Notepad

Creating notes

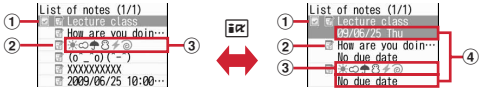
- You can set to display the new entry screen or edit screen by opening FOMA terminal.→P323

1 MENU **[Accessory]** 2 ▶ 📷 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Catg icons : Select the category icon.
Note content : Up to 1,000 two-byte (2,000 one-byte) characters can be entered.
Due date : To set an expiration date, select "ON" and enter a date.

◆ Checking notes

1 MENU **[Accessory]** 2



1-row display　　2-row display

① **Status icon**

Indicate expiration state of a note (Completed/Uncompleted)

(top in green) : Uncompleted (2 or more days before expiration)

(top in yellow) : Uncompleted (The previous day or current day of expiration)

(top in red) : Uncompleted (Past expiration)

(check in red) : Completed　No icon : No due date

② **Category icon**

③ **Note content**

④ **Expiration**

2 Select note

Display notepad screen appears.

- If Note content includes phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.

Changing : Move the cursor to a note▶ MENU 2 ▶Set required items▶ [camera]

Deleting : Move the cursor to a note▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1-4 ▶"Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a note.
- To delete selected items, select them▶ [camera]. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Only the displayed notes are deleted in List by category or List by status.

Specifying a category icon to display <List by category> : MENU 4 2 ▶Select a category icon

The selected category icon appears in the upper-right corner of List of notes and only the note for category icon appears.

- Press MENU 4 1 to restore the display.

Changing Completed/Uncompleted : Move the cursor to a note with expiration set▶ [mail]

Displaying by specifying completed/uncompleted <List by status> : MENU 5 ▶ 2 or 3

- Press MENU 5 1 to restore the display.

Sorting : MENU 6 ▶Set required items▶ [camera]

Creating mail : Move the cursor to a note▶ MENU 7

Registering to Scheduler : Move the cursor to a note▶ MENU 8

A screen with note contents already entered to details field of Scheduler appears. The date of Start time and End time varies depending on note expiration settings.

The next procedure→P317 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

❖Registering to schedule from Date To format

Date To format is formed with the following strings.

<Example> 2009/6/25□10:00□～□2009/6/25□11:00□Lecture class ↵

Start date　Start time　End date　End time　Description

A line feed is regarded as an entry.

* Characters except "～" are all one-byte characters. □ represents an one-byte space.

- The year is Western calendar year and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, date, hour or minute, the preceding zero is not needed.
- Using Phrase simplifies entering Date To format.→P343

1 MENU [Accessory] 2 ▶Select a note▶Select a description in Date To format

Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

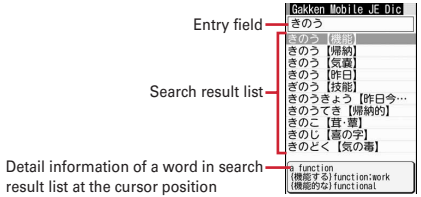
The next procedure→P317 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

Dictionaries

Using Dictionaries

1 MENU [Accessory] 5 ▶ 1-3 ▶Enter a word in entry field (up to 20 two-byte or 40 one-byte characters)

When ● is pressed, the character entry screen is switched to the search result screen.



Search result screen

- When the cursor is in a search result list, press [camera] to enter a word.

Viewing "Today's trivia" or "Today in history" : [MENU] [Accessory] [5] ▶ [4] or [5]

- To view another day, enter a date in Enter date field and select "Show events".
- Press [MENU] / [camera] to switch the previous/next day.

2 Select a word to be searched for from a search result list

The details screen (meaning of the word) appears.

- To copy the text, press [MENU] [1] on the details screen.
- To search another dictionary for a word already searched, press [MENU] [2] and [1]-[3] on the search result or details screen.
- Some words may not be correctly searched for.

◆ Using search records

1 [MENU] [Accessory] [5] ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ [MENU] [1]

The search records are displayed.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

2 Select word

The search result screen appears.

Deleting : Move the cursor to a word ▶ [MENU] ▶ [1]-[3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a word.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [camera]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

Pedometer/ACT monitor

Measuring number of steps or activity amount

You can check the number of steps, walked distance, consumed calories or quantity of burnt fat with Pedometer/ACT monitor. And, "Brisk walk" that is a measure of aerobic exercise (exercise to use oxygen inhaled by breath effectively to improve the total body endurance and burn body fat effectively), "ActivityAmount" that is calculated from performing time of physical activity (body movements, walking, exercise etc. in daily life) and also an exercise intensity (METs : a unit indicates how may times the intensity of physical activity per the one at rest) can be measured.

* If pressing [camera] while displaying Steps/Activity/Calories info (→P331), description of Brisk walk can be displayed.

- The countdown of steps or measurement of activity amount is not performed in the following cases.
  - When the power is OFF
  - When power saving mode is "ON" and Full saving
  - When "Not use" is set to Set Pedometer/Activity monitor
  - When Vibrate alert is operating
  - While updating software
- Brisk walk is automatically measured when walking continuously for 3 or more minutes at the pace of 60 or more steps per minute. And, the rest of less than 4 minutes is regarded that you continued.
- Activity amount is calculated when the exercise intensity is 3 METs or greater.
- Steps/Activity/Calories info can be used by ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker).→P243

❖ Precautions on using Pedometer/ACT monitor

- To count steps accurately, it is recommended that you wear the pedometer correctly (place it in a carrying case (optional) and attach the case to the waist belt etc. or when putting the terminal in a bag, put it in a pocket or between partitions), and walk at the speed of 100–120 steps per minute.
- Steps may not be counted accurately in the following cases.
  - When FOMA terminal moves randomly as the bag you put FOMA terminal in hits your legs or hip, or when hanging FOMA terminal down from your hip or bag
  - When shuffling, walking randomly wearing sandals or geta (wooden clogs), or when your walking pace was slowed down because of walking in the crowded area etc.

- When you had a lot of up-and-down motion, shaking or horizontal movement like repeating standing and sitting, climbing up and down steep stairs or slopes, or getting on vehicles (bicycle, car, train, bus, etc.)
- When you jogged or did some sports other than walking, or walked extremely slowly

• When opening/closing FOMA terminal, performing key operation or adding shake or swing to FOMA terminal, counting steps or measuring activity amount may not be performed accurately.

◆ Setting Pedometer/ACT monitor

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** **8** **2** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

🚶 appears on the stand-by display when Pedometer/ACT monitor is set to "Use". The steps number or activity amount, etc. is displayed on stand-by display for some stand-by images stored by default (Flash graphics in "Preinstalled" of My Picture).

• When you set height in ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker), the height is reflected.

✔INFORMATION

- At the beginning of walking,the figure is not changed because the Pedometer is judging to prevent miscount whether you started walking. As a guide, when you walked for 4 seconds, the steps to there is added at a time.
- A count accumulated while displaying the stand-by display (except スペースジム (Space gym)) is reflected the moment the stand-by display is switched into another screen and it is displayed again.
- In All lock and Omakase lock, the numeric value on the stand-by display is not changed, but counting continues.
- When date and time are not set, the numeric value on the stand-by display is not displayed, but counted steps or measured activity amount is accumulated. When date and time are set, the accumulated value is displayed for a day.
- Counted number of steps is saved every 60 minutes and measured activity amount every 10 minutes. If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned OFF, unsaved steps and activity amount may be lost.

◆ Displaying Steps/Activity/Calories info

When 00:00 AM comes with the time of FOMA terminal, information of the day such as steps or activity amount are automatically saved as the log. Information for the past 1,098 days including the current day can be checked.

- When date and time are note set, the log is not saved.
- Use the displayed figures just as guides.

1 ● ▶ **Select** 🚶

2 **Check the log by** ◀▶

Steps walked : Counted steps (up to 999,999 steps)
Distance walked : Walking distance calculated from steps and stride (up to 9,999.9 km)*1
Calories burned : Consumed calories calculated from exercise intensity, activity time, set weight (up to 65,535 kcal)*2
BurnedFat : Burned fat calculated from comsumed calories (up to 4,681g)
Steps:Brisk walk : The number of steps by Brisk walk (up to 999,999)
Time Brisk walk : Walking time of Brisk walk (up to 99 hours 59 minutes)
ActivityAmount : Activity amount calculated from time of physical activity and exercise intensity (up to 9999.9 Ex)*3

*1 May differ from the distance calculated from the set stride since the stride is adjusted by steps per minute.
*2 When the exercise intensity is not measured, calories are not measured.
*3 Ex (Exercise) : A unit of Activity amount

Deleting logs : MENU **1** ▶ **"Yes"**
All the logs including the number of steps and activity amount currently counted or measured, are deleted.

✔INFORMATION

- When steps, walking distance, Brisk walk time or activity amount exceeds the maximum value, it is reset to 0.
- By malfunction, repair or other treatments of FOMA terminal, the information of steps/activity/calories may be lost. And, the information of steps/activity/calories are retained for about a month even with the battery removed or vacant, but they may be lost if more time passes. Note that, even if the information of steps/activity/calories are lost, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility.

Using earphone/microphone with switch

You can make voice call or receive voice or videophone call by pressing the switch when Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) etc. is connected.

- Do not wind a cord of Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. around FOMA terminal or place it near the antenna. The received signal level may be lower or noise may occur.
- Connect the plug of Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. firmly. If the connection is insufficient, sound may not be heard.
- With Stereo Earphone Set 01 connected in Silent mode, the sound is emitted from the earphone regardless of the settings of Alert preference. If the earphone is disconnected before completion, a melody stops. i-αppli, 1Seg watching, Music, moving picture/i-motion, etc., is performed and played silently. For Music&Video Channel, a confirmation screen for playback appears.

◆ Setting switch operation of earphone/microphone <Headset key control>

You can set so that the switch of Stereo Earphone Set 01 allows you to make a voice call.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 5 4 3 ▶ Set required items ▶ [●]

Control function : Set to "Voice call" to make a voice call.
Phonebook No. : Search the party to call with Headset quick-dial from FOMA terminal phonebook and set.

◆ Making/Receiving calls by pressing switch <Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer>

<Example> Making a voice call

1 Press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep

<Example> Receiving a voice call

1 When there is an incoming call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep

✔INFORMATION

- When the phonebook No. of Headset key control contains multiple phone numbers, the voice call is made to the first phone number saved.
- If an entry of Phonebook No. in Headset key control is deleted or overwritten by another entry, or its number is switched, Headset key control is canceled.
- When FOMA terminal is closed during a call with Stereo Earphone Set 01 connected, the call continues regardless of Close settings.

<When a call is received during call (when Call waiting is Activate)>

- Press the switch for 1 second or more when a voice call is received to answer the call. And, you can switch the party to talk by pressing the switch for 1 second or more.
- Pressing the switch for 1 second or more when a videophone call is received disconnects the current communication and a videophone call reception screen is displayed.

◆ Answering call automatically with earphone connected <Auto answer setting>

If there is an incoming call when Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. is connected, you can answer the call automatically.

- This function is unavailable to incoming calls during another call.
- This function is not available in Public mode.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 5 4 2 ▶ Set required items ▶ [●]

Auto answering : Setting to "ON" allows you to automatically answer.
Delayed time(Sec) : Set time before automatically answering an incoming call in the range of 0-120 seconds.

✔INFORMATION

- The substitute image is displayed on the other party's terminal when a videophone call is answered with Auto answer.
- With Delayed time set within the time of Ring alert delay, this function does not start when a call is received from a caller not saved in phonebook.

◆Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Alert preference>

By connecting Stereo Earphone Set 01, you can set to hear the ring tone through both headset and speaker or only through the headset.

- Alert tones such as GPS alert or Alarm sound operates according to this setting.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 5 4 1 ▶ 1 - 3

- With "HS, + SP after 20sec" set, the ring alert is emitted from the speaker about 20 seconds after the ring alert is emitted only from the earphone.

Bluetooth function

Using Bluetooth function

You can establish a wireless connection between FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device.

- Note that using a Bluetooth connection consumes much battery power.
- Wireless communication is not guaranteed for all Bluetooth devices.
- Before using a Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

■ Compatible version

Bluetooth standard Version 2.0+EDR*1

■ Compatible profiles*2 (Supported services)

HFP : Hands-Free Profile
HSP : Headset Profile
A2DP : Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
AVRCP : Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
DUN : Dial-up Networking Profile
OPP : Object Push Profile
SPP : Serial Port Profile

*1 FOMA terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with the Bluetooth standards in the way defined by Bluetooth SIG, and are authorized by Bluetooth SIG. However, operational procedures or data communication failure may occur depending on the characteristic or specifications of the connected device.

*2 Generic profiles that define the standard connection procedures suitable for each product's characteristic.

❖Functions available with Bluetooth

■ Talking using a handsfree or headset device (HFP/HSP)

You can also perform a handsfree call by using a car navigation system etc. after connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth car navigation device etc. (commercially available). You can perform a call wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal and Bluetooth Headset F01 (optional).

■ Playing sounds with an audio device (A2DP/AVRCP)

You can play sounds or music wirelessly or perform remote control by connecting FOMA terminal with Wireless Earphone Set 02 (optional) or a Bluetooth audio device (commercially available).

■ Connecting to wireless dialup connection (DUN)

You can connect FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth compatible PC to perform packet communication or 64K data transmission using FOMA terminal as a modem. Press MENU [LifeKit] ✂ 5, wait until the connection from the Bluetooth device is established and perform registration. For details, refer to "Preparing for Bluetooth connection" in "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM.

■ Sending and receiving phonebook entry (User information) (OPP)

You can send or receive phonebook entries (User information) by connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device.

■ Using Bluetooth communication from i-αppli (SPP)

You can perform a versus game of i-αppli or exchange data with connecting other terminal or Bluetooth device. For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)", etc. of i-αppli you use.

■ Sounds output by a Bluetooth device

- Only the following functions are not supported. Also, some of them may not work properly depending on Bluetooth device.

	Connected profile	HFP	HSP	A2DP
Sound to be output	Voice call dialing sound	○	○	×
	Ring alert, ring tone of voice call or the other party's voice	○	○	×
	The other party's voice being recorded to Record message during call	○	×	×
	Sound of 1Seg, Music&Video Channel, MUSIC Player, moving picture/i-motion, video sound	×	×	○

Caution for handling a Bluetooth device

To establish a good connection, note the points below.

- Connect with another Bluetooth device keeping the line-of-sight distance to 10 m or shorter. Distance available for connection may be shorter if obstacles exist between FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device or depending on surrounding environment (walls, furniture, etc.). Especially, inside a reinforced concrete building, devices placed on opposite sides of reinforced walls or floors may not be connected. The connection distance described above is not guaranteed.
- Place a Bluetooth device as far as possible from other electric appliances, audio visual devices and office appliances. A microwave oven strongly affects the connection when it is operated. Keep enough distance. Connection may not be established correctly when other devices are powered on, or the connection may cause noises on TV or radio or reception difficulty (on particular UHF or satellite channels, TV pictures may be distorted).
- Move the other Bluetooth device to another location if connection cannot be established because there is a broadcasting station or radio device nearby. Under strong ambient signals, connection may not be established.
- Wireless connection is possible even when a Bluetooth device is placed in a bag or pocket. However, if your body is between FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device, communication speed may be reduced or noise may occur.
- For some Bluetooth device, the available connection interval may change.

Radio wave interference with wireless LAN

Because a Bluetooth device and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz), if the device is used near a device with wireless LAN capability, radio wave interference may occur, and communication speed may be reduced, noise may occur, or connection may not be established. In this case, turn the wireless LAN device power off, or move FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device away at least 10 m from the wireless LAN device.

Radio waves emitted by a Bluetooth device may affect electronic medical equipment.

Turn off FOMA terminal and other Bluetooth devices in a train, aircraft or hospital, near an automatic door or fire alarm, and at a place where flammable gases are generated such as a gas station. Otherwise, under certain circumstances, an accident may result.

◆ Registering a Bluetooth device <Register new devices>

- Set a Bluetooth device to registration stand-by mode in advance.
- For the Bluetooth passkey, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device (Bluetooth passkey is not required to register Wireless Earphone Set 02). To connect FOMA terminals with each other, enter the same Bluetooth passkey on those terminals. Determine a 4-16 digit Bluetooth passkey in advance.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** ✕ 3 ▶ ●

Bluetooth devices in stand-by near FOMA terminal are searched. The number of the detected devices and the registered device list appear.



Device list

① **Device type**
: Phone : Audio : LAN access point
: PC : Peripheral device : Graphic device : Others

② **Search results**
○ : Registered device exists ✕ : No registered device
NEW : Unregistered device exists

③ **Connection status of the service/Bluetooth address (when the device is not registered)**
AUTO appears to the right if the MUSIC Player is subject to be connected automatically on activation.

④ **Device name/Bluetooth address (when the device has no name)**
🔒 appears when protected.

2 Select a Bluetooth device to register ▶ Enter the Bluetooth passkey

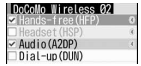
A completion screen for registration appears and a profile selection screen (→P335) is displayed approximately 2 seconds later. To connect the Bluetooth device, go to Step 3 in "Connecting with registered Bluetooth device".

- When exceeding the savable number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears. When "Yes" is selected, unprotected Bluetooth device with the oldest communication date is overwritten first.
- If the Bluetooth device name exceeds 16 two-byte characters (or 32 1-byte characters), the truncated device name is registered.

◆Connecting with registered Bluetooth device

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 2

2 Select a Bluetooth device to connect



Service selection screen

: Connected : Connection stand-by : Unconnected (service exists)
No display : Unconnected (no service)

- The connect/stop screen appears unless all of the services are online/offline. Press 1 (or 2 to stop).

Search a Bluetooth device : ● ▶ ●

- If an unregistered Bluetooth device is found, select the device to register.
- If you, after the search, select a detected Bluetooth device which is already registered, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

Protecting/Unprotecting : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ MENU 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2

Displaying registered device information : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ MENU 2

- Press ● on the registered device information screen to edit the device name. Enter up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters and press ●.

Deleting a registered device : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ MENU 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

Disconnecting : Move the cursor to a Bluetooth device ▶ MENU 4 ▶ **"Yes"**

3 Select a profile to connect ▶ ●

appears, and (blue) blinks at the top of the screen when a connection with the Bluetooth device is established. If no communication is performed with the Bluetooth device for certain time, Power saving mode starts and (gray) blinks.

Canceling the connection : Select a profile ▶ ●

Reconnect a profile : i

✔INFORMATION

- If a Bluetooth device is turned off or not responding while connection is being established or terminated, the process may take time.
- When Bluetooth device is disconnected during connection, the profile is in stand-by mode. When FOMA terminal is turned off while a profile is connected or connection stand-by, the profile is in stand-by next time the terminal is turned on.
- When "Please re-register." is displayed in the service connection status in Device list, select a Bluetooth device and select "Yes" to register again.
- Even if selecting Dialup Network Profile, the target Bluetooth device may not support the profile and may not be connected.

◆Activating/Deactivating Accept registered

Connection from the registered Bluetooth device (connected before) can be waited or canceled.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Select a profile** ▶ ●

✔INFORMATION

- Connection does not start when a Bluetooth device is in connection stand-by. Connect from FOMA terminal.
- When Accept registered is activated with multiple Bluetooth devices registered, unexpected Bluetooth devices may be connected. Be sure to confirm the device connected.

◆Turning Bluetooth function on/off <Bluetooth ON/OFF>

When "ON" is set, (blue) appears, and a service becomes able to accept a registered Bluetooth device (connected before). Set "OFF" to exit a Bluetooth function.

1 MENU **[LifeKit]** 1 ▶ **"Yes"**

◆Using Bluetooth communication

- For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

❖Talking using Bluetooth device

You can talk wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device using Hands-free Profile (HFP) or Headset Profile (HSP).

- To dial using Headset service, it operates according to Headset key control.

1 Connect a Bluetooth device with Hands-free Profile or Headset Profile

Connecting a Bluetooth device→P335

2 Making/Receiving a call using a Bluetooth device

- During a communication with Hands-free Profile, appears, and with Headset Profile, appears.

Switching between calls with FOMA terminal and Bluetooth device : During a call, [ ] (for 1 sec. or more)

- During a call with FOMA terminal connected with Headset Profile, the call can be switched only from the Bluetooth device.

✔INFORMATION

- When a call is received while a Bluetooth device is connected with Hands-free Profile or Headset Profile, even when Call alert volume is set to "Silent" on FOMA terminal or in Silent mode, a ring alert sounds from the Bluetooth device. In this case, the ring alert operates according to Forward ring alert in Bluetooth settings.
- The volume should be adjusted on the Bluetooth device while talking through a Bluetooth device.

<During a call using a Bluetooth device>

- The call can be continued regardless of Close settings.
- When you disconnect the Bluetooth device, the call ends.

❖Playing sound, music, etc. using Bluetooth device

By connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device with Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), you can output 1Seg sound, Music&Video Channel, MUSIC Player audio, or play sound of moving picture/i-motion or video from the Bluetooth device.

1 Connecting a Bluetooth device with Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

Connecting a Bluetooth device→P335

2 Watch 1Seg or play music etc.

- If a confirmation screen for outputting sound to a Bluetooth device appears, select "Yes" or "Yes (Confirm once)". When you select "Yes (Confirm once)", Voice output to BT of Sound setting of 1Seg (User setting), Music&Video Channel (submenu) and Movie/i-motion (Settings) are set to "Auto output to BT". When "No" is set, sound is output from FOMA terminal speaker.
- When Start MUSIC Player of Bluetooth settings is set to "Auto start/end OFF", MUSIC Player automatically starts when connected from a Bluetooth device with advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), and music is played from the device. In this case, the tune that was selected when MUSIC Player is used last time is played. If there is no previous information, the first tune in the "All music" folder is played.

✔INFORMATION

- 1Seg sound can be played only with a A2DP compatible Bluetooth device that supports SCMS-T Copyright Protection.
- The volume should be adjusted on the Bluetooth device while playing through a Bluetooth device.
- Equalizer settings of Music&Video Channel and MUSIC Player are not applied to play sounds.
- Even while playing in background, a Bluetooth device remote control is available.
- When MUSIC Player is activated with no Bluetooth device connected, the Bluetooth device that was connected when MUSIC Player was used last time is connected.
- If music or sound stops or MUSIC Player terminates during playback with a Bluetooth device, possible causes are as follows.
  - When a connection with the Bluetooth device is disconnected
  - When making/receiving a call or transferring phonebook
  - When mail, MessageR/F or location request of GPS is received
  - When an alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or 1Seg watching reservation sounds

❖Sending and receiving phonebook entry (User information)

You can send data from submenu of phonebook or User information.

- The terminal is in the data transfer mode (same state as out of service area) during data transmission.
- Storage after reception is the same as that for infrared communication/iC transmission.→P304
- Perform the following operations with either the Bluetooth device of other party registered or not registered on both sending side and receiving side.

<Example> Sending/Receiving phonebook entry

■ Sender

1 [ ] ▶ Phonebook search ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ [MENU] [8] ▶ [5] or [6]

- For the receiving side, perform Step 1 of "■ Receiver".
- When no Bluetooth device is registered, a conformation screen for searching appears. "Yes"▶Press ● to search for the Bluetooth device of the receiver.
- When other Bluetooth device is registered and the Bluetooth device of the receiver is not registered, press [📷]▶● on Device list to search for the Bluetooth device of the receiver.

Sending User information : [MENU] **[User information]**▶●▶**Authenticate**▶[MENU] 6 3

2 Select a Bluetooth device to connect

- When the Bluetooth device of the receiver is not registered, enter the Bluetooth passkey.
- When "Send all via BT" is selected, perform authentication. When Bluetooth settings is "With password", enter the same authentication password on the sender and receiver. Determine a 4-digit authentication password in advance.

3 "Yes"

■ Receiver

1 [MENU] [LifeKit] 6▶"Yes"

- When no Bluetooth device of the sender is registered, a confirmation screen for connecting with the sender's device appears. Select "Yes" and enter the Bluetooth passkey.
- The next procedure for 1 item reception→P305 Step 2 in "Saving received data"
- To receive all items, perform authentication when the sender finishes Step 3 of "■ Sender". Also, authentication password entry is required depending on the sender's settings. When the reception is completed, the confirmation screen for overwriting all items appears.

✔INFORMATION

- If you fail to send or receive data, register the Bluetooth device again, or delete the registered devices and then send or receive data again.

◆ Checking connected Bluetooth devices <Connecting devices>

1 [MENU] [LifeKit] 8

◆ Setting Bluetooth function <Bluetooth settings>

Time-out to search : Set the duration to search for Bluetooth devices.
Bluetooth info : Display information of Bluetooth functions of FOMA terminal
Set authentications : Set authentication and encryption necessary to send or receive a phonebook (profile information) via Bluetooth.

- When profiles other than Object Push Profile is activated, entires are sent after security and encoding regardless of this setting.

Forward ring alert : Set whether to send phone ring alert to a connected handsfree device or headset.

- When "Forward" is set, the ring alert set to FOMA terminal is emitted from the Bluetooth device while connecting Hands-Free Profile or is emitted according to Alert preference while connecting Headset Profile.

Session number : Set whether to enter authentication password to send all phonebook entires.
Start MUSIC Player : Set whether to automatically start/end MUSIC Player when an audio device is connected.

- This setting is also applied to Bluetooth auto-start in MUSIC Player settings.

1 [MENU] [LifeKit] 7

2 Perform necessary operation

Setting Time-out to search : 1▶**Enter the search time (1-20 seconds)**▶[📷]
Displaying Bluetooth info : 2

- To edit a device name, [📷]▶Enter a device name (up to 16 two-byte or 32 one-byte characters)▶Press [📷]. Entered pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the other party's Bluetooth device.

Setting Set authentications : 3▶**Set required items**▶[📷]
Setting Forward ring alert : 4▶1 **or** 2
Setting Session number : 5▶1 **or** 2
Setting Start MUSIC Player : 6▶1 **or** 2

◆ Multi service of Bluetooth connection

Combination of functions that can be connected together as follows.

- Connecting from FOMA terminal by Dialup Network Profile (DUN) is unavailable.
- Up to 2 devices can be connected at the same time.

○ : Connection available/Concurrent use available △ : Connection available/Concurrent use unavailable × : Connection unavailable/Operation cannot be performed

Profile/Device to be connected		Connected profile					
		HFP	HSP	A2DP	DUN	OPP	SPP
HFP	FOMA terminal	×	×	△*1	○	×	○
	External device	×	×	△*1	○	△*2	○
HSP	FOMA terminal	×	×	△*3	○	×	○
	External device	×	×	△*3	○	△*2	○
A2DP	FOMA terminal	△*1	△*3	×	△*4	×	△*5
	External device	△*1	△*3	×	△*4	△*2	△*5
DUN	External device	○	○	△*4	×	△*2	○
OPP	FOMA terminal	△*2	△*2	△*2	△*2	×	△*2
	External device	△*2	△*2	△*2	△*2	×	△*2
SPP	FOMA terminal	○	○	△*5	○	×	○*6
	External device	○	○	△*5	○	△*2	○*6

*1 Hands-free Profile (HFP) is preferred when you are using them
*2 Object Push Profile (OPP) is preferred when you are using them
*3 Headset Profile (HSP) is preferred when you are using them
*4 Dialup Network Profile (DUN) is preferred when you are using them
*5 Serial Port Profile (SPP) is preferred when you are using them
*6 Up to 2 devices can be connected (multiple connection with identical devices is unavailable)

Character Entry

Entering characters 340
Entering characters using 5-touch input method ..... 5-touch input method 341
Entering characters using useful entry function 343
Saving fixed phrase ..... Save phrase 345
Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters 345
Entering characters using KUTEN code ..... KUTEN code input 346
Saving often-used words ..... Save word 346
Registering passwords in advance ..... Password manager 347
Using downloaded dictionary ..... DL dictionary 347
Entering characters using 2-touch input method ..... 2-touch input method 347
Setting input method ..... Text input method 348
Entering characters using T9 input method 348
Entering characters in basic style 350

For details of Kuten Code List, refer to "Kuten Code List" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.
To view PDF version of "Kuten Code List", Adobe® Reader® is required. If not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

Entering characters

Procedures for entering characters are as follows.

- There are 3 methods for entering characters : "5-touch input method", "2-touch input method" (→P341, 347) and "T9 input method" (→P348) for entering Chinese.
- The following font types can be entered. Two-byte characters (hiragana/kanji/katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols/pictograms/Chinese characters (simplified Chinese)) and one-byte characters (katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols). 1 two-byte character, space or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. Voiced sound and semi-voiced sound one-byte characters are also counted as 1 character.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a simplified form.
- In this manual, "enter" means entering characters and pressing ●.

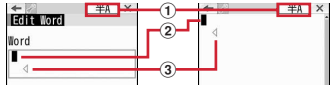
◆ Character entry screen

There are 2 kinds of character entry screens : in-line entry mode and full-screen entry mode.

In-line entry : Move the cursor to the field without switching screens and enter characters directly.

Full-screen entry : Select the field to display the full-screen entry area.

- When fixed phrases pasted or entered exceed the allowable number of entered characters, the excessive characters are deleted.



In-line entry　　Full-screen entry

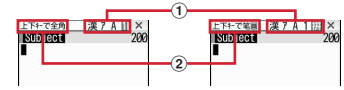
① **Input mode**
② **Cursor (blinking)**
Indicate location where characters are entered or inserted.
③ **Entry range**
This icon indicates limitation of entry area.

- For the field to enter date and time etc., you may be able to enter numbers by pressing [0].

◆ Changing input modes

1 On the character entry screen, [あa]

- Each time you press, the input mode switches as 1 (one-byte numbers)→漢 (hiragana/kanji)→ｱ (one-byte katakana)→A (one-byte alphabets). When Multilingual setting is "ON", 拼 (Pinyin) or 笔 (Stroke) is also displayed.



One-byte numbers　　Pinyin entry

① **Items**
② **Change by [0]**
Switch two-/one-byte, or Pinyin/Stroke entering when Multilingual setting is "ON".

- You can also press [*] to switch the input mode.

2 Move the cursor to the item to switch ▶ ●

❖Available items and input modes

• The input modes that correspond to items to switch are as follows.

Items			Input mode	
5-touch input method	2-touch input method	T9 input method* (Chinese entry)		
漢	漢	—	Hiragana/Kanji character	漢
ｱ	ｱ	—	One-byte katakana	半ｱ
A	A	—	One-byte alphabetic characters	半A
1	—	—	One-byte numbers	半数
—	—	拼	Pinyin	㊥拼
ア	ア	—	Two-byte katakana	全ア
A	A	—	Two-byte alphabetic characters	全A
1	—	—	Two-byte numbers	全数
—	—	笔	Stroke	㊥笔

* Available only when Multilingual setting is "ON".

• The available input modes vary by the character entry screen.

• 全あ appears when entering readings of a saved word.

5-touch input method

Entering characters using 5-touch input method

In 5-touch input method, multiple characters are assigned to each key and the character is switched every time a key is pressed.

• List of character assignments→P395

• When characters are entered, the cursor moves rightward after approximately 1 second. The number of seconds before moving the cursor can be changed in Text input method.→P348

◆Entering characters in hiragana/kanji

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 [ME NU] [Phonebook & Logs] [2] ▶ [あ/A] twice to switch to the kanji/hiragana mode ▶ Enter "ろっぽんぎ" ▶ [●]

"ろ" : [9] (5 times)
"っ" : [4] (3 times) ▶ [✂]
"ぽ" : [6] (5 times) ▶ [✂] (twice)
"ん" : [0] (3 times)
"ぎ" : [2] (twice) ▶ [✂]



• During character entry, the following operations are available.
[↶] : Return to the previous character.
(e.g. : ぉ→ぇ→う→い→ぁ→お→え→…)
[CLR] : Cancel entered characters.
[✂] : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).
(e.g. : ほ→ぼ→ぱ→ほ→…, つ→っ→づ→つ→…)

• You can also press [0] to convert text when an option selection list is not displayed.

• Press [CLR] to restore the entry before conversion.

• To leave hiragana unconverted, go to Step 2 without pressing [●].

Displaying conversion options list :

When pressing [●] fails to display the preferred character, a conversion options list appears by pressing [0] or pressing [●] again.

Displaying kana options list :

While entering hiragana characters, press [ME NU] to display a list of katakana, alphabetic characters, numbers, dates, times, etc.

• When there are multiple pages, press [あ/A] or [✉] to switch pages. Press the key for the option or press [0] to select options.

2 [●] ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

Restoring the character string to the previous state :

Press [↶] for 1 second or more after confirming the entry.

Inserting characters :

Press ⊠ to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters :

During character entry and after confirming the entry, the following operations are available.

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
  (e.g. : ドコモ太郎, ドコモ太郎)
  - Press [CLR] to delete 1 character at the cursor position. When the cursor is between characters, 1 character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
  - Press [CLR] for 1 second or more to delete all characters after the cursor position.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
  (e.g. : ドコモ太郎)
  - Press [CLR] to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor.
  - Press and hold [CLR] for 1 second or more to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed :

Move the cursor to the location to insert a line feed and press [✂]. When the cursor is at the end of entered characters, you can also press [○] to insert a line feed.

- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

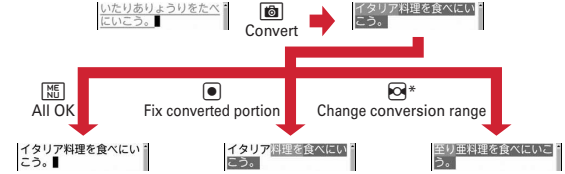
✔INFORMATION

- Pressing [↩] after entering voiced/semi-voiced sound does not bring back the previous character.
- When the cursor has been moved rightward by pressing [○] during character entry, the following operations are unavailable.
  [✂] : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound and switch upper/lower case.
  [↩] : Return to the previous character.
- You can enter readings in hiragana and convert them to alphabetic characters, Greek characters, etc.→P401
- When the cursor is at the end of entered characters, press [○] to enter a space.

❖Converting multiple clauses at a time

- Converted within 24 two-byte characters.

<Example> Entering "イタリア料理を食べにいこう。(Let's go to eat Italian food.)"



* The screen shows the example of [○].

◆ Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function displays a list of the word selection options that match first part of the reading of the entered characters when entering characters in hiragana/kanji mode. Input prediction function automatically saves previously entered characters in the option selection list as Predict dict. data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

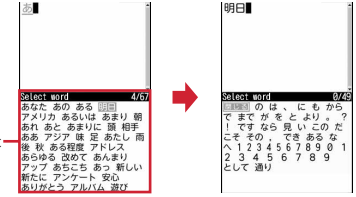
- The following words appear in addition to the Predict dict. data.
  - Words stored by default, words saved as words
  - Words selected from DL dictionary
- Input prediction function can be used only in the hiragana/kanji mode with full-screen entry.

<Example> Selecting and entering "明日 (asu)"

1 Enter "あ (a)" on the character entry screen

- The option selection list appears. Options change as entered characters increase.

2 ▶ **Select the option** ▶ **"閉じる (Close)"**



- When there are multiple pages, press [i-αppli] or [Mail] to switch pages.

❖Resetting prediction

You can reset data saved as Predict dict. data in the options selection list to default.

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]**
[7] [4] [3] ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

Entering characters using useful entry function

You can enter pictograms, symbols or fixed phrases, or quote data from the submenu of the character entry screen.

- The submenus do not appear before characters are set or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed. On the in-line entry screen, the submenu appears when the entry is fixed.

◆ Entering fixed phrases

1 **On the character entry screen,** [MENU] [4] [1] ▶ [1]-[8]

- After fixed phrases are saved, [9] becomes available.
- Press [MENU] [5] [1] on the signature editing screen.

2 **Select a fixed phrase**

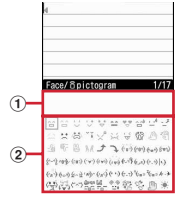
◆ Entering pictogram and symbol

- Pictogram list→P396

<Example> Entering Pictogram D

1 **Press [Camera] on the entry screen of message text or signature editing**

A pictogram list of Pictogram D appears. From the second time, the last entered pictogram list appears.



① **Input log field**
Displayed on the first page of the pictogram list of Pictogram D, Pictogram 1 and Pictogram 2, and on the first page of the symbol list of one-byte/two-byte symbols.

② **Pictogram and symbol list**
Only supported symbols appear.

- Each time you press [Camera], the pictogram list switches in the order of Pictogram D→Pictogram 1→Pictogram 2. On a pictogram list of Pictogram D, images saved in "Deco-mail pict" folder are displayed by folder. Select a Deco-mail pictogram to enter it. Note that, you can switch only Pictogram 1 and 2 each time you press [Camera] except on the entry screen of message text or signature.
  Downloading Deco-mail pictogram→P171
- Press [MENU] to enter symbols. Each time you press the key, switches two-byte and one-byte symbols.
- When there are multiple pages, press [i-αppli] or [Mail] to switch pages. However, a folder in "Deco-mail pict" is switched for Pictogram D. Also, you can move to a page or folder by pressing [Multi].

2 Select a pictogram

Press [CLR] to close the pictogram list.

- In the input log field, up to 20 items of pictograms or symbols (13 items for horizontal display with FOMA terminal opened, 10 items for the Multi window while watching 1 Seg) from the latest entry are displayed and characters can be selected from the list.

✔INFORMATION

- Pictograms and symbols can be converted also by entering readings.→P396, 401
- Pictograms and symbols transferred via infrared communication may not appear correctly.
- A pictogram or symbol can be entered also by selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Pictogram" or "Symbol" on the submenu of the character entry screen. At this time, press [📷] to display a continuous input field above the input log field, and up to 10 pictograms, 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) symbols can be selected continuously. Note that no continuous input field is displayed for Pictogram D.
- If "Deco-mail pict" folder contains no images, a blank pictogram list appears when trying to display Pictogram D on the entry screen of message text or signature editing.
- Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also by pressing [MENU] on the entry screen of message text or signature editing, and selecting "Decorate mail" → "Insert image" → "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- When selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Symbol" on the submenu of character entry screen, selecting a left parenthesis (such as {) causes the associated right parenthesis (such as }) to be automatically entered.

◆ Entering smileys

- Smiley list→P404

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [5] [3] ▶ [2]-[9]

- Press [MENU] [6] [3] on the signature editing screen.
- Pressing [1] displays a list of up to 18 items beginning with the latest one entered from input log of smiley list.

2 Select Smileys

◆ Quoting data to enter characters

Characters can be entered by quoting password saved in Password manager, phonebook entry, user information, the calculation results on Calculator or character string of the data scanned with Bar code reader.

- Other data can be quoted except when a character entry screen and quoted data have the same function (such as phonebook entry on a phonebook character entry screen).

❖Quoting password data

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [4] [3] ▶ Authenticate

- Press [MENU] [5] [3] on the signature editing screen.

2 Select password data to quote

❖Quoting phonebook entry

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [4] [4] ▶ Select phonebook entry to quote

- Press [MENU] [5] [4] on the signature editing screen.

2 Select the data to quote

❖Quoting user information data

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [4] [5] ▶ Authenticate

- Press [MENU] [5] [5] on the signature editing screen.

2 Select the data to quote

❖Quoting calculation results on Calculator

1 On the character entry screen of Notepad or Scheduler, [MENU] [4] [6] ▶ Make a calculation ▶ [●]

❖Quoting data scanned with Bar code reader

1 On the URL entry screen, [MENU] [4] [6] ▶ Scan a code ▶ [●]

- They can be used from the character entry screen during i-mode or Full Browser connection.

Save phrase

Saving fixed phrase

- Up to 50 items can be saved.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 4 4 9 ▶ **"<New phrase>"**

- To check the fixed phrase already saved, move the cursor to the phrase to check and press [camera]. Edit it by pressing ●.

Deleting the saved fixed phrases : Move the cursor to the fixed phrase ▶ MENU ▶ "Yes"

2 **Enter the fixed phrases (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters) ▶ [camera]**

Phrases are saved in "My phrases".

- When editing a saved fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to replace or "No" to cancel the operation.

❖Saving words during character entry

1 **On the character entry screen,** MENU 6 2

- Press MENU 7 2 on the signature editing screen.

2 **Select the start point**

Selecting a whole sentence : MENU ▶ ● ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press [mail] to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 **Select the end point**

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the edit phrase screen.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : MENU ▶ ●

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : [camera] ▶ ●

4 [camera]

✔INFORMATION

- If a blank is included in the character string in the selected range, the following operation is performed.
  Blank spaces only : Cannot be saved as a fixed phrase.
  Blank spaces before and after a character string : Only character string is available.
  Blank spaces between characters : Blank spaces are also available.

- To save a new phrase when 50 fixed phrases are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved fixed phrases in the list.

Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters

- Only the last item of the copied or cut characters are recorded until the power is turned OFF, and they can be pasted any number of times.

◆Copying/Cutting characters

1 **On the character entry screen,** MENU ▶ 1 **or** 2

- On the message text entry screen, press MENU 3 1 to copy or MENU 3 2 to cut.

2 **Select the start point**

Selecting the whole sentence : MENU ▶ ●

- On the message text entry screen, press [mail] to select the whole sentence.

3 **Select the end point**

The characters in the selected range are copied or cut.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : MENU ▶ ●

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : [camera] ▶ ●

Searching the specified character : Move the cursor to the end position ▶ [i-mode]

Quick search starts.

◆Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the permitted number of characters, a message appears indicating not all characters can be pasted. Select "Yes" to paste the phrase with excessive characters deleted. Note that, when the permitted number of characters is exceeded on the entry screen of message text, the characters cannot be pasted.

1 **On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste characters ▶** MENU 3

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

- Press MENU 3 3 on the message text entry screen.

✔INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters matches with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is available. Hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address entry field.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into the entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

KUTEN code input

Entering characters using KUTEN code

Characters, numbers and symbols on the Kuten code list can be entered using 4-digit code.

- For "Kuten Code List", refer to PDF version "Kuten Code List" in the CD-ROM attached.

<Example> Entering "〒" (code number 0209)

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [4] [2] ▶ Enter the 4-digit Kuten code ([0] [2] [0] [9]) ▶ [●]

- Press [MENU] [5] [2] on the signature editing screen.

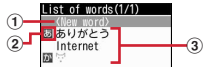
Save word

Saving often-used words

Saving frequently used words makes it easy to produce them during character conversion.

- Up to 200 items can be saved.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [7] [4] [1] ▶ "<New word>"



① Select when saving new word
② Icon indicating the beginning of the line
③ Saved words
Listed in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

- To check the saved word, move the cursor to the word and press [📷]. Edit it by pressing [●].
- To delete a word, move the cursor to the word and press [MENU], and select "Delete". Select "Delete all" to delete all saved words.

2 Enter the word to register in the word field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)

3 Enter the reading in the reading field (up to 8 characters in hiragana)

- The word with the following characters entered at the beginning cannot be saved.
  - を, ん, ぁ , ぃ , ぅ , ぇ , ぉ , っ , ゃ , ゅ , ょ , ゎ , ゛ (Voiced sound), ゜ (Semi-voiced sound), ー (Long vowels)
- Any blank spaces entered are deleted after saving.

4 [📷]

- When editing a saved word, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Overwrite" to overwrite to the original word or "New" to save as a new word leaving the original word.

❖Saving words during character entry

1 On the character entry screen, [MENU] [6] [1]

- Press [MENU] [7] [1] on the signature editing screen.

2 Select the start point

Selecting a whole sentence : [MENU] ▶ [●] ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press [✉] to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the word entry field.
Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : [MENU] ▶ [●]
Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : [📷] ▶ [●]

4 Enter the reading ▶ [📷]

✔INFORMATION

- To save a new word when 200 words are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved words in the list.
- When a character string containing a line feed is selected, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Password manager

Registering passwords in advance

With authentication information such as user names and passwords registered, you can quote and enter saved information to a site or website that requires such information.

- To use Password manager, you need to enable Fingerprint authentication.→P104
- Quoting registered password→P344
- Up to 50 items can be registered.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 7 ▶ **Authenticate**

2 📷

Deleting : Move the cursor to a title ▶ MENU ▶ 2-4 ▶ **"Yes"**

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the title of the password.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 📷.

Changing the order : Move the cursor to a title ▶ MENU ▶ 5 **or** 6

3 **Enter the title in the title field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)**

4 **Enter the password in the password field (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters)**

5 📷

❖Saving words during character entry

You can select entered characters and save them as a password.

1 **On the character entry screen,** MENU 6 3

- Press MENU 7 3 on the signature editing screen.

2 **Select the start position**

Selecting a whole sentence : MENU ▶ ● ▶ **Go to Step 4**

- On the message text entry screen, press ✉ to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 **Select the end position**

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence : MENU ▶ ●

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence : 📷 ▶ ●

4 **Authenticate**

The characters in the selected range are displayed in the password entry field.

5 **Enter a title name** ▶ 📷

DL dictionary

Using downloaded dictionary

You can set words saved in downloaded dictionaries for conversion to Japanese to be displayed as conversion options.

- Up to 5 items can be used simultaneously.
- Downloading dictionaries→P172

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 4 2 ▶ **Select the dictionary to use** ▶ 📷

2-touch input method

Entering characters using 2-touch input method

- Set the input method to 2-touch input.→P348
- When 2-touch guide is "ON", the guidance is available only with the horizontal display.
- Even with 2-touch guide set to "ON", no guidance appears during in-line entry or 1Seg display. And, guidance does not appear by some functions.

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 MENU **[Phonebook & Logs]** 2 ▶ あa **twice to switch to the kanji/hiragana mode** ▶ **Enter "ろっぽんぎ"** ▶ 📷



2-touch guide on horizontal display

"ろ" : 9 5

"っ" : 8 0 4 3

"ぽ" : 8 0 6 5 0 5
"ん" : 0 3
"ぜ" : 2 2 0 4

- During character entry, the following operations are available.
  8 0 : Switches between upper and lower cases.
  ✂ : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).
- Some fields may not permit a line feed.
- A blank is entered in □ part in 2-touch guide.

2 ● ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

Text input method

Setting input method

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 4 5 ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷

Input method : Set to "5-touch" or "2-touch".
Input prediction : Set if you display the option selection list.
Auto cursor : Set the time period before the cursor to move to the right automatically.
- Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor.
- Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in approx. 1.5 seconds.
- Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in approx. 1 second.
- Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in approx. 0.5 seconds.

2-touch guide : Set if you display 2-touch guide with horizontal display.

❖Changing settings during character entry

- The settings cannot be changed before fixing characters or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed.
- During in-line entry, you can switch input modes or input methods, and change Auto cursor.

1 On the character entry screen, MENU 7 ▶ 1-3

- Press MENU 8 on the message text entry screen.
- To switch "Use 2-touch" and "Use 5-touch", press 1.
- To switch JPN prediction ON/OFF, press 2.
- To set the time period before Auto cursor moves, press 3 and set the time by pressing 1-4.
- 4 can be selected during 2-touch input to switch 2-touch guide ON/OFF.
- 5 is displayed when Multilingual setting is "ON" and switching show/hide of stroke guide is available.

✔INFORMATION

- When entering 2 characters both assigned to the same key successively with Auto cursor set to "OFF", enter the first character, press ○ to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character. To enter "あい", press 1 ○ 1 1.

Entering characters using T9 input method

You can enter Chinese (simplified characters) by entering Pinyin (alphabet) or a few strokes of kanji with T9 input method.

- T9 input method allows you to enter characters by selecting from conversion options with simple key operation (for Chinese entry, entering Chinese reading by pressing a key that alphabet is assigned once).
- The entered character is added to Predict dict. data and can be displayed at the beginning in a conversion option list. You can also reset Predict dict. data to restore to the default.→P343
- Only the following character entry screens are available.
  - Subject and message text entry screens of i-mode mail (except Decome-Anime), message text entry screen of SMS
  - Folder name entry screen of Mail
  - Signature editing screen
  - Text edit screen of Quick reply format
  - Saving phrase screen
  - Search mail (subject/body) of quick search
- Set Chinese entry mode.→P348
- Traditional Chinese entry or In-line entry are not supported.

◆Switching to Chinese input mode <Multilingual setting>

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 4 6 ▶ 1 or 2

❖When switched to Chinese input mode

- Chinese font is given priority to display on the screen etc. that can be changed by "Font style" in Font & Language.
- When saving Chinese that is unavailable in Japanese font to Save word or Password manager during character entry or when pasting to the character entry screen that is unavailable to Chinese, the Chinese character is replaced to " · ".
- Even in Chinese entry mode, entering with switching to 5-touch input method or 2-touch input method is available.

✔INFORMATION

- For the function that supports Chinese entry, the character string containing unavailable character in Japanese font is displayed even when Multilingual setting is "OFF". However, when you edit or use the character string, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with " · " etc. In that case, a message may appear indicating replacement with " · ".
- If you copy or cut the character string containing unavailable character in Japanese font and change Multilingual setting to "OFF", the character string cannot be pasted on the entry screen of message text or signature editing.
- If a message is sent by mail, infrared communication or iC communication contains Chinese characters unavailable in Japanese font, the characters are not displayed properly on the receiver's mobile phone unless it supports Chinese display
- Chinese characters may be displayed on the character entry screen that does not support Chinese entry, but it is replaced by " · " if you try to edit it. Once the Chinese characters are replaced, you cannot restore them again.

◆ Entering by Pinyin

You can enter Chinese Pinyin by alphabet.

- Press a key that an entry alphabet is assigned to enter character.
- Set Pinyin entry mode.→P340

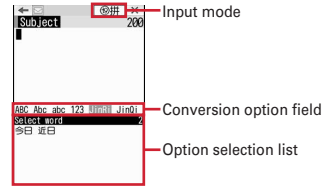
<Example> Entering "今日 (Today)" in the mail creation screen

For entering Chinese Pinyin by alphabet, enter "jinri".

1 On the mail creation screen, select the subject field ▶ Enter "jinri" in Pinyin entry mode

- Press each key that an entry alphabet is assigned once.

"j" : 5 "i" : 4 "n" : 6 "r" : 7 "i : 4



- During character entry, the following operations are available.

#: Specify the delimiter of clause

- " · " is displayed as delimiter symbol.

(more than twice) : Switch tone

Entering symbols :

Press 1 and select "符号" in the conversion option field to enter symbols.

Entering one-byte alphanumeric characters :

Select an alphanumeric character string displayed in the conversion option field with 3 characters.

- All caps, initial caps or uncapitalized characters are entered according to the selected string.

Entering only with consonant :

Enter only with consonant and select "简拼" in the conversion option field to display option selection. Go to Step 3.

- For "今日" (jin ri), press the key 5 (j) and 7 (r) that consonant are assigned once to enter.

2 Move the cursor to "JinRi" by ○

3 ○ ▶ Select "今日" ▶ ●

- When there are multiple pages of option selection list, press ⏩ or ✉ to change the page.
- Before selecting options, press CLR to return to the conversion option field.

◆ Entering by Stroke

Enter the strokes in order of writing kanji and select the character from the conversion options.

- Set Stroke input mode.→P340
- Enter by the following 6 strokes.

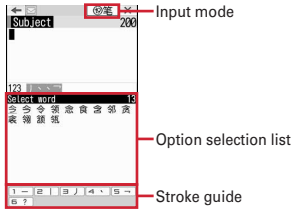
Keypad	Stroke	Description
1	—	Horizontal line
2	|	Vertical line
3	丿	Diagonal line from upper line to lower left
4	丶	Dot
5	乛	Horizontal line and subsequently downward vertical line, diagonal line or line of flexure, vertical line and subsequently line to right, etc.
6	?	Select in case of other than the above or when the order of writing is unknown

<Example> Entering "今日 (Today)" in the subject field in the mail creation screen

1 On the mail creation screen, select the subject field ▶ Enter "今" in Stroke mode

- Press each key that a stroke is assigned once.

"今" : 3 4 4 5



- During character entry, the following operations are available.

: Specify the delimiter of clause

- " ・ " is displayed as delimiter symbol.

Switching show/hide of stroke guide :

Each time you press ✉ in Stroke mode, show/hide of stroke guide is switched. Note that, you can switch only during character entry on the entry screen of message text or signature editing.

Entering one-byte alphanumeric characters :

Select an alphanumeric character string displayed in the conversion option field with 3 characters.

- All caps, initial caps or uncapitalized characters are entered according to the selected string.

2 ● ▶ Select "今"

Selecting a radical :

Select an option that a dotted line appears under the character from the option selection list.

- When there are multiple pages of option selection list, press i⁄α or ✉ to change the page.
- Before selecting options, press CLR to return to the conversion option field.

3 Enter "日"

- Press each key that a stroke is assigned once.

"日" : 2 5 1 1

4 ● ▶ Select "日" ▶ ●

✔INFORMATION

- Restoring the character string to the previous state, inserting or deleting characters, or inserting a line feed are the same as entering Japanese.→P341
- Showing stroke guide is unavailable in Multi window while watching 1Seg.

Touch entry

Entering characters in basic style

- Touch operations→P34
- In-line entry mode is not supported. And, even if setting an option selection list to be displayed, the option selection list is not displayed.
- Only the following character entry screens are available.
  - i-mode site screen, Full Browser screen, authentication screen for user name, password, etc.
  - Terminal security code entry screen, PIN code entry screen

◆ Entering characters on a browser screen

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in the character entry field of i-mode site screen

1 Touch the character entry field of i-mode site screen

The character entry screen appears.



Switching input modes :

When [TextMode] is touched, the input mode list is displayed, and touch any of [Kana] [Alphameric] [Num] [Katakana] [Symbol S] [Symbol L] to switch the input mode.

2 Touch [TextMode]▶[Kana] to switch kanji/hiragana mode▶Touch character buttons

- The character button only shows the first letter of each line in Japanese syllabary.

"ろ" : [ら9]▶[ろ]
"っ" : [た4]▶[っ]
"ぽ" : [は6]▶[゛゜] (twice)▶[ぽ]
"ん" : [わ0]▶[ん]
"ぎ" : [か2]▶[゛゜]▶[ぎ]

- During character entry, the following operations are available.

[A/A] : Switch two-byte/one-byte character
[A/a] : Switch upper/lower case
[Back⮌] : Return to the first level of each input mode on the character entry screen
[PrevPage⬅]/[NextPage➡] : Display previous/next symbol list

3 Touch [Convert]

- You can also touch [▲] or [▼] to convert.
- Touch [Clear] or [←] to restore the state before conversion.
- Not to convert, do not touch [Convert] and go to Step 4.

Displaying conversion options list :

When the desired character is not displayed by touching [Convert], touch [▲] or [▼], or touch [Convert] again to display the conversion options list.

Displaying kana options list :

While entering hiragana characters, press [Kana] to display a list of katakana, alphabetic characters, numbers, dates, times, etc.

Entering pictograms/symbols :

Touch [Pict/Sym] or [Symbol]

- Operating procedure→P343
- When there are multiple pages, slide quickly right or left on the display (up or down in Pictogram and Symbol list), or touch [PrevPage]/[NextPage] to change the page.

4 Touch [OK]

Inserting characters :

Press any of [▲] [▼] [◀] [▶] to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters :

Touch [Clear] or [←] to delete 1 character at the cursor position. When the cursor is at the end of an entered character, 1 character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

Inserting a line feed :

Move the cursor to the position to insert a line feed and touch [↵].

- For Kana, touch [わ0] and [↵] in order.
- For Alphameric, touch [↵] in second level of each character button.
- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

Displaying submenu :

Touch [MENU].

- The same operation as key operation is available (except copying/cutting, saving word/password and Text input method).
- Touch [DelAll] to delete all entered characters.

5 Touch [OK]

✔INFORMATION

- Some two-byte symbols can be entered. For pictograms, only pictograms to be displayed in a conversion options list can be entered.

◆ Entering security code

When the terminal security code entry screen or the PIN code entry screen appears, enter the security code by touching corresponding numeric keys.

- When the fingerprint authentication screen appears, fingerprint authentication is available.→P106

1 Touch a security code to be entered

2 Touch [OK]

- In basic style (vertical), the same operation is available even with touching [E].
- Touch [←] to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor. In basic style (vertical), the same operation is available even with touching [←].

Voice Mail service 354
Call Waiting 355
Call Forwarding Service 355
Nuisance Call Blocking Service 356
Caller ID Request Service 356
Dual Network Service 356
Switching language for voice prompts ..... English guidance 357
Service Numbers 357
Set arrival act 357
Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call ..... Arrival call act 357
Setting remote control ..... Remote control 358
Multi Number 358
2in1 358
OFFICEED 361
Registering new network services
..... Additional service (Register USSD) 361

Available Network Services

- You can use the DOCOMO network services below with FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly charge
Voice Mail service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
English guidance	Not required	Free
Multi Number	Required	Charged
2in1	Required	Charged
OFFICEED	Required	Charged
Public mode (Drive mode)→P67	Not required	Free
Public mode (Power OFF)→P67	Not required	Free
Melody Call→P85	Required	Charged

- Network services are not available out of service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- Contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
- "OFFICEED" is a service requiring subscription. For details, refer to DOCOMO's business website (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/).
- **This manual describes the outline of network services from the aspect of the operation procedure using Menu on FOMA terminal. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".**

Voice Mail service

If there is an incoming voice or videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or if you do not answer the call within the specified ring time, this service answers the caller with a reply message and stores a voice message for you.

- To give priority to Voice Mail service over Record message, set ring time for Voice Mail service shorter than a response time for Record message.
- When voice or videophone call is not answered with Voice Mail activated, it is recorded as a missed call and (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- When connected to the Voice Mail service center using Chara-den, DTMF operation is unavailable. Operate by switching to Send DTMF from submenu.→P61
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, check setting, playing message and setting of Voice Mail service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.
- For Play messages and Voice Mail service, select either a voice or videophone call first. Other items are common for both.

❖Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Step 1 : Activate the service.
Step 2 : The caller leaves a voice message.
Step 3 : Play the voice message.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 1 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

<Voice Mail service>

[Activate] : 1 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.

[Set ring time] : 1 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When this is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.

[Deactivate] : 1 3 ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : 1 4 ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

[Play messages] : 1 5 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

- 1 indicates the number of new messages that the voice prompts presents when they are played. This number does not include saved messages.

[Voice Mail setting] : 1 6 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

[Set V.phoneVoiceMail] : 1 7 ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

[Check messages] : 1 8 ▶ "Yes"

<Tone/Vibration message notification>

[Ring/Vibrate Msg.Alert] : 2 ▶ Set required items ▶ [camera]

An alert sounds when a new message is recorded. The terminal vibrates according to the setting in Call Vibrate Alert in Vibrate effect.

- Set Voice Mail alert to "ON" and select a notification melody.

<Notify missed call>

[Activate] : 3 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" or "No"

If a call is received with the terminal turned OFF or out of service area, you are notified by SMS of the call when the terminal is turned ON or moved into service area.

- Selecting "Yes" for receive notification from calls with Caller ID notifies you of only incoming calls with Caller ID, and selecting "No" notifies you of all incoming calls.

[Deactivate] : 3 2 ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : 3 3 ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.

<Hide Voice Mail icon>

[Hide Voice Mail icon] : 4 ▶ "Yes"

The voice message icon disappears from the stand-by display.

Call Waiting

When there is another incoming voice call during a voice call, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current voice call on hold and then answer the other voice call. You can also make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold.

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival call act to "Answer" in advance. Otherwise, the call waiting does not answer another incoming voice call during a call, even if it is activated.
- To answer the other incoming voice call during a voice call, perform the following operations.
  [ ] : Put the current call on hold and answers the incoming call.
  [ ] : The current call is disconnected and the calling screen of the incoming call appears. Press [ ] and answer the call.
- During Call Waiting, you can switch the party to talk to by pressing [ ].
- When making a voice call to another party during a current voice call, press [MENU] and select "Dial up".
- Even for an incoming call that Call Waiting does not start, you hear the call waiting ring tone. In this case, a message indicating that you can answer the call by disconnecting the current call appears.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [2] [1] ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : [1] ▶ "Yes"
[Deactivate] : [2] ▶ "Yes"
[Check setting] : [3] ▶ "Yes"

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service forwards voice calls and videophone calls to the phone of your home or office when there is an incoming voice/videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or you do not answer the call within the specified ring time.

- To make Call Forwarding Service override Record message when both are activated, set ring time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than response time for Record message.
- If an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered with Call forwarding activated, it is recorded as a missed call and [2] (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, and check setting of Call Forwarding Service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.

❖Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Activate Call Forwarding Service.
Step 2 : Register the phone number of forwarding destination.
Step 3 : Call comes in to FOMA terminal.
Step 4 : Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [2] [2] ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : [1] ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [ ] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.
- You can select a phone number from phonebook with [MENU], from Received calls with [ ], and from Redial with [ ].

[Deactivate] : 2 ▶ "Yes"

[Register forwarding number] : 3 ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [Camera] ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- You can set Register The Forwarding Number when the service is active, and set Register The Forwarding Number as well as Activate when the service is inactive.
- For B Number, only Register The Forwarding Number can be set.
- To select a phone number, use the same procedures as to activate Call Forwarding service.

[Set if forwarding number busy] : 4 ▶ "Yes"

A call is answered by Voice Mail if the forwarding number is busy.

[Check setting] : 5 ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

◆ Setting whether to give guidance for Call forwarding

1 1 4 2 9 ▶ [Call] ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, calls from the registered phone number are answered with a call rejection announcement or announcement and image, and automatically disconnected.

- If a call is received from a caller set to reject calls from, the ring alert does not ring and the call is not recorded in Received calls.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] 8 9 3 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register caller] : 1 ▶ "Yes"

Register the phone number of the last call you answered as a nuisance caller.

- You cannot register a call you did not answer such as a missed call.

[Register selected No] : 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [Camera] ▶ "Yes"

Register the specified phone number as a nuisance caller.

- You can select a phone number from phonebook with [MENU], from Received calls with [Received calls], and from Redial with [Redial].

[Delete all entries] : 3 ▶ "Yes"

[Delete last entry] : 4 ▶ "Yes"

Delete one phone number registered last. Repeating this step enables you to delete the most recently registered phone numbers one by one.

[Check the number of entries] : 5 ▶ "Yes"

Caller ID Request Service

An incoming call without the caller ID is answered with an announcement or announcement and image requesting caller ID, and automatically disconnected.

- An incoming call rejected by Caller ID Request Service is not recorded in Received calls and [Received calls] 2 (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) does not appear on the stand-by display.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] 8 4 2 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : 1 ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate] : 2 ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : 3 ▶ "Yes"

Dual Network Service

You can use the mova terminal with the same phone number on FOMA terminal. In a location out of the FOMA service and inside the mova service area, you can communicate with others by using mova terminal.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Operation to switch Dual Network Service is performed from FOMA terminal/ mova terminal not using the service.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 5 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Dual network switching] : 1 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Enter the network security code**
You can switch the network to use with your FOMA terminal.
[Check setting] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

English guidance

Switching language for voice prompts

You can set to display in English the guidance for setting network services such as Voice Mail service and voice guidance notifying out of service area etc.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 4 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Guidance setting] : 1 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ 1-3
- Select the language for the guidance played to the caller, then select the language for the receiver.

[Check setting] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

Service Numbers

You can make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office or to general inquiries.
- The item varies or is not displayed by some UIM types.→P46
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 6 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[ドコモ故障問合せ] : 1 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **故障お問い合わせ(repair office) is dialed**
[ドコモ総合案内・受付] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **General Inquiries is dialed**

Set arrival act

You can activate/deactivate or check the Arrival call act settings.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 8 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Activate] : 1 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Deactivate] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Check setting] : 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

Arrival call act

Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call

If subscribing to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service and/or Call Waiting, you can set how to answer voice/videophone calls and 64K data communications received during a call.
- Unless you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting, you cannot answer calls received during a call.
- To use Arrival call acts, set Set arrival acts to Activate in advance. Note that, you do not need to set Set arrival acts to Activate when Call Waiting Service is activated.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 9 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Answer] : 1
- When Call Waiting Service is activated, the service starts; when the service is deactivated, you can answer an incoming call after ending the current call. While receiving a call, you can select an operation from submenu.→P65

[Voice Mail] : 2
- The received voice/videophone calls are connected to Voice Mail service.

[Call Forwarding] : 3
- The incoming calls during a call are forwarded to the registered phone number. However, data received via 64K data communication during another data communication is not forwarded.

[Call Rejection] : 4
- All calls are rejected.

Remote control

Setting remote control

You can access services such as Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone land-line phones, DOCOMO mobile phones, payphones, etc.

- When using Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service etc. overseas, Remote control must be activated in advance.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 2 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Activate] : 1 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Deactivate] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Check setting] : 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

Multi Number

In addition to Basic Number, you can add and use up to 2 more numbers as phone numbers of FOMA terminal : Additional No.1 and No.2.

- Removing or replacing UIM may cause Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) saved in FOMA terminal to be deleted. In this case, save the settings again.
- The name of Default phone number or Additional phone number is displayed on the incoming/outgoing call screen, Redial or Received calls screen.
- When making a call from Redial/Received calls, a name of Multi Number used for the previous call is displayed and that number is used.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 9 7 ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

[Set Multi Number] : 1 ▶ 1-3 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Check setting] : 2 ▶ **"Yes"**
[Phone Number Setting] : 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- Enter the name and phone number of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2.
- The name and phone number in Basic Number and Phone number is the one from User information. If User information is not set, "基本契約番号 (Basic number)" and the subscribing terminal phone number appears.
- When Multi number call is "Enable", you can select a Multi number to make a call from the submenu for outgoing calls.

[Incoming calls melody setting] : 4 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

- Set Individual setting to "ON", and set the ring alert and incoming call image for each Additional number. Setting operations are the same as the one for Call alert.

◆ Selecting a phone number and making a call

- When Multi number call of Number Settings is "Disable", Multi number cannot be selected.

1 **Enter a phone number** ▶ MENU 4 ▶ 1-3 ▶ MENU **or** i-αppli

- When Caller ID from Call option is set to "Unspecified", the Caller ID from Set multi number is applied.

2in1

This service allows you to use 2 phone numbers/mail addresses for 1 mobile phone; you can use FOMA terminal as if you have two different mobile phones by using the specific mode function.

- For details of 2in1, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P325
  Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF so that the user information is updated correctly.

■ Modes for 2in1

- Operation of each mode for 2in1→P360

A mode : Allow to use your phone number (Number A) to make calls, send/receive i-mode mails (Address A) and view the related data.
B mode : Allow to use 2in1 phone number (Number B) to make calls, send/receive i-mode mails (Address B) and view the related data.
Dual mode : Allow to use functions of both A and B.

✔INFORMATION

- In B mode, SMS To function is unavailable.
- All data is deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode in the following cases.
  - Deleting all items of recorded messages, voice memos, redial, received calls, phonebook entries, mail logs, mail sorting methods
  - Deleting operation except "One item" or "Selected items" for Inbox
  - Deleting mail folder and/or phonebook group
  - Deleting all data
- When making a call in Dual mode with an external device connected, Number A is used.
- i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

◆ Setting 2in1

Set each option with 2in1 ON.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 8 7 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Operate by selecting a menu item**

- If 2in1 is already ON, 2in1 setting screen appears after the authentication.

<2in1 Mode switching>

[2in1 Mode switching] : 1 ▶ 1-3

<2in1 setting>

[2in1 setting] : 2 ▶ **Select a mode** ▶ **Phonebook** ▶ **Select a phonebook entry** ▶ 📷 ▶ **"Yes"**

You can set phonebook entries displayed for each mode.

- For "Common", Phonebook entries appear in both A and B modes.

  A : Phonebook entries in A mode B : Phonebook entries in B mode

  AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes

<Stand-by for mode>

[For Dual mode] : 3 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image** ▶ **"Yes"**

[For B mode] : 3 2 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image** ▶ **"Yes"**

<Set call/receive No.>

[Ring alert for No.B] : 4 1 ▶ 1-3

- Setting operations are identical to setting Ring alerts & Sounds.
- Ring alert sounds according to this setting regardless of the setting of Notify/Not notify of caller ID.

[Identification mark] : 4 2 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Text strings such as "発信中 (Dialing)" in Identification mark with Mark set to ON is decorated on the incoming/outgoing call or calling screen.

- The setting of Number A also applies to Identification mark.

<2in1 function OFF>

[2in1 function OFF] : 5 ▶ **"Yes"**

<Receive avoidance>

[Change rcv. avoidance] : 6 1 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 📷

Incoming calls from the number with Receive avoidance applied is restricted in any mode.

- Mode link for avoid. should be deactivated.

[Check rcv. avoidance] : 6 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- You can change settings from the submenu.

[Mode link for avoid.] : 6 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

When activated, only Number A is accepted in A mode and so is Number B in B mode.

- When activated, 2in1 mode switching is unavailable out of service area.

[Rcv. avoidance(Int.)] : 6 4 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

- You need to deactivate Mode link for avoid.
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.

✔INFORMATION

<2in1 mode switching>

- Even when 2in1 is OFF, you can set 2in1 to ON and activate 2in1 mode switching by holding down 2 for 1 second or more and performing authentication. When 2in1 is ON, you can activate 2in1 mode switching in the same way.

<2in1 setting>

- When you subscribe to 2in1 for the first time, all saved phonebook entries at the time are set to "A". If you re-subscribe to 2in1, the previous 2in1 setting is used.
- If a new phonebook entry is saved in UIM, it is operated the same as in "Common" regardless of the 2in1 mode.

<Stand-by for mode>

- The message displayed after selecting an image is identical to setting Stand-by display.

❖2in1 function in each mode

Only items with different actions depending on modes are listed (items with same actions as in A mode are excluded).

Service		A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice/ Videophone Calls	Call	Number A	Number B	Select when dialing*1
	Receive*2	Depend on Receive avoidance		
Phonebook	Display*3	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	Name conversion*4	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	New entry	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Receive all items via infrared communication/iC transmission/ Bluetooth communication	Depend on Ph.book 2in1 setting at sending side*5		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission/ Bluetooth communication	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy all items from microSD card	Depend on 2in1 setting when copying*5		
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy to UIM phonebook	"Common" (Ph.book 2in1 setting is not set)		
	Copy from UIM phonebook	"A"	"B"	"A"
Display redial/received calls		Call from/ Receive to Number A	Call from/ Receive to Number B	All calls/ receptions
Mail/SMS	Display	Mail/SMS sent or received to/ from Address A/ Number A	Mail sent or received to/from Address B/SMS received to Number B	All
	Send	Address A/ Number A	Address B*6	Select when composing mail*7, 8/ Number A*6
	Receive*9	All		
	Sorting method*10	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	Add new sorting method	"Common"	"Common"	Select when registering*11
	Receive all items via infrared communication/iC transmission	Sender's state is taken over		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission	Address A/Number A		
	Copy all items from microSD card	State at the time of copying is taken over		
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	Address A/Number A		
	Move/Copy to UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy after deleting the information of your number		
	Move/Copy from UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy all as Number A	Unavailable	Move/Copy all as Number A
i-αppli		Available	Available*12	Available*13
Display User information		Number A/ Address A	Number B/ Address B	All

*1 You can select a number to send when calling to a party in Call option, the schedule or custom menu.

When calling from phonebook, Quick dial or Headset quick dial, the call is made from Number A for the party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and the call is made from Number B for the party set to "B".
When calling from recorded messages, voice memo while talking, redial, received calls or mail logs, the call is made according to the number at sending/receiving.

*2 Specified caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller is not influenced by Ph.book 2in1 setting.
*3 Privacy mode operations take precedence when Secret attribute is set.
*4 If the phone number or mail address is saved in the phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook is displayed while calling/receiving/ringing/talking, as the sender of received mail, as the receiver of sent/unsent mail, as the requestor name of Location request or the location history log screen of GPS.
*5 If the sender or the terminal used for copying all items is incompatible with 2in1, all items in Ph.book 2in1 setting are set to "A".
*6 For B Number, SMS is unavailable.
*7 Sender address can be switched into Address A/Address B.
*8 For the party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, Address A is set and for the party set to "B", Address B is set. However, in the case of multiple receivers, a receiving address is set according to the last mail address in Ph.book 2in1 setting.
*9 When a message is received to Address B/Number B in A mode, or to Address A/Number A in B mode, mail ring alert, light and vibrator do not operate.
*10 Sorting methods list of "B" does not appear in A mode, and that of "A" does not appear in B mode.
*11 Select from Address A/Address B/Common. Sorting methods of "A" are set on Address A, "B" on Address B, "Common" on Common.
*12 Message i-αppli and i-αppli stand-by display are unavailable.
*13 i-αppli stand-by display is unavailable.

OFFICEED

"OFFICEED" is an intragroup flat-rate service provided with specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). This service requires a separate subscription to use.
For details, refer to DOCOMO business website (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/). (In Japanese only)

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 6 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Area display setting] : 1 ▶ 1 or 2
- OFFICEED appears on stand-by display in the OFFICEED area with this option set to ON.

[Activate forwarding] : 2 ▶ "Yes"
[Deactivate forwarding] : 3 ▶ "Yes"
[Check fwd setting] : 4 ▶ "Yes"

Additional service (Register USSD)

Registering new network services

When a new network service is introduced by DOCOMO, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 9 1 ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register USSD] : 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a number ▶ ● ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ ●
- USSD code is a service code given by DOCOMO and is used to set network services etc. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.
- To use an additional service, select the service.
- To delete an additional service, move the cursor to the service and press MENU, select 1 or 2 and select "Yes".

[Record reply message] : 2 ▶ Select a number ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a reply message (up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters) ▶ [camera]

- When the additional service is executed, this message appears if the registered code was returned by the service center as a response.
- To delete a registered message, move the cursor to the message and press MENU, select 1 or 2 and select "Yes".

Overseas use

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) 364
Available services overseas 365
Preparing and checking for overseas use 366
Making a call from overseas 368
Receiving a call from overseas 369
Setting a search method for network ..... Network search mode 369
Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to ..... PLMN setting 369
Switching networks ..... 3G/GSM setting 370
Displaying current Area service status ..... Area service status 370
Setting stand-by display for international roaming 370
Setting roaming guidance ..... Roaming guidance 370
Setting reception for international roaming 371
Using network service during international roaming ..... Network Service 371

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to make voice calls and access i-mode using network of affiliated telecommunications carriers even overseas, outside FOMA network services area.

- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. If you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription again.
- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005 but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- There are some charging plans unavailable.
- UIM (green/white) compatible with WORLD WING must be installed in FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the following documents before using FOMA terminal overseas.
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]"
  - DOCOMO International Services website
  - "海外ご利用ガイド (User's guide overseas)" preinstalled in My Document of Data Box
- Country codes of major countries→P364
- International call access codes of major countries→P367
- International prefix numbers for the universal number→P367
- The service is available in areas that 3G Network or GSM/GPR Network covers. Also, it is available in countries or districts where 3G 859 MHz is applied.

■ Overseas network

There are 3 types of networks overseas, W-CDMA (3G), GPRS and GSM.

Network	Description
W-CDMA(3G)	Third generation mobile communications network compliant with world standard 3GPP*1.
GPRS*2	A 2.5th mobile communication network that high speed packet communication using GSM communication method is available.
GSM*3	Second generation mobile communications network in digital method most prevailing worldwide.

*1 Abbreviation of 3rd Generation Partnership Project. 3GPP is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

*2 Abbreviation of General Packet Radio Service. By speeding up GSM, data communication such as packet communication is facilitated.

*3 Abbreviation of Global System for Mobile Communications. The world's most prevailing mobile network system.

■ Country codes of major countries

A country code is used to make an international call or to use Int'l call assist.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Fiji	679	Russia	7
Finland	358	Singapore	65
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

- For codes of other countries and details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

Available services overseas

Available communication services vary by the telecommunications carrier and the network of the country you stay.

- Call and stand-by durations available may be nearly halved for some network or other conditions in the country you stay.
- A packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.

◆ Network and available communication services

- Some services may be unavailable depending on the telecommunications carrier or area. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
	FOMA*1	GPRS	GSM
Voice call*2	○	○	○
Videophone call*2, 3	○	×	×
i-mode/Full Browser*4	○	○	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel*5	○	○	×
i-concier*5, 6	○	○	×
i-Widget*5, 7	○	○	×
Position location of GPS	○	○	×
Packet communication (PC connection)*8	○	○	×

*1 When FOMA (red) appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS and Position location of GPS are available.

*2 When using 2in1, Number B is not available for making calls.
When using Multi Number, additional numbers are not available for making calls.

*3 Make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.

*4 Connections from TVlink list to the data broadcasting site is included. Note that Activate 1Seg is unavailable overseas.
Preinstalled i-αppli, "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" is available also overseas.

*5 Packet communication fee is charged each time you receive information. Also, auto update for Basic channel of i-Channel and communications by multiple applications of i-Widget are included.

*6 International Settings of i-concier is required.→P183

*7 i-Widget roaming set is required.→P254

*8 64K data communication connecting (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

■ SMS

SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas service providers except DOCOMO.

- When sending SMS to FOMA terminal, enter its phone number in the same way as in Japan.
- When sending SMS to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier except DOCOMO, enter "+" and "Country code" before the receiver's phone number. Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" and "receiver's mobile phone number" in this order (Omit leading "0", if exists, from the receiver's phone number).
- If SMS sent to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier contains characters incompatible with the receiver's terminal, they may not be correctly displayed.

◆ Network Services

When subscribing to network services, you can also perform operations such as setting/canceling from overseas.

- Some network services that can be set or canceled may be unavailable depending on an overseas telecommunications carrier.

Preparing and checking for overseas use

- Overseas usage fees are charged together with your monthly usage fees. For some overseas telecommunications carriers used, overseas usage fees is charged in a bill of the next or subsequent month. Also, usages in the same charging period may be charged in different months.

◆ Preparing before leaving Japan

❖Battery charge

- Handling precautions of AC adapter→P18
- Charging battery using AC adapter→P48

❖Using i-mode

■ Setting in Japan

iMenu→English→Options→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

■ Setting overseas

iMenu→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

❖Using network services

When using Voice Mail, Call Forwarding Service, etc. overseas, you need to subscribe to each network services and activate Remote control in advance.→P358

◆ Usage in the country you stay

■ Connecting to network

When FOMA terminal is turned ON overseas, it is automatically connected to an available network.→P369

■ Viewing display

- The icon indicating the network in use and the operator name being connected appear.→P370
- Icon definitions are as follows. Icons do not appear while using FOMA network.
  3G / 3G : Connected to 3G Network GPRS : Connected to GPRS Network
  GSM : Connected to GSM Network

■ Date/Time

- When setting Auto time adjust to "ON", the time or time difference of the clock of FOMA terminal is corrected when time/time difference correction information is received from the network of the overseas telecommunications carrier you are connected. The corrected timing differs by the overseas telecommunications carrier.
- Auto time adjust may not be available overseas. In this case, set Date & time manually.→P52

■ Caller ID notification

Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

❖Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back cover of this manual. Please be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after loss or theft.

■ **International call access codes of major countries (table 1)**

Area	Number	Area	Number
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	United Arab Emirates	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

- For codes of other countries and details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

■ **International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)**

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Bulgaria	00	Norway	00
Canada	011	Peru	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

- Some of the above numbers may be unavailable.
- Universal numbers are only available for the countries listed above.
- When a call is made from a mobile phone, a local call charge is required.
- When a call is made from a hotel, you may be charged for a phone usage fee. Before using the phone, ask the hotel about it.
- In many cases, Universal numbers are unavailable from mobile phones, pay phones or hotels.

◆Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

Making a call from overseas

You can make voice and videophone calls from overseas using international roaming service.

- For videophone calls, the other party's image displayed on your FOMA terminal may be disturbed or call connection may be unavailable for a reason on the connected terminal.
- If you register names and country codes of frequently-called countries by Int'l call assist (→P63), dialing operation can be performed easily.

◆ Making an international call (including Japan)

1 **0 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ ☎ or 📷**

- Press 0 for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit the leading "0" in area code (city code). (The leading "0" may be required to dial to land-line phones in Italy etc.)

❖ Selecting country code to make an international call (including Japan)

You can select a country code registered in Country code setting in Int'l call assist (→P63).

1 **Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Select Call type field ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Select Int'l call field ▶ 2 ▶ Select Country code field ▶ Select Country code ▶ MENU or ☎ ▶ "Yes"**

Leading "0" of an area code (city code) is converted to "+" and the selected country code.

- When "V.phone" is selected for "Call type", press 📧 to select Chara-den to display during a call.

❖ Making an international call (including Japan) by using the phonebook

- It applies only to phone numbers beginning with "0" in phonebook.
- Country code of Auto switch of Int'l call assist (→P63) must be set to "ON", and the Country code setting must to be set to the country to make a call to in advance.

1 **🔍 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ ☎ or 📧 ▶ "Yes"**

Leading "0" of the area code (city code) is converted to "+" and country code set.

◆ Making a call inside the country you stay

- A call may be made without displaying the message.

1 **Enter a phone number ▶ ☎ or 📷 ▶ "No, use original"**

Using phonebook : 🔍 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ ☎ or 📧 ▶ "No, use original"

◆ Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

The call is forwarded internationally from Japan even when staying in the same country as the party to be called. To make a call, enter "+" and Japans country code "81".

1 **0 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 81 ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX ▶ ☎ or 📷**

- Omit the leading "0" of a phone number.

Receiving a call from overseas

You can receive an international call in the same way as in Japan.

■ When letting a party make a call from Japan

In the same way as when you are in Japan, let a calling party make a call by entering your phone number.

090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

■ When letting a party make a call from outside of Japan

Let a calling party make a call in the same way as making an international call to Japan, because the call is routed via Japan regardless of the country the caller stays.

Int'l access No. ▶ 81 (Country code of Japan) ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX

- Omit the leading "0" of a phone number.

✔INFORMATION

- Regardless of the country the caller stays or the call is made from, the call is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and a receiver is charged for a reception fee.

Network search mode

Setting a search method for network

You are reconnected to an available network when starting international roaming or FOMA terminal is placed out of the current network.

- Setting may be unavailable for some radio wave and/or network conditions.
- Telecommunications carriers other than NTT DOCOMO cannot be selected in Japan.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 2 1 ▶ 1 - 3

- When "Auto" is set, the terminal automatically reconnects to an available network. When "Manual" is set, select a network from the connected network list that appears after available networks are searched.
- When "Network re-search" is selected, operations of each setting are executed.

✔INFORMATION

- ✕ appears for unavailable network in PLMN List, 3G appears for 3G Network and GSM appears for GSM/GPRS Network.
- In the following cases, "select net" appears in operator name field. Calls or mail may not be available until an available network is selected and the terminal is in the network. Select a network by searching again or set "Auto".
  - When moving out of the network connected by "Manual"
  - After "Manual" is set, when the terminal is moved to a different network and turned on
  - When network connection failed

PLMN setting

Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to

- This function is enabled when Network search mode is set to "Auto".
- Up to 20 items can be registered.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 2 1 4

Networks are displayed in descending order of priority.

2 Perform necessary operations

Displaying detail information : Select a network

Adding networks : MENU 1 ▶ 1 - 3

UPLMN manual select : Enter country code (MCC) by 3 digits and network number (MNC) by 2-3 digits ▶ ● ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ ● ▶ Select a priority level ▶ ●

UPLMN select by list : Select a country name ▶ Select a network ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ ● ▶ Select a priority level ▶ ●

Set VPLMN to PLMN : Move the cursor to a network, ● ▶ Select a priority level ▶ ●

Changing : Move the cursor to a network ▶ MENU 2 ▶ Select a priority level ▶ ●

- The telecommunications carrier moves to the selected priority with a different level. To give the lowest priority, select "<Insert last>".

Deleting : Move the cursor to a network ▶ MENU 3 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes" ▶ ●

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a network.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ ●. To delete all items, authentication is required.

3G/GSM setting

Switching networks

- When setting to "AUTO", automatically connected to an available network even when moving to a service area of a different type of network.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 2 2 ▶ 1 - 3

✔INFORMATION

- When setting to "AUTO", if both 3G and GSM/GPRS Networks are detected, 3G Network precedes.

Area service status

Displaying current Area service status

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 6 5

- You can use voice/videophone calls etc. by CS, and i-mode, i-mode mail, etc. by PS.

Setting stand-by display for international roaming

◆ Displaying operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.

- The operator name does not appear when FOMA network is used or the terminal is out of service area.



1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Two time zone clocks

You can display the times of the country you stay and Japan.



1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 4 ▶ 1 or 2

✔INFORMATION

- The time in Japan is displayed on the right. To display time in another country on the right, set this to "OFF", set the design of Clock display format to "World time clock", and set the time zone.
- Two time zone clocks are not displayed if moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set for stand-by display.

Roaming guidance

Setting roaming guidance

You can set to play voice prompts to notify the caller that the call is in international roaming.

- Set before leaving Japan.

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 5

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

✔INFORMATION

- Even when this setting is Deactivate, a ringing sound set by a telecommunications carrier is played.
- Even when this this setting is Activate, voice prompts in a foreign language may be played depending on a telecommunications carrier.

Setting reception for international roaming

◆ Setting Bar calls at roaming

- This function may not be available depending on the overseas telecommunications carrier.
- 64K data communication connecting (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 2 4

2 **Perform necessary operations**

Starting : 1 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Enter the network security code**

- Selecting "All barrings" restricts all reception including SMS, and selecting "Data calls barring" restricts only videophone call reception.

Stopping : 2 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Enter the network security code**

Checking current setting : 3 ▶ **"Yes"**

◆ Setting Notify missed call

If a call is received with the terminal turned OFF or out of service area during international roaming, you receive the information about the call (received date and time, and caller ID) in SMS when the terminal is turned ON or moved into service area.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 2 5

2 1 **or** 2 ▶ **"Yes"**

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings. When setting overseas, press 4, select "Yes" and follow the voice prompts to operate.

Network Service

Using network service during international roaming

You can make settings from overseas for Voice Mail, Call forwarding and other services.

- Remote control must be activated in advance.→P358
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.
- Some may not be set depending on the overseas telecommunications carriers.

◆ Operating Voice mail(Int.) Overseas

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 1 1 ▶ **Select an item** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

◆ Operating Call forwarding(Int.) Overseas

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 1 2 ▶ **Select an item** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

◆ Operating Remote control(Int.) Overseas

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 1 3 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

◆ Operating Caller ID request(Int.) Overseas

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 1 4 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

◆ Operating Roaming guidance(Int.) Overseas

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 9 1 5 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts to operate**

PC Connection

Data communication 374
Before using data communication 375
Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication) 376
Flow of setup for data communication 377
Using CD-ROM 377
Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink 377

For details about data communication, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.

To see PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection", Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

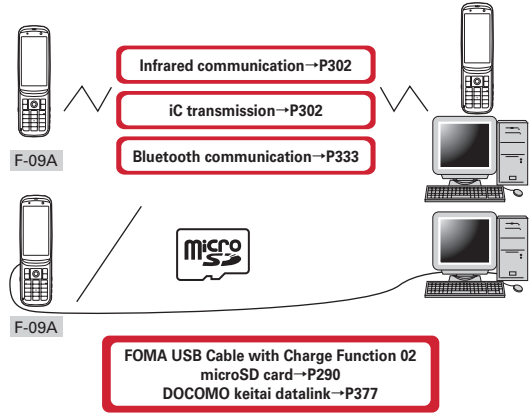
Data communication

Communications available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC are classified as data transfer (OBEX™ communication), packet communication, and 64K data communication.

- To make packet or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- For packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication is not available overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with musea or sigmarion III PDA by DOCOMO. Note that update is required for using musea. For details of update method etc., refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

◆ Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

This service allows you to exchange data such as image, music, phonebook, mail, etc., with other FOMA terminals or PCs.



◆ Packet communication

Data communication (packet communication) can be performed by connecting to the Internet.
Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.
High-speed packet communication can be performed at a reception speed of up to 7.2 Mbps and a transmission speed of up to 384 Kbps by using an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as mopera U, DOCOMO's Internet connection service. It offers by the best effort method that actual transmission speed varies by the communication environment or the severity of congestion.
Communications of large amount of data such as browsing websites containing many images or downloading data may incur high charges.

* When connecting to an access point out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point not compatible with HIGH-SPEED, or when using devices not compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as musea or sigmarion III PDA by DOCOMO, the communication speed may be slower.
* When performing data communication via Bluetooth connection, though the communication speed of FOMA terminal is equal to HIGH-SPEED, communication may not be performed at the maximum speed due to the communication speed between Bluetooth devices.
* Up to 7.2 Mbps at reception and 384 Kbps at transmission are the maximum speed based on the technical specifications, and do not represent the actual communication speeds. Actual communication speed varies depending on network congestion or communication environment.

◆ 64K data communication

64K data communication can be performed by connecting to the Internet.
Since communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, it is suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.
You can connect to access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as mopera U, DOCOMO's Internet connection service, or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.
Be careful that a high cost is charged for long-time communications.

Before using data communication

◆ Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as follows. It may vary depending on PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer For USB cable connection : USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) For Bluetooth connection : Compliant with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, 1.2 or 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles) More than 800×600 dots for display resolution and High Color 16 bits are recommended
OS (Japanese version)*	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* Recommended environment to operate DOCOMO Connection Manager is as follows.
OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or later, Windows XP SP2 or later (for details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.)
Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO does not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- Utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Operation is not guaranteed in an environment except that described above nor DOCOMO assumes responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

◆ Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "F-09A用CD-ROM (CD-ROM for F-09A)"

* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.

* If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

* When performing Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required.

◆ Usage precautions

❖Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details, contact your Provider.

- DOCOMO's Internet connection service mopera U is available. mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription.

❖Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is unavailable.
- For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website. http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html

❖Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K
- For Bluetooth connection, the PC must be compliant with Bluetooth Standards Ver. 1.1, 1.2 or 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles)

* Even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or signals are weak.

Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file

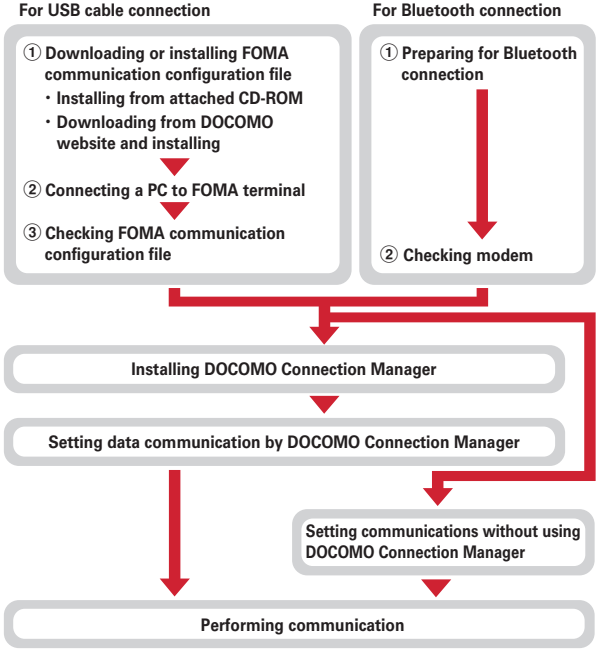
- **Installing from attached CD-ROM**
- **Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing**

▼

Data transfer

Flow of setup for data communication

This section described the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting the terminal to a PC via USB cable or Bluetooth device.



Using CD-ROM

Attached CD-ROM contains software for Data Communication with FOMA terminals, PDF version "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List". For details, refer to attached CD-ROM.

- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen from Internet Explorer security setting may appear, but may be ignored. Click "Yes".

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is a software for backing up phonebook, mail and other data in your mobile phone to a PC and edit them. It can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website. For details and downloading of this software, refer to the following website. You can also access to this site from the attached CD-ROM.
http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (in Japanese only)

For details including downloading procedures, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedures and operations, refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink requires USB cable (optional).

Appendix/Troubleshooting

Menu list 380
Melody List 393
List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method) 395
Pictogram list 396
Special symbol list 401
Smiley list 404
Multiaccess combinations 407
Multitask combinations 408
Services available for the FOMA terminal 409
Introduction of options and related devices 409

Interfacing to external device

Playing moving pictures using FOMA terminal, PC, etc. 410

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting 411
If error message appears mentioned below ..... Error messages 415
Warranty and After-Sales Service 419
i-mode fault diagnosis site 420
Updating software ..... Software update 421
Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data ..... Scanning function 425
Main specifications 427
Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-09A 430
Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone 431
Export Administration Regulations 433
Intellectual Property Right 434

Menu list

- Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.
- Settings of menus indicated in red can be restored to the default in Reset.

■Mail

Menu	Default	Page
1 1 Inbox	—	142
1 2 Compose message	—	128
1 3 Compose Decome-Anime	—	132
1 4 Unsent messages	—	142
1 5 Outbox	—	142
1 6 Check new message	—	138
1 7 SMS/Area Mail		
1 7 1 SMS		
1 7 1 1 Compose SMS	—	157
1 7 1 2 UIM Inbox	—	159
1 7 1 3 UIM Outbox	—	159
1 7 1 4 SMS settings	Font type : Japanese SMS report request : Not request Keep in SMS center : 3 days SMA Center : DOCOMO Address : 81903101652 Type of Number : International	159
1 7 1 5 Check new SMS	—	159
1 7 2 Early warning "Area Mail" setting		
1 7 2 1 Receive setting	YES	156
1 7 2 3 Beep time	Beep time (1-30 sec) : 10	156
1 7 2 3 Manner/Public mode setting	Ring in manner/public mode	156
1 7 2 4 Check ring tone	[Earthquake Early Warning, Disaster/ Evacuation information] —	156
1 7 2 5 Other		
1 7 2 5 1 Receive entry	—	157
1 8 Receive option	—	138
1 9 Mail settings		

Menu	Default	Page
1 9 1 Alert settings		
1 9 1 1 Mail alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Flash/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	82
1 9 1 2 MessageR alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Flash/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	82
1 9 1 3 MessageF alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Flash/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	82
1 9 2 Sort method	[Auto-sort ON/OFF] Inbox auto sort, Outbox auto sort : ON [Inbox sort, Outbox sort] —	149
1 9 3 Signature	[Auto add] ON [Edit signature] —	150
1 9 4 Reply setting		
1 9 4 1 Reply format	Quote : No Quote characters : >	151
1 9 4 2 Activate quick reply	ON	151
1 9 4 3 Quick reply presets	了解です (I see.) 後で連絡します (I'll contact you later.) ごめんなさいm(__)m (Sorry) ありがとう(^-^) (Thank you) OK	152
1 9 5 Mail group	—	151
1 9 6 Display settings		
1 9 6 1 Display priority	Show message	153
1 9 6 2 Receive option	OFF	151
1 9 6 3 Incoming msg. attach	Select all	152

Menu	Default	Page
1 9 6 4 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	152
1 9 6 5 Message list	List style : 2 row (addr+sub) Display preview : Yes Auto status change : ON	152
1 9 6 6 Auto-display	MessageR preferred	154
1 9 7 Check msg. option	Select all	151
1 * Template		
1 * 1 Decome	—	133
1 * 2 Decome-Anime	—	133

■i-mode

Menu	Default	Page
2 1 iMenu Search	—	162
2 2 Bookmark	—	168
2 3 Screen memo	—	170
2 4 Last URL	—	164
2 5 Enter URL	[Enter URL] http:// Browser type : i-mode Browser [URL enter history] —	164 165
2 6 i-Channel	[i-Channel list] — [i-Channel setting] Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1 [Reset i-Channel] —	182 183
2 7 i-mode settings	Default settings→P392	174
2 8 Access shortcuts	—	169
2 9 RSS reader	—	171
2 * Full Browser Home	—	166
2 0 Search engine	Google検索 (Google search), Google ニュース検索 (Google news search), Google画像検索 (Google image search)	314

■i-αppli

Menu	Default	Page
3 1 Software list	—	233
3 2 i-αppli call log	—	249
3 3 i-αppli settings		
3 3 1 Sort software	By access time	251
3 3 2 Auto start	ON	248
3 3 3 Software info disp.	OFF	233
3 3 4 Display light time	Terminal Setting	236
3 3 5 Vibrate effect	ON	236
3 3 6 i-αppli shortcuts	—	247
3 3 7 Sound effect volume	Level 4	236
3 3 8 i-Widget settings		
3 3 8 1 i-Widget sound effect	ON	254
3 3 8 2 i-Widget roaming set	No	254
3 3 9 i-αppli call DL set	Not Reject	249
3 4 Display history	[Start failure hist., Abnormal exit hist., Security error hist.] —	235 248 251
3 5 About i-αppli	—	232

■Phonebook & Logs

Menu	Default	Page
4 1 Phonebook	Show all names	76
4 2 Phonebook new entry	—	75
4 3 Add group	—	76
4 4 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	—	75
4 5 Received calls	—	58
4 6 Redial	—	58
4 7 Record msg.&Voice memo		
4 7 1 Record message	OFF	68
4 7 2 Recorded messages	—	69
4 7 3 Record voice memo	—	326
4 7 4 Voice memos	—	69
4 8 Mail logs		
4 8 1 Sent msg. log	—	147
4 8 2 Received msg. log	—	147

Menu	Default	Page
4 9 User information	Name, Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	53 324

■Data Box

Menu	Default	Page
5 1 My Picture	—	278
5 2 MUSIC	—	225
5 3 Music&Video Channel	—	221
5 4 i-motion/Movie	—	282
5 5 Melody	—	289
5 6 My Document	—	306
5 7 Kisekae Tool	—	95
5 8 Machi-chara	—	287
5 9 Chara-den	—	288
5 * 1Seg	—	309
5 0 Other	—	308

■Life Kit

Menu	Default	Page
6 1 Bar code reader	—	200
6 2 Ir/iC/PC connection		
6 2 1 Receive Ir data	[Receive, Receive all] —	304
6 2 2 Send all Ir data	—	304
6 2 3 Send all via iC	—	304
6 2 4 Save received data	—	305
6 2 5 Data exchange settings	End alert : OFF Auto authentication : OFF Ph.book image sending : ON	306
6 2 6 USB mode settings*1	Communication mode	297
6 3 microSD	—	294
6 4 Camera		
6 4 1 Still camera	—	188
6 4 2 Movie camera	—	193
6 5 Sound recorder	—	194

Menu	Default	Page
6 6 Data Center		
6 6 1 Access Data Center	—	121
6 6 2 Synchronization log	—	123
6 6 3 Sync setting	Contact image sending : OFF	122
6 7 Map/GPS		
6 7 1 Map	—	267
6 7 2 Position location	—	267
6 7 3 Map/GPS αppli	—	269
6 7 4 Loc. history	—	274
6 7 5 Notify location	—	273
6 7 6 Position settings		
6 7 6 1 Post-Position task	Read map	269
6 7 6 2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	275
6 7 6 3 Positioning alert	Ring alert, Vibrate alert, Light alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	275
6 7 7 Notify/Provide menu		
6 7 7 1 Notification setting		
6 7 7 1 1 LCS clients list	—	273
6 7 7 1 2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	275
6 7 7 1 3 Positioning alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音5 (Tone5) Vibrate alert : Pattern B Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Turn light on/Amethyst	275
6 7 7 2 Request setting		
6 7 7 2 1 Request permit/deny	Always deny	271
6 7 7 2 2 Position accuracy	Standard mode	275
6 7 7 2 3 Service settings	—	272
6 7 7 2 4 Service host URL	Host : DOCOMO	273
6 7 7 2 5 Positioning alert		
6 7 7 2 5 1 Loc. request-accept	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 20 Light alert : Turn light on/Grape	275
6 7 7 2 5 2 Loc. request-verify	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 20 Light alert : Turn light on/Grape	275

Menu	Default	Page
6 7 8 Map setting		
6 7 8 1 Select map	地図アプリ (Map Application)	275
6 7 8 2 Map activate setting	ON	275
6 8 Pedometer/ACT monitor		
6 8 1 Steps/Activity/Calories info	—	331
6 8 2 Set Pedometer/Activity monitor	Use height(100-220cm) : 160cm Weight (30-120kg) : 50kg	331
6 9 1Seg		
6 9 1 Activate 1Seg	—	206
6 9 2 Program guide	—	209
6 9 3 1Seg image/video	—	309
6 9 4 Set/Timer list	—	213
6 9 5 Recording result	—	215
6 9 6 TVlink	—	210
6 9 7 Channel list	—	205
6 9 8 User setting		
6 9 8 1 Display setting	Light setting : Auto adjust Display subtitle : In silent mode Subtitle size : Medium(Standard) Subtitle language : 1st language Display icon always : ON Display ticker Incoming message/Receiving info. : Not display	216
6 9 8 2 Sound setting*2	Switch sound : 1st sound Main <> sub sound : Main sound Voice output to BT : Prompt message Dolby Mobile : OFF	216
6 9 8 3 Data broadcasting		
6 9 8 3 1 Image & Effect	Set image display : Display Sound effect setting : ON	216
6 9 8 3 2 ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	216
6 9 8 3 3 Restore storage area	—	216
6 9 8 3 4 Reset permit status	—	216
6 9 8 4 Play setting	Auto CM skip, Auto blur skip : ON Skip notice : Display	216
6 9 8 5 Record setting	Record to : Phone Record time : Unspecified	216
6 * Bluetooth		
6 * 1 Bluetoth ON/ OFF	—	335
6 * 2 Device list	—	335
6 * 3 Register new devices	—	334
6 * 4 Accept registered	—	335
6 * 5 Accept dialup device	—	333
6 * 6 Receive data	—	336
6 * 7 Bluetooth settings		
6 * 7 1 Time-out to search	Search time (sec) : 5	337
6 * 7 2 Bluetooth info	Device name : F09A Device type : Mobile phone Device address : Depend on terminals Services : HFP, HSP, A2DP, AVRCP, DUN, OPP, SPP	337
6 * 7 3 Set authentications	Authentication : OFF	337
6 * 7 4 Forward ring alert	Foward	337
6 * 7 5 Session number	Without password	337
6 * 7 6 Start MUSIC Player	Auto start/end ON	337
6 * 8 Connecting devices	—	337

■Accessory

Menu	Default	Page
7 1 Scheduler	—	316
7 2 Notepad	—	328
7 3 Alarm clock	—	315
7 4 Calculator	—	328
7 5 Dictionaries		
7 5 1 Jpn Dic (Gakken Mobile Jpn Dic)	—	329
7 5 2 JE Dic (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)	—	329
7 5 3 EJ Dic (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)	—	329
7 5 4 Today's trivia	—	329
7 5 5 Today in history	—	329
7 6 Countdown timer	03 min.	314
7 7 Fake call		

Menu	Default	Page
7 7 1 Activate	—	326
7 7 2 Alert&Time settings	Call start time : Ring now Ring alert : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1) Alert volume : Level 4	325

■Settings & NW services*3

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 Alerts & Sounds		
8 1 1 Ring alerts & Sounds		
8 1 1 1 Call ring alert		
8 1 1 1 1 Call ring alert	Phone : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1)	83
8 1 1 1 2 V.phone ring alert	Videophone : Melody/ハープ (Harp)	83
8 1 1 1 3 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	120
8 1 1 2 Mail/Msg. ring alert		
8 1 1 2 1 Mail ring alert	Mail : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	83
8 1 1 2 2 Msg.R ring alert	MessageR : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	83
8 1 1 2 3 Msg.F ring alert	MessageF : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	83
8 1 1 3 i-concier ring alert	i-concier : Melody/SHORT SOUND10 Ring time (sec) : 10	83
8 1 1 4 GPS alert		
8 1 1 4 1 Positioning alert	Ring alert : OFF	83
8 1 1 4 2 Loc. notify alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音5 (Tone5)	83
8 1 1 4 3 Loc. request-accept	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6)	83
8 1 1 4 4 Loc. request-verify	Ring alert : Melody/着信音6 (Tone6)	83
8 1 1 5 Alarm sound		
8 1 1 5 1 Alarm clock sound	Alarm clock : Melody/目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	83
8 1 1 5 2 Schedule reminder	Alarm on time : Melody/時間になりました (Set time arrives)	83
8 1 1 6 System sound		
8 1 1 6 1 Key/touch sound	Key/touch sound 1	86
8 1 1 6 2 Slide sound	Slide sound 1	86

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 1 6 3 Display turn sound	Turn sound : Melody/回転音1 (Turn sound 1)	86
8 1 1 6 4 Shutter sound	Standard	86
8 1 1 6 5 Movie camera sound	Standard	86
8 1 1 7 Charge alert	ON	86
8 1 1 8 Call session		
8 1 1 8 1 Status message	On-hold tone : Standard	66
8 1 1 8 2 On-hold tone	ENTERTAINER	86
8 1 1 8 3 Quality alarm	Alarm OFF	87
8 1 1 8 4 Reconnect alarm	Alarm OFF	87
8 1 1 8 5 Low Battery alert	ON	87
8 1 1 9 Melody Call	—	85
8 1 2 Adjust volume		
8 1 2 1 Alert/Call volume		
8 1 2 1 1 Call alert volume	Level 4	84
8 1 2 1 2 Listen volume	Level 4	84
8 1 2 2 Mail/Msg. alert vol.	Level 4	84
8 1 2 3 GPS alert volume	Level 4	84
8 1 2 4 i-concier ring alert	Level 4	84
8 1 2 5 Alarm volume		
8 1 2 5 1 Alarm clock sound	Level 4	84
8 1 2 5 2 1Seg alarm sound	Level 15	84
8 1 2 5 3 Schedule reminder	Level 4	84
8 1 2 6 i-αppli effect sound	Level 4	84
8 1 2 7 ToruCa receive alert	Level 4	84
8 1 2 8 Operation sound	Level 4	84
8 1 2 9 Melody effect sound	Level 4	84
8 1 3 Vibrate alert/effect		
8 1 3 1 Call vibrate alert		
8 1 3 1 1 Call vibrate alert	OFF	85
8 1 3 1 2 V.phone vibe alert	OFF	85
8 1 3 2 Mail/Msg. vibe alert		
8 1 3 2 1 Mail vibrate alert	OFF	85
8 1 3 2 2 Msg.R vibrate alert	OFF	85
8 1 3 2 3 Msg.F vibrate alert	OFF	85

Menu	Default	Page
8 1 3 3 GPS vibrate alert		
8 1 3 3 1 Positioning vibrate	OFF	85
8 1 3 3 2 Loc. notify vibrate	Pattern B	85
8 1 3 3 3 Loc. request-accept	Pattern C	85
8 1 3 3 4 Loc. request-verify	Pattern C	85
8 1 3 4 i-concier vibe alert	OFF	85
8 1 3 5 Alarm vibrate		
8 1 3 5 1 Alarm clock	OFF	85
8 1 3 5 2 Schedule reminder	OFF	85
8 1 3 6 i-αppli effect	ON	85
8 1 4 Silent mode	General	88
8 1 5 Ring alert delay	Delayed ring alert : OFF	120
8 1 6 Stereo sound effect		
8 1 6 1 Movie(i-motion)	OFF	85
8 1 6 2 Melody	ON	85
8 1 6 3 MUSIC Player	OFF	85
8 1 6 4 1Seg	OFF	85
8 1 6 5 Music&Video Channel	OFF	85
8 1 7 BGM play	ON	229
8 2 Display		
8 2 1 Stand-by display		
8 2 1 1 Image/i-αppli	[Vertical position, Horizontal position] Same as Kisekae Tool	89
8 2 1 2 Clock format	Style : ON/Digital 1 (terminal color : White), Digital 2 (terminal color : Black), Digital+Analogue 2 (terminal color : Pink) Time format : 24 hour Clock layout : Top (terminal color : White), Center (terminal color : Black), Bottom (terminal color : Pink) Day : English	99
8 2 1 3 Battery icon	Kisekae Tool	98
8 2 1 4 Antenna icon	Kisekae Tool	98
8 2 1 5 Info/calendar layout	—	90

Menu	Default	Page
8 2 1 6 i-Channel setting	Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1	183
8 2 1 7 Shortcut icons	ウォーキング／Exカウンター設定 (Set Set Pedometer/Activity monitor), 照明／キーバックライト設定 (Display & Key light), 待受ショートカットの使い方 (Using Shortcut icons), ワンセグ (1Seg), ｉコンシェル (i-concier), F-09A使い方ガイド (F-09A guide)	321
8 2 1 8 Information display	Display	184
8 2 2 Menu preference		
8 2 2 1 Select startup menu	Kisekae menu	94
8 2 2 2 My shortcut	Position location, 2in1 mode switching, Saving mode ON/OFF, Receive Ir data, Calculator, Bar code reader, Activation option, MUSIC Player	322
8 2 2 3 Reset		
8 2 2 3 1 Operation history	—	97
8 2 2 3 2 Menu design	—	97
8 2 3 Color & Action image		
8 2 3 1 Color scheme	White (terminal color : White), Black (terminal color : Black), Pink (terminal color : Pink)	94
8 2 3 2 Call image		
8 2 3 2 1 Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 2 3 2 2 Incoming call	Show image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 2 3 2 3 Videophone dialing	Display image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 2 3 2 4 Videophone receiving	Show image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 2 3 2 5 Contact image	ON	92
8 2 3 2 6 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	120
8 2 3 3 Mail image		
8 2 3 3 1 Outgoing message	Display image : Kisekae Tool	92
8 2 3 3 2 Incoming message	Display image : Kisekae Tool	92
8 2 3 3 3 Image message alert	Display image : Kisekae Tool	92
8 2 3 3 4 Check msg.	Display image : Kisekae Tool	92

Menu	Default	Page
8234 Videophone image	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	70
8235 Info display & light		
82351 Caller/Sender info	At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject	116
82352 Indicator light	ON	98
824 Display & Key light		
8241 Display light time	Normal use : 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-αppli : Terminal setting i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion : Always on	93
8242 Light time-out	1 min.	93
8243 Brightness	Auto adjust	93
8244 Keypad light	Keypad light, Call/Mail light alert : ON Light color : Rainbow (Key press)	93
8245 Close settings	Close settings: Stay ON when closed	116
825 Light alert		
8251 Light alert	Light pattern for all items : Flash Light color for Call and Videophone : Lime Light color for Mail, MessageR/F, i-concier and ToruCa receive : Aqua Light for ToruCa receive: Light : ON	98
8252 Call session light	During call: Light : ON Color : Rainbow	98
8253 GPS light alert	Light pattern for Position location : OFF Light pattern for Notifying location, Loc. request-accept and Loc. request-verify : Turn light on Light color for Notifying location : Amethyst Light color for Loc. request-accept and Loc. request-verify : Grape	98
8254 IC card light	IC card Light : ON Color : Lemon	98

Menu	Default	Page
8255 Slide/turn light	Light for Slide/turn : ON Light color : Soda	98
826 Font & Language		
8261 Font size	Medium(Standard)	99
8262 Font style	Kanji/Alphameric : Maru_Gothic Hiragana/Katakana : Kanji/Alphameric	99
8263 バイリンガル	Japanese	52
827 Display Machi-chara	Display : ON/ひつじのしつじくん (Butler of sheep)	94
828 Power saving mode		
8281 Saving modeON/OFF	OFF	93
8282 Saving mode options	Standard saving	94
83 Kisekae/Themes		
831 Kisekae Tool	—	95
832 Style theme	—	97
833 Timed theme	—	88
84 Security & Locks		
841 Locks		
8411 Operation lock	Close settings: Stay ON when closed	116
8412 Security lock	Security lock : OFF	117
8413 All lock	—	107
8414 Personal data lock	OFF	109
8415 IC card lock		
84151 Lock/Unlock	OFF	258
84152 Lock preference	IC card lock	258
84153 Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	258
84154 Programed activation	—	259
84155 IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	258
8416 Keypad dial lock	OFF	110
842 Privacy mode		
8421 Call/Mail privacy	Call & Logs : Hide set contact Mail & Logs : Hide secrecy fldrs Private call act. : Alert+Show No. Private mail act. : No alert/name/no. Incoming: privacy mode : OFF	111

Menu	Default	Page
8 4 2 2 Other item privacy	My Picture, i-motion : Hide secrecy album My Document, Other, Bookmark : Hide secrecy fldrs Schedule : Hide set schedule Notepad, i-αppli, Loc. history(GPS), Screen memo : Show all	112
8 4 2 3 Activation option	Activate/Deactivate : No activation Auto start : OFF	112
8 4 2 4 Contact setting	—	115
8 4 3 Receive display option	At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject	116
8 4 4 UIM	[Change PIN code/Change PIN2 code] 0000 [PIN1 code ON/OFF] OFF	103
8 4 5 Code & Fingerprint		
8 4 5 1 Change security code	0000	103
8 4 5 2 Register fingerprint	—	105
8 4 5 3 Saved fingerprints	—	106
8 4 5 4 Fingerprint access	OFF	106
8 4 6 Scanning function		
8 4 6 1 Update	—	425
8 4 6 2 Set auto-update	—	425
8 4 6 3 Set scan	Scan, Message scan : Valid	425
8 4 6 4 Version	—	426
8 4 7 Password manager	—	347
8 5 Call & Answer		
8 5 1 Sound & Image		
8 5 1 1 Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 5 1 2 Call alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Flash/Lime	82
8 5 1 3 Identification mark	Identify No. : OFF	92
8 5 2 Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	120
8 5 3 Any key answer	ON	65
8 5 4 Headset		
8 5 4 1 Alert preference	Headset + speaker	333
8 5 4 2 Auto answer setting	Auto answering : OFF	332
8 5 4 3 Headset key control	Control function : OFF	332
8 5 5 Reject/Accept call		
8 5 5 1 Specified caller	Reject call	120
8 5 5 2 Unregistered caller	OFF	121
8 5 6 Make/Receive call		
8 5 6 1 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	66
8 5 6 2 Prefix dialing	Prefix1 : 009130010	63
8 5 6 3 Sub address	ON	64
8 5 6 4 Slide and answer	OFF	65
8 5 7 Call session		
8 5 7 1 Noise reduction	ON	64
8 5 7 2 Close settings	Continue	66
8 5 8 Self mode	OFF	108
8 6 Videophone		
8 6 1 V.phone dialing img.	Display image : Kisekae Tool	91
8 6 2 Videophone alert	Ring alert : Melody/ハーブ (Harp) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Flash/Lime	82
8 6 3 Operation	Auto redial as voice : OFF Display setting : Both sides Sub screen : My side Screen size : Large Visual preference : Normal Display light : Auto adjust Speakerphone : ON	71
8 6 4 Data session arv. act	V.phone priority	71
8 6 5 Image setting	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	70
8 6 6 External device	Phone	72
8 6 7 Notify switchable mode		
8 6 7 1 Indication ON	—	71
8 6 7 2 Indication OFF	—	71

Menu	Default	Page
8 6 7 3 Check Indication	—	71
8 7 Clock & Other		
8 7 1 Slide and edit	Received message, Sent message, Unsent message, Schedule, Notepad : ON	323
8 7 2 Turn-display option	Stand-by display : 1Seg Mailer : Smiley Receiving call : With vertical style	324
8 7 3 Clock		
8 7 3 1 Date & time*4	Auto time adjust : ON Offset : +/00h00m	52
8 7 3 2 Auto power ON	Auto power ON : OFF	314
8 7 3 3 Auto power OFF	Auto power OFF : OFF	314
8 7 3 4 Clock display format	Style : ON/Digital 1 (terminal color : White), Digital 2 (terminal color : Black), Digital+Analogue 2 (terminal color : Pink) Time format : 24 hour Clock layout : Top (terminal color : White), Center (terminal color : Black), Bottom (terminal color : Pink) Day : English	99
8 7 3 5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	316
8 7 3 6 Timed theme	—	88
8 7 4 Text input		
8 7 4 1 Save word	—	346
8 7 4 2 DL dictionary	—	347
8 7 4 3 Reset prediction	—	343
8 7 4 4 Save phrase	—	345
8 7 4 5 Text input method	Input method : 5-touch Input prediction : ON Auto cursor : Normal	348
8 7 4 6 Multilingual setting	OFF	348
8 7 5 Software update*5	[Update] — [Set auto-update] Set auto-update : Auto-update Day : Unspecified Time : 03:00	421
8 7 6 Info & Reset		

Menu	Default	Page
8 7 6 1 Call cost/duration		
8 7 6 1 1 Call duration	—	327
8 7 6 1 2 Call cost		
8 7 6 1 2 1 Last call cost	—	327
8 7 6 1 2 2 Call cost limit	Alert : OFF	328
8 7 6 1 2 3 Hide call cost icon	—	328
8 7 6 1 2 4 Reset call cost	OFF	327
8 7 6 2 Check remote setting	—	125
8 7 6 3 Memory status	—	302
8 7 6 4 Battery level	—	50
8 7 6 5 Area service status	—	370
8 7 6 6 Reset	—	123
8 7 6 7 Delete all data	—	123
8 7 6 8 Initial setting	[Date & time] Auto time adjust : ON [Password] 0000 [Fingerprint] OFF [Key/touch sound] Key/touch sound 1 Text size : Medium(Standard) [Request permit/deny] Always deny [Pointing device] Use sensor for: : Not use	51
8 7 7 Search key shortcut	SearchKey:Press & hold : Silent mode ON/OFF	324
8 7 8 Pointing device	Use sensor for: : Not use	42
8 7 9 Motion sensor	Motion sensor, Auto rotation : ON	43
8 8 NW Services		
8 8 1 Voice Mail		
8 8 1 1 Voice Mail service		
8 8 1 1 1 Activate	—	354
8 8 1 1 2 Set ring time	—	354
8 8 1 1 3 Deactivate	—	354
8 8 1 1 4 Check setting	—	354
8 8 1 1 5 Play messages	—	354
8 8 1 1 6 Voice Mail setting	—	354
8 8 1 1 7 Set V.phoneVoiceMail	—	354
8 8 1 1 8 Check messages	—	354

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 1 2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert : ON Notification melody : 着信音1 (Tone1)	354
8 8 1 3 Notify missed call		
8 8 1 3 1 Activate	—	354
8 8 1 3 2 Deactivate	—	354
8 8 1 3 3 Check setting	—	354
8 8 1 4 Hide Voice Mail icon	—	354
8 8 2 Call waiting/forward		
8 8 2 1 Call waiting		
8 8 2 1 1 Activate	—	355
8 8 2 1 2 Deactivate	—	355
8 8 2 1 3 Check setting	—	355
8 8 2 2 Call Forwarding		
8 8 2 2 1 Activate	—	355
8 8 2 2 2 Deactivate	—	355
8 8 2 2 3 Register The Forwarding Number	—	355
8 8 2 2 4 Setting if forwarding number busy	—	355
8 8 2 2 5 Check setting	—	355
8 8 3 Chaku-moji		
8 8 3 1 Create message	—	60
8 8 3 2 Message display settings	Only with Caller ID	60
8 8 4 Caller ID		
8 8 4 1 Caller ID notification		
8 8 4 1 1 Activate/Deactivate	—	53
8 8 4 1 2 Check setting	—	53
8 8 4 2 Caller ID request		
8 8 4 2 1 Activate	—	356
8 8 4 2 2 Deactivate	—	356
8 8 4 2 3 Check setting	—	356
8 8 5 Roaming guidance		
8 8 5 1 Activate	—	370
8 8 5 2 Deactivate	—	370
8 8 5 3 Check setting	—	370

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 6 OFFICEED		
8 8 6 1 Area display setting	OFF	361
8 8 6 2 Start forwarding	—	361
8 8 6 3 Stop forwarding	—	361
8 8 6 4 Check fwd setting	—	361
8 8 7 2in1 setting		
8 8 7 1 2in1 mode switching	Dual mode	359
8 8 7 2 Ph.book 2in1 setting	—	359
8 8 7 3 Stand-by display		
8 8 7 3 1 For Dual mode	[Vertical position] シティ (City) [Horizontal position] ブリッジ (Bridge)	359
8 8 7 3 2 For B mode	[Vertical position] マーガレット (Marguerite) [Horizontal position] ビーチ (Beach)	359
8 8 7 4 Set call/receive No.		
8 8 7 4 1 Ring alert for No.B	[Call ring alert] Phone : Melody/着信音4 (Tone4) [Videophone ring alert] Videophone : Melody/Jam Ring [Mail ring alert] Ring alert : You've got mail Ring time (sec) : 10	359
8 8 7 4 2 Identification mark	Number A Identify No. : OFF Number B Identify No. : ON Mark : <<>>	359
8 8 7 5 2in1 function OFF	—	359
8 8 7 6 Receive avoidance		
8 8 7 6 1 Change rcv. avoidance	—	359
8 8 7 6 2 Check rcv. avoidance	—	359
8 8 7 6 3 Mode link for avoid.	—	359
8 8 7 6 4 Rcv. avoidance(Int.)	—	359
8 8 8 Melody Call	—	85
8 8 9 Other		
8 8 9 1 Additional service		
8 8 9 1 1 Register USSD	—	361
8 8 9 1 2 Record reply message	—	361
8 8 9 2 Remote control		

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 9 2 1 Activate	—	358
8 8 9 2 2 Deactivate	—	358
8 8 9 2 3 Check setting	—	358
8 8 9 3 Nuisance call barring		
8 8 9 3 1 Register caller	—	356
8 8 9 3 2 Register selected No	—	356
8 8 9 3 3 Delete all entries	—	356
8 8 9 3 4 Delete last entry	—	356
8 8 9 3 5 Check the number of entries	—	356
8 8 9 4 English guidance		
8 8 9 4 1 Guidance setting	—	357
8 8 9 4 2 Check setting	—	357
8 8 9 5 Dual network		
8 8 9 5 1 Dual Network Switching	—	356
8 8 9 5 2 Check setting	—	356
8 8 9 6 Service numbers		
8 8 9 6 1 ドコモ故障問合せ	—	357
8 8 9 6 2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	—	357
8 8 9 7 Multi number		
8 8 9 7 1 Set Multi Number	—	358
8 8 9 7 2 Check setting	—	358
8 8 9 7 3 Number Setting	Basic Number : Name : 基本契約番号 (Basic Number) Phone number; The subscribing terminal phone number Additional No1 : Name : 付加番号1 (Additional No1) Additional No2 : Name : 付加番号2 (Additional No2) Additional No1/No2 Phone number : Not recorded Multi number call : Disable	358
8 8 9 7 4 Incoming calls melody setting	[Additional No1/Additional No2] Individual setting : OFF	358
8 8 9 8 Set arrival act		
8 8 9 8 1 Activate	—	357
8 8 9 8 2 Deactivate	—	357

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 9 8 3 Check setting	—	357
8 8 9 9 Arrival call act	Answer	357
8 9 Roaming/Call assist		
8 9 1 NW service(Int.)		
8 9 1 1 Voice mail(Int.)		
8 9 1 1 1 Activate	—	371
8 9 1 1 2 Deactivate	—	371
8 9 1 1 3 Play messages	—	371
8 9 1 1 4 Voice mail settings	—	371
8 9 1 1 5 Set ring time	—	371
8 9 1 2 Call forwarding(Int.)		
8 9 1 2 1 Activate	—	371
8 9 1 2 2 Deactivate	—	371
8 9 1 2 3 Call fwd. settings	—	371
8 9 1 3 Remote control(Int.)	—	371
8 9 1 4 Caller ID request(Int.)	—	371
8 9 1 5 Roaming guidance(Int.)	—	372
8 9 2 Int'l roaming		
8 9 2 1 Network search mode	Auto	369
8 9 2 2 3G/GSM setting	AUTO	370
8 9 2 3 Disp. operator name	Display on	370
8 9 2 4 Bar calls at roaming		
8 9 2 4 1 Bar incoming call	—	371
8 9 2 4 2 Accept incoming call	—	371
8 9 2 4 3 Check setting	—	371
8 9 2 5 Notify missed call		
8 9 2 5 1 Activate	—	371
8 9 2 5 2 Deactivate	—	371
8 9 2 5 3 Check setting	—	371
8 9 2 5 4 Notify missed call(Int.)	—	371
8 9 3 Int'l call assist		
8 9 3 1 Auto switch	Country code : ON (Country code : +81, Country name : 日本(Japan)) Int'l prefix : ON (Name : World Call, Int'l prefix No. : 009130010)	63

Menu	Default	Page
8 9 3 2 Country code setting	—	63
8 9 3 3 Auto assist setting	—	63
8 9 4 Two time zone clocks	ON	370

■MUSIC

Menu	Default	Page
9 1 MUSIC Player	—	225
9 2 Music&Video Channel	—	218 219

■Osaifu-Keitai

Menu	Default	Page
✱ 1 IC card content	—	257
✱ 2 DCMX	—	257
✱ 3 ToruCa content	—	260
✱ 4 IC card settings		
✱ 4 1 Lock/Unlock	OFF	258
✱ 4 2 Lock preference	IC card lock	258
✱ 4 3 Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	258
✱ 4 4 Programed activation	—	259
✱ 4 5 IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	258
✱ 5 ToruCa setting		
✱ 5 1 ToruCa alert	Light alert : ON Light color : Aqua Receive alert volume : Level 4	263
✱ 5 2 ToruCa from IC card	ToruCa receive, Duplication check, Auto-display : ON Auto-sort : OFF	262
✱ 5 3 ToruCa auto-read	ON	263
✱ 5 4 ToruCa sort rule	—	263
✱ 5 5 ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	216
✱ 6 Check IC owner	—	257
✱ 7 Change IC owner	—	258
✱ 8 Search by i-mode	—	256

■User information

Menu	Default	Page
0 User information	Name/Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	53 324

■i-concier

Menu	Default	Page
# i-concier	—	184

*1 When USB Cable is connected, default settings are not restored by Reset.
*2 Dolby Mobile's default setting is not restored by Reset.
*3 For the network service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
*4 Reset causes the settings of Auto time adjust (including Time zone and Summer time) and Offset to be restored to the default.
*5 When performing Reset, Set auto-update is restored to the default settings.

i-mode settings list

• Settings of menus indicated in red can be restored to the default in Reset.

Menu		Default
i-modeBrowserSetting	Image display	ON
	Sound	ON
	Movie auto play	Valid
	Movie DL in page	Confirm always
	Script	Valid
	Phone info use	Valid
	Font size	Medium
	Cookie	Valid
	Delete Cookies	—
	Referer	Valid
	Window auto-open	ON
	Pointer Display	OFF
FullBrowser Setting	Image display	ON
	Sound	ON
	Display mode	PC layout mode
	Movie DL in page	Confirm always
	Script	Valid
	Phone info use	Valid
	Font size	Medium
	Cookie	Valid
	Delete Cookies	—
	Referer	Valid
	Window auto-open	ON
	Pointer Display	ON
	FullBrowser home	http://www.google.co.jp
	FullBrowser usage	OFF
	Set FB permission disp	Display always
	Zoom To	100 %
	Shortcut	1 Zoom Out, 2 Scroll Upward, 3 Zoom In, 4 Scroll to Left, 5 PagePilot, 6 Scroll to Right, 7 Open new tab by link, 8 Scroll Downward, 9 Add bookmark, 0 Search in Page, * Change to left tab, # Change to right tab
	Auto NW trans. size	Confirm always
Common Setting	Certificate*	All Certificate available
	Issued Certificates	—
	Secure trans. svc — Certificate download	—
	Secure trans. svc — Center host	Host : DOCOMO
	Secure trans. svc — SkipCert. password	ON
	Access point	i-mode
	i-mode button	Connect iMenu/Search
	Scroll	1 Line
	PagePilot Display	Activate while moving
	Pointer Move Range	Normal
	Pointer Speed	Normal
	Bookmark Display	Thumbnail
	Display light	Always on
	Show/Hide navi keys	Show navi keys
Check i-mode setting		—
Reset i-mode setting		—

* All certificates saved in UIM are valid by Reset.

When "Simple Menu" of Kisekae Tool is set

1 電話	1 電話帳検索	5 iアプリ	1 ソフト一覧
	2 電話帳登録		2 待受画面選択
	3 リダイヤル		3 iアプリ設定
	4 着信履歴	6 データBOX	1 マイピクチャ
	5 伝言メモ設定		2 ミュージック
	6 伝言メモ一覧		3 iモーション／ムービー
	7 プロフィール情報		4 メロディ
2 メール	1 受信メール		5 マイドキュメント
	2 送信メール		6 キャラ電
	3 未送信メール		7 ワンセグ
	4 新規メール	7 設定／アクセサリー	1 音／バイブ
	5 iモード問い合わせ		2 ディスプレイ
3 ワンセグ／カメラ	1 ワンセグ視聴		3 目覚まし
	2 カメラ		4 電卓
	3 マイピクチャ		5 赤外線受信
	4 待受画面選択		6 情報表示／リセット
4 iモード	1 i Menu 検索		7 留守番電話
	2 Bookmark	0 プロフィール情報	
	3 ラストURL		
	4 画面メモ		
	5 iチャネル		

* "Simple Menu" is disabled when the screen display is English.

Melody List

◆ Melodies for ring tone

• Melodies in red letters support 3D sound.

Melody List ([ ] is the composer)	
着信音1～6 (Tone1-6)	でか着信音 (Loud tone)
我は海の子 (Child of sea) [文部省唱歌 (Song of the Ministry of Education)]	悲愴よりアダージョ (Adagio from Pathetique) [Ludwig van Beethoven]
ラデツキー行進曲 (Radetzky March) [Johann Strauss]	ツィゴイネルワイゼン (Zigeunerweisen) [Pablo de Sarasate]
Satellite	SWEET RASPBERRY
Manhattan Blue	Joy Rhythm
Jam Ring	Just Ride
Sea	SHORT SOUND1-10
回転音1～3 (Turn sound 1-3)	着信中！ (Ringing!)
インフォメーションを受信しました (Information is received)	メールがきたぁ (Mail has come)
You've got mail	It's time to get up
黒電話 (Black phone)	ハープ (Harp)
目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost time for the schedule)
時間になりました (It's time)	無音 (Silent)

◆ Melodies for mail attachment

Melody List ([ ] is the composer)	
誕生日 (Birthday)	ウィリアムテル序曲 (William Tell Overture) [Gioachino Antonio Rossini]
結婚行進曲 (Wedding March) [J L Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy]	祝婚歌 (Bridal March) [Wilhelm Richard Wagner]
運命 (Symphony No.5) [Ludwig van Beethoven]	ジングルベル (Jingle Bells) [James Pierpont]
タフワフワイ (TAFUWA HUWAI) [Hawaiian folk song]	さくら (SAKURA) [Japanese folk song]
紅葉 (MOMIJI) [岡野　貞一 (TEIICHI OKANO)]	雪 (Snow) [Song of the Ministry of Education]
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade der Zinnsoldaten) [Leon Jessel]	登場 (Appearance)
Are you sleeping? [French folk song]	トッカータとフーガ (Toccata and fugue) [Johann Sebastian Bach]
子守唄 (Lullaby) [Franz Schubert]	蛍の光 (Auld Lang Syne) [Scottish folk song]
ハッピー (Happy) お出掛け (Be out) メリーゴーランド (Merry-go-round) 安らぎ (Relax) 頑張れ (Cheer up) ヤッター (Goody) 16ビート (16 beats) 忙しい (Busy) 迷宮 (Labyrinth) タンゴ (Tango) エキゾチック (Exotic) 中華 (Chinese) 南国 (Southern country) 琴 (Koto)	草津節 (Kusatsubushi) [Gunma district folk song]
お祭り (Festival) 悲哀 (Sadness) がっくり (Flatten) 発見 (Discovery) チャイム (Chime) お知らせ (Information)	

List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method)

Key	Hiragana/Kanji mode (two-byte)	Katakana mode (two- or one-byte)	Alphabet mode (two- or one-byte)	Numeric mode (two- or one-byte)*1
1	あ い う え お	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. ／ @ － ： ～*2 ＿ 1	1
2	か き く け こ	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さ し す せ そ	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	た ち つ て と	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5	な に ぬ ね の	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	は ひ ふ へ ほ	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	ま み む め も	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	や ゆ よ	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	ら り る れ ろ	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わ を ん ー	ワ*3 ヲ ン ー 0	0	0 ＋ *4
✱	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, insert a line feed.	＊ P *4
#	、 。 ？ ！ ・ ■	、 。 ？ ！ ・ ■	, . ? ! ' - & ( ) ¥ ■	# T *4
✉			* You can enter only in one-byte character (except message text entry screen of i-mode mail and SMS). @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	

: One-byte space : Holding down the keypad also switches upper and lower case.

*1 Characters of "＊", "#", "P", "T" and "+" can only be entered in the field that supports them.

*2 "~" is entered in the one-byte mode.

*3 Switch upper and lower cases only in two-byte mode.

*4 Press the relevant key for 1 second or more to enter the character.

Pictogram list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Pictogram	Reading
	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ
	はーと、あい、こころ、どきどき、すき、らぶ、ゆれるはーと
	はーと、しつれん、ふられた、わかれた、しょっく
	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ、はーとたち
	かお、えがお、わらう、わらい、わーい、うれしい、にこにこ
	かお、おこる、いかり、ぷん、ちっ
	かお、かなしい、こまった、ごめん、がく
	かお、かなしい、こまった、さいあく、もうやだ
	かお、だめ、ふら
	どうぶつ、いぬ
	どうぶつ、ねこ
	てんき、はれ、たいよう
	てんき、くもり、くも
	てんき、あめ、かさ
	てんき、ゆき、ゆきだるま
	てんき、かみなり、いかずち、いかづち、でんき
	てんき、うずまき、たいふう、あらし、ぐるぐる、くるくる、めまい
	てんき、きり、あめ
	てんき、こさめ、あめ、かさ
	おんぷ、おんがく、うた、るん
	おんぷ、おんがく、うた、さんれんぷ、るん、むーど
	おんせん、ふろ、おふろ、いいきぶん
	はな、かわいい
	きす、きっす、くちびる、くち、ちゅ、ちゅう、ちゅー、きすまーく

Pictogram	Reading
	きらきら、ぴかぴか
	でんきゅう、ぴか、あいであ、あいでぃあ、ひらめき
	いかり、おこる、おこり、きれる、むかつく、むか
	がんばる、がんばれ、ぱんち、ぐー、ぐう
	ばくだん、ばくはつ
	おやすみ、すいみん、ねる、ねむい、ぐー、ずー、ぐう、ずう
	びっくり、あっ、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
	びっくり、ほんと、えっ、えー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
	びっくり、ちょー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
	しょっく、ぐらぐら、どん
	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ
	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ、なみだ、だらー、たらー
	いそぐ、いそげ、だっしゅ、ためいき、ふぅ、ふう、ふー、はしる
	のばす、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
	のばす、くるり、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
	おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、けってい
	やじるし、みぎうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぷ、みぎななめうえ
	やじるし、みぎした、さがる、さげる、だうん、みぎななめした
	やじるし、ひだりうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぷ、ひだりななめうえ
	やじるし、ひだりした、さがる、さげる、だうん、ひだりななめした
	やじるし、ぐっど、あがる、あげる、ぐっと
	やじるし、ばっど、さがる、さげる、ばっと
	かお、め、からだ
	かお、みみ、からだ

Pictogram	Reading
	ぐー、ぐう、じゃんけん、て、こぶし、ぱんち、からだ
	ちょき、じゃんけん、て、ぴーす
	ぱー、ぱあ、じゃんけん、て、ばい、さんせい
	あし、あしあと、あるく、とほ、からだ、きっく、けり、ける
	とらんぷ、はーと、あい、こころ
	とらんぷ、すぺーど
	とらんぷ、だいや
	とらんぷ、くらぶ
	のりもの、こうつう、でんしゃ、れっしゃ、えき
M	のりもの、こうつう、ちかてつ、えむ
	のりもの、こうつう、しんかんせん、のぞみ、ひかり、こだま
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、せだん
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、あーるぶい
	のりもの、こうつう、ばす
	のりもの、こうつう、ふね、ふぇりー、こうかい
	のりもの、こうつう、ひこうき、じぇっと、じぇっとき、ふらいと、くうこう
	のりもの、よっと、ふね、りぞーと
	つりー、くりすます、き
	いえ、うち、おうち、じたく
	びる、かいしゃ、しょくば、がっこう
	ゆうびん、ゆうびんきょく、ぽすと
	びょういん、びょうき、けが
BK	ぎんこう、ばんく
ATM	えーてぃーえむ、えいてぃえむ、ぎんこう
H	ほてる
CVS	こんびに、こんびにえんす、こんびにえんすすとあ

Pictogram	Reading
GS	がそりんすたんど、がそりん、がすすた、すたんど
Ⓟ	ちゅうしゃじょう、ちゅうしゃ、ぱーきんぐ
	しんごう、しんごうき
	といれ、かっぷる、でーと、けっこん
	しょくじ、ごはん、れすとらん、ふぁみれす
	こーひー、どりんく、のみもの、かっぷ、こっぷ、きっさてん、さてん、おちゃ
	かくてる、おさけ、さけ、ばー
	びーる、おさけ、さけ、いざかや、のみかい、こんぱ、かんぱい
	はんばーがー、ばーがー、けいしょく、ふぁーすとふーど
	はいひーる、ひーる、くつ、あし
	はさみ、かっと、びよういん、びようしつ、さんぱつ、とこや
	まいく、からおけ、うた、うたう
	えいが、えいがかん、しねま、かめら、さつえい、びでお
	うま、けいば、もくば、めりーごーらんど、ゆうえんち
	おんがく、おと、きく、へっどほん、へっどふぉん
	え、あーと、げいじゅつ、びじゅつ、ぱれっと
	えんげき、ひと、しんし、ぼうし
	いべんと、はた
	ちけっと、きっぷ
	すぽーつ、うんどう、しゃつ、たんくとっぷ
	すぽーつ、うんどう、やきゅう、そふと、ぼーる、そふとぼーる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、ごるふ
	すぽーつ、うんどう、てにす、たっきゅう、らけっと
	すぽーつ、うんどう、さっかー、ぼーる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、すきー、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すけーと、すのぼ、すべる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、ばすけっと、ばすけ、ばすけっとぼーる

Pictogram	Reading
	すぽーつ、うんどう、ごーる、はた、れーす、えふわん、もーたーすぽーつ
	ぽけべる、ぽけっとべる、ぺーじゃー
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きつえん、いっぷく
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きんえん
	かめら、しゃしん、さつえい、げきしゃ
	かばん、ばっぐ、てさげ、りょこう
	ほん、のーと、しょしんしゃ
	りぼん、ちょうねくたい、ねくたい、あめ
	ぷれぜんと、たんじょうび、おくりもの
	ろうそく、きゃんどる、たんじょうび、ばーすでい、ばーすでー
	でんわ、くろでん、てれふぉん、てれほん、てる、てれ
	けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、でんわ、ぴっち、ふぉーん、ふぉん
	めーる、てがみ
	めも、しょるい、れぽーと、しゅくだい、しけん
	てれび、がめん、ばんぐみ
	げーむ、こんとろーら
	しーでぃー、あるばむ、しんぐる、でぃすく
	くつ、しゅーず、すにーかー、あし
	めがね
	くるまいす
	せいざ、おひつじざ、おひつじ
	せいざ、おうしざ、おうし
	せいざ、ふたござ、ふたご、すなどけい
	せいざ、かにざ、かに
	せいざ、ししざ、しし
	せいざ、おとめざ、おとめ
	せいざ、てんびんざ、てんびん、おもち、もち

Pictogram	Reading
	せいざ、さそりざ、さそり
	せいざ、いてざ、いて、あがる、あっぷ
	せいざ、やぎざ、やぎ
	せいざ、みずがめざ、みずがめ、なみ
	せいざ、うおざ、うお、さかな
	つき、しんげつ、まる
	つき
	つき、はんげつ
	つき、みかづき
	つき、まんげつ、まる
	でんわ、けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、ふぉーん、ふぉん、ぴっち、ちゃくしん
	めーる、てがみ、じゅしん
	ふぁっくす、ふぁくす、じゅしん
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	どこもていきょう、でぃ、でー、でぃー
	どこもぽいんと、ぽいんと、でぃ、でー、でぃー
	えん、かね、きんがく、ねだん、りょうきん
	ただ、むりょう、じゆう、ひま、ふりー
	あいでぃ、あいでぃー、あいでー
	かぎ、きー、ひみつ、ぱすわーど、ろっく
	かいぎょう、まがる、つづく、つづき
	さくじょ、しーえる、くりあ、くーる
	さがす、しらべる、むしめがね、さーち
	にゅー、にゅう、あたらしい、しん
	はた、もくひょう、ごるふ、いちじょうほう、いち
	だいやる、だいある、ふりーだいやる、ふりーだいある
	しゃーぷ

Pictogram	Reading
Ⓖ	もばきゅー、もばきゅう、しつもん、きゅう、きゅー
1	いち、すうじ、ばんごう
2	に、すうじ、ばんごう
3	さん、すうじ、ばんごう
4	よん、し、すうじ、ばんごう
5	ご、すうじ、ばんごう
6	ろく、すうじ、ばんごう
7	しち、なな、すうじ、ばんごう
8	はち、すうじ、ばんごう
9	きゅう、く、きゅー、すうじ、ばんごう
0	ぜろ、れい、すうじ、ばんごう
	かちんこ、さつえい、すたーと、はこ
	ふくろ、つぼ
	ぺんさき、ぺん
	はんこ、ひと、ひとかげ
	いす、ざせき、すわる
	よる、よなか、しんや、れいと
soon	すぐ、もうすぐ、すーん
ON!	おん
end	おわり、えんど
	じかん、じこく、たいむ、とけい
	じてんしゃ、ちゃり、ちゃりんこ、のりもの
	れんち、すぱな、こうぐ、どうぐ
	ぱそこん、びーしー、こんぴゅーた、こんぴゅーたー
	えんぴつ、ぶんぼうぐ
	くりっぷ、ぶんぼうぐ、てんぷ
	やじるし、さゆう
	やじるし、じょうげ
	やじるし、りさいくる、かいてん、まわる

Pictogram	Reading
NG	えぬじー、だめ
秘	ひみつ、まるひ
禁	きんし、げんきん、だめ
空	くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ、あき、あく、から
合	ごうかく
満	まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ、いっぱい、まんたん、ふる
	けいこく、きけん、びっくり
©	こぴーらいと、しー、まるしー
TM	とれーどまーく、てぃーえむ
®	れじすたーどとれーどまーく、とれーどまーく、あーる、まるあーる
	あいあぷり、あるふぁ、あぷり
	あいあぷり、あるふぁ、あぷり
	どるぶくろ、どる、かね、おかね
	うでどけい、とけい、うぉっち
	すなどけい、とけい
	おにぎり、おむすび、ごはん、おべんとう、べんとう
	けーき、しょーとけーき、でざーと、おかし、かし
	ぱん、ぷれっど
	どんぶり、らーめん、めん、うどん、そば
	ゆのみ、おゆのみ、おちゃ、ちゃ
	とっくり、おちょこ、おさけ、さけ、にほんしゅ
	わいんぐらす、わいん、おさけ、さけ
	ばなな、くだもの
	りんご、あっぷる、くだもの
	さくらんぼ、ちぇりー、くだもの
	くろーばー、よつば、はっぱ
	ちゅーりっぷ、はな
	わかば、ふたば、はっぱ
	もみじ、こうよう、はっぱ

Pictogram	Reading
	さくら、はな
	かたつむり、まいまい、でんでんむし、どうぶつ、むし
	ひよこ、とり、どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん、とり、どうぶつ
	さかな、おさかな、どうぶつ
	うま、どうぶつ
	ぶた、どうぶつ、ぶー
	しゃつ、てぃーしゃつ、ふく、ようふく、てぃしゃつ
	ずぼん、ぱんつ、じーぱん、じーんず、ふく、ようふく
	けしょう、くちべに、るーじゅ、りっぷ
	ゆびわ、あくせさりー、りんぐ
	おうかん、かんむり、おうさま
	べる、ちゃべる、かね
	どあ、とびら、と
	がっこう、だいがく
	なみ、うみ、つなみ、おおなみ
	ふじさん、やま
	すぽーつ、うんどう、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すのぼ、すべる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、はしる、にげる
	かお、こまる、うーむ、うーん、うむ、むすっ、かんがえる
	かお、ほっ
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、おこる、ぷー、ぶー
	かお、ぼけー、しらー、しらけ
	かお、はーと、らぶ、すき、わーい、うれしい
	かお、あっかんべー、べー、いたずら
	かお、うぃんく、ういんく、ぱちっ、ぱち
	かお、うれしい、わーい、きゃっ、きゃ

Pictogram	Reading
	かお、がまん
	かお、どうぶつ、ねこ
	かお、かなしい、なく、えーん、わーん、なきがお
	かお、なみだ、かなしい、ぽろり、なく、なきがお
	かお、おいしい、うまい、まんぞく
	かお、えがお、わらう、うっしっし、うしし、ししし
	かお、さけぶ、さけび、げっそり、ひゃー、むんく
	て、おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、ぐっど、ゆび、おやゆび、ぐっと
	てがみ、めーる、らぶれたー、こいぶみ
	がまぐち、さいふ、おかね、かね

Special symbol list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Reading	Symbol
あーる	Ｒｒ ｱｰﾙ
あい	Ｉｉ
あすたりすく	＊
あすてりすく	＊
あっとまーく	@
あるふぁ	Ａα
あるふぁー	Ａα
あんだーばー	_
あんど	&
あんぱさんど	&
いー	Ｅｅ
いーた	Ｈη
いおた	Ｉι
いこーる	＝
いち	①Ｉ
いぷしろん	Ｅε
うぷしろん	Ｙυ
えい	Ａａ
えいち	Ｈｈ
えー	Ａａ
えす	Ｓｓ
えっくす	Ｘｘ

Reading	Symbol
えっち	Ｈｈ
えぬ	Ｎｎ
えふ	Ｆｆ
えむ	Ｍｍ
える	Ｌｌ
えん	￥
おう	Ｏｏ
おー	Ｏｏ
おーむ	Ωω
おす	♂
おなじ	々〃
おみくろん	Ｏｏ
おめが	Ωω
おんぐすとろーむ	Å
おんぷ	♪
かい	Ｘχ
かける	×
かっこ	「」 『』 【】 ‥ “” () 〔〕 [] ｛｝ 〈〉 《》
かっぱ	Ｋκ
かぶ	㈱

Reading	Symbol
かぶしきがいしゃ	㈱ ㏍
から	～
かろりー	ｶﾛﾘｰ
がんま	Γγ
がんまー	Γγ
きー	Ｘχ
きごう	＜＞@／〃 ±々×≠÷ ≦≧∴§＼ ∞∧∈∨¬ ∋∀⊆⊇∃ ∠⊂⊥⊃⌒ ∪∩∂◿∇ Σ≡≒∮≪ 〝 〞≫∟√ ∽∝∵∫∬ Å‰†‡¶
きゅー	Ｑｑ
きゅう	⑨Ⅸ
きろ	ｷﾛ
きろぐらむ	㎏
きろめーとる	㎞
く	⑨Ⅸ

Reading	Symbol
くさい	Ξξ
ぐざい	Ξξ
くしー	Ξξ
ぐらむ	ｸﾞﾗﾑ
くろぼし	★
くろまる	●
けい	Ｋｋ
けー	Ｋｋ
ご	⑤Ⅴ
ごうどう	≡
こめ	※
こめじるし	※
ころん	：
さん	③Ⅲ
さんかく	△▲▽▼
し	④Ⅳ
しー	Ｃｃ
じー	Ｇｇ
しーしー	cc
しーた	Θθ
じーた	Ｚζ
じぇい	Ｊｊ

Reading	Symbol
じぇー	Ｊｊ
しかく	□■◇◆
しぐま	Σσ
しち	⑦Ⅶ
しめ	㎷
しゃーぷ	＃
しゃせん	／＼
じゅう	⑩Ｘ
じゅういち	⑪
じゅうきゅう	⑲
じゅうく	⑲
じゅうご	⑮
じゅうさん	⑬
じゅうし	⑭
じゅうしち	⑰
じゅうなな	⑰
じゅうに	⑫
じゅうはち	⑱
じゅうよん	⑭
じゅうろく	⑯
しょうなり	＜
しょうわ	昭和
しろぼし	☆
しろまる	○
ずけい	☆★○●◎ ◇◆□■△ ▲▽▼

Reading	Symbol
すらっしゅ	／＼
ぜーた	Ｚζ
せくしょん	§
せっし	℃
ぜっと	Ｚｚ
せみころん	；
せんち	㎝ センチ
せんちめーとる	㎝
せんと	¢ セント
だい	㈹
たいしょう	〒
だいなり	＞
だいひょう	㈹
たう	Ｔτ
だがー	†
だくてん	゛
たす	＋
だぶりゅ	Ｗｗ
だぶりゅー	Ｗｗ
だぶるだがー	‡
たんい	° ′ ″ ℃ ¥ $ ¢ £ %
てぃー	Ｔｔ
でぃー	Ｄｄ
てー	Ｔｔ
でー	Ｄｄ
でるた	Δδ

Reading	Symbol
てん	､ ･ … ‥ ' ″ ‘ “ 、 ， ¨ ヽ ゞ ゝ ゞ 〃 ` ' ″
てんてん	‥ …
でんわ	TEL
ど	℃ °
どう	々 〃 仝
どしー	℃
どる	$ ドル
とん	トン
ないし	～
なぜならば	∵
なな	⑦Ⅶ
なみ	～
なんばー	№
に	②Ⅱ
にじゅう	⑳
にじゅうまる	◎
にゅー	Ｎν
のま	々
ぱーせんと	% パーセント
ぱーみる	‰
ばい	Π π
はいふん	–
はち	⑧Ⅷ
ばつ	×

Reading	Symbol
はてな	？
はんだくてん	゜
びー	Ｂｂ
ぴー	Ｐｐ Π π
ひく	–
ひしがた	◇◆
びっくり	！
びょう	″
ふぁい	Φ φ
ぶい	Ｖｖ
ふぃー	Φ φ
ぷさい	Ψ ψ
ぷしー	Ψ ψ
ふとうごう	＜＞≦≧≠ ≪≫
ぷらす	＋
ぷらすまいなす	±
ふらっと	♭
ふん	′
へいせい	平成
へいほうめーとる	㎡
ぺーじ	ページ
べーた	Ｂβ
べーたー	Ｂβ
へくたーる	ヘクタール
ほし	☆★※
ぽんど	£

Reading	Symbol
まいなす	−
まる	○ ● ◎ 。 . ① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ ㊤ ㊥ ㊦ ㊧ ㊨
みゅー	Mμ

Reading	Symbol
みり	㎜ ミリ
みりぐらむ	㎎
みりばーる	ミリバール
みりめーとる	㎜
むげん	∞
むげんだい	∞
めいじ	㍾
めーとる	メートル
めす	♀

Reading	Symbol
やじるし	→←↑↓ ⇒⇔
ゆう	㈲
ゆー	Uu
ゆうげんがいしゃ	㈲
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆえに	∴
ゆぶしろん	Yυ

Reading	Symbol
よん	④Ⅳ
らむだ	Λλ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	Pρ
ろく	⑥Ⅵ
わい	Yy
わっと	ワット
わる	÷

* Some may differ from actual displays.

* There are types of entered characters as two-byte only, one-byte only and both two/one-byte characters.

Smiley list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode. can also be converted by entering "かお" or "かおもじ".

・Greeting/Reply (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^-^)/~~	あいさつ、ばい
(^ ^)ﾉｼ	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^_^)/~	あいさつ、ばいばい
ヾ(^_^) byebye!!	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、じゃあ、どーも、よろしく
(^-^)/	あいさつ、おーい、じゃあ、どーも、よろしく
(^^)/~~~	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^_^)/	あいさつ、おーい
(〃⌒ー⌒〃)∫ﾟ	あいさつ、にこっ
～('-'*)	あいさつ、やぁ
(*^-^)ﾉ	あいさつ、ちわっ
ヾ(´ ω ` = ´ ω `)ﾉ	あいさつ、おはよう
(o^-')b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(≧ω≦)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(・∀・∩)	へんじ、はい
('-^*)ok	へんじ、おっけー
(`_´)ゞ了解！	へんじ、りょうかい
(｡･_･｡)ﾉ	あいさつ、やあ
(=ﾟ ω ﾟ)ﾉ	あいさつ、やあ

・Smile/Glad (34 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^-^)	わらう、にこっ
(^-^)v	うれしい、にこっ
(^o^)	うれしい、うほほ、にこっ、わーい
o(^o^)o	うれしい、うきうき
(o^_^o)	うれしい、にこっ
(*^_^*)	うれしい、にこっ
(･∀･)	わらう、きたー、にこっ
ヾ(^▽^)ﾉ	うれしい、わーい
ヽ(´ー`)ﾉ	うれしい、わーい
(*⌒▽⌒*)	うれしい、にこっ
(☆▽☆)	うれしい、きらーん
(^^)v	うれしい、やったね、ぴーす、にこっ、ぶい
(=⌒ー⌒=)	うれしい、にこっ
(´∀`)	うれしい、にこっ
(≧∀≦)	うれしい
:)	わらう、にこっ、すまいる
V(^O^)	うれしい、ぴーす
(^ɜ^)/ﾁｭｯ	わらう、ちゅっ、にこっ

Smiley	Reading
((o(^-^)o))	うれしい、わくわく
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
v(^o^)	うれしい、いえい、ぶい、ぴーす
(^_^)v	うれしい、やったね、ぴーす、にこっ、ぶい
(^･^)	わらう、にこっ
(^O^)	わらう、わーい
(^O^)/	わらう、おーい、はーい
(^O^)v	わらう、やったね、ぴーす、にこっ、ぶい
)^o^(	わらう、ぼっぺがおちる
＼(^o^)／	わらう、わーい
:-)	わらう、にこっ、すまいる
ヽ(≧▽≦)/	うれしい、きゃー
d=(^o^)=b	うれしい、ぐー
ε＝ヾ(*￣▽￣)ﾉ	うれしい、きゃー
(@^O^@)	うれしい
(´艸`)	うれしい、むふふ

・Bashful/Angry (18 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^ゞ	てれる、ぽりぽり
f(^_^)	てれる、てへ
(#^.^#)	てれる、にこっ、ぽっ
(*^.^*)	てれる、えへっ
(〃▽〃)	てれる、てれ
(*'-')	てれる、てへっ
(=ﾟ ω ﾟ=)	てれる、てへっ
(*´д`*)	てれる、こまる、てれ
:p	てれる、てへっ
('∇')	てれる、うふふ
ヽ(*`Д´)ﾉ	おこる、こら、ごるあ、ごるぁ
o-_-)=○☆	おこる、ばんち
(ノ-")ノ⁻┻━┻	おこる、ちゃぶだい
(-_-#)	おこる、こらっ
:-(	おこる、ふまん
Ψ(｀◇´)Ψ	おこる、こら
(ノ`△´)ノ	おこる、こらっ
(●`ε´●)	おこる、ぷんぷん、むかっ

・Cry/Sad (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(>_<)	なく、あいた、いたい、いてー、ひぇー
(T^T)	なく、うるうる
(T_T)	なく、しくしく
(/_;)	なく、しくしく
(+_+)	かなしい、びくっ
(x_x;)	かなしい、がっくり
(/_･､)	なく、くすん
(つд｀)	なく、ぐすん
○|￣|＿	かなしい、がっくし
(´･ω･`)	かなしい、しょぼん
(;O;)	なく、しくしく
(>_<。)	なく
(;_;)	なく、しくしく
(T-T)	なく、なき、うるうる
(TOT)	なく、なき、うるうる
(/_･。)	なく、いたい
:<	なく、かなしい
(；´д⊂)	なく、なき、ぐすん
゜･(ノД`)･゜･	なく、えーん

・Surprise (28 items)

Smiley	Reading
(*_*)	おどろき、びくっ
(･･?	おどろき、めがてん
(･･;)	おどろき、めがてん
(°-°)	おどろき、うーん
(@_@)	おどろき、びくっ
(--;)	おどろき、ぎくっ
(-_☆)	おどろき、きらーん
(￣□￣;)!!	おどろき、がーん
(° o° ;)	おどろき、ぽかーん
Σ(￣□￣) !	おどろき、びっくり、がーん、ぎく
(￣◇￣;)	おどろき、えっ
ヽ（° ロ° ；）ノ	おどろき、えっ
(;° ロ°)	おどろき、えっ
((((° д° ;))))	おどろき、がくがく
(=_=;)	おどろき、ぎくっ、てつや
(･.･;)	おどろき、めがてん
(°o°)	おどろき、ぎくっ、ぎょ
(°o°;	おどろき、ぎくっ、ぎょ
(@_@。	おどろき、びくっ、ぎょっ
(° Д°)	おどろき、ぽかーん
(°_°)	おどろき、うーん
(･。･;	おどろき、めがてん
(･_･)	おどろき、めがてん
(･_･;	おどろき、めがてん
(･o･)	おどろき、めがてん
(°o°)/	おどろき、おおー、びっくり
(°o°;;	おどろき、ぎくっ
Σ(°□°;)	おどろき、がーん

・Doubtful/Impatient (21 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(?_?)	ぎもん、なぜ
(-_-;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
w=(°o°)=w	ぎもん、ばたばた
σ(^_^；)?	ぎもん、えっ
(;¬_¬)ｼﾞｰ	ぎもん、じー
O(><;)(;><)O	あせり、あたふた
(° Д° ；≡；° Д°)	あせり、あたふた
^^;	あせり、ぎくっ
(^^;;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(^_^;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(^-^;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(￣_￣;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(¥_¥;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、あせ
(*_*;	あせり、びくっ
^_^;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(?_?;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、なぜ
ε＝┌(・_・)┘	あせり、にげる
(° ∇° ;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ、えっ
((○(>_<)○))	あせり、じたばた
(;° O°)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ

・Others (61 items)

Smiley	Reading
(￣▽￣@) ♪♪♪	うたう
('◇')ゞ	りょうかい、おっけー、らじゃ
m(_ _)m	ぺこり
_(_ _)_	ぺこり
<(_ _)>	ありがと、おねがい、ごめん、ぺこり
≡≡≡ヘ(*--)ノ	いそぐ、にげる
(^_^;)))))) ｺｿｺｿ…	こそこそ
p(^-^)q	がんばれ、ふぁいと
;)	ういんく
(^_-)	ういんく
(・∀・)イイ	いい
(^人^)	かんしゃ、ありがとう
!(^^)!	ぴんぽーん
ヽ(^^)	よしよし、おい
(*≧m≦*)	ぶっ
(σ･∀･)σ	げっつ
(￣ー￣)	にやり
(・∀・)つ	どうぞ
(^-^)_旦～	どうぞ、おちゃ
(Ψ° □°)Ψ	きて、かもん、おいで
♪～(￣ε￣)	くちぶえ
(￣。￣)y-～～	たばこ
(｀・ω・´)	しゃきーん
⊂(・∀・)⊃	せーふ
(-.-;)y-~~	いっぷく
(-。-)y-゜゜゜	いっぷく

Smiley	Reading
(￣～￣)	うまい、たべる
(￣人￣)	おねがい
(^-^)人(^-^)	かんぱい、なかま、たっち
(i_i)＼(^_^)	よしよし
(^▽^)σ)ˉOˉ)	つんつん
～～(m ´ Д `)m	たすけて
～～(m ` ∀ ´)m	いひひ
φ(. _.)ﾒﾓﾒﾓ	めもめも、かきかき

Smiley	Reading
(˚∇^)] ﾓｼﾓｼ	もしもし
(´□`)	あーん
┐(￣∇￣;)┌	やれやれ
(´へ`;)	はぁ、ためいき
(; -_-)=3	ためいき
(-"-;)	うーん
(´ー`)	ふふん、じまん
(´¬`)	よだれ
(￣ー＋￣)ﾌｯ	ふっ

Smiley	Reading
(ˉ_ˉ)	ほへー
(ˉoˉ)	ほへー
(p_-)	むしめがね
(-_-)	じとっ
(-.-)	じとっ
(-.-")凸	ちちち
(..)	どれどれ
[壁]_-)	ちらっ
(+。+)	いたい

Smiley	Reading
(-_-)zzz	ねてる、ねる
(_ _).oO	ねむい
(´ _ゝ `)	ふーん
(UoU)	ねむい
(^(I)^)	くま
U^I^U	いぬ
ﾎﾞｲｯ(-__-)ノ⌒	ぽい
ヽ(° ▽、°)ノ	よだれ
≫°))))彡	さかな

* Some may differ from actual displays.

Multiaccess combinations

Availability of operations of processes generated/performed for each operation currently in progress is as follows.

- In i-mode (i-mode connection) includes communication using i-Channel and i-concier (except information reception), Full Browser and data broadcasting site.
- i-mode mail reception includes reception of MessageR/F, i-Channel and i-concier information.

○ : New operations are available △ : New operations are available depending on the condition × : New operations are unavailable

Current status			During a voice call	During a videophone call	In i-mode	In data communication (Packet)	In data communication (64K)
Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call	Send	△*1	×	○	○	×
		Receive	△*1, 2, 3	△*2, 3, 4	○	○	△*2, 3, 4
	Videophone call	Send	×	×	○*8	×	×
		Receive	△*2, 3, 4	△*2, 3, 4	△*9	△*2, 6	△*2, 3, 11
	i-mode	Connect	○	×	△*10	×	×
	i-mode mail	Send	○	×	○	×	×
		Receive	○*5	×	○	×	×
	SMS	Send	○	×	○	○	×
		Receive	○*5	○*5	○	○	○*5
	Data communication (Packet)	Send	○	×	×	×	×
		Receive	○	×	×	×	×
	Data communication (64K)	Send	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	△*3, 6, 7	△*3, 6, 7	△*6, 7	△*6, 7	△*6, 7

*1 During a call, a subscriber to Call Waiting can make or receive a call to/from another party.
*2 Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service, if subscribed to, can be used.
*3 When Set arrival act is Activate, Arrival call act is used.
*4 When Call waiting is Activate, you can answer an incoming call after disconnecting the current call or communication.
*5 The ring tone does not sound.
*6 Recorded as a missed call.
*7 If Call Forwarding Service is active and Ring time is "0 Sec.", it is available by Call Forwarding Service.
*8 You are disconnected from i-mode.
*9 Operate according to DataSession arv. act.
*10 Connecting to i-concier or data broadcasting site is available.
*11 Recorded as a missed call when Call waiting is Activate.

Multitask combinations

The following table indicates whether an item in New Task start menu can be activated combined with the currently running function/group.

- Functions that can be activated may be unavailable depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

○ : Available △ : Partilly available × : Unavailable

Menu items / Executing functions/group	Dial	Mail	i-mode/ i-concier	i-αppli	Phonebook & Logs	Data Box	LifeKit/ Osaifu-Keitai	Accessory	Settings	Music/1Seg	Silent mode ON/OFF
During a voice call	×	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
During a videophone call	×	△	△	△	△	×	△	△	△	△	×
In data communication (Packet)	○	△	×	○	○	△	○	○	○	△	○
In data communication (64K)	×	△	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
Mail	○	△	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-mode	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
i-αppli	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
Data Box	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
LifeKit	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
Accessory	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	△	○	△	○
Settings & NW services	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
MUSIC	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
Osaifu-Keitai	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
User information	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-concier	○	○	△	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○

Services available for the FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (Not provided for those who do not require Directory assistance service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram fee)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

✔INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of April, 2009).
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), the call charge is billed together with a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax). This service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a land-line phone (as of April, 2009).
- Customers who use Call forwarding from a land-line phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or turned OFF due to the settings.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a land-line phone or a payphone to a FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to "Emergency Location Report". When making an emergency call to 110, 119, 118, etc., information of your location (location information) is automatically informed to an emergency call receiving organization such as police. For some locations and/or wave reception conditions, the emergency call receiving organization cannot recognize the correct location. When location information is notified, the name of the emergency call receiving organization the information is sent to appears on the stand-by display.

  When the caller ID is hidden for the call, i.e., by appending "184" to the dialed number, none of location information or your phone number is notified; however, the organization may acquire the location information and phone number regardless of your settings, if they have determined that such information is necessary for the protection of life etc. The area and timing of implementing "Emergency Location Report" vary by the preparatory state of respective emergency call receiving organizations.
- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely since the police or fire department has to call you back for confirmation. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move when making the call and do not turn OFF the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- For some areas you are calling from, you are not connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or land-line phone in that case.

Introduction of options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.

For details, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Battery Pack F10
- In-Car Holder 01
- Desktop Holder F31
- Back Cover F40
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable*3
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02*3
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Bluetooth Headset F01
- AC adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01

- Wireless Earphone Set P01
- Wireless Earphone Set 02
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01*4/P02*4
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01*4
- Earphone Plug Adapter 01
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001*4
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*5/P002*5
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*5
- Earphone/Microphone 01
- Stereo Earphone Set 01
- Remote controller with microphone F01*4
- Earphone Terminal P001*5
- Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*1
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*6
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*6
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01*4/02

*1 Charging battery using AC adapter→P48

*2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to charge F-09A.

*3 If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

*4 Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 is required to connect to F-09A.

*5 Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 and Earphone Plug Adapter P001 are required to connect to F-09A.

*6 Use this only in Japan.

Playing moving pictures using FOMA terminal, PC, etc.

You can play moving pictures (MP4 format) created with a PC etc. on FOMA terminal by recording it in microSD card. And, you can play moving pictures (MP4 format) shot with FOMA terminals on a PC by data-transferring by microSD card, mail attachment, etc.

- Moving picture file shot by FOMA terminal→P186
- MP4 format that can be played on FOMA terminal→P282
- Playing data in microSD card→P294

* For compatible external devices, refer to the following website from a PC.
FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→動画再生機能の対応状況 (Support of moving picture playing function)

- To play moving pictures recorded in microSD card, save to the specific folders using FOMA F series SD utility etc.
microSD card folder structure→P291
Updating the microSD card information→P296

* For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the following website from a PC.
FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→データリンクソフト (Data link software)

❖Introduction of moving picture playing software

Playing moving pictures on a PC (MP4 format) requires QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer, Inc. QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the following website.
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- Downloading software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operating procedure, refer to the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

- Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary.→P421
- When checking the following items not to improve the state, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual or make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

■ Power supply and charging

● FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON.

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P46
- Is the battery exhausted?→P48, 50

● FOMA terminal cannot be charged (the charging light does not turn on).

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P46
- Are the adapter and FOMA terminal set correctly? Is the AC adapter connector securely inserted to FOMA terminal or the desktop holder (optional) when you use AC adapter (optional)? Is AC adapter's power plug inserted to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket correctly?→P49
- Is the charging jack of FOMA terminal dirty when you use desktop holder? If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- If you execute calls, communications or other function operations while charging the battery pack, FOMA terminal may become hot. For safety, charging may not start when FOMA terminal is hot. Wait until the temperature drops after using and charge again.

■ Operations and screens

● FOMA terminal etc. become hot while operating/charging.

While operating or charging, or if you use i-αppli, videophone call, 1Seg watching, etc. for a long time while charging the battery, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may become hot. There is no problem about safety and continue to use it.

● The operation time provided by the battery pack is short.

- Is your terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, many powers are consumed to search available radio waves.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. Even the full charge state, when the operation time is too short, purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.

● Turning the power off or restarting automatically happens.

If the jack of battery pack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

● No operations are performed even by keypad and touch operations.

Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Security lock, or touch lock?→P107, 117, 119

● The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

When large amount of data is saved in FOMA terminal or transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.

● The recognition of UIM is not performed successfully.

Is UIM installed in the right direction?→P44

● The display is dim.

- Is Light time-out or Brightness of Display & Key light changed?→P93
- Is Power saving mode set?→P93
- Is 1Seg ECO mode set to ON?→P208

● The images, melodies, etc. set in each function do not operate, and operate by default setting.

Is UIM used when downloading images, melodies, etc. installed to FOMA terminal?→P45

■ Calls and sounds

● Calls cannot be made using the keypads.

Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Self mode, Keypad dial lock and Security lock?→P107, 108, 110, 117

● The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Call alert volume of Adjust volume set to "Silent"?→P84
- Have you activated Public mode (Drive mode), Silent mode, Self mode or Privacy mode?→P67, 87, 108, 110
- Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller set?→P119, 120
- Is Ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service "0 Sec."?→P354, 355
- Is Greeting msg resp time "0 Sec."?→P68
- Is Delayed time(Sec) in Auto answer setting "0 sec."?→P332

● Calls cannot be made from FOMA terminal connecting to external device such as car navigation or handsfree devices.

If calls are made several times when the other party does not answer or is out of service, the call to this number may be disabled. In this case, turn FOMA terminal off and on.

● Calls are not connected (Even when moving, "圏外 (out of service area)" does not disappear or although radio waves are enough, making/receiving calls is unavailable).

- Turn the power off and on, or remove and attach battery pack or UIM.→P44, 46, 51
- Even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves, due to the type of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable. Move to call again.
- Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller or Unregistered caller set?→P119, 120, 121
- Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. In this case, "Please wait for a while" appears and the caller hears a busy tone. Move to other place or call again at other time.

● During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.

- Has Listen volume of Adjust volume been changed?→P57, 84
- If you set Voice clear or Voice slowing to ON, the other party's voice becomes easy to hear.→P57

■ Mail and i-mode

● Mail cannot be received automatically.

Is Receive option set to "ON"?→P151

● Connections to i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli and i-Channel are unavailable.

- Is Host selection set to other than "i-mode"?→P175
- If subscribing to i-mode while operating, turn FOMA terminal off and on.

● continues to blink and does not disappear.

After/while checking new message in the i-mode Center or sending/receiving mail, i-mode connection is terminated and continues to blink. If data communication is not made, it is automatically interrupted, but if pressing [ ], it can be terminated soon.

■ Camera, 1Seg and Osaifu-Keitai

● Still images and moving pictures taken with the camera are blurred.

- Check whether clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera.
- When shooting an object nearby, use auto scene recognition or switch to macro shooting.→P190, 196
- When full auto focus is set to "OFF", activate auto focus manually or use Auto focus by touch operation.→P191
- Shoot in Shake reduce:Auto.→P197
- To shoot a portrait image, use the face detection function.→P198

● 1Seg watching is unavailable.

- Are you out of terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area or in a place where airwave is weak?→P204
- Is channel set?→P205

● Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be deleted.

- After data in IC card was deleted, delete i-αppli. Also, iD 設定アプリ (iD appli) cannot be deleted.→P251
- When data in IC card used by i-αppli to delete is not deleted, i-αppli may not be deleted. If not deleted, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.

● Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.→P46, 107
- Do you place mark of FOMA terminal over IC card reader? →P256
- Have you activated IC card lock?→P258

■ Overseas use

● 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed, and International roaming service is unavailable.

- You are out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength.
- Check whether the service area and telecommunications carrier are available, referring to international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Using Network search mode, search for a telecommunications carrier available for the service.→P369
- Switch 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO" or any available network after moving from Japan to overseas. If "AUTO" is set in Japan, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.→P370

● No incoming voice or videophone calls are received when using overseas.

- Is DataSession arv. act set to other than "V.phone priority"?→P71
- Is Bar calls at roaming activate?→P371
- Videophone call is unavailable in use of GSM/GPRS network.

● Making/Receiving calls are unavailable suddenly while using FOMA terminal overseas.

- Check the total amount of charges at docomo Information Center. For use of International roaming (WORLD WING), the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. When exceeding the limit, all services stop. Even if exceeding the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges to restart the services.
- Check 3G/GSM setting. When "Auto is set", the specified network is received and the services may not be used. Switch the setting to the network ("3G" or "GSM/GPRS") available for the country or area where you stay.→P370

● No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/Functions for using contents saved in phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.

Even when a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on FOMA terminal unless notified from the network or telecommunications carrier used. And, a notified caller ID is different from that of the caller by some networks or telecommunications carriers used.

■ Data management, data display and Bluetooth function

● Data transfer is not performed

Is USB HUB used? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

● Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.

- When data is saved on a PC etc., perform to update microSD card information (except WMA file).→P296
- Restore data in microSD card.→P297

● If trying to display an image, is displayed instead of it.

may be displayed instead of destroyed image data.

● Attached files are deleted and the images cannot be viewed.

- Check the setting of Incoming msg. attach.→P152
- Check the setting of Limit Mail Size. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

● FOMA terminal cannot be connected to a Bluetooth communication device/A Bluetooth communication device cannot be found from FOMA terminal.

- Do you register the device in FOMA terminal? Set a Bluetooth device to registration stand-by mode before registering.→P334
- Connect from FOMA terminal when a Bluetooth device is in connection stand-by. For connecting from a Bluetooth device registered already, start connection stand-by of FOMA terminal.→P335

■ Others

● FOMA terminal cannot be turned OFF.

By pressing [ ] for 10 seconds or more, power can be forcibly turned OFF.

● The display has afterimages.

- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, afterimages may remain. Remove the battery pack after turning OFF the power.
- If FOMA terminal is left open for a while with the same screen displayed, afterimages of that screen may remain even after changing the screen for a certain operation.

● The display has some dots always lit or unlit.

FOMA terminal displays are manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in FOMA terminals.

● **There are differences in lighting color and/or brightness**

・Note that, the following phenomena are caused by characteristics of LEDs used for lighting, not defects of FOMA terminal :

- The lighting color and/or brightness varies among FOMA terminals or by LEDs.
- The actual lighting color seems to discord from the lighting color name for some FOMA terminals.
- Though the lighting color name described indicates the major light source color of the LED, the lighting may appear in a different color because the light source settings are delicately different among functions.

・Check that the key lighting turns on in "Blueberry", "Kiwi" and "Strawberry" by Keypad light, and the light turns on in "Aqua", "Lime" and "Garnet" by Light alert. If one or more of these colors do not turn on, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop etc.→P93, 98

● **The light blinks with FOMA terminal closed.**

Is Indicator light or USB mode settings set?→P98, 297

● **Pointing operation with fingerprint sensor does not work.**

Even if Pointer device is activated, pointing operation is not available when FOMA terminal is closed.

● **Touch operation does not work when touching.**

Touch operation is inactive when Pointer device is activated and FOMA terminal is open.

● **Without operation, the cursor or pointer moves or the keypad/touch sound is emitted.**

When Pointing device is enabled, the cursor or pointer may move or the keypad/touch sound may be emitted by lightly touching on the fingerprint sensor. To avoid using pointing device, avoid touching the fingerprint sensor or set Pointing device to "Not use".→P42

● **Sometimes double-tap of pointing device is not recognized.**

Try to touch the center of the fingerprint sensor with the thick of the finger.→P42

● **When performing fingerprint authentication or registering fingerprints, "Failed (too fast)." or "Finger slid too slowly." appears without touching the fingerprint sensor.**

Possible cause is that the surface of the fingerprint sensor is wet or condensed of moisture. Wipe water off with a soft cloth before use.

● **Fingerprint authentication is unavailable when connecting FOMA terminal with a PC, etc.**

When connecting FOMA terminal using a USB cable to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC, make sure that the device is grounded in advance. If the connected device is not grounded, fingerprint authentication may be unavailable. In this case, perform fingerprint authentication while touching a metallic part (frame, external connector, etc.) of the connected device or after disconnecting FOMA terminal from the device.

If error message appears mentioned below

• The "(number)" or "(xxx)" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

● **A Network error has occurred.**
Press ● to close GPS function, and retry later.

● **All locked.**
All lock is ON.→P107

● **Apply secret attribute to mail address and SMS?**
This message appears when external phonebook entries with secret attribute set are loaded or when secret attribute is set for phonebook entries.→P115

● **Authentication type is not supported.(401)**
The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified site or website is disabled.

● **Call cost reached limit. Call disconnected./Call cost reached limit. Call on-hold disconnected./Call cost already reached limit. Unable to call.**
Reset the total calls cost.→P327

● **Cannot execute because of other tasks.**
When updating pattern data, terminate all other functions in advance.

● **Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.**
With Message scan of Set scan set to "Valid", you make an attempt to display SMS containing a phone number and/or URL description. (It does not appear when mopera mail or voice mail reception notification is received in SMS.)

● **Certificate is rejected.(tampered)**
The site certificate has been altered. Connection is suspended.

● **Cessation of broadcast.**
The selected channel is stopped.

● **Check address.**
An incorrect or no mail address was input to the mail group.

● **Check SMS center setting.**
Setting of SMS Center in SMS settings is incorrect.→P159

● **Connection failed.(403)**
Failed to connect to the site for a certain reason such as connection rejection.

● **Connection failed.(562)**
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions.

● **Connection interrupted.**
Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.

● **Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.**
Download has suspended because the data exceeds savable size while downloading i-motion.→P180

● **Continue using i-αppli and transmit data? Yes/ Terminate i-αppli**
After "Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?" appears, an attempt was made by i-αppli to make communications.

● **Corrupted data or microSD.**
Accessing microSD card is disabled due to a problem in data saved in the microSD card or the card itself. Install a new microSD card, format, or restore data of microSD card.→P290, 296, 297

● **Corrupted data or microSD. Saving to phone memory.**
When "microSD" is the destination for saving still images or moving pictures and the microSD card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switches to "Phone".

● **Corrupted data.**
i-αppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar code reader.

● **Corrupted data. Restore default setting?**
Functions cannot be started until selecting "Yes" to return the default setting.

● **Current UIM is not registered as IC owner. Unable to run/download/update. Details are given in IC owner in Osaifu-Keitai Menu**
This message appears when UIM is replaced after registering as IC owner and an attempt is made to download, update or activate Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.→P257

● **Data in IC card is full. Unable to run/download/ update. Delete service?**
Memory space in IC card is insufficient when starting, upgrading or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Delete data from IC card according to instructions on the screen and delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.→P251

● **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**
This message appears when communications using i-αppli are made very frequently in a predetermined period of time. Select "Yes" to continue using, "No" to continue without communications or "Terminate i-αppli" to stop.

● **Delete software and IC card data?**
Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli which also deletes data in the IC card is included in the i-αppli. Select "Yes" to delete the i-αppli and the data in the IC card.

● **Dial callout restricted.**
This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad dial lock ON.→P110

● **Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.**
Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli containing errors in the IC card data cannot be deleted.

● **Error in image. Does not work correctly.**
Unable to display the Flash graphics due to image error.

● **Error in storage area. Unable to use password manager. Quitting.**
Password save/quote is disabled due to an error in Password manager memory space.

● **Failed to activate.**
Activate 1Seg could not be activated due to an error in activation or station selection process.

● **Failed to read/clear call cost information.**
UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P44

● **i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error.**
The i-αppli stand-by display has been closed due to an unpermitted operation or i-αppli action.

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission Connection interrupted.**
An error occurred during communication or transmission. Do not move FOMA terminal from the right location before data sending/receiving completes.→P302, 334

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission Failed to connect via authentication.**
Sending or receiving all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct.→P304, 305, 336

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission No response. Retry data exchange?**
A certain period of time elapsed since communication starts, but no communicating parties are found. Locate your and the other party's FOMA terminals or Bluetooth devices correctly.→P302, 334

● **Infrared/Bluetooth/iC transmission No UIM, requested software failed to start.**
Even if an i-αppli To is set to data received, it is not activated due to UIM operation restriction.→P45

● **Input error (205)**
Input data for the site or website is incorrect.

● **Insert UIM.**
UIM is not correctly installed or the card may be broken.→P44

● **Insufficient memory.**
Operation interrupted due to insufficient memory. If it appears frequently, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.

● **Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)**
Cannot be connected because of the error in the site or website. Make sure the URL.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**
Data received through infrared communications/ Bluetooth communication/iC transmission cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Invalid data.(xxx)**
- The specified site or website does not support i-mode.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Sending auto-send message failed.

● **Invalid microSD. Unable to use DRM function.**
Accessing the authentication area in microSD card is disabled for a certain reason. Data compatible with data transfer cannot be saved to microSD card with errors.

● **Invalid UIM. Requested service not available.**
Operation is disabled by UIM operation restriction.→P45

● **Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.**
i-αppli cannot start by UIM operation restriction.→P45

● **Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?**
Select "Yes" and set ToruCa auto-read to "ON".

● **以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした（561）**
Mails could not be sent to following address.(561)○○@△△△.ne.jp
Sending i-mode mail to the following address failed : Press ● to display the receiver address of the failed message sending. Check the receiver address and retry sending in a place with good radio wave conditions. Mail addresses displayed in the message vary by the destinations.

● **Message kept in center.**
SMS have already been sent.

● **No content is available.(204)**
Could not find data at the specified site.

● **No response.(408)**
Unable to receive a response from a site or website within the specified time and the communication is disconnected. Retry later.

● **Omakase Lock activated.**
Omakase Lock is ON.→P107

● **Out of 1Seg service area.**
- Reception fails because you are out of broadcasting service area. Retry the operation in a place with good radio wave conditions.
- Reception fails because the channel is chargeable or for a certain reason.

● **Out of service area.**
Unable to perform because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● **Page is not found.(404)**
Make sure the URL is correct.

● **Password is not correct.(401)**
The user name or password entered on the authentication screen of sites or website is incorrect.

● **Play limit reached. Unable to retrieve.**
When the replay restriction set to a Music&Video Channel program is exceeded, downloading cannot be resumed.→P221

● **Please wait.**
- Failure in the voice line/packet communications facilities or congestion in voice line network/packet communications network. Retry later.
- A call can be made to 110, 119 and 118. However, the connection is not established by some conditions.

● **Please wait for a while (Packet)**
Failure in the packet communications facilities or congestion in packet communications network. Retry later.

● **PUK blocked.**
Contact docomo Shop sales outlet.

● **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**
Unable to receive all SMS because an error occurred during reception. Please perform the Check new message function for SMS in a place with good radio wave conditions again.→P159

● **Registration is in progress. (554)**
User registration with i-mode is in process. Retry later.

● **Remotely Controllable services are not subscribed.**
Voice Mail service or Call forwarding service has not subscribed yet. A subscription is required separately.

● **Replay period has not yet started.**
Replaying is disabled as it is still before the replay period set to Music&Video Channel, music data or i-motion. Check the program information or the detail information.→P221, 228, 299

● **Requested software unavailable.**
i-αppli cannot be started because of an error in i-αppli. Starting i-αppli To is disabled if there is a problem in i-αppli settings or start-up conditions.

● **Restarted. Removing battery with power ON or unclean UIM metal part/battery may cause restart. Regular cleaning recommended.**
This message appears when you remove the battery pack and install it again with the power left ON. This may also appear if the jack of battery pack or metallic part of UIM is soiled, but it is not a malfunction. Clean regularly metallic parts of the battery pack and UIM.

● **Root certificate has expired. Connect?**
The CA certificate has expired. (→P176)
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P52

● **Root certificate is not valid.**
FOMA terminal certificate is invalidated by setting. Change the setting.→P176

● **Run software and delete data in IC card. Then delete software.**
Delete the data in the IC card in advance to delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

● **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**
INBOX is full. Save the data from INBOX into FOMA terminal or delete it.→P305

● **Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update. Delete a service?**
Download or update of similar Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is disabled before deleting the existing one. Select "Yes" and delete saved Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

● **Service is not subscribed.**
- You are not an i-mode subscriber. You need to subscribe to use the service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power OFF and then turn ON.

● **Service unavailable.**
SMS service is unavailable.

● **Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?**
The service of Uta-hodai that can be saved exceeds the limit. Select "Yes" to overwrite from services with the oldest replay expiration. Also, music data downloaded from overwritten services becomes unavailable.

● **Software already updated.**
The i-αppli has already been upgraded to the latest version.

● **Software terminated due to security error.**
i-αppli ended due to an unpermitted operation or i-αppli action.

● **Some data are needed to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?**
This appears if there is expired Uta-hodai when an attempt is made to play music with Music player. Select "Yes" to update music data (Packet communication for updating the data is charged). When "No" is selected, expired Uta-hodai becomes unavailable.→P225

● **SSL/TLS session cannot be established.**
SSL/TLS session was interrupted due to a session error or an authentication error on the server side.

● **SSL/TLS session failed.**
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL/TLS session. Session is suspended.

● **This certificate has expired. Connect?**
The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. →P176
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P52

● **This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**
CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name.→P176

● **This data may not be replayed.**
i-motion or moving picture file format is not supported on FOMA terminal.

● **This site is not certified. Connect?**
The site certification is not supported by FOMA terminal.

● **This software contains an error.**
Unable to import because i-αppli data contains an error.

● **This software is currently unavailable for use.**
Using i-αppli is stopped by the IP (Information Provider).

● **This UIM cannot be recognized.**
UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P44

● **Time out**
The i-mode Center is busy. Retry later.

● **Time reset. Unable to download/play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.**
With Auto time adjust "OFF" in Set date and time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may cause the date and time to be deleted.→P52

● **Too many applications running. Quit some applications and try again.**
Function cannot be started due to a lack of memory space. Retry after quitting other functions.

● **Too much text entered. Entry uncompleted.**
An attempt is made to save an item containing characters exceeding the limit selected from a site etc. to phonebook. Press ● to display the phonebook registration screen with excess characters erased.

● **Touch operation locked. Press and hold "lock key" on left side.**
Touch operation is locked.→P119

● **Transmission failed.(552)**
Failed to transmit the i-mode mail because of an error of the i-mode Center. Retry later.

● **UIM full.**
UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete or move SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal.→P159

● **Unable to check new messages.**
Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.

● **Unable to delete some applications in IC card. Delete others?**
i-αppli items to be deleted include Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that cannot be deleted because its related data cannot be deleted from the IC card. To delete other i-αppli items, select "Yes".

● **Unable to play. Connect phone to PC and start application to update music if necessary.**
The music data cannot be replayed because it already expired, its replay expiration cannot be confirmed or information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to a trouble, repair or replacement of the terminal. To play, check that it does not expire using a PC and connect FOMA terminal to the PC for synchronization.→P223

● **Unable to retrieve the requested URL.(504)**
Failed to connect to the specified site etc. for a certain reason.

● **"○○○.ne.jp"宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません（555） Unable to send. "○○○.ne.jp" is not available temporarily.(555)**
i-mode Center is busy. Please wait for a while and retry. The domain name displayed in the message varies by the receiver.

● **Unable to shoot serially.**
You cannot shoot serially because of insufficient memory space. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

● **Unable to start fingerprint sensor.**
Failure in Fingerprint sensor. Contact the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

● **Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**
As FOMA terminal is performing communication, data transfer mode cannot be set. Try again after the communication ends.

● **Unable to update pattern definitions.**
Updating the pattern definitions has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with good radio wave conditions.

● **Unable to use data type.**
Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be moved/copied from a microSD card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

● **Unmatched to saved fingerprint.**
Retry fingerprint authentication or perform authentication operation with terminal security code. Note that authentication with terminal security code is disabled when Fingerprint access is "ON".→P106

● **URL address changed.(301)**
The site or website automatically performs URL transfer or the URL was changed.

● **URL address is not valid.(xxx)**
Make sure the URL.

● **Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.**
This message appears when a very large volume of data was sent or received in a predetermined period of time with the i-mode packet flat-rate service used. Connection may be disabled for a predetermined period of the time; use i-mode after a while.

● **Work area full. Quit other applications.**
For the lack of memory space for operation, quit other applications.

● **You have no certificate. Connect?**
The user certificate has not been downloaded.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

❖Warranty

- FOMA terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "shop name/date of purchase" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal may cause contents in the phonebook etc. to be modified or deleted. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the phonebook data etc., in case. And, in repairing etc. of FOMA terminal, information downloaded through i-mode or i-αppli is not transferred to repaired FOMA terminal with some exceptions according to the copyright law.

* The data of phonebook, i-motion or data used by i-αppli in FOMA terminal can be saved in microSD card.

* This FOMA terminal allows you to save phonebook and other data in Data Center by using Data Security Service (a charged service requiring subscription).

* If a PC is available, you can use DOCOMO keitai datalink (→P377) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer stored contents in phonebook etc. to the PC and store.

❖After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" (→P411). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. Also, you must bring the warranty. Note that, repair may take longer time depending on the state of damage.

■ In the warranty period

- FOMA terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident, neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.
- The subscriber is charged for the repair of the color LCD or connector if broken after purchase.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases.

- When judged as malfunction due to moisture at the repair office (e.g. when detected in a moisture seal reaction)
- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack, earphone/microphone jack or liquid crystal panel is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted)

* Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Call the contacts listed on the back of this manual, "Repairs".

■ Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - May cause fire, injury or damage.
  - Modified FOMA terminals etc. are repaired only after the customer accepts that the modified parts are to be restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.

- The following cases may be regarded as modifications.
  - A sticker etc. is put on the LCD or keypad part
  - FOMA terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
  - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to FOMA terminal.
  The inscription stickers certify that FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that, if stickers are removed intentionally or reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- Function settings and information such as total calls may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece, speaker, etc. of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, turn the power off, remove the battery pack immediately, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

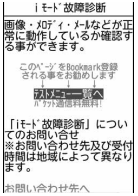
▲Phonebook, and downloaded data, etc.▼

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be changed or lost when changing models or repairing FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for such incidents. DOCOMO may, at its option, replace your mobile phone instead of repairing it. Data downloaded to FOMA terminal including images and ring tones and data you created is transferred only at repairing (Some data may not be transferred. Also cannot be transferred depending on the failure level).

  * Depending on the size of data saved in FOMA terminal, transfer may take a time or be disabled.

i-mode fault diagnosis site

Using your FOMA terminal, you can check whether sending/receiving of messages and downloading of images and melodies are normally performed.



TOP screen



Screen of テストメニュー一覧 (test menu list)

- Access method to "ｉモード故障診断サイト" (In Japanese only)
  iMenu→お知らせ (Notice)→サービス・機能 (Services/Function)→ｉモード (i-mode)→ｉモード故障診断 (i-mode fault diagnostic site)

QR code for site access

* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

- Packet communication for ｉモード故障診断 is free. However when accessing from overseas, packet communication fee is charged.
- Test items vary by FOMA terminal models. And test items are subject to change.
- Before checking operations using individual test items, carefully read the precautions given in the site.
- When connecting to ｉモード故障診断サイト or conducting message transmission test, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnostic server). DOCOMO does not use the received information for purposes except ｉモード故障診断.

- When FOMA terminal is assumed to have malfunctions as the result of the diagnosis, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

Software update

Updating software

This function makes network connection to check for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and, when necessary, downloads a part of the software through packet communication* to update the software. You can improve function/operability of FOMA terminal by updating software that is important for the terminal operations.

When software update is required, the information is posted in "お客様サポート (Support)" on NTT DOCOMO website or iMenu.

* Packet communication for software update is free.

- Software may be updated in the following 3 methods.

  Automatic update : Download new software automatically, and overwrite at the time specified in advance.

  Immediate update : Update on the spot as preferred.

  Reserved update : Specify the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot.

✔INFORMATION

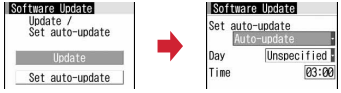
- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. The update may fail.
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.
- Software update is available even when Host selection is other than "i-mode".
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power (→P50).
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - When UIM is not inserted
  - When the battery is not fully charged
  - When the power is OFF
  - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed
  - When date and time are not set
  - While using other functions
  - When PIN code is being entered
  - When PIN is blocked
  - In Omakase Lock
  - In Self mode
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when PIN1 code ON/OFF is "ON", PIN code entry screen does not appear at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating.
- Making/Receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- To update software, an SSL session is established with a server (our site). Validate the certificate using Manage certificate. This is set to Valid by default.→P176
- It is recommended that software update be executed in good radio wave conditions with three bars of the antenna icon displayed (→P51) and the terminal not moved. If radio wave conditions become weaker during software download or the download is stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave conditions.
- An icon indicating stored mail in i-mode Center disappears after software update. Also, when Receive option is "ON" and mail is received during software update, the screen that notifies arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update is completed.→P138
- When updating software, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software update managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- Software cannot be updated overseas.

◆ Updating software automatically <Set auto-update>

You can set if you update automatically or to be notified that software update is necessary.

- Set auto-update is set to "Auto-update", Day is set to "Unspecified" and Time is set to "03:00" by default.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 5 **▶Authenticate▶"Set auto-update"▶Set required items▶** 📷



- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", set Day and Time to perform Auto-update. When "Disable" is set, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen of auto-update disability.

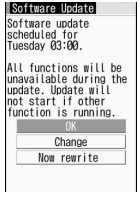
❖When update is necessary

- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", the update file is downloaded automatically, and (rewrite notice icon) appears on the stand-by display. If you select (rewrite notice icon), the start time of update can be confirmed or changed.
- When setting Set auto-update to "Only notification", (update notification icon) appears.→P422 "Starting Software update"

<Example> Confirming the time of update

1 ● **▶Select (rewrite notice icon)**

The day of the week and the time to update are displayed. Select "OK" to return to the stand-by display, and (rewrite notice icon) disappears.



Changing time : "Change"▶Authenticate▶Set required items▶ 📷
Rewriting immediately : "Now rewrite"▶Authenticate
The next procedure→P423 Step 2 and the following steps in "Updating software immediately"

✔INFORMATION

- (rewrite notice icon) appears in the following cases.
  - When the downloading of the update file is completed
  - When update was unavailable since other functions were activated
  - When update is canceled, or update start time is changed
- (update notification icon) appears in the following cases.
  - When there is notification from DOCOMO
  - When the software update screen appears
  - When reserved update fails or reserved update is canceled
  - When reservation is canceled (except when Delete all data is performed)

◆ Starting Software update

You can start software update in two ways : selecting (update notification icon) on the stand-by display or pressing an item number from menu.

<Example> Starting by selecting update notification icon

1 ● **▶Select (update notification icon)▶"Yes"▶Authenticate**



Software update screen

- When "No" is selected, a clearing confirmation screen of update notification icon appears.

Starting from the menu : MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 7 5 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Update"**

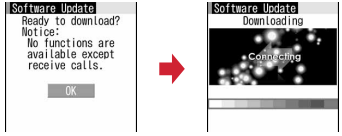
- When update is necessary, "Update is needed" is displayed. Select "Now update (→P423)" or "Reserve (→P423)".
- When update is not necessary, "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before." is displayed. Press ● and continue using.

◆ Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 "Now update" on Software Update screen ▶ After about 5 seconds, download starts automatically

Pressing ● starts downloading immediately.



- To cancel downloading, press ●.

When the server is busy :



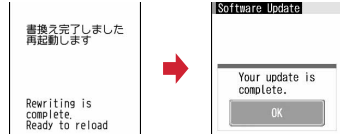
- Select "Reserve" and enter the date for update.→P423

2 Download is complete and after about 5 seconds, software updating is automatically started

Pressing ● starts rewriting immediately. While rewriting, only the operation of pressing ⏻ for 8 seconds or more to turn OFF the power is available.



3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update ▶ ●



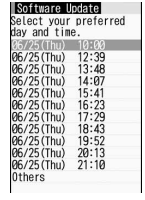
◆ Updating software at pre-specified time <Reserved update>

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

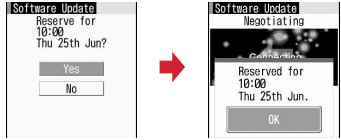
<Example> Selecting from displayed options

1 On Software Update screen, "Reserve"

Available dates for reservation are shown by the time of the server.



2 Select preferred day and time-slot▶"Yes"



Reserving from other than displayed options :

① **"Others"**

② **Select preferred day**

Reservation availability for each time period is displayed. Press [📷] to display description.

③ **Select preferred time-slot**

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

④ **Select preferred day and time-slot▶"Yes"**

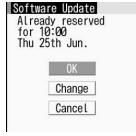
3 [●]

When the setting of the reservation is completed, (reservation icon) appears on the stand-by display.

❖Checking/Changing/Canceling reservation

<Example> Checking the day and time-slot reserved for software update

1 [MENU] **[Settings & NW services]** [7] [5] **▶Authenticate▶"Update"▶Check the contents**



- Select "OK" to stop checking.

Changing the reservation : "Change"

The selection screen of preferred day appears.

The next procedure→P424 Step ② and the following steps in "Reserving from other than displayed options"

Canceling reservation : "Cancel"▶"Yes"▶[●]

❖When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the following screen appears and, after about 5 seconds, the terminal automatically starts software update. (Pressing [●] starts software update immediately). Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the stand-by display. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel Software update, press [⌐] and select "Yes".

✔INFORMATION

- Reservation of software update may be canceled in the following cases.
  - When the battery pack is removed, or exhausted battery has not been charged
  - When Delete all data is performed
  - When reserved date/time comes while activating Omakase Lock
- Note that the software update may not start during software update, or if any other functions are used at the reserved date and time. At the reserved date and time, if packet communication is in progress, the software update starts after the packet communication is completed.

Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data

Update pattern definition first, then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or programs that are imported to FOMA terminal by downloading from a website, mails, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles.

- Pattern definition used for the check is upgraded as needed for a new problem. When Set auto-update is "Enable", pattern definitions are automatically downloaded and updated when they are upgraded.
- The Scanning function provides a certain countermeasure against invasion of data which causes some trouble in the mobile phone, when viewing website, receiving messages, etc.
  Note that, if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent those troubles from occurring.
- Different pattern definition is used for different mobile phone models. Also, note that DOCOMO may stop distribution of pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- During pattern definition update, unique information about your FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the Scanning function managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scanning function.
- When the correct date and time are not set on FOMA terminal, the pattern definitions cannot be updated.
- Updating pattern definition is stopped by a voice call arrived.

◆ Setting Scanning function <Set scan>

With this option set to "Valid", data and programs are checked automatically when they are executed. If hazardous data is detected, a warning is displayed in 5 levels.
→P426

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 6 3 ▶ **Set required items** ▶ [camera] ▶ **"Yes"**

Scan : Set whether to enable Scanning function.
Message scan : Set whether to enable the scanning function when SMS is displayed.

◆ Updating pattern definition automatically <Set auto-update>

- When the Auto-updating pattern definitions is completed,  appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon, check the message and press ●.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 6 2

2 **"Enable"** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ ●

- Select "Disable" if you do not use auto-update.

◆ Updating pattern definition

When Set auto-update is "Disable" or  (Auto-update of the latest pattern definition data failed) appears on the stand-by display, manually update the pattern definitions data.

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** 4 6 1 ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **"Yes"**

Downloading and updating of the pattern definitions are started.

2 ●

- When updating of pattern definition is not necessary, "Pattern definitions are up-to-date." is displayed. Press ● and continue using.

◆ Displaying scan results

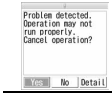
■ Displaying problem element scanned

① "Detail" while displaying a warning level screen

When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem names are omitted and the total number of the detected problem elements is displayed.



■ Displaying scan results

Warning level	Handling method
Warning level 0 	**"OK"** : Continue processing of the started application **"Detail"** : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 1 	**"Yes"** : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles **"No"** : Continue processing of the started application **"Detail"** : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 2 	**"OK"** : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles **"Detail"** : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 3 	**"Yes"** : Delete data that may cause troubles **"No"** : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles **"Detail"** : List names of the detected problem elements
Warning level 4 	**"OK"** : Delete data that may cause troubles **"Detail"** : List names of the detected problem elements

✔INFORMATION

- When the problem factor is detected while downloading Music&Video Channel program and FOMA terminal is turned OFF without checking the warning message, the warning level screen appears next time you display Music&Video Channel screen.
- When a problem element is detected on i-αppli set for the stand-by display and the starting i-αppli is stopped, i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.
- For some problem elements, "Detail" button may not appear.

◆ Displaying pattern definition version

1 MENU **[Settings & NW services]** **4** **6** **4**

Main specifications

■Phone

Product name		F-09A
Size		Approx. 114(H)×51(W)×18.5(T) (Thickest part : 18.6) (Unit: mm)
Weight		Approx. 138 g (with battery)
Continuous stand-by time[*1, 2, 3]	**FOMA/3G**	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 630 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 350 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 400 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 320 H
Continuous call time[*2, 3, 4]	**FOMA/3G**	Voice call : Approx. 240 min. Videophone call : Approx. 120 min.
	GSM	Approx. 210 min.
1Seg watching time[*2, 5]		Approx. 300 min. (1Seg Eco-mode : Approx. 330 min.)
Charging time[*6]		AC adapter : Approx. 150 min. DC adapter : Approx. 150 min.
LCD	**Type**	TFT 16,777,216 colors
	Size	Approx. 3.4 inch
	Number of pixels	460,800 pixels (480×960)
Image pickup device	**Type**	Out-camera : CMOS In-camera : CMOS
	Size	Out-camera : 1/3.2 inches In-camera : 1/10.0 inches
	Number of effective pixels	Out-camera : Approx. 8,100,000 pixels In-camera : Approx. 320,000 pixels
Camera section	**Number of recording pixels (Max.)**	Out-camera : Approx. 8,000,000 pixels In-camera : Approx. 310,000 pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Out-camera : Up to approx. 16.0× In-camera : Up to approx. 2.0×
Recording section	**Savable still images**[*7]	Up to approx. 780 images (default) Up to approx. 2,000 images (after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted)
	Continuous shooting of still images	2-9
	File format for still image	JPEG
	Moving picture shooting time[*8]	Up to approx. 65 min. (save to phone/default) Up to approx. 104 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 57 min. (save to 64MB microSD card)
	Moving picture file format	MP4
	1Seg recording time	Up to approx. 30 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 640 min. (save to 2GB microSD card)
Playing music	**Continuous play time**	i-motion : Approx. 1,578 min.[*9] Chaku-uta full® : Approx. 4,856 min.[*9, 10] WMA file : Approx. 4,965 min.[*10] Music&Video Channel (sound) : Approx. 4,856 min.[*10] Music&Video Channel (moving picture) : Approx. 336 min.
Recording size	**Chaku-uta®/ Chaku-uta full®**	Approx. 112 MB

*1 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally. Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally remains stationary. Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" status.

*2 Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.

*3 The call, communication or stand-by times are reduced by making i-mode communications, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-αppli, making i-αppli stand-by display settings, downloading or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing tune with MUSIC Player, activating or recording 1Seg, etc.

*4 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time that FOMA terminal can send/receive radio waves normally.

*5 1Seg watching time indicates the estimated watching time with using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) that FOMA terminal can receive radio waves normally.

*6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON requires longer time.

*7 The number of savable still images is based on a image size "QCIF (176×144)", Quality "Standard" and file size 10 Kbytes.

*8 The moving picture shooting time means allowable time for one movie. The number is based on Image size "QCIF (176×144)" and Quality "Standard". Varies depending on the moving picture to be recorded.

*9 AAC format files.

*10 Background playing is available.

■Battery Pack

Quality	Battery Pack F10
Battery used	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7V
Nominal capacity	870mAh

❖Number of still images saved

The number of savable still images varies by Image size, Size restrictions, settings of Quality or saving destination (→P194) or shooting states.

- The following table indicates the number to be displayed in the counter of the still image shooting screen.

■ Number of savable still images (approximate by quality) in F-09A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. Also, "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Image size	Save to	Economy (Approx.)	Standard (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)
QCIF (176×144)	Phone	2000	2000	2000
	microSD	3870	3870	1935
QVGA (240×320)*	Phone	2000	2000	2000
	microSD	1935	1935	1290
VGA (480×640)*	Phone	1969	1517	844
	microSD	967	774	430
Stand-by (480×960)*	Phone	1581	1194	701
	microSD	774	645	387
WXGA (768×1280)*	Phone	779	587	318
	microSD	430	322	175
FullHD (1080×1920)*	Phone	510	389	198
	microSD	276	215	107
3M (1536×2048)*	Phone	324	229	120
	microSD	175	124	65
5.3M (1632×3264)*	Phone	186	148	70
	microSD	101	82	38
8M (2448×3264)*	Phone	124	99	46
	microSD	67	54	25

* Horizontal and vertical can be switched.

❖Shooting time of moving pictures

The moving picture shooting time available varies by Size restrictions, Quality, Image size, Recording Type, settings of saving destination (→P194) or shooting conditions.

- The following table indicates the time to be displayed in the counter of the moving picture shooting screen.

■ Savable shooting time at a time (approximate by quality)

- Restriction size for Msg attach:Large/Small→P194
- Each shooting time is the same regardless of the saving destination.
- With Size restrictions set to None, the shooting time each time is the same as set as the time limit (→P193). However, if the total recording time is shorter than the time limit, the shooting time for one time is the same as the total shooting time.

Size restrictions	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Msg attach:Small	QCIF (176×144)		50 sec.	28 sec.	18 sec.	10 sec.
			63 sec.	32 sec.	21 sec.	11 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		28 sec.	15 sec.	10 sec.	4 sec.
			32 sec.	16 sec.	11 sec.	4 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		10 sec.	5 sec.	3 sec.	1 sec.
			11 sec.	5 sec.	4 sec.	1 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	242 sec.	121 sec.	—
Msg attach:Large	QCIF (176×144)		205 sec.	114 sec.	74 sec.	40 sec.
			258 sec.	129 sec.	86 sec.	43 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		115 sec.	61 sec.	40 sec.	16 sec.
			129 sec.	65 sec.	43 sec.	17 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		42 sec.	21 sec.	14 sec.	5 sec.
			43 sec.	22 sec.	14 sec.	6 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	16 min.	495 sec.	—

* Video type (: Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only)

■ The total shooting time of moving pictures (approximate by quality) in F-09A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- The value with Size restrictions set to "None". When Size restrictions is set, the total savable shooting time may differ.
- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Save to	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Phone	QCIF (176×144)		187 min.	104 min.	67 min.	36 min.
			235 min.	118 min.	78 min.	39 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		105 min.	55 min.	36 min.	14 min.
			118 min.	59 min.	39 min.	15 min.
	VGA (640×480)		37 min.	19 min.	12 min.	301 sec.
			39 min.	19 min.	13 min.	305 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	908 min.	452 min.	—
microSD	QCIF (176×144)		103 min.	57 min.	37 min.	20 min.
			130 min.	65 min.	43 min.	21 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		57 min.	30 min.	20 min.	487 sec.
			65 min.	32 min.	21 min.	502 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		20 min.	10 min.	425 sec.	166 sec.
			21 min.	10 min.	438 sec.	168 sec.
	(Sound only)		—	500 min.	249 min.	—

* Video type (: Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only)

Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-09A

Type		Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Phonebook*1		Up to 1,000	—
UIM phonebook		Up to 50	—
Kisekae Tool*1		Up to 50	—
Mail	Received messages*1, 2	Up to 1,000	Up to 500
	Sent messages*1, 2	Up to 500	Up to 250
	Unsent messages*1, 2	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Decome-Anime templates*1	Up to 300	—
	Deco-mail templates*1	Up to 300	—
Area Mail		Up to 30	Up to 15
SMS in UIM*3		Up to 20	—
MessageR*1		Up to 100	Up to 50
MessageF*1		Up to 50	Up to 25
Bookmark*4		Up to 200	—
Screen memo*1, 4		Up to 100	Up to 100
DL dictionary		Up to 10	—
Downloaded fonts*5		Up to 5	—
Channel list		Up to 10	—
TVlink		Up to 50	—
Programs of Music&Video Channel*1		Up to 10	—
Music	Chaku-uta full®*1	Up to 100	—
	Uta-moji Lyrics*1	Up to 100	-
	Playlist	Up to 20	—
i-αppli*1, 6		Up to 100	—
ToruCa*1		Up to 200	—
Images*1		Up to 2,000	—
Moving picture/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound recorder*1		Up to 200	—
Playlists of moving picture/i-motion		Up to 100	—

Type		Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Melodies*1		Up to 500	—
PDF data*1		Up to 100	—
Machi-chara*1		Up to 50	—
Chara-den*1		Up to 50	—
Word, Excel, PowerPoint*1		Up to 100	—
1Seg*1	Video	Up to 10	—
	Image	Up to 100	—
Scheduler*7		Up to 2,600	—
Notepad		Up to 50	—
Bluetooth devices		Up to 10	Up to 10

*1 Depending on the size of data or usage status of common memory space, the actual number of items that can be saved and recorded may be fewer.
*2 The total number of i-mode mail and SMS.
*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. This number does not include SMS report.
*4 The total number of i-mode and Full Browser.
*5 The number of "プリティー桃" recorded by default is included.
*6 Total number of i-αppli and Message i-αppli. Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli can be saved.
*7 Total number of schedules, schedules in i-schedule and watching/recording reservation. Up to 100 items of watching/recording reservation in total can be saved.

Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone

◆ SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA F-09A meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over 10 grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.*3

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA F-09A is 0.583 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). The test for SAR was conducted according to the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the websites below.

World Health Organization (WHO) :
http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP :
http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC :
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/ index.htm
TELEC :
http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DOCOMO :
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
FUJITSU LIMITED :
http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications.
*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection.

◆ Declaration of Conformity

The product "F-09A" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found at http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency(RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.297W/Kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/Kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

◆ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules.
  Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
  ① this device may not cause harmful interference, and
  ② this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

◆ Industry Canada (IC) Notice

- Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
  ① this device may not cause interference, and
  ② this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

◆ FCC and IC RF Exposure Information

This model phone meets the U.S. Government's and Canadian Government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.
This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government and IC of the Canadian Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.
The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC and IC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC and IC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC and IC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. and Canadian government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC and IC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC and IC, when tested for use at the ear, is 0.266W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.527W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC and IC requirements).
While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. and Canadian government requirements.
The FCC and IC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC and IC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at http:// www.fcc.gov/oet/ (please search on FCC ID VQK-F09A).
For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC and IC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and which positions the handset at a minimum distance of 1.5 cm from the body.

* In the United States and Canada, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.
These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

◆ Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT
Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

DRIVING
Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

HOSPITALS
Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

PETROL STATIONS
Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

INTERFERENCE
Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Pacemakers
Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

Hearing Aids
Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

For other Medical Devices :
Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they are also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.

Intellectual Property Right

◆ Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.
Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.
Avoid taking pictures of others with FOMA terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

◆ Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Deco-mail", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-area", "Chara-den", "i-αppliDX", "i-Channel", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "Public mode", "ToruCa", "iD", "2in1", "DCMX", "OFFICEED", "IMCS", "Chokkan Game", "docomo PRIME series" and logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "Music&Video Channel", "DCMX", "iD" and "HIGH-SPEED" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista®, Windows Media® and PowerPoint® are trademarks or registered trademarks of "Microsoft Corporation" in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. In this manual, they may be described as Excel and Word.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan, US and other countries.
  Copyright© 2009 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe Reader® LE technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe Reader LE Copyright© 1993-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- FlashFX® Pro™ is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc.
  FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2009 DATALIGHT, Inc.
  U.S.Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- microSDHC Logo is a trademark.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- "CROSS YOU" is a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Word, Excel and PowerPoint file display technologies are powered by Picsel Technologies.
  Picsel, Picsel File Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.

- ATOK + APOT of Justsystem Corporation is installed in this product as Japanese character conversion function.
  "ATOK" "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- T9® is a trademark or registered trademark of Nuance Communications, Inc. in US and of Nuance corporations in other countries.
- This equipment is provided with the software licensed by Symbian Software Ltd. or the licensor©1998-2009. symbian OS and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd. or the licensor.
- "Privacy mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU LIMITED.
- Bluetooth® and its logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and NTT DOCOMO uses them under license. Other trademarks and names inhere to their respective owners.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- FrameSolid is the trademark or registered trademark of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- Google is registered trademark of Google Inc.
- ズーキーパー (Zookeeper) is a trademark or registered trademark of KITERETSU Inc.
- "Chizu Talk" is a trademark of ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD.
- "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" is trademark of ATR-Trek.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 indicates the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

◆ Others

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- The image interpolation technology utilized is FrameSolid, a product of Morpho, Inc.
- This product is equipped with the technologies of GestureTek, Inc.
  Copyright© 2006-2009, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- "学研モバイル国語辞典 (Gakken Mobile JpnDic)", "学研モバイル和英辞典 (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)", "学研モバイル英和辞典 (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)", "今日は何の日 (Today's trivia)" and "今日の歴史 (Today in history)" are copyrighted by GAKKEN CO., LTD.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
  - Recording moving pictures and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA
    For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When downloading licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a "Revocation List" with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you cannot access a content that requires the upgrade.

MEMO

Index/Quick Manual

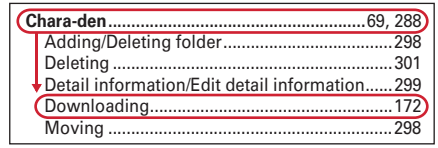
Index 438
Quick Manual 448

Index

Using Index

You can also use this index listing function names and keywords as "Alphabetical keyword reference". For functions such as "Save" and "Delete", first search by a function name of the first level (**bold**) and then by an index item of the second layer.

<Example> Downloading Chara-den



A

AC adapter....49
Accept/Reject call....119
Access shortcuts....169
Add icon....321
Additional service (Register USSD)....361
Adjust volume....84
After-Sales Service....419
Alarm auto power ON....316
Alarm clock....315
1Seg alarm clock....315
Alarm clock sound....83
Alarm sound....83
Album....298
Adding/Deleting....298
Moving/Copying data....298
Playing album....299
Alert by contact....75
Alert preference....333
Alert/Image by group....76
All lock....107
Anonymous caller....120
Antenna icon....98
Any key answer....65
Area Mail....155
Receiving....156
Setting....156
Arrival call act....357
Arrival information....33
Attaching/Removing battery pack....46
Attachment....134, 140
Changing/Removing....136
Attachment auto-play....152
Authentication
Fingerprint authentication....104
Terminal security code....102
Auto answer setting....332
Auto power ON/OFF....314
Auto rotation....43
Auto-send....136

B

Backup....295
Bar code reader....200, 252
Basic menu....30
Basic style....25
Battery
Charging....48
Charging time....48
Operation time....48
Battery icon....98
Battery level....50
BGM play....229
Bluetooth communication use....335
Bluetooth function....333
Accept dialup device....333
Accept registered....335
Connecting....335
Connecting devices....337
Device list....334
Multi service....338
Register new devices....334
Bluetooth ON/OFF....335
Bluetooth passkey....334
Bluetooth settings....337
Bookmark....168
Access shortcuts....169
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)....140

C

CA Certificate 176
Calculator 328
Calendar → Scheduler
Call alert 82
Call cost 327
Call cost limit 328
Hide call cost icon 328
Reset call cost 327
Call duration 327
Call Forwarding Service 355
Call option 62
Call ring alert 83, 228
Call Waiting 355
Caller ID notification 53
Caller ID Request Service 356
Caller ID (Notify/Not notify)
Call option 62
Caller ID settings 79
186/184 61
Camera 186
Adjusting flicker 197
Auto focus 191
Auto optimized shooting mode 190
Auto timer 198
Brightness 196
Compatible mode 199
Continuous shooting 192
Face detection 198
File details 186
Frame 197
Full auto focus 191
Grid 199
Image size 194
Light 196
Macro shooting 196
Movie camera 193
Moving picture shooting time 429
Panorama shooting 192
Quality 194
Recording settings 194
Reduce shake 197
Restoring default setting 197
Savable number of still images 428
Scene mode/effect 196
Sense orientation 194
Shutter sound 86
Size restriction 194
Skew correction 197
Smile-finder 198
Still camera 188
Still image settings 194
Switching cameras 196
Touch AF 191
Touch AF:ON 199
White balance 196
Zoom 195
4 frames shooting 192
Certificate 176
Downloading 178
Certificate download 177
Chaku-moji 60
Chaku-uta full® 222
Change i-mode password 163
Character entry 340
Chinese entry 348
Conversion options list 341
Copying characters 345
DL dictionary 347
Fixed phrase 343
Full-screen entry 340
In-line entry 340
Input mode 340
Input prediction 342
Kana/Kanji conversion 341
KUTEN code input 346
Line feed 342
Multilingual setting 348
Password manager 347
Pictogram 343
Pinyin entry 349
Quoting data 344
Reset prediction 343
Save phrase 345
Save word 346
Smiley 344
Stroke entry 350
Symbol 343
Text input method 348
Touch entry 350
T9 input method 348
2-touch input method 347
5-touch input method 341
Chara-den 69, 288
Adding/Deleting folder 298
Deleting 301
Detail information/Edit detail information 299
Downloading 172
Moving 298
Settings 289
Sorting 301
Charge alert 86
Charging 48
Charging jack 23
Charging time 48
Check IC owner 257
Check msg. option 151
Check new message 138
Check No. of msgs 145
Check remote setting 125
Clock display format 99
Close settings 66, 116
Color scheme 94
Compatible with contents transfer 286
Connecting FOMA terminal and PC 297
Connecting to SSL/TLS page 163
Contact image 92
Countdown timer 314
Custom menu 30, 322

D

Data broadcasting 210
Data Center → Data Security Service
Data communication 374

Data exchange settings 306
Data Security Service 121
Data session arv. act 71
Data transfer
OBEX™ communication 374
Data transfer mode ON 26
Date To format 329
Date & time 52
DC adapter 49
Deco-mail
Creating 130
Deco-mail picture 130
Decome-Anime
Creating 132
Default search setting 78
Default setting 51
Delete all data 123
Delete all WMAs 229
Desktop holder 49
Dictionaries 329, 347
Downloading 172
Directory assistance service 409
Display 23, 26
Color scheme 94
Display & Key light 93
Guide area 29
Task area 28
Display in English 52
Display Machi-chara 94
Display priority 153
Display turn sound 86
Display & Key light 93
Brightness 93
Display light time 93
Keypad light 93
Light time-out 93
Displaying address 145
Displaying own phone number 53
DL dictionary 347
DOCOMO Cert 176
DOCOMO keitai datalink 377
Double-tapping 43
Dual Network Service 356

E

Early warning "Area Mail" 155
Earphone/Microphone with Switch 332
Earpiece 23
English guidance 357
Excel → Word, Excel, PowerPoint Export Administration Regulations 433
External connection jack 23
External device 72

F

Fake call 325
FeliCa 256
FeliCa mark (Mark) 23
File restriction 300
Fingerprint access 106
Fingerprint authentication 104
Authentication 106
Deleting 106
Registering 105
FirstPass 163, 177
Flash 167
Focus mode 33
Folder 298
Adding/Deleting 298
Font
Downloading 172
Font size 99, 153
Font style 99
Full Browser screen 165

G

GPS
Location information usage menu 268
Location request 270
Loc. history 274
Map 267
Map setting 275
Notify location 273
Position accuracy 275
Position location 267
Positioning alert 275
Post-Position task 269
Request permit/deny 271
GPS alert 83
GPS compatible i-αppli 269
Greeting msg resp time 68
Guidance button 36
Guide area 29

H

Headset key control 332
Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer 332
Host selection 175

I

i-αppli 232
Abnormal exit history 251
Auto start 248
Count software 233
Creating/Deleting folders 250
Deleting 251
Display light time 236
Downloading 232
Electronic compass 236
i-αppli call 248
i-αppli call DL set 249
i-αppli call log 249
i-αppli call setting 235
i-αppli To 249
IC card content 233
i-Widget 253
Location usage setting 235
Map setting 235
Motion tracking 237
Moving 251
Preinstalled i-αppli 237
Program guide key setting 235
Security error history 235

Set auto start info. ... 248
Set NW transmission ... 235
Setting volume ... 236
Software description ... 235
Software info disp. ... 233
Software list ... 233
Software settings ... 235
Sort software ... 251
Start failure history ... 248
Starting ... 233
Trace information ... 234
Upgrading ... 250
Vibrate effect ... 236
i-αppli stand-by display ... 90, 250
Canceling ... 250
IC card lock ... 258
IC lock(power-off) ... 258
iC transfer service ... 257
iC transmission ... 302
Receiving ... 304
Sending ... 303
i-Channel ... 182
i-Channel setting ... 183
Icon list ... 26, 28
i-concier ... 183
Data Security Service ... 121
Information ... 184
Information display ... 184
i-concier ring alert ... 83
Identification mark ... 92
Image ... 278
Adding/Deleting album ... 298
Creating animation ... 280
Data Security Service ... 121
Deleting ... 301
Detail information/Edit detail information ... 299
Displaying ... 278
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) ... 140
Downloading ... 171
Editing ... 280
Moving/Copying ... 298
Settings ... 279
Slideshow ... 280
Sorting ... 301
Uploading ... 173
Using images ... 280
Image message alert ... 92
i-mode ... 162
i-mode fault diagnosis site ... 420
i-mode mail ... 128
Activate quick reply ... 151
Add bookmark ... 148
Adding address (Simultaneous sending) ... 129
Adding to phonebook ... 148
Address type ... 129
Attachment ... 134, 140
Auto-send ... 136
Changing read/unread state ... 146
Check new message ... 138
Copying ... 148
Creating ... 128
Creating/Deleting folders ... 145
Data Security Service ... 121
Deleting ... 146
Display by type ... 152
Display priority ... 153
Displaying mail address ... 145
Editing ... 137
Font size ... 153
Forwarding ... 139
Inserting signature ... 129
Mail group ... 151
Mail logs ... 147
Message list ... 152
Moving ... 145
Number of messages in folder ... 145
Phone call ... 148
Protecting ... 146
Quick mail ... 137
Quick reply presets ... 152
Reading screens ... 142
Receive option ... 138
Receive option attachment file ... 140
Receiving ... 137
Replying ... 139
Saving ... 136
Searching ... 145
Sending ... 128
Sort method ... 149
Sorting ... 146
i-mode password ... 102
i-mode settings ... 174
i-mode/Full Browser
Adding to phonebook ... 166
Changing character code ... 167
Copying/Pasting ... 167
Displaying URL ... 166
Drag mode ... 166
Frame ... 167
Last URL ... 164
Multi window ... 166
Operating ... 165
Pointer ... 166
Searching ... 167
Switching ... 164
URL enter history ... 165
i-motion ... 180
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail) ... 140
i-motion mail ... 134
i-motion/movie
Downloading ... 181
In-camera ... 23
In-Car Hands-Free ... 64
Incoming call image ... 91
Incoming msg. attach ... 152
Indicator light ... 98
Information display ... 184
Infrared communication ... 302
Data exchange settings ... 306
Receiving ... 304
Remote control function ... 305
Sending ... 303
Infrared data port ... 23
Initializing remotely ... 124
International call (WORLD CALL) ... 62

International roaming
Area service status....370
Bar calls at roaming....371
Disp. operator name....370
Making a call/videophone call....368
Network search mode....369
Network service....371
Notify missed call....371
PLMN setting....369
Receiving a call/videophone call....369
Roaming guidance....370
Two time zone clocks....370
3G/GSM setting....370
International roaming (WORLD WING)....364
Internet connection
Full Browser....164
i-mode....164
Int'l call assist....63
i-schedule
Displaying/Operating....320
Downloading....172
ISP connection communication....175
Issued certificate....176
i-Widget....252
i-Widget roaming set....254
i-Widget screen....253
i-Widget sound effect....254
Widget Appli list screen....253
Widget Appli operation screen....253

K

Keypad dial lock....110
Key/touch sound....86
Kisekae menu....30
Kisekae Tool....94
Adding/Deleting folder....298
Changing....95
Checking content....96
Deleting....301
Detail information/Edit detail information....299
Downloading....172
Moving....298
Sorting....301
Special mode....96

L

Light....23
Light alert....98
Listen volume....57, 84
Lock preference....258
Low Battery alert....87

M

Machi-chara....287
Adding/Deleting folder....298
Deleting....301
Detail information/Edit detail information....299
Downloading....172
Moving....298
Settings....288
Sorting....301
Mail address....53
Mail alert....82
Mail auto receive....137
Mail creation screen....128
Mail group....151
Mail image....92
Mail logs....147
Mail settings (FOMA terminal)....149
Mail template....133
Deleting....134
Downloading....134
Mail To....173
Mail/Msg. ring alert....83, 228
Media To....173
Melody....289
Adding/Deleting album....298
Deleting....301
Detail information/Edit detail information....299
Downloading....172
List....393
Melodies for mail attachment....394
Moving/Copying....298
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail)....140
Settings....290
Sorting....301
Using melody....289
Melody Call....85
Memory status....302
Menu....30
Customizing....97
List....380
Menu button for touch operation....36
Message i-αppli
Downloading....233
Message list....152
MessageF alert....82
MessageR alert....82
MessageR/F....153
Auto-display....154
Check new message....138
Deleting....154
Display by type....154
Display priority....153
Displaying....154
Displaying/Saving attachment....155
Font size....154
Protecting....154
Reading screen....155
Sorting....154
Microphone....23
microSD card....290
Adding/Deleting folder....298
Backup....295
Displaying data....294
Folder structure....291
Formatting....296
Installing/Removing....290
Memory status....296
Moving/Copying....293, 298
Operating from PC....297
Scan card....297
Sync data info....296
Missed calls....59

Motion sensor 43
Movie 180
Movie auto play 182
Movie ringtone 83
Moving picture memo 326
Moving picture playing software 410
Moving picture shooting screen 187
Moving picture/i-motion
Adding/Deleting album 298
Capturing 286
Custom edit 286
Deleting 301
Detail information/Edit detail information 299
Edit by size 286
Editing 285
Moving/Copying 298
Playing 282
Playlist 284
Settings 284
Shooting 193
Sorting 301
Uploading 173
Using moving picture/i-motion 285
Multi Number 358
Call option 62
Multiaccess 312
Combination of functions 407
Multilingual setting 348
Multitask 312
Combination of functions 408
Music
Background play 218, 222
Chaku-uta full® 222
Ring alert 228
Uta-hodai 222
Uta-moji Lyrics 222
WMA file 223
MUSIC Player 222, 225
Data list screen 224
Delete all WMAs 229
Display image and lyrics 229
Displaying detail information 228
Folder list screen 224
Link lyrics & song 228
Managing data 226
Playing/Operating 225
Playlist 226
Playlist list screen 224
Replay restriction 226
Saving music data 222
Saving Uta-moji Lyrics 222
Settings 226
Music&Video Channel 218
Adding/Deleting folder 298
Chapter list 221
Deleting 221, 301
Moving 298
Playing/Operating 219
Replay restriction 220
Saving 221
Set program 218
Sorting 301
Music&Video Channel player screen 219
Music&Video Channel screen 218
My Document → PDF data
My Menu 163
My phone number 53
My Picture → Image

N

Network security code 102
New Task start menu 312
Noise reduction 64
Notepad 328
Notify switchable mode 71
Nuisance Call Blocking Service 356

O

OFFICEED 361
Omakase Lock 107
On hold 57
One-key shortcut i-αppli 247
On-hold 66
On-hold tone 86
Operation lock 116
Options and related devices 409
Original certificate 176
Osaifu-Keitai 256
Other → Word, Excel, PowerPoint
Out of service area 51
Out-camera 23
Outgoing call image 91

P

Packet communication 375
Password manager 347
Pause ("P") 61
PDF data 306
Adding/Deleting folder 298
Deleting 301
Detail information/Edit detail information 299
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) 140
Downloading 172
Moving/Copying 298
Settings 308
Sorting 301
Pedometer/ACT monitor 330, 331
Displaying information 331
Personal data lock 109
Personalized silent mode 88
Phone
Call option 62
Incoming call image 91
Making a call 56
Operation while receiving a call 64
Outgoing call image 91
Receiving a call 64
Phone To (AV Phone To) 173
Phonebook 74
Adding 75
Call option 62
Caller ID settings 79
Copying 79
Copying to UIM/FOMA terminal 79

Data Security Service....121
Deleting....79
Details screen....78
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)....140
Editing....78
Group setting....76
No. of items....80
Secret code....79
Switching order of phone numbers/mail addresses....79
Switching phonebook numbers....79
Phonebook search....76
Phonebook list....76
Rocket search....77
Specifying search method....77
Pictogram D....130
Pictogram entry
List....396
PIN code ON/OFF....103
PIN/PIN2 code....102
Changing....104
Power
Auto power ON/OFF....314
Power ON/OFF....51
Power saving mode....93
Saving mode ON/OFF....93
Saving mode options....94
PowerPoint → Word, Excel, PowerPoint
Prefix dialing....63
Preinstalled i-αppli....237
DCMX credit appli....242
Decoration together....239
FOMA communication environment check application....243
G-Guide TV Remote Controller....240
Google Mobile....247
Health checker....243
i-αppli banking....245
iavatar maker....239
iD appli....241
iW Watch....244
J-E Speech Translation for F....238
Keitai Brain Stretching 2....238
LOGIC PUZZLE F....237
Map Application....245, 269
McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application....246
Mobile Google Map....240
Mobile Suica Setup i-αppli....242
Puchipuchi Zookeeper ver.F....238
Rakuoku ☆ application....245
ROID widget....244
Start! i-Widget....244
Stock Prices Application....246
Touch de game pack....237
Vicinity viewer....239
Priority
Caller ID notification....53
Displaying name....74
Incoming call image....91
Light alert....98
Outgoing call image....91
Ring alert....84
Vibrate alert....85
Priority comm mode....66
Privacy mode....110
Contact setting....115
Programed activation....259
Public mode....67
Public mode (Drive mode)....67
Public mode (Power OFF)....67
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)....103
Pulse checker → Health checker

Q

Quality alarm....87
Quick dial....80
Quick mail....137
Quick Manual....448
Quick search....313
Search service....314
Quick zoom....142

R

Receive display option....116
Receive option....138
Receive option....151
Received calls....58
List/Details screen....58
Received mail → i-mode mail
Received signal level....51
Receiving screen....137, 153, 158
Reception result screen....137, 153, 158
Reconnect alarm....87
Record message....68
Quick message recorder....68
Recorded messages
Playing/Deleting....69
Redial....58
List/Details screen....58
Register USSD....361
Remote control....358
Remote control function....305
Remote controller with microphone F01....216, 229, 283, 310
Remote customization....125
Reply format....151
Request permit/deny....271
Reset....123
Menu....97
Reset....123
Total calls cost....327
Total calls duration....327
User information....325
Reset i-Channel....183
Retrieving image....92
Ring alert delay....120
Ring alerts & Sounds....83
RSS reader....170
Registering RSS....170

S

SAR....431

Savable/Recordable/Protectable number 430
When exceeding 302
Scanning function 425
Set auto-update 425
Set scan 425
Schedule
Data Security Service 121
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) 140
Downloading 172
Schedule reminder 83
Scheduler 316
Calendar screen 316
Check No. of items 316
Copying/Pasting/Deleting/Editing/Operating mail 319
Day off of week 317
Day view screen 319
Days off 317
Details screen 319
Holiday settings 317
i-schedule 320
Quick schedule 318
Reminder option 319
Saving 317
Schedule reminder 318
Scheduler view type 317
Screen memo 170
Search key shortcut 324
Search message 145
Secrecy search 77
Secret attribute 80, 320
Security codes 102
Security lock 117
Security Scan → Scanning function
Select language 52
Select startup menu 94
Self mode 108
Send DTMF 61
Sent mail → i-mode mail
Service Numbers 357
Set arrival act 357
Set greeting message 68
Set random image 89
Shooting indication light 23
Shortcut icons 321
Shortcut icons settings 322
Shortcut operations 31
Shutter sound 86
Signature
Inserting 128, 157
Setting 150
Silent mode 87
Personalized silent mode 88
Simple light 324
Simultaneous sending 129
Slide and answer 65
Slide and edit 323
Slide sound 86
Slide style 25
Smiley list 404
SMS 157
Add bookmark 148
Adding to phonebook 148
Check new SMS 159
Creating/Sending 157
Deleting (FOMA terminal) 146
Display priority 153
Displaying (FOMA terminal) 142
Displaying (UIM) 159
Editing 158
Moving/Copying (to UIM) 159
Quick mail 137
Reading screens 142
Receiving 158
Setting 159
Sort method 149
SMS report request 159
SMS To 173
Software update
Auto-update 422
Immediate update 423
Reserved update 423
Set auto-update 422
Software update screen 422
Sort method 149
Sound recorder 194
Speaker 23
Speakerphone function 57
Special mode 96
Special symbol list 401
Specified caller 120
Stand-by display 51, 89
Antenna icon 98
Battery icon 98
Clock display format 99
i-αppli stand-by display 90
Info/calendar layout 90
Stand-by launcher 35
Stand-by touch button 35
Status message 66
Stereo sound effect 85
Still image
Displaying 278
Editing 280
Shooting 188
Still image shooting screen 187
Style theme 97
Sub address 64
Submenu operation 32
Super clear-voice 2 → Voice clear
Switch Task menu 312
System sound 86

T

Task area 28
Terminal security code 102
Terminal security code change 103
Timed lock 258
Timed pause ("T") 61
Timed theme 88
Tone signal (Send DTMF) 61
ToruCa 259
Check No. of items 262
Creating/Deleting folders 262
Data Security Service 121

Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) 140
Downloading 172
Moving/Deleting/Sorting/Attaching/Displaying .. 260
Obtaining 260
Searching 262
ToruCa alert 263
ToruCa auto-read 263
ToruCa from IC card 262
ToruCa sort rule 263
Touch lock 119
Touch operation 35
Touch panel 23, 34
Turn-display option 324
Two-key shortcut i-αppli 247

U

UIM
Installing/Removing 44
Operation restriction 45
Security codes 44
Type 46
Unblocking PIN lock 104
Unregistered caller 121
Unsent mail → i-mode mail
USB mode settings 297
User Certificate 176
User information
Checking 53, 325
Details screen 325
Uta-moji Lyrics 222
Link lyrics & song 228

V

Vibrate alert/effect 85
Videophone 56
Auto redial as voice 71
Chara-den 69
Display setting 70
Image setting 70
Making a call 56
Receiving a call 64
Videophone alert 82
Videophone image 70
Videophone settings (Operation) 71
View preference 59, 78, 147
Voice clear 57
Voice Mail service 354
Voice memo 326
Voice memos
Playing/Deleting 69
Voice slowing 57

W

Warranty 419
Web To 173
Website 164
WMA file 223
Word, Excel, PowerPoint 308
Adding/Deleting folder 298
Deleting 301
Detail information/Edit detail information 299
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) 140
Downloading 172
Moving/Copying 298
Settings 309
Sorting 301
WORLD WING 46

Y

YOKO-MOTION style 25

Numeric

1Seg 204
Creating Channel list 205
Data broadcasting 210
Deleting recorded data 301
Detail information/Edit detail information of recorded data 299
Displaying recorded data 309
Horizontal display (full-screen) 206
Horizontal display (video with data broadcasting) 206
Multi window 211
OFF timer 208
Operation settings for recorded still image 310
Operations while watching TV 207
Program guide i-αppli 209
Recording 212
Recording reservation 213
Recording result 215
Reservation list screen 213
Setting channels 205
Smooth image 208
Sorting recorded data 301
Storage area 204
Subtitle 206
Time shift function 209
TV link 210
User setting 216
Vertical standard display 206
Watching 206
Watching reservation 213
1Seg Eco mode 208
1Seg watching screen 206
2in1 358
2in1 setting 359
3G-324M 56
5-touch input method
List 395
64K data communication 375

MEMO

Quick Manual

◆ How to use Quick Manual

The "Quick Manual" appended to this manual briefly describes the basic screen displays and operating procedure of FOMA terminal. Cut along the cutoff line and fold up the manual as shown right.
For the use of international roaming service (WORLD WING), please refer to "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)".

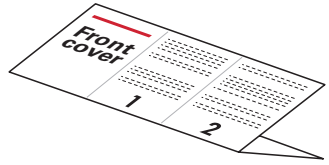
◆ 简易手册的使用方法

编入本书中的“简易手册”简要说明了有关FOMA手机的基本画面显示和操作方法。请按照剪切线剪裁，并按右图所示折叠后使用。
在海外利用国际漫游服务（WORLD WING）时，请携带“简易手册（海外使用篇）”。

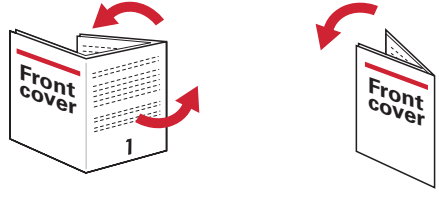
1 Cut along the cutoff line

Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

2 Fold once horizontally



3 Fold the left and the right so that the front cover faces outward



docomo F-09A

Quick Manual

❖General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

<In English>
0120-005-250 (toll free) * Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

<In Japanese only>
0120-800-000 (toll free) * Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.
No prefix 151 (toll free)

❖Repairs

<In Japanese only>
No prefix 113 (toll free) * Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.
0120-800-000 (toll free) * Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

Please check on the number before dialing.

Entering characters

❖Switching input modes

On the character entry screen, 文字 (several times)▶●
· While displaying items to switch, use ⊠ to switch one-byte/two-byte characters.

Input mode

漢 : Hiragana/Kanji character
半ア : One-byte katakana
半A : One-byte alphabetic characters
半数 : One-byte numeric characters
全ア : Two-byte katakana
全A : Two-byte alphabetic characters
全数 : Two-byte numeric characters

❖Entering/Converting characters (5-touch method)

Operations available before conversion

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.
1-0 : Select input mode and press keys successively to change characters to input.
MENU : Change characters to Kana
↙ : Return to the previous character (e.g. : ぉ→ぇ→ぅ→ぃ→ぁ→お→え→…)
CLR : Cancel entered characters
✂ : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after conversion). (e.g. : ほ→ぼ→ぱ→ほ→…,つ→っ→づ→つ→…)

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)"
1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode
"ろ" : 9 (5 times)
"っ " : 4 (3 times)▶✂

"ぽ" : 6 (5 times)▶✂ (twice)
"ん" : 0 (3 times)
"ぎ" : 2 (twice)▶✂
2 📷
· Displaying conversion options list : ⊠ or 📷
· Returning to state before converted : CLR
3 ●▶"閉じる (Close)"

❖Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

CLR : Delete a character at the cursor position. Delete a character at the right of the cursor when the cursor is between characters.
· Pressing for 1 sec. or more deletes all the characters after the cursor.

When the cursor is at the end of the text

CLR : Delete a character at the left of the cursor
· Pressing for 1 sec. or more deletes all the characters entered.

❖Entering pictograms, symbols and fixed phrases

Entering pictograms

On the character entry screen, 📷▶Select pictogram

Entering symbols

On the character entry screen, 📷▶MENU▶Select symbol

Entering fixed phrases

On the character entry screen, MENU 4 1 (MENU 5 1 on the signature editing screen)▶Select fixed phrase type▶Select fixed phrase

❖Copying/Pasting characters

Copying characters

On the character entry screen, MENU 1 (MENU 3 1 on the message text entry screen)▶Select the start position▶Select the end position

Pasting characters

On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste▶MENU 3 (MENU 3 3 on the message text entry screen)

Phonebook

❖Adding to FOMA terminal phonebook

1 🔍 (1 sec. or more)▶Enter a name▶Set required items▶📷
· Phonebook No.
· Reading

Cutoff

· Select/Shoot image
· : Group
· : Phone number
· : Mail address
· : Birthday
· : Note
· : Postal Code/Address
· : Location info
· : Company name
· : Job title
· : URL

Adding to UIM phonebook

1 MENU [Phonebook & Logs] 4 ▶ Enter a name ▶ Set required items ▶ ●

Adding from redial list or received call list

1 ◎ ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ MENU 5 1
· Update phonebook : MENU 5 2

2 1 (FOMA terminal phonebook) or 2 (UIM phonebook)
· To update phonebook, select the party to save.
3 Set required items ▶ ●

❖Editing the phonebook

1 ◎
· Switching phonebook : ●
2 Move the cursor to a party ▶ MENU 3 1
· For UIM phonebook, MENU 3.
3 Edit ▶ ●
· An overwriting confirmation screen appears.

❖Searching the phonebook

1 MENU [Phonebook & Logs] 1
· Switching phonebook : ●
2 1-6
· For UIM phonebook, 1-3.

Camera function

Shooting still images

● ▶ Point the camera at the object and ● ▶ ●

Shooting moving pictures

● (1 sec. or more) ▶ Point the camera at the object ● ▶ ● ▶ ●

Displaying image

MENU [Data Box] 1 1 ▶ Select an image

Playing moving picture

MENU [Data Box] 4 2 ▶ Select a moving picture

Operation available in playing moving picture

: Adjust volume
: Reverse/Fast play/Play from the beginning (when paused)
● : Pause/Play
● : Stop

Videophone

❖Making videophone calls

1 Enter a phone number ▶ ●
2 Talk with the other party
· Putting a call on-hold : ●
· Switching earpiece/speaker : ✆
· Switching image to send : i✉
3 When ending the call, ⏻

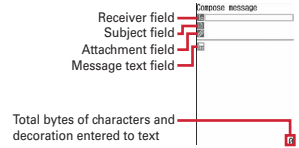
❖Receiving videophone calls

1 A call comes in ▶ i✉ or ✆
· On hold : ⏻ while receiving a call
· Operation during a call is the same as Step 2 in "Making videophone calls".
2 When ending the call, ⏻

i-mode mail

❖Creating/Sending i-mode mail

1 ✉ (1 sec. or more)



2 Select To ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select the receiver
3 Select Sub ▶ Enter the subject
4 Select Msg ▶ Enter message text
· Creating Deco-mail : ✉ ▶ Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate

5 ●
· Saving mail : MENU 3
· Auto-send : MENU 2

❖File attachment

1 Select 📎 on the mail creation screen
· Removing attachment : ✉ ▶ "Yes"
2 Select the type of the file to attach ▶ Select the attachment source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file

❖Displaying received/sent mail

1 ✉ ▶ 1 or 5
2 Select a folder
3 Select a mail

Cutoff

❖Editing/Sending i-mode mail

<Example> Editing unsent mail

1 [✉] [4]
- Editing sent mail : [✉] [5]

2 Select a folder

3 Select a mail
- Editing sent mail : Select a mail ▶ [📷]

4 Edit ▶ [📷]

❖Check new message (mail)

1 [✉] [✉]

Activating/Operating 1Seg

1 [📺] (1 sec. or more)

Operations available while watching 1Seg

[iα], [✉] : Adjust volume
[●] (with data broadcasting display area) : Move the cursor
[iα] (1 sec. or more) : Silent
[1]-[9], [✱], [0], [#] : One-key channel selection (13ch and up can be selected from TV station list)
[MENU] [8] [7] : 1Seg ECO mode ON/OFF
[↙] : Switch watching screen
[MENU] [0] : Switch display/hide subtitle
[●] (1 sec. or more) : Start/Stop video recording
[●] : Record still image
[📷] : Activate Program guide i-αppli
[📞] ▶ "Yes" : End

Activating/Operating Music&Video Channel/MUSIC Player

1 [MENU] [MUSIC] ▶ [1] or [2]

Operations available after activation

[●] : Play/Pause
[●] : Adjust volume
[●] (1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward
[●] : Move to the beginning of the current chapter/tune*1
[●] : Move to the next chapter/tune
[●] (quickly twice)*2 : Save to Quick playlist
[●] (1 sec. or more)*2 : Stop

*1 If playing time is within 3 seconds, move to the previous chapter/tune.

*2 Only valid for MUSIC Player.

Cutoff

Network Service

❖Voice Mail service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

Activating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [1] [1] [1] ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

Deactivating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [1] [1] [3] ▶ "Yes"

Playing voice messages

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [1] [1] [5] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

❖Call Waiting Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

Activating/Deactivating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [2] [1] ▶ [1] [Activate] or [2] [Deactivate] ▶ "Yes"

Answering another call

[↙] during a call
- Switching to another party to talk : [iα]

Making another call

During a call, [MENU] [0] ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [↙]
- Switching to another party to talk : [iα]

Ending a call

When ending the call, [📞]
- Switching to the other party on-hold : [↙] or [●]

❖Call Forwarding Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Free

Activating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [2] [2] [1] ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes"

2 Enter a phone number of the forwarding destination
- Entering the forwarding destination in the phonebook : [MENU]

3 [📷] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

Deactivating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [2] [2] [2] ▶ "Yes"

❖Caller ID Display Request Service

Application : Not required Monthly fee : Free

Activating/Deactivating the service

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [4] [2] ▶ [1] [Activate] or [2] [Deactivate] ▶ "Yes"

Viewing display

❖Top of the display



① : Battery icon
② : Antenna icon
圏外 : Out of service area
SELF : Self mode ON
: In data transfer mode
③ / : In i-mode communication (i-mode site)/(packet communication)
④ : In infrared communication etc.
(blue)/ (gray) : Bluetooth power ON/Power saving mode activated

: The total calls cost exceeds the limit
⑤ : Bluetooth connection being established
: Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress
: Communication using a Bluetooth handsfree device in progress
: Speakerphone function in use
: Power saving mode activated
⑥ : Positioning with GPS
(blue)/ (gray) : Location request setting with GPS/ Out of Permission period
⑦ : Security lock ON
: A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute
: Auto rotation lock is activated
⑧ : Unread Area Mail
: Unread i-mode mail, SMS and SMS in UIM are full
: Arrival i-concier information exists

⑨ : Storage state in i-mode Center
⑩ : Displaying SSL/TLS page etc.
: Mail failed to Auto-send exists
: Auto-send mail exists
: Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists
⑪ / : i-αppli/i-αppliDX is running
: i-αppli stand-by display ON
: Receiving i-αppli call
⑫ : Alarm clock ON
: Schedule reminder ON
: Alarm clock and Schedule reminder are set together
⑬ : Inside OFFICEED area

❖Bottom of the display



① : Missed calls
② : Recorded messages
③ : Voice messages in Voice Mail service
④ : Unread messages
⑤ : Unread ToruCa
⑥ : i-αppli call
⑦ : Shortcut icons
⑧ : Silent mode ON

: Personalized silent mode ON
⑨ : Call alert volume OFF
: Vibrator for voice call ON
: Call alert volume OFF & vibrator for voice call ON
⑩ : In Public mode (Drive mode)
⑪ / : Record message ON/recorded messages full
⑫ : Keypad dial lock ON
⑬ / / : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered
: Personal data lock ON
/ : Music&Video Channel obtaining failure/ success
⑭ : Reading UIM
: IC card lock ON
⑮ / : Available multi-cursor key

⑯ : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)
: i-αppli Auto start failed
⑰ : Status display of USB mode settings and microSD card
⑱ : Connected to external device using USB cable
: Pedometer/ACT monitor is set
⑲ : Software update notice
/ : Software update pre-specified/Update notification icon
/ : Failed to Auto-update of latest pattern definition/Successful
⑳ Stand-by touch button

Cutoff

Menu list

· Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.

Mail

1 1	Inbox
1 2	Compose message
1 3	Compose Decome-Anime
1 4	Unsent messages
1 5	Outbox
1 6	Check new message
1 7	SMS/Area Mail
1 8	Receive option
1 9	Mail settings
1 *	Template

i-mode

2 1	iMenu Search
2 2	Bookmark
2 3	Screen memo
2 4	Last URL
2 5	Enter URL
2 6	i-Channel
2 7	i-mode settings
2 8	Access shortcuts
2 9	RSS reader
2 *	Full Browser Home
2 0	Search engine

i-αppli

3 1	Software list

3 2	i-αppli call log
3 3	i-αppli settings
3 4	Display history
3 5	About i-αppli

Phonebook & Logs

4 1	Phonebook
4 2	Phonebook new entry
4 3	Add group
4 4	Phonebook(UIM) new entry
4 5	Received calls
4 6	Redial
4 7	Record msg.&Voice memo
4 8	Mail logs
4 9	User information

Cutoff

Data Box

5 1	My Picture
5 2	MUSIC
5 3	Music&Video Channel
5 4	i-motion/Movie
5 5	Melody
5 6	My Document
5 7	Kisekae Tool
5 8	Machi-chara
5 9	Chara-den
5 *	1Seg
5 0	Other

Life Kit

6 1	Bar code reader

6 2	Ir/iC/PC connection
6 3	microSD
6 4	Camera
6 5	Sound recorder
6 6	Data Center
6 7	Map/GPS
6 8	Pedometer/ACT monitor
6 9	1Seg
6 *	Bluetooth

Accessory

7 1	Scheduler
7 2	Notepad
7 3	Alarm clock
7 4	Calculator
7 5	Dictionaries

7 6	Countdown timer
7 7	Fake call

Settings & NW services

8 1	Alerts & Sounds
8 2	Display
8 3	Kisekae/Themes
8 4 Security & Locks	Locks
	Privacy mode
	Receive display option
	UIM
	Code & Fingerprint
	Scanning function
	Password manager
8 5 Call & Answer	Sound & Image
	Anonymous caller

	Any key answer
	Headset
	Reject/Accept call
	Make/Receive call
	Call session
	Self mode
8 6 **Videophone**	
8 7 **Clock & Other**	Slide and edit
	Turn-display option
	Clock
	Text input
	Software update
	Info & Reset
	Search key shortcut
	Pointing device
	Motion sensor

8 8 **NW Services**	Voice Mail
	Call waiting/forward
	Chaku-moji
	Caller ID
	Roaming guidance
	OFFICEED
	2in1 setting
	Melody Call
	Other
8 9 **Roaming/Call assist**	

MUSIC

9 1 **MUSIC Player**
9 2 **Music&Video Channel**

Osaifu-Keitai

* 1 **IC card content**
* 2 **DCMX**
* 3 **ToruCa content**
* 4 **IC card settings**
* 5 **ToruCa setting**
* 6 **Check IC owner**
* 7 **Change IC owner**
* 8 **Search by i-mode**

User information

i-concier

Cutoff

Other Main Functions

Function	Operating procedure
Start/Cancel Self mode	CLR (1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Public mode	✂ (1 sec. or more)
Display iMenu	i
Display i-αppli folder list	i (1 sec. or more)
Display Received calls/Redial	↩ / ↪
Start/Cancel IC card lock	↪ (1 sec. or more)*
Display Scheduler	⏱
Display alarm list	⏱ (1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Silent mode	# (1 sec. or more)
Operation lock	0
Start i-Widget	1
Start quick search	2
New Task start menu	3

* Authentication is required to cancel.

Services available

Services	Phone No.
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (not provided for those who do not require the service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

Emergency number for misplacement

❖Omakase Lock

* If you are the member of docomo Premier Club, you can use the service any number of times with no commission. If you are not the member of docomo Premier Club, you are charged for the service (however, you are not charged if you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption.). Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock (24 hours)

0120-524-360

❖Other emergency contact numbers

Contact :

Contact :

· Please check on the number before dialing.

docomo **F-09A**

Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

❖Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas

<docomo Information Center>

(24 hours) (in Japanese only)

● **From DOCOMO mobile phone**

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)**

* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.

* When calling from an F-09A, dial +81-3-5366-3114 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press [0] for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

● **From land-line phone <Universal number>**

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* Local call charges may be required.

* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

❖Failures encountered overseas

<Network Technical Operation Center>

(24 hours)

● **From DOCOMO mobile phone**

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)**

* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.

* When calling from an F-09A, dial +81-3-6718-1414 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press [0] for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

● **From land-line phone <Universal number>**

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* Local call charges may be required.

* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

Preparing for using overseas

Before you use FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" and "海外ご利用ガイド (Overseas usage guide)" preinstalled in My Document of Data Box.

❖i-mode settings

Setting in Japan : iMenu→English→Options→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

Setting overseas : iMenu→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

❖Activating Remote control

Setting in Japan : [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [9] [2] [1] ▶"Yes"

Setting overseas : [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [3] ▶"Yes"▶Follow the voice prompts to operate

Cut off

❖Two time zone clocks

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [4] ▶ [1] [ON] or [2] [OFF]

Network and available communication services

- A packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- Only typical examples are described.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
	*1		
Voice call	○	○	○
Videophone call	○	×	×
i-mode connection	○	○	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel	○	○	×

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
	*1		
Position location of GPS	○	○	×
Packet communication (PC connection)*2	○	○	×

*1 When (red) appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS are available.

*2 64K data communication (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

Network search mode

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [2] [1] ▶ [1]-[3]

PLMN setting

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [2] [1] [4] ▶Move the cursor to the network▶[MENU] [2] ▶Select the priority▶[●]

Disp. operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.



[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [2] [3] ▶ [1] [Display on] or [2] [Display off]

Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

Making a call/videophone call

- The call is forwarded internationally from Japan even when staying in the same country as the party to be called. Enter "+" and Japan's country code "81".

❖International call (including to Japan)

[0] (1 sec. or more)▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number▶[✆] or [●]

❖Call inside the country you stay

Enter a phone number▶ [ ] or [ ]▶"No, use original"

Receiving a call/videophone call

A call is received▶ [ ] or [ ]

Roaming guidance

· Set before leaving Japan.

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [5]▶[1] [Activate] or [2] [Deactivate]▶"Yes"

Restricting incoming calls during international roaming

· Some may not be set depending on the overseas telecommunications carriers.

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [2] [4]

2 [1]▶[1] [All barrings] or [2] [Data calls barring]

· Canceling Bar calls at roaming : [2]

3 "Yes"▶Enter the network security code

Network Services

· To use overseas, Remote control must be set in advance.

❖Voice Mail service

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [1]▶[1] [Activate] or [2] [Deactivate]▶"Yes"▶Follow the voice prompts to operate

❖Call Forwarding Service

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [2]▶[1] [Activate] or [2] [Deactivate]▶"Yes"▶Follow the voice prompts to operate

❖Roaming guidance

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [5]▶"Yes"▶Follow the voice prompts to operate

Country code of major countries

A country code is used to make an international call or to use Int'l call assist.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Finland	358	Russia	7
France	33	Singapore	65
Fiji	679	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44

Area	Code	Area	Code
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

· For other country code and details, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

International call access codes for major countries (table 1)

Area	No.	Area	No.
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00/990	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00

Area	No.	Area	No.
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	UAE	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Canada	011	Norway	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09

Area	Code	Area	Code
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual (Overseas Use) or "Failures encountered overseas" on P1.

· Each inquiry number must be prefixed with "International call access codes (table 1)" or "International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)" assigned to the country you stay.

Cutoff

docomo F-09A

简易手册

❖综合咨询处 〈docomo信息中心〉

0120-005-250（免费） ※ 可使用语言：英语、葡萄牙语、中文、西班牙语、韩语。

<仅日语>
0120-800-000（免费） ※ 可通过普通电话、手机、PHS拨打。
无区号 151（免费） ※ 不能通过普通电话等拨打。

❖故障咨询处

<仅日语>
无区号 113（免费） ※ 不能通过普通电话等拨打。

0120-800-000（免费） ※ 可通过普通电话、手机、PHS拨打。

请仔细确认要拨打的号码后，准确无误地拨打。

剪切线

文字输入

❖设为中文输入模式

1 MENU [Settings & NW services] 7 4 6 ▶ 1

❖切换输入模式

在文字输入画面 a/A（数次）▶●

· 切换项目显示中，用◇切换全角 / 半角、拼音 / 笔画输入

输入模式

漢：平假名 / 汉字　半ｱ：半角片假名
半A：半角英文　半数：半角数字　㊥拼：拼音输入
全ア：全角片假名　全A：全角英文
全数：全角数字　㊥笔：笔画输入

❖文字输入与转换

转换前可进行的操作

文字将插入到光标的位置。

1～0：在不同输入模式和按键操作下，输入文字因读音或笔画（T9输入）、按下的次数（假名输入）等而变化

CLR：删除文字

*：添加浊音符号或半浊音符号（假名输入）、切换大写 / 小写（假名输入）、换行（确定输入后）

←：返回到前一个字（假名输入）
（例：お→え→う→い→ぁ→お→え→…）

MENU：转换为片假名、英文、数字（假名输入）

〈例〉输入“今日”

用拼音（读音）输入（T9输入）

1 用拼音输入模式输入文字
“今日”：5 4 6 7 4
· 指定词组的分隔：#
· 切换声调：#（2次以上）

2 选择“JinRi”▶◇▶选择“今日”▶●

用笔画输入（T9输入）

1 用笔画输入模式输入“今”
“今”：3 4 4 5
· 指定词组的分隔：#

2 ◇▶选择“今”▶输入“日”
“日”：2 5 1 1

3 ◇▶选择“日”▶●

用假名方式输入（假名输入）

1 用平假名 / 汉字模式输入文字
“き”：2 2次
“よ”：8 3次▶*
“う”：1 3次

2 📷
· 显示转换候补列表：◇或📷
· 返回转换前的状态：CLR

3 ●▶“閉じる（关闭）”

❖删除文字

光标处于句中时

CLR：删除光标位置的文字，光标处于文字与文字之间时，删除位于光标位置右侧的文字
· 按1秒以上，即可删除光标后的所有文字

光标处于句末时

CLR：删除位于光标位置左侧的文字
· 按1秒以上，即可删除全部输入文字

❖输入图形文字、符号、固定句

输入图形文字

在文字输入画面📷▶选择图形文字

输入符号

在文字输入画面📷▶MENU▶选择符号

输入固定句

在文字输入画面 MENU 4 1（在编辑签名的输入画面 MENU 5 1）▶选择固定句类型▶选择固定句

❖文字的复制与粘贴

复制文字

在文字输入画面 MENU 1（在邮件正文输入画面 MENU 3 1）▶选择开始位置▶选择结束位置

粘贴文字

在文字输入画面，把光标移到粘贴位置▶MENU 3（在邮件正文输入画面 MENU 3 3）

电话簿

❖登录到FOMA手机电话簿

1 ◇（1秒以上）▶输入姓名▶设定各项目▶📷
· 内存编号
· 读音
· 选择图像、拍摄
· 👤：组别

・ : 电话号码
・ : 邮件地址
・ : 生日
・ : 文本备忘录
・ : 邮政编码 / 住址
・ : 位置信息
・ : 公司名称
・ : 职务名称
・ : URL

登录到UIM电话簿

1 MENU［Phonebook & Logs］4 ▶输入姓名▶设定各项目▶●

通过重拨或来电记录登录

1 ✉▶把光标移到对象处▶MENU 5 1
・更新登录：MENU 5 2
2 1（FOMA手机电话簿）或2（UIM电话簿）
・更新登录时选择要登录的对象
3 设定各项目▶●

❖更改电话簿

1 Q
・切换电话簿：●
2 把光标移到对象处▶MENU 3 1
・UIM电话簿为MENU 3
3 更改▶●
・将显示更新确认画面

❖搜索电话簿

1 MENU［Phonebook & Logs］1
・切换电话簿：●
2 1～6
・UIM电话簿为1～3

相机功能

拍摄静止影像

●▶将相机对准被摄对象●▶●

拍摄动画

●（1秒以上）▶将相机对准被摄对象●▶●▶●

显示图像

MENU［Data Box］1 1▶选择图像

播放动画

MENU［Data Box］4 2▶选择动画

播放动画过程中可进行的操作

Q：调节音量
✉：倒退 / 快进播放
●：暂停 / 播放 / 从头播放（停止状态下）
●：停止

剪切线

可视电话

❖可视电话的拨打方法

1 输入电话号码▶●
2 开始通话
・通话保持：●
・切换听筒 / 扬声器：
・切换发送的图像：
3 若通话结束

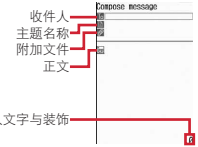
❖可视电话的接听方法

1 有呼入电话▶或
・接听保持：呼入状态下
・通话中的操作同“可视电话的拨打方法”之操作2
2 若通话结束

i-mode邮件

❖制作、发送i-mode邮件

1 ✉（1秒以上）



2 选择▶选择输入方式▶输入或选择收件人
3 选择▶输入主题名称
4 选择▶输入正文
・制作Deco-mail：✉▶选择装饰图标▶装饰操作

5 ●
・保存邮件：MENU 3
・网内自动发送：MENU 2

❖添加文件

1 在邮件制作画面选择
・清除附加文件：✉▶“Yes”
2 选择附加文件的种类▶选择附加源▶选择文件夹▶选择文件

❖显示接收 / 发送邮件

1 ✉▶1或5
2 选择文件夹
3 选择邮件

❖编辑、发送i-mode邮件

〈例〉编辑未发送邮件

1 ✉ 4
・编辑已发送邮件：✉ 5

2 选择文件夹

3 选择邮件
・编辑已发送邮件：选择邮件▶📷

4 编辑▶📷

❖i-mode咨询

1 ✉✉

启动和操作1Seg

1 ⏻（1秒以上）

1Seg视听过程中可进行的操作

🔊、✉：调节音量
●（有数字电视显示区域）：移动光标
🔊（1秒以上）：无声
1～9、✕、0、#：一键选台
（13ch之后的从频道号码一览中选择）
MENU 8 7：1Seg ECO模式开 / 关
📞：切换视听画面
MENU 0：切换显示 / 不显示字幕
●（1秒以上）：开始 / 停止摄像
●：静止影像摄像
📷：启动节目表i-αppli
📞▶“Yes”：结束

启动和操作Music&Video Channel / 音乐播放器

1 MENU［MUSIC］▶1或2

启动后可进行的操作

●：播放 / 暂停
●：调节音量
●（1秒以上）：倒退 / 快进
●：转到章 / 曲的开头※1
●：转到下一章 / 曲
●（快按2次）※2：登录到快播列表
●（1秒以上）※2：结束

※1 播放时间在3秒以内时，转到前一章 / 曲
※2 仅音乐播放器有效

剪切线

网络服务

❖语音信箱服务

申请：需要　　月使用费：收费

开启服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 1 1 1▶“Yes”▶“Yes”▶输入呼叫时间

停止服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 1 1 3▶“Yes”

播放留言信息

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 1 1 5▶1或2▶“Yes”▶按语音提示操作

❖来电等待

申请：需要　　月使用费：收费

开启 / 停止服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 2 1▶1［Activate］或2［Deactivate］▶“Yes”

接听通话中呼入的电话

通话过程中📞
・切换通话对象：🔊

在通话中拨打电话

通话过程中MENU 0▶输入电话号码▶📞
・切换通话对象：🔊

结束通话

若与一个对象的通话结束⏻
・重新与保持状态的对象通话：📞或●

❖呼叫转移服务

申请：需要　　月使用费：免费

开启服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 2 2 1▶“Yes”▶“Yes”

2 输入转移方电话号码
・从电话簿输入转移方：MENU

3 📷▶“Yes”▶输入呼叫时间

停止服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 2 2 2▶“Yes”

❖号码通知请求服务

申请：不需要　　月使用费：免费

开启 / 停止服务

1 MENU［Settings & NW services］8 4 2▶1［Activate］或2［Deactivate］▶“Yes”

显示屏说明

❖显示屏上部



① ：电池图标
② ：信号图标
圈外 ：网外显示
SELF ：屏蔽模式中
：数据传输模式中
③ / ：i-mode中（i-mode连接中）/（数据包通信中）

④ ：红外线通信中等
（蓝）/（灰）：蓝牙电源开启中 / 省电状态中
：累计通话费超限
⑤ ：蓝牙连接处理中
：经免提对应设备通信中
：蓝牙免提通信中
：扬声话筒功能使用中
：省电模式设定中
⑥ ：GPS测位中
（蓝）/（灰）：通过GPS提供位置设定中 / 超过许可期限
⑦ ：安全锁定中
：电话簿、日程为机密属性
：自转锁定中

⑧ ：未读Area Mail
：未读i-mode邮件、SMS已满且UIM中SMS已满
：有新到的i-concier信息
⑨ ：显示i-mode中心的储存状态
⑩ ：SSL / TLS页面显示中等
：有网内自动发送失败邮件
：有网内自动发送邮件
：有获取Music&Video Channel节目的预约
⑪ / ：i-αppli / i-αppli DX运行中
：i-αppli待机画面显示中等
：i-αppli call接收中
⑫ ：闹钟设定中
：日程提醒设定中
：闹钟与日程提醒同时设定中
⑬ ：OFFICEED区域内

剪切线

❖显示屏下部



① ：未接电话
② ：留言记录
③ ：语音信箱服务的留言信息
④ ：未读邮件
⑤ ：未读ToruCa
⑥ ：i-αppli call
⑦ ：快捷待机

⑧ ：静音模式中
：原创静音模式中
⑨ ：电话来电音量无声设定中
：语音电话来电振动设定中
：电话来电音量无声与语音电话来电振动同时设定中
⑩ ：公共模式（驾驶模式）中
⑪ / ：留言记录设定中 / 已满
⑫ ：拨号限制中
⑬ / / ：GPS定位成功 / 失败 / 未应答而结束
：个人数据锁定中
/ ：获取Music&Video Channel失败 / 成功
⑭ ：UIM读入中
：IC卡锁定中等
⑮ / ：有效多向光标键

⑯ ：1Seg预约录像中 / 1Seg摄像中（仅视听结束）
：i-αppli自动启动失败
⑰ ：USB模式设定与microSD卡状态显示
⑱ ：通过USB线与外置设备连接中
：记步器设定中
⑲ ：软件更新预报
/ ：软件更新预约中 / 更新通知图标
/ ：最新图案数据自动更新失败 / 成功
⑳ 待机触摸键

Menu列表

· 当Select startup menu设为 “Basic menu”（基本菜单）时的各Menu列表。

Mail

1 1	Inbox
1 2	Compose message
1 3	Compose Decome-Anime
1 4	Unsent messages
1 5	Outbox
1 6	Check new message
1 7	SMS/Area Mail
1 8	Receive option
1 9	Mail settings
1 *	Template

i-mode

2 1	iMenu Search
2 2	Bookmark
2 3	Screen memo
2 4	Last URL
2 5	Enter URL
2 6	i-Channel
2 7	i-mode settings
2 8	Access shortcuts
2 9	RSS reader
2 *	Full Browser Home
2 0	Search engine

i-αppli

3 1	Software list

3 2	i-αppli call log
3 3	i-αppli settings
3 4	Display history
3 5	About i-αppli

Phonebook & Logs

4 1	Phonebook
4 2	Phonebook new entry
4 3	Add group
4 4	Phonebook(UIM) new entry
4 5	Received calls
4 6	Redial
4 7	Record msg.&Voice memo
4 8	Mail logs
4 9	User information

剪切线

Data Box

5 1	My Picture
5 2	MUSIC
5 3	Music&Video Channel
5 4	i-motion/Movie
5 5	Melody
5 6	My Document
5 7	Kisekae Tool
5 8	Machi-chara
5 9	Chara-den
5 *	1Seg
5 0	Other

Life Kit

6 1	Bar code reader

6 2	Ir/iC/PC connection
6 3	microSD
6 4	Camera
6 5	Sound recorder
6 6	Data Center
6 7	Map/GPS
6 8	Pedometer/ACT monitor
6 9	1Seg
6 *	Bluetooth

Accessory

7 1	Scheduler
7 2	Notepad
7 3	Alarm clock
7 4	Calculator
7 5	Dictionaries

7 6	Countdown timer
7 7	Fake call

Settings & NW services

8 1	Alerts & Sounds
8 2	Display
8 3	Kisekae/Themes
8 4 Security & Locks	Locks
	Privacy mode
	Receive display option
	UIM
	Code & Fingerprint
	Scanning function
	Password manager
8 5 Call & Answer	Sound & Image
	Anonymous caller

	Any key answer
	Headset
	Reject/Accept call
	Make/Receive call
	Call session
	Self mode
8 6 Videophone	
8 7 Clock & Other	Slide and edit
	Turn-display option
	Clock
	Text input
	Software update
	Info & Reset
	Search key shortcut
	Pointing device
	Motion sensor

8 8 NW Services	Voice Mail
	Call waiting/forward
	Chaku-moji
	Caller ID
	Roaming guidance
	OFFICEED
	2in1 setting
	Melody Call
	Other
8 9 Roaming/Call assist	

MUSIC
9 1 MUSIC Player
9 2 Music&Video Channel

Osaifu-Keitai
* 1 IC card content
* 2 DCMX
* 3 ToruCa content
* 4 IC card settings
* 5 ToruCa setting
* 6 Check IC owner
* 7 Change IC owner
* 8 Search by i-mode

User information

i-concier

剪切线

其他主要操作

功 能	操作方法
启动 / 解除屏蔽模式	CLR （1秒以上）
启动 / 解除公共模式	（1秒以上）
显示 i Menu	
显示i-αppli文件夹列表	（1秒以上）
显示来电记录 / 重拨	/
启动 / 解除IC卡锁定	（1秒以上）※
显示日程表	
显示闹钟列表	（1秒以上）
启动 / 解除静音模式	（1秒以上）
防止误操作锁定	
启动i-Widget	
启动快速搜索	
新建启动Menu	

※ 解除时需要进行认证操作。

可利用的服务

通过FOMA手机可利用的服务	电话号码
号码指南服务 （收费：指南费+通话费）（对不需要电话号码指南的用户不提供指南服务）	（无区号） 104
发送电报 （收费：电报费）	（无区号） 115
报时服务 （收费）	（无区号） 117
天气预报 （收费）	想了解地域的市外区号+177
向警察的紧急通报	（无区号） 110
向消防、救护的紧急通报	（无区号） 119
在海上发生紧急事件、事故时的紧急通报	（无区号） 118
灾害用留言电话 （收费）	（无区号） 171
对方付费电话 （收费：指南费+通话费）	（无区号） 106

遗失时等的紧急联络处

❖Omakase Lock

※Omakase Lock （安心锁）为收费服务。若在暂停使用的同时，或者在暂停状态下申请时，又或者是docomo Premier Club （docomo高级俱乐部）的会员时，则为免费。此外，如果签订了Keitai Anshin Pack （手机放心套餐）协议，即可在Keitai Anshin Pack （手机放心套餐）固定费用限定内使用。

Omakase Lock的设定 / 解除 （24小时受理）

0120-524-360

❖其他的紧急联络处

联络处：

联络处：

· 请仔细确认要拨打的号码后，准确无误地拨打。

docomo F-09A

简易手册 （海外使用篇）

❖关于在海外发生的遗失、失窃、结算等

〈docomo信息中心〉

（24小时受理）

● 使用DOMESTIC手机拨打时

滞留国家的国际电话连接号码（表1）	-81-3-5366-3114*（免费）

＊使用普通电话等拨打时，收取打往日本的通话费。

※利用F-09A拨打时，通过+81-3-5366-3114连接（“+”符号按 0 1秒以上）。

● 使用普通电话等拨打时 〈全球号码〉

全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）	-800-0120-0151*

＊有时要收取滞留国家的国内通话费等。

剪切线

※有关主要国家的国际电话连接号码（表1）/全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）的最新信息，请浏览DOCOMO的《国际服务主页》。

❖关于在海外发生的故障

〈网络技术运营中心〉

（24小时受理）

● 使用DOMESTIC手机拨打时

滞留国家的国际电话连接号码（表1）	-81-3-6718-1414*（免费）

＊使用普通电话等拨打时，收取打往日本的通话费。

※利用F-09A拨打时，通过+81-3-6718-1414连接（“+”符号按 0 1秒以上）。

● 使用普通电话等拨打时 〈全球号码〉

全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）	-800-5931-8600*

＊有时要收取滞留国家的国内通话费等。

※有关主要国家的国际电话连接号码（表1）/全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）的最新信息，请浏览DOCOMO的《国际服务主页》。

为在海外使用所做的准备

在海外使用FOMA手机之前，请一并阅读《Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]（使用指南手册（国际服务篇））》、《Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]（使用指南手册（网络服务篇））》以及预设在数据库内我的文档中的“海外ご利用ガイド（海外使用指南）”。

❖i-mode设定

在日本设定： iMenu→English→Options→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

在海外设定： iMenu→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

❖开启远程操作设定

在日本设定： MENU [Settings & NW services] 8 9 2 1 ▶“Yes”

在海外设定： MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 1 3 ▶“Yes”▶按语音提示操作

❖设定双时钟

MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 4 ▶ 1 [ON] 或 2 [OFF]

网络及可利用的通信服务

· 数据包通信费与日本国内不同。
· 仅记载了代表示例。

通信服务	网络		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
	3G ※1	GPRS	GSM
语音电话	○	○	○
可视电话	○	×	×
i-mode连接	○	○	×
i-mode邮件	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel	○	○	×
GPS的目前所在地确认	○	○	×
数据包通信（连接电脑）※2	○	○	×

※1 3G为（红）时，可使用语音电话和SMS的接收发送。
※2 在海外不能使用64K数据通信（连接电脑）。

设定网络搜索

MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 2 1 ▶ 1～3

设定优先网络

MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 2 1 4 ▶把光标移至网络▶MENU 2 ▶选择优先顺序▶📷

设定运营商名称显示

在显示屏上部显示运营商名称。



MENU [Settings & NW services] 9 2 3 ▶ 1 [Display on] 或 2 [Display off]

回国后的设定

回国后，一旦接通电源，将自动连接到FOMA网络。无法连接时，请您重新设定Network search mode为“Auto”、3G/GSM setting为“AUTO”。

电话/可视电话的拨打方法

· 由于此时是从日本进行国际转接，即便对方与您滞留在同一个国家，也请输入“+”和日本的国家区号“81”。

❖往滞留国家的国外（包括日本）拨打电话的方法

0（1秒以上）▶输入国家区号▶地域区号（市外区号）▶电话号码▶📞或📷

❖往滞留国家的国内拨打电话的方法

输入电话号码▶📞或📷▶“No, use original”

电话/可视电话的接听方法

有呼入电话▶ [ ] 或 [ ]

漫游指南设定

· 请在日本国内设定。
[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [8] [5] ▶ [1] [Activate] 或 [2] [Deactivate] ▶ “Yes”

限制国际漫游中的呼入

· 根据海外通信业者的不同，有时无法设定。

1 [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [2] [4]
2 [1] ▶ [1] [All barrings] 或 [2] [Data calls barring]
· 国际漫游时的呼入限制停止：[2]
3 “Yes” ▶输入网络密码

网络服务

· 在海外利用时，需要事先进行遠隔操作設定。

❖语音信箱服务

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [1] ▶ [1] [Activate] 或 [2] [Deactivate] ▶ “Yes” ▶按语音提示操作

❖呼叫转移服务

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [2] ▶ [1] [Activate] 或 [2] [Deactivate] ▶ “Yes” ▶按语音提示操作

❖漫游指南设定

[MENU] [Settings & NW services] [9] [1] [5] ▶ “Yes” ▶按语音提示操作

主要国家的国家区号

在使用国际电话时或国际拨号协助设定等中使用。

地域	号码	地域	号码
埃及	20	日本	81
奥地利	43	瑞典	46
澳大利亚	61	瑞士	41
澳门	853	塔希提（法属波利尼西亚）	689
巴西	55	台湾	886
比利时	32	泰国	66
德国	49	土耳其	90
俄罗斯	7	西班牙	34
法国	33	希腊	30
菲律宾	63	香港	852
斐济	679	新加坡	65
芬兰	358	新喀里多尼亚	687
韩国	82	新西兰	64
荷兰	31	匈牙利	36
加拿大	1	意大利	39
捷克	420	印度	91
马尔代夫	960	印度尼西亚	62
马来西亚	60	英国	44
美国	1	越南	84

剪切线

地域	号码	地域	号码
秘鲁	51	中国	86
挪威	47		

· 有关其他国家区号及详情，请浏览DOCOMO的《国际服务主页》。

主要国家的国际电话连接号码（表1）

地域	号码	地域	号码
阿拉伯联合酋长国	00	摩纳哥	00
爱尔兰	00	挪威	00
澳大利亚	0011	葡萄牙	00
澳门	00	瑞典	00
巴西	0021 / 0014	瑞士	00
比利时	00	台湾	002
波兰	00	泰国	001
丹麦	00	土耳其	00
德国	00	西班牙	00
俄罗斯	810	希腊	00
法国	00	香港	001
菲律宾	00	新加坡	001
芬兰	00	新西兰	00
韩国	001	匈牙利	00
荷兰	00	意大利	00

地域	号码	地域	号码
加拿大	011	印度	00
捷克	00	印度尼西亚	001
卢森堡	00	英国	00
马来西亚	00	越南	00
美国	011	中国	00

全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）

地域	号码	地域	号码
阿根廷	00	美国	011
爱尔兰	00	秘鲁	00
奥地利	00	南非共和国	09
澳大利亚	0011	挪威	00
巴西	0021	葡萄牙	00
保加利亚	00	瑞典	00
比利时	00	瑞士	00
丹麦	00	台湾	00
德国	00	泰国	001
法国	00	西班牙	00
菲律宾	00	香港	001
芬兰	990	新加坡	001
哥伦比亚	009	新西兰	00
韩国	001	匈牙利	00
荷兰	00	以色列	014

地域	号码	地域	号码
加拿大	011	意大利	00
卢森堡	00	英国	00
马来西亚	00	中国	00

关于咨询

关于在海外发生的遗失或失窃、结算、故障，请咨询简易手册（海外使用篇）封面的“关于在海外发生的遗失、失窃、结算等”或P1的“关于在海外发生的故障”。

· 各咨询号码的前面需要加拨滞留地所分派的“国际电话连接号码（表1）”、“全球号码用国际电话识别号码（表2）”。

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

From i-mode iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (Support) ⇒ お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

No packet communication charges

From PCs My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

* You need your "Network security code" to use the site from i-mode.
* No packet communication charge applies to access the site from i-mode. Packet communication charge applies to access from overseas.
* You need "docomo ID/Password" to access the site from your PC.
* If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact to the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
* You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
* There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

About Proper Telephone Etiquette

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in cases below

■ In a place where use of mobile phones is prohibited

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in an aircraft or hospital.

* Be aware that patients using electronic medical equipment are in many areas in hospitals. Your FOMA terminal must be turned OFF even in lobbies or waiting rooms.

■ When you are in crowded train and near by someone using pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices

FOMA terminal's signals may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices.

Always set Public mode in cases below

■ When driving

Using a mobile phone by holding it with the hand while driving is subject to penalty.

* If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.

■ In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum

Using your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

■ In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice etc. when using your FOMA terminal.

■ In town areas, while using your FOMA terminal, be sure not to block foot or car traffic.

Consider privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions designed for public use

Your FOMA terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

● Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)

The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving a car or in a place (electric train, bus, movie theater, etc.) requiring control of calling, and the call is disconnected.→P67

● Recorded messages

Allows the caller to leave a message/video message when you cannot answer the call.→P68

● Vibrate alert

Vibrates when there is an incoming call.→P85

● Silent mode/Personalized silent mode

Eliminates all sounds your FOMA terminal makes, such as keypad/touch sound and ring alert (Silent mode).→P87

Allows the user to change Silent mode operations (Personalized silent mode).→P88

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it.

General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)**

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■ **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)**

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■ **From land-line phones (In Japanese only)**

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website or the i-mode site.

▶NTT DOCOMO website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/ ▶i-mode site iMenu⇒お客様サポート (user support)⇒ドコモショップ (docomo Shop) * In Japanese only

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <docomo Information Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)**

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※If you use F-09A, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ **From land-line phones <Universal number>**

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※See page 367 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ **From DOCOMO mobile phones**

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)**

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※If you use F-09A, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ **From land-line phones <Universal number>**

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※See page 367 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

● **If you lose your FOMA terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA terminal.**

● **If the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.**

Li-ion 00

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

Don't forget your mobile phone ··· or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED

2009.5 (1.1st Edition)
CA92002-5491

F-09A
Manual for PC Connection

Data Communication 1
Before use 2
Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)..... 4
Flow of setup for data communication 5
Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal..... 6
Installing FOMA communication configuration file 7
Preparing for Bluetooth® connection..... Dialup communication service 10
Using DOCOMO Connection Manager 12
Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager... 17
AT command..... 31

■ About Manual for PC Connection

This manual describes about data communications using F-09A and how to install "FOMA communication configuration file" and "DOCOMO Connection Manager" contained in CD-ROM.

Depending on the environment of your PC, some of operation procedures and/or screens may be different.

2009. 5 (Issue 1)
CA92002-5495

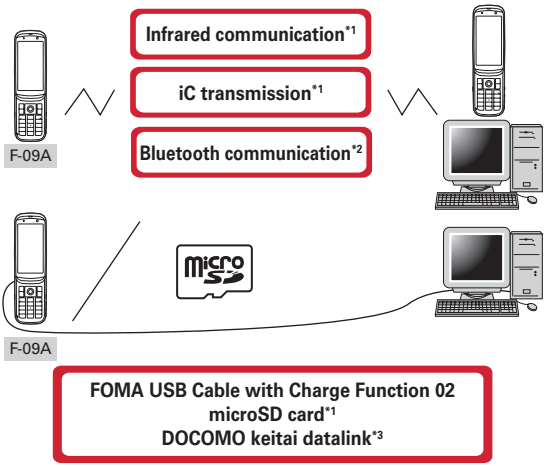
Data Communication

There are 3 communication modes available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC : data transfer (OBEX™ communication), packet communication and 64K data communication.

- To make packet communications or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- When performing packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication can not be used overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with DOCOMO's PDA like musea or sigmarion III. Note that update of musea is required for use. For details on update such as method, refer to DOCOMO website.

Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

You can send and receive data such as image, music, phonebook or mail etc. to/from other FOMA terminals or PCs etc.



*1 For details, see "Data Management" in "F-09A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".
*2 For details, refer to "Convenient Functions" of "F-09A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".
*3 For details, see "Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink".→P4

Packet communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform data communication (packet communication).
Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.
High-speed packet communication can be performed at a maximum reception speed of 7.2Mbps and a maximum transmission speed of 384kbps by using access points that support FOMA packet communication such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service. Best effort method which the actual communication speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion offers.
Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading will require high charges.

* The communication speed may be slower when connecting out of FOMA HIGH-SPEED area, connecting to access points incompatible with HIGH-SPEED, or using devices incompatible with HIGH-SPEED such as DOCOMO's PDA like musea or sigmarion III.

* For Bluetooth connection, though the communication speed of FOMA terminal is equal to HIGH-SPEED, communication may not be performed by maximum speed because the communication speed between Bluetooth devices has limits.
* Maximum speed of reception 7.2Mbps and transmission 384kbps are the values in technical standards, thus they are not indicated actual communication speed. Actual communication speed varies by the network congestion or environment of communication.

64K data communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform 64K data communication.
Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.
Access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points can be used.
Please be careful that a high cost will be charged for long-time communications.

Before use

Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below. They may vary depending on the PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer For USB cable connection : USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) For Bluetooth connection : Compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles) Recommended 800 x 600 dots in display resolution and High Color 16 bits or more
OS (Japanese version)*	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more　　Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* Recommended environment for operating DOCOMO Connection Manager is as follows.
OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or more, Windows XP SP2 or more (For details, refer to DOCOMO website)
Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO will not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under conditions other than that described above.
- Recommended environment for operating the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later (For Windows XP, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later). If no menu appears when CD-ROM is set, take actions given below.
  ① Under Windows Vista : Click (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".
  Under Windows XP, Windows 2000 : Click "スタート (Start)"→"ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".
  ② Enter as follows in "名前 (Name)" and click "OK".
  <CD-ROM drive name> : index.html
  * CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.
- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen may be displayed. This warning depends on the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click "はい (Yes)".
  * Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.

Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for F-09A"

* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.

* When using USB HUB, it may not operate properly.

* When performing Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details, contact your Provider.

● DOCOMO's Internet connection service, mopera U is available. mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription.

Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

● Connections to DoPa access points are unavailable.

● For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html

User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password and connect. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

FirstPass

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, refer to "簡易操作マニュアル" in the attached CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication in Japan, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K.
- Bluetooth connection requires a PC compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles).

* Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the radio wave conditions are poor.

Using CD-ROM

The attached CD-ROM includes software to use the data communication with FOMA terminal, "Kuten Code List" in the PDF version, etc.

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is software to back up and edit your phone information such as phonebook and mail. It is provided on NTT DOCOMO website. For details and download of this software, refer to the following website. You can also access to the following website from the attached CD-ROM.
http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/

- For details of downloading procedure, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedure, operation procedure, etc., refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software.
- To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, USB cable (optional) is required.

Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

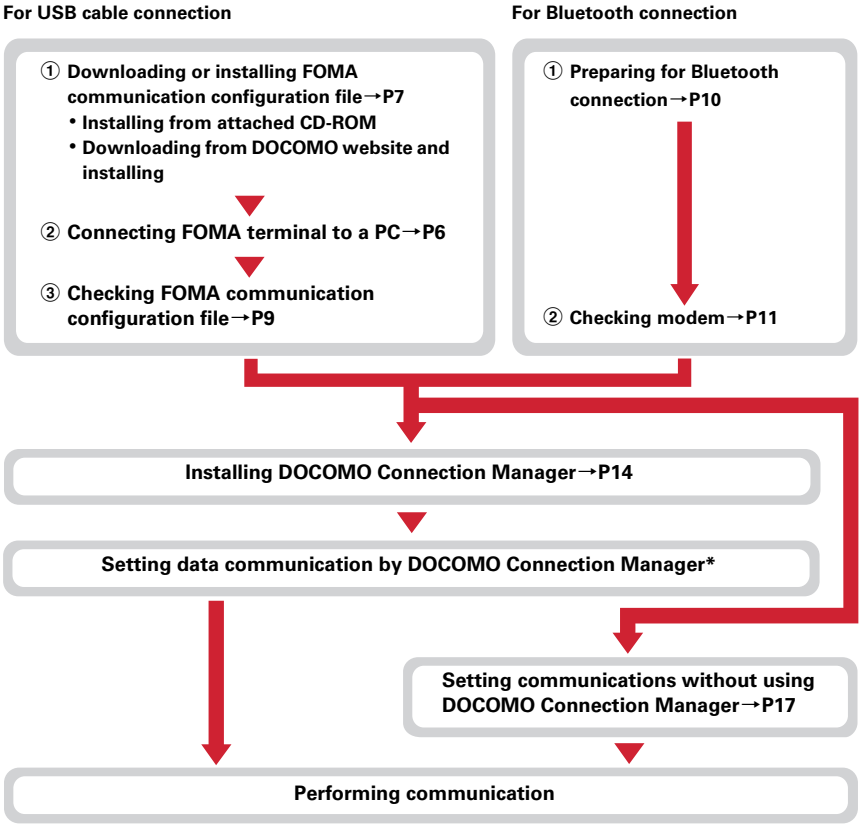
Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file
- **Installing from attached CD-ROM**
- **Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing**

▼

Data transfer

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable or Bluetooth.



* For setting of DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

FOMA communication configuration file

When performing Packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable, install FOMA communication configuration file.

Using Bluetooth connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.

● For details, refer to "Preparing for Bluetooth connection".→P10

DOCOMO Connection Manager

When DOCOMO Connection Manager (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be simply operated from a PC.

Precautions for installation/uninstallation

- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running and exit the program if any.

* Exit any resident programs on Windows including antivirus software.

Example : Right-click the icon displayed in the task bar, click "閉じる (Close)" or "終了 (End)".

- For installing/uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file or DOCOMO Connection Manager, make sure that a user with administrator's privilege performs the operation. Installing/uninstalling the software by other users may produce an error. For Windows Vista, when the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password and click "OK". For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- For operations of a PC, settings of administrator privileges, etc., refer to the Instructions Manual of the PC.

Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal

- The connection should be made with a PC and FOMA terminal both turned ON.
- Install FOMA communication configuration file before connecting with a PC for the first time.→P7

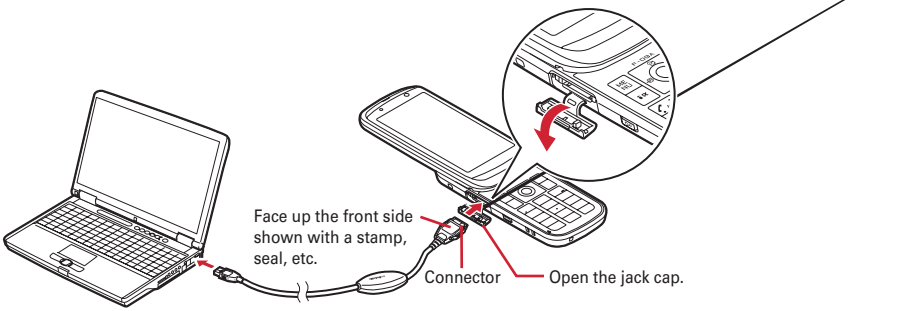
Inserting USB cable

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 is optional.
- The description in this manual takes the case with FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 for example.

1 **Insert the connector of the USB cable into FOMA terminal's external connection jack.**

2 **Insert the other end of the USB cable connector into the PC USB port.**

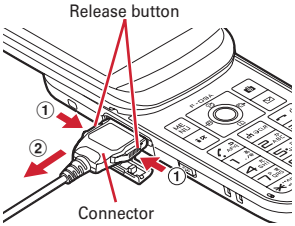
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing FOMA communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that USB cable has been inserted and request the driver. In such a case, remove FOMA terminal and click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the displayed screen to end.



- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.

Removing USB cable

1 **Press the USB cable's release buttons on both sides of the connector (①) and remove the connector from FOMA terminal (②).**



2 **Remove the USB cable out from the PC.**

INFORMATION

- Be careful not to give excessive force to the connecter of the USB cable when connecting/disconnecting the cable to/from FOMA terminal. When disconnecting the connector, be sure to pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. The data communication is disconnected and it may cause data loss or malfunction.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

To make data communication by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC with USB cable, FOMA communication configuration file is required. Install the file before connecting FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P6
- For Bluetooth connection, installing FOMA communication configuration file is not required.
- Do not connect FOMA terminal until a message that instructs you to connect FOMA terminal to a PC appears in Step 5.

<Example> Installing the driver under Windows Vista

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

2 **Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)".**



3 **Click "インストール (Install)" of "FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))" and double-click "F09Ast.exe" icon from a window displayed.**



4 **Click "インストール開始 (Start installation)".**

5 **When a message indicating to connect FOMA terminal to the PC appears, connect FOMA terminal to the PC.**

- Installation starts.
- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is ON.

6 **On the "インストール完了画面 (Installation completion screen)", click "OK".**

- When you do not install DOCOMO Connection Manager, uncheck "ドコモ コネクションマネージャをインストールする (Install DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

■ When you install DOCOMO Connection Manager next

Continue to install from Step 4 in "Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P15
For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P12

Checking FOMA communication configuration file

● When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

<Example> Checking the driver under Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows XP

①Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)"→"システム (System)".

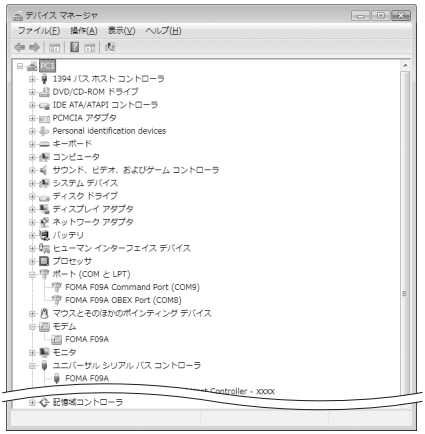
②On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows 2000

①Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→Double-click "システム (System)" icon.

②On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

2 Double-click the type of each device→Check that the name of the following devices are registered.



- Device types and names are shown as below. The order to be displayed differs depending on OSs.
  - ポート(COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT)) : FOMA F09A Command Port (COMx)* FOMA F09A OBEX Port (COMx)*
  - モデム (Modem) : FOMA F09A
  - ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal Serial Bus Controller) or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller) : FOMA F09A

* Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

Uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file

● Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P6

● Before operating, remove FOMA terminal from the PC.

<Example> Uninstalling the driver under Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".

■ Under Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs)".

■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→Double-click "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)" icon.

2 **Select "FOMA F09A USB" and click "アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)" (for Windows XP or Windows 2000, "変更と削除 (Change and delete)").**

3 **Check that "FOMA F09A Uninstaller" is displayed and click "はい (Yes)".**

The uninstall process starts.

4 **After the uninstallation in progress screen is displayed, click "OK".**

INFORMATION

- When "FOMA F09A USB" is not displayed on the deletion screen, execute the operations in "Installing FOMA communication configuration file" again and uninstall.→P7

Dialup communication service

Preparing for Bluetooth® connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.

● For operations of a PC, refer to the instructions manual of the PC you use.

Registering a PC to the FOMA terminal

When connecting using Bluetooth for the first time, registering a PC to FOMA terminal is required.

● To register, entry of Bluetooth passkey is required. Decide Bluetooth passkey by 4-16 digits (one-byte alphanumeric characters) in advance.

1 **On FOMA terminal, MENU [LifeKit] 5.**

FOMA terminal enters registering stand-by, and (blue) appears on the screen of FOMA terminal.

- If connecting cannot be started within 5 minutes, registration is canceled automatically.

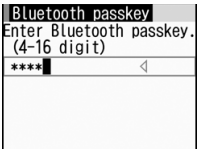
2 **Search for FOMA terminal and register a device on a PC.**

- Perform while FOMA terminal enters registering stand-by.
- By some PC instruction manual, "探索 (Quest)" or "サーチ (Search)" may be used instead of "検索 (Retrieve)" or "ペアリング (Pairing)" may be used instead of "機器登録 (Registering device)".

3 **When the connecting confirmation screen appears on FOMA terminal, select "はい (Yes)".**

4 **Enter Bluetooth passkey by FOMA terminal and ●.**

- Enter the same Bluetooth passkey on FOMA terminal and a PC.



After the PC is registered in FOMA terminal as a device and the registration is completed, return to accepting the dialup device and enter connecting stand-by state.

5 **Operate for connecting on a PC.**

- Operate data communication by using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- When using dialup connection, (blue) blinks on the screen of FOMA terminal.
- For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P12

INFORMATION

- During dialup registering stand-by, connecting stand-by of headset service or handsfree-service is disabled.
- When registering FOMA terminal in a PC, distinguish FOMA terminal by the name of device if the PC recognizes plural devices. When the PC recognizes many devices of the same name, distinguish by the address of device.

Checking modem

● When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed. Check the name of modem used on a PC or COM port number set for dialup connection.

<Example> Checking on Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows XP

①Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)"→"システム (System)".

②On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ Under Windows 2000

①Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→Double-click "システム (System)" icon.

②On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

2 Double-click the type of each device→Check the modem name or COM port number.

- Name of Modem or COM port is shown under "モデム (Modem)", "ポート (COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT))".

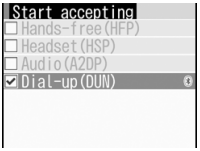
Connecting to a registered PC

When connecting a registered PC to FOMA terminal using Bluetooth, set FOMA terminal in connecting stand-by.

1 On FOMA terminal, MENU [LifeKit] 4 → 1.

2 Select "Dial-up"→●.

FOMA terminal enters connecting stand-by state, and returns to the stand-by display.



3 Operate for connecting on a PC.

- Operate data communication by using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- When using dialup connection, (blue) blinks on the screen of FOMA terminal.
- For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager".→P12

Stopping dialup communication service

1 On FOMA terminal, MENU [LifeKit] ✂ 2.

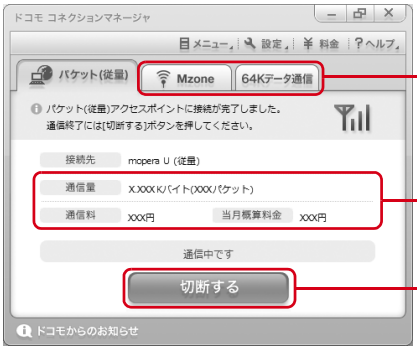
2 Select connecting stand-by PC from the registered device list→2.

3 Select "Dial-up"→📷.

Dialup communication service stops.

Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager is convenient software to use flat-rate data communication or pay-as-you-go data communication. You can easily subscribe to mopera U and make a PC setting according to your subscription status.
Also, you can check an estimate of data communication volume or usage fees by the charge counter function.
The method of installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained here.



Not displayed in default setting.
For details, refer to ヘルプ (Help) of ドコモ コネクションマネージャ "DOCOMO Connection Manager".

Fee counter

Connect/Disconnect button

● For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider (mopera U etc.) applicable to services and data communication.
For details, refer to DOCOMO website.

INFORMATION

- Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images using packet communication and downloading (example: updating of application, music, movie, OS or anti-virus software) will require high charges.
  Note that FOMA flat-rate packet services such as Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full and Biz-hodai or the price limit of Biz-hodai double is not applied to the communication using connection with a PC etc.
- For using of flat-rate data plan, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider applicable to flat-rate data communication charging plan. For details, check to DOCOMO website.
- For connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
  http://www.mopera.net/mopera/support/index.html

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, check the items below and perform to change setting of software/uninstall as required.

- Prepare FOMA terminal, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) in advance (For Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required).
- Check the contents of subscription for services and Internet service provider.
- If installing connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager, change the setting not to be activated automatically as required.→P14 "Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager"

Changing setting of Internet Explorer

- Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, set to "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)" for connection setting at "インターネットオプション (Internet option)" field of Internet Explorer in advance.

<Example> Changing under Windows Vista

1 **Click (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"Internet Explorer".**

■ **Under Windows XP, Windows 2000**

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→Click "Internet Explorer".

2 **Click "ツール (Tool)"→"インターネットオプション (Internet option)".**

3 **Click "接続 (Connection)" tab→Select "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)".**



4 **Click "OK".**

Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager includes same function as that of software below and using together is not required. Perform to change setting not to be activated or uninstall as required.

- mopera U start up tool
- mopera U connection & setting tool
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA Byte counter

And, when using Mzone (Public wireless LAN connection) by DOCOMO Connection Manager, uninstall the following public wireless LAN connection software.

And, when installing all at once, Mzone connection cannot be used by DOCOMO Connection Manager.

- U公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (U public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティプログラム (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility program)

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

- After performing to install FOMA communication configuration file, when the screen for installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager appears, click "OK" and start from Step 4.
- When FOMA communication configuration file is installed already or making data communication only by Bluetooth connection, start from Step 1.

<Example> Installing under Windows Vista

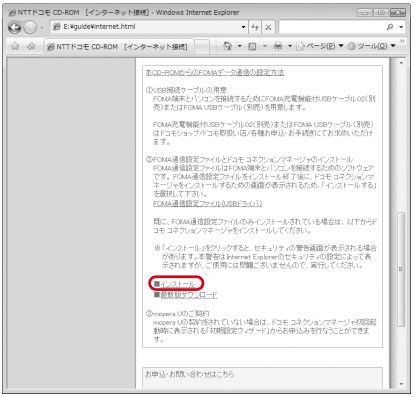
1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

2 **Click "インターネット接続 (Internet connection)".**



3 **Click "インストール (Install)" field in Step ② of "本CD-ROMからのFOMAデータ通信の設定方法 (Setting method of FOMA data communication from this CD-ROM)".**

- When the warning screen of security is displayed, click "実行 (Execute)".

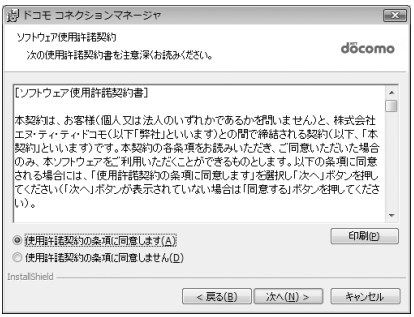


- For Windows XP, when the confirmation screen for installing of MSXML6/Wireless LAN API is displayed, click "Install" to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API. After performing to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API, reboot Windows to start installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager automatically.

4 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

5 **Check "注意事項 (Precautions)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

6 **Check the contents of ソフトウェア使用許諾契約 (Software license agreement) and if you agree to the agreement, select "使用許諾契約の条項に同意します (Agree to the clauses of the agreement)" and click "次へ (Next)".**



7 **Check the installing folder and click "次へ (Next)".**

- To change the installation destination, click "変更 (Change)" and specify any installation desctination.

8 **Click "インストール (Install)".**

Installation starts.

9 **When the "InstallShieldウィザードを完了しました (Performed InstallShield wizard)" screen appears, click "完了 (Done)".**

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is complated.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message notifying you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction of screen and reboot.
- Do not install during data communication.

Starting DOCOMO Connection Manager

● Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

<Example> Setting under Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All Programs)"→"NTT DOCOMO"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" (for Windows 2000, "プログラム (Program)"→"NTT DOCOMO"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

DOCOMO Connection Manager starts.

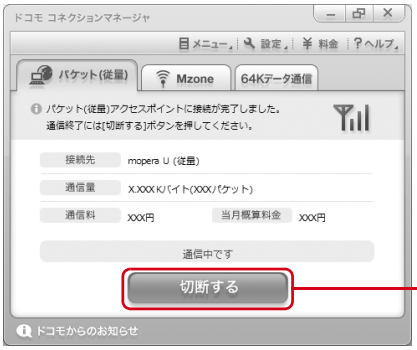
When booting a PC at first time, the setting wizard screen appears automatically.



- According to the setting wizard, perform to set for making data communication connecting to Internet.
  After setting, you can perform communication using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
  For details, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

INFORMATION

- Just exiting the Internet browser or mail software may not disconnect communication. When you do not use communication, be sure to disconnect the communication from "切断する (Disconnect)" button of DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- Please note that if auto update is set for OS update etc., the software is updated automatically and high cost may be charged for the packet communication fee.



Connect/Disconnect button

Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager

The method of dialup connection setup without DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained.

- When using an access point compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as mopera for packet communication, make settings using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

Flow of dialup network setting

- Flow of setup for data communication→P5
- Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)*→P17
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to set.

↓

Setting Show/Hide caller ID*→P19
- Set as required.

↓

Setting Dialup Network
- Setting for Windows Vista→P20
- Setting for Windows XP→P22
- Setting for Windows 2000→P25

* Set for packet communication.
Communication software to input AT commands is required for settings.
The method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows 2000 and Windows XP is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)". For Windows Vista, set using the software supported by Windows Vista (Follow the method for the software to be used.).

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connections (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and "mopera.net" (APN) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.

- For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- For USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting each dialup connections (APN) is required.
- For packet communication, if switching between USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting the dialup connections (APN) is required again.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below.

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection number in the dialup connection numbers setting.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

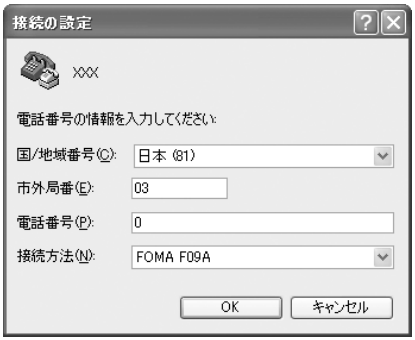
1 **Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".**

2 **Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)"→Click "OK".**



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "名前 (Name)".
  ¥/:＊?<>｜"

3 **Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)" →Select "接続方法 (Connection method)"→Click "OK".**

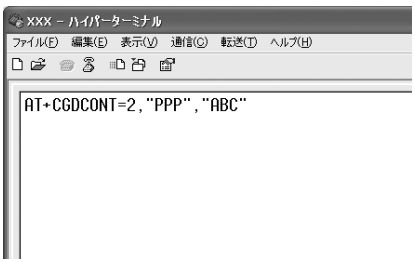


- "市外局番 (Area code)" differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.
- Set as follows at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F09A".
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

4 **Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.**

5 **Enter the dialup connection (APN) in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "<PDP_TYPE>", "<APN>""→ ↵.**

<cid> : Enter any number between 2 or 4-10.
<PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP
<APN> : Dialup connection (APN)



- +CGDCONT command→P38 "Supplement to AT command"
- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press ↵.

6 **Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".**

7 **When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)"→When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".**

Setting Show/Hide caller ID

You can set to show/hide call ID for packet communication at once.
Caller ID is your important information. Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID.

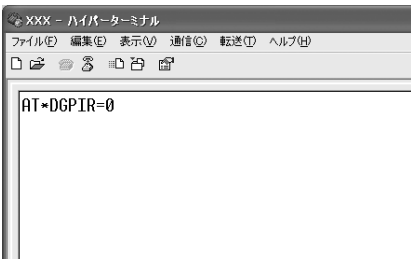
● If "Not notify" is set when using mopera U or mopera, connection is unavailable.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 **Perform Step 1 - 4 in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)".**

2 **Enter notify/not notify of caller ID in the format "AT＊DGPIR=<n>"→ ↵.**

<n> : 0-2
0 : Connect directly (Default)
1 : Connect prefixing 184 (Not notify)
2 : Connect prefixing 186 (Notify)



- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press ↵.

3 **Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".**

4 **When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)"→When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".**

Show/Hide caller ID function by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) to the dialup connection number.

● The Show/Hide of caller ID when both of the ＊DGPIR command and dialup network settings are set is as shown below.

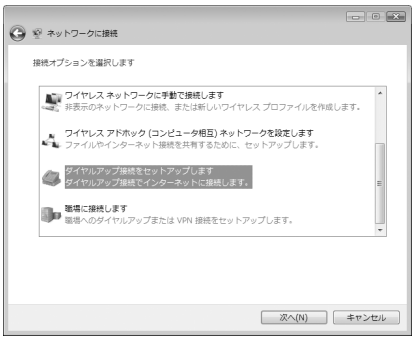
Setting made by ＊DGPIR command / Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	No setting	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186＊99＊＊＊3#	Caller ID is sent.		

Setting for Windows Vista

1 Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

2 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)".

3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dialup connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".



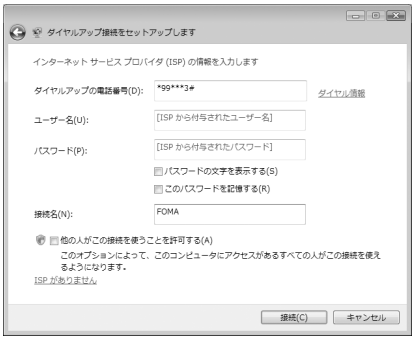
■ **When the "どのモデムを使いますか？ (Which modem will you use?)" screen is displayed**

For USB cable connection : Click "FOMA F09A".

For Bluetooth connection : Click "ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

4 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)" ("＊99＊＊＊<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "接続名 (Connection name)" and click "接続 (Connect)".

<cid> : P18 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	＊99＊＊＊3#	＊8701
mopera	＊99＊＊＊1#	＊9601

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.
  ¥/:＊?<>｜

5 On the connecting screen, click "スキップ (Skip)".

- Only make settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

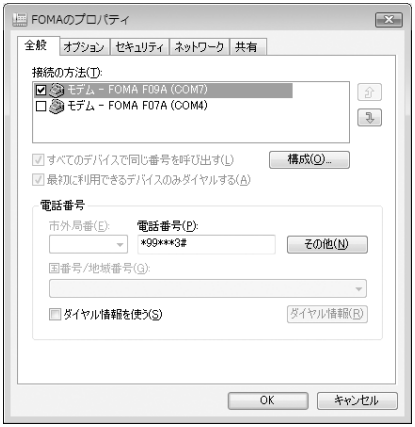
6 **On the "インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in Internet connection test)" screen, click "接続をセットアップします (Set up connection)".**

7 **Click "閉じる (Close)".**

8 **Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".**

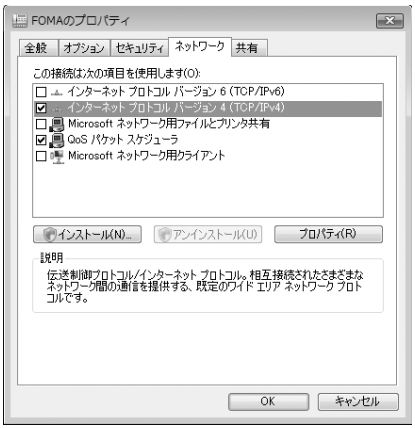
9 **Right-click the dialup connection created and click "プロパティ (Property)".**

10 **Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.**



- When multipul modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F09A (Modem-FOMA F09A)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

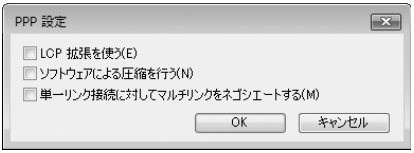
11 **Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below.**



- Uncheck (☐) "インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IPv6) (Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6))".
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4) (Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set various information.
- When settings of "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" and other items have been requested from the provider, etc., check/uncheck as required.

12 **Click "オプション (Option)" tab→Click "PPP設定 (PPP settings)".**

13 **Uncheck all items ( ) and click "OK".**



14 **Click "OK".**

Performing communication→P29

Setting for Windows XP

1 **Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)".**

2 **On the "新しい接続ウィザードの開始 (New connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".**

3 **Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

4 **Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

5 **Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

■ **When "デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed**

For USB cable connection : Select "モデム-FOMA F09A (Modem-FOMA F09A)" and click "次へ (Next)".

For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

6 **Enter the desired dialup connection name in "ISP名 (ISP name)"→Click "次へ (Next)".**



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "ISP名 (ISP name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.
  ¥/:＊?<>｜"

7 **Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" ("＊99＊＊＊<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Click "次へ (Next)".**

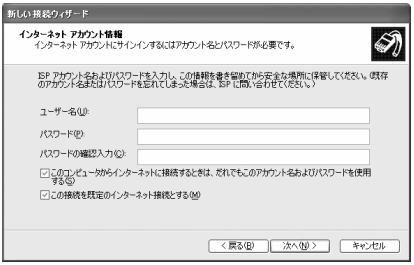
<cid> : P18 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	＊99＊＊＊3#	＊8701
mopera	＊99＊＊＊1#	＊9601

8 **Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)"→Select all items as shown below and click "次へ (Next)".**



- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)", "パスワード (Password)" or "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)".

9 **On the "新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completion)" screen, click "完了 (Done)".**

10 **Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)".**

11 **Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".**



12 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



- When plural modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F09A (Modem-FOMA F09A)" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

13 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".



- Since "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" settings in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection)" can not be changed, leave it as it is.
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set necessary information.

14 Uncheck all items (☐) and click "OK".

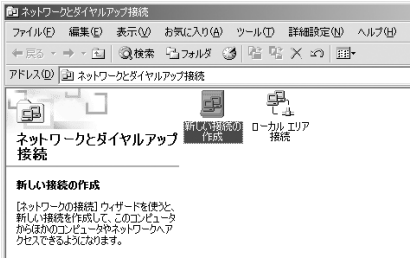


15 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P29

1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)".

2 Double-click "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" icon.



■ When "所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed

① Enter the area code in "市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)"→Click "OK"

② Click "OK" on the "電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen.

3 On the "ネットワークの接続ウィザードの開始 (Network connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

4 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".

5 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click "次へ (Next)".

6 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".

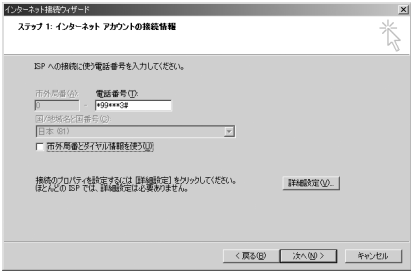
■ When "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" screen is displayed

For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F09A" and click "次へ (Next)".

For Bluetooth connection : Select "(ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem-(Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "(Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" ("＊99＊＊＊<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Click "詳細設定 (Detailed settings)".

<cid> : P18 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

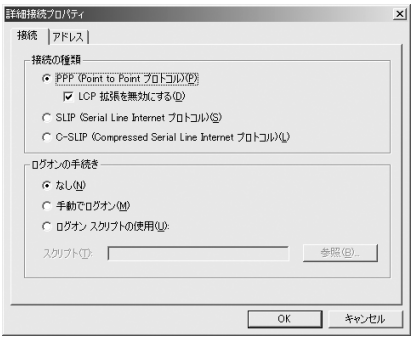


- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

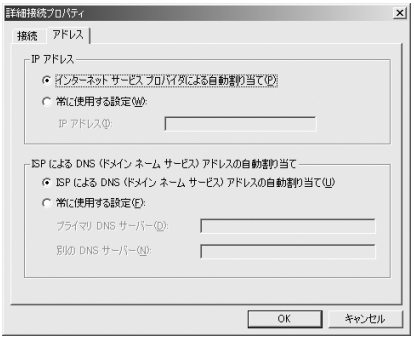
Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	＊99＊＊＊3#	＊8701
mopera	＊99＊＊＊1#	＊9601

- Uncheck (☐) "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)".

8 Set each item in "接続 (Connection)" tab as shown below.



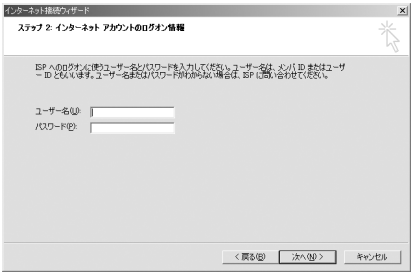
9 Click "アドレス (Address)" tab→Set each item.



- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., set various information.
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to change the setting.

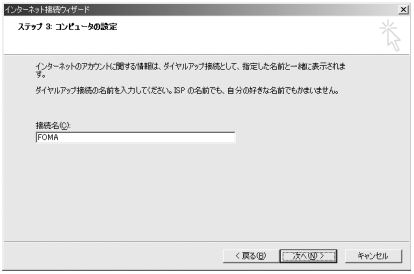
10 Click "OK"→Click "次へ (Next)".

11 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "次へ (Next)".



- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)". When you click "次へ (Next)" and the screen to confirm the blank entry appears, click "はい (Yes)".

12 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)"→Click "次へ (Next)".



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)".

13 Select "いいえ (No)" and click "次へ (Next)".

14 Click "完了 (Done)".

15 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".

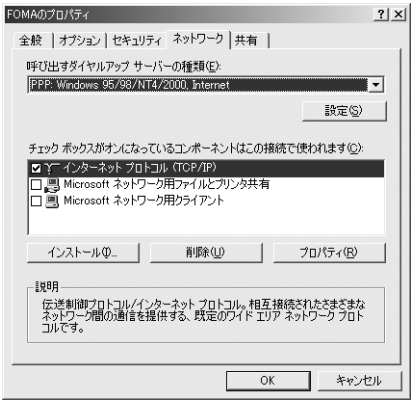


16 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F09A (Modem-FOMA F09A)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- When the modem is changed, all items in "電話番号 (Phone number)" is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

17 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".



18 Uncheck all items (☐) and click "OK".



19 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P29

Performing communication via dialup connection

Starting communication and disconnection are explained here.

<Example> Performing communication under Windows Vista

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

For USB cable connection→P6
For Bluetooth connection→P11

2 Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)"→Select the dialup connection and click "接続 (Connect)".

■ Under Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)"→Double-click the connection icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)"→Double-click the connection icon

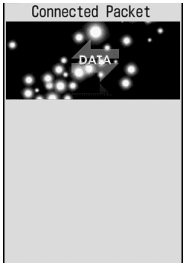
3 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "ダイヤル (Dial)".



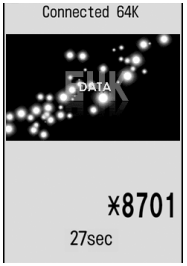
- When using mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- When "ユーザー名 (User name)" was entered or "パスワード (Password)" was saved while settings, these entries are no longer necessary.
- Click "OK" when the connection established screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established.



For packet communication



For 64K data communication

- The communication speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- The communication is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the PC browser may not disconnect communication. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

<Example> Under Windows Vista

1 Right-click in the task tray→Select "切断 (Disconnect)" and click the dialup connection to disconnect.

■ Under Windows XP

Click in the task tray→Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

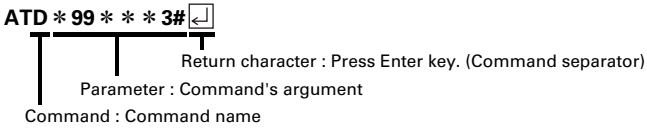
AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters.

<Example> Connecting to mopera U with ATD command



AT commands and their parameters must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding ↵ must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 256 characters including "AT".

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, a PC must be in terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
  FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
  FOMA terminal is communicating. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
  AT commands can be used even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

■ Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures.

- Enter +++ command or code set in the S2 register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set in "AT&D1".

* The USB or Bluetooth interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ↵ ".

INFORMATION

- When making a call or sending an AT command from external device, it is sent from Number A with 2in1 in Dual mode or A mode, and from Number B in B mode.

List of AT command

- AT command that can be used via the FOMA F09A (Modem).
- Entering "¥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font setting for a PC or communication software.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
A/ A/ OK	Execute the previously executed command again. When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.
AT AT ↵ OK	Use commands on this list by prefixing to commands other than A/ or +++. When using only this command, "OK" is returned with FOMA terminal enabled for using AT commands.
ATA RING ATA ↵ CONNECT	Perform the receiving process when entered while receiving a packet communication or 64K data communication. The following commands can be entered when receiving a packet communication. ATA184 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function OFF ATA186 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function ON
ATD ATD＊99＊＊＊1# ↵ CONNECT 460800	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Performs calling process for packet communication. If <cid> or ＊＊＊<cid> is omitted, <cid>=1 is set. ATD [parameter] [phone number] : Perform calling process for 64K data communication. Calling process is not permitted if phone number contains characters other than the following. 0-9, ＊, #, A, a, B, b, C, c The following characters and a space can be entered but are not recognized in dialing. ,(comma), !, -, @, D, d, P, p, T, t, W, w Setting Show/Hide caller ID is enabled by inserting 186 or 184 after ATD. ATDN or ATDL can be used for redial calling.
ATE<n> *1 ATE1 ↵ OK	Set whether FOMA terminal will return echo for command sent from a PC. n=0 : Echo OFF n=1 : Echo ON (default) Normal usage is n=1. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to n=0 prevents double display of characters.
ATH ATH ↵ NO CARRIER	Disconnect line when entered during a communication. Execute in online command mode.→P31
ATI<n> ATI0 ↵ NTT DoCoMo OK	Display the confirmation code. n=0 : "NTT DoCoMo" n=1 : Display model name of FOMA terminal n=2 : Display version of FOMA terminal n=3 : Display elements of ACMP signals n=4 : Display details of functions that can be communicated by FOMA terminal in numeric
ATO ATO ↵ CONNECT 460800	Return from online command mode to online data mode during communication.
ATQ<n> *1 ATQ0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display result code. n=0 : Display (default) n=1 : Not display When ATQ1 is executed, "OK" is not returned.
ATS0=<n> *1 ATS0=0 ↵ OK	Set number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically. n=0 : Not receive automatically (default) n=1-255 : Receive automatically with specified number of rings ATS0? : Display current settings
ATS2=<n> ATS2=43 ↵ OK	Set escape character. n=0-127 (default : n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is unavailable. ATS2? : Display current settings
ATS3=<n> ATS3=13 ↵ OK	Set the carriage return (CR) character that identifies the end of AT command character string. Appended to end of echoed command character string and result code. n=13 (fixed value) ATS3? : Display current settings

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
ATS4=<n> ATS4=10 ↵ OK	Set the line feed (LF) character. When result code is displayed as alphabetic characters, appends the character after the carriage return (CR) character. n=10 (fixed value) ATS4? : Display current settings
ATS5=<n> ATS5=8 ↵ OK	Set the back space (BS) character. When this character is detected during command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. n=8 (fixed value) ATS5? : Display current settings
ATS6=<n> ATS6=5 ↵ OK	Set pause time (seconds) until dialing commences but do not operate. n= : 2-10 (default : n=5) ATS6? : Display current settings
ATS8=<n> ATS8=3 ↵ OK	Set pause time (seconds) until commas are dialed but do not operate. n=0-255 (default : n=3) ATS8? : Display current settings
ATS10=<n> *1 ATS10=1 ↵ OK	Set the delay time (1/10 seconds) for automatic disconnection but do not operate. n=1-255 (default : n=1) ATS10? : Display current settings
ATS30=<n> ATS30=0 ↵ OK	Set a period of time (minutes) with no data transmission/reception to terminate the connection for 64K data communications. n=0-255 : (default : n=0, n=0 indicates that inactive timer is set to OFF.) ATS30? : Display current settings
ATS103=<n> ATS103=1 ↵ OK	Set the separator used to append and send received sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : ＊ n=1 : / (default) n=2 : ￥ or \ ATS103? : Display current settings
ATS104=<n> ATS104=1 ↵ OK	Set the separator used to append and send outgoing sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : # n=1 : % (default) n=2 : & ATS104? : Display current settings
ATV<n> *1 ATV1 ↵ OK	Set result code display method. n=0 : Number display n=1 : Alphabetical display (default) When ATV0 is executed, "0" is not returned to the same line.
ATX<n> *1 ATX4 ↵ OK	Set whether to detect busy or dial tones and whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. Busy tone detection : Send "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection : Detect whether FOMA terminal is connected. n=0 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed n=1 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=2 : No busy tone, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=3 : Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=4 : Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default) When n=0 is set, AT&E and AT￥V command will be unavailable.
ATZ *3 ATZ ↵ OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the registered state. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT%V AT%V ↵ Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT&C<n> *1 AT&C1 ↵ OK	Set the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE. n=0 : Always ON n=1 : Vary according to line connection status (default) When set to n=0, the CD signal is set to ON directly before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF directly before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT&D<n> *1 AT&D2 ↵ OK	Set the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF while online data mode takes effect. n=0 : Ignore status (status is always considered to be ON) n=1 : Move to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF n=2 : Disconnect line and move to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default)
AT&E<n> *1 AT&E1 ↵ OK	Set the speed display used when connection is made. n=0 : Display communication speed of wireless zone n=1 : Display communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (default)
AT&F AT&F ↵ OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the default. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT&S<n> *1 AT&S0 ↵ OK	Set control of the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. n=0 : Always ON (default) n=1 : ON at time of connection
AT&W AT&W ↵ OK	Register the current settings in FOMA terminal.
AT＊DANTE AT＊DANTE ↵ ＊DANTE : 3 OK	Indicate FOMA terminal reception level in the "＊DANTE : <n>" format. n=0 : Out of service area n=1 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 0 or 1 antenna. n=2 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 2 antennas. n=3 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 3 antennas. AT＊DANTE=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT＊DGANSM=<n> *2 AT＊DGANSM=0 ↵ OK	Set to reject or permit incoming packet communications. n=0 : Reject setting = OFF, Accept setting = OFF (default) n=1 : Reject setting=ON n=2 : Accept setting=ON AT＊DGANSM? : Display current settings AT＊DGANSM=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGAPL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT＊DGAPL=0,1 ↵ OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to permit incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN permitted for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN permitted for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT＊DGAPL? : Display current settings AT＊DGAPL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT＊DGARL=0,1 ↵ OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to refuse incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN rejected for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN rejected for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT＊DGARL? : Display current settings AT＊DGARL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGPIR=<n> *2 AT＊DGPIR=0 ↵ OK	Set Caller ID notification when packet communication connection is being performed. This command is available when a communication is sent or received. n=0 : Connect to APN directly (default) n=1 : Connect to APN prefixing 184 n=2 : Connect to APN prefixing 186 When Show/Hide caller ID is specified by dialup network→P19 AT＊DGPIR? : Display current settings AT＊DGPIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DRPW AT＊DRPW ↵ ＊DRPW : 0 OK	Indicate an index for the reception power of the radio waves that FOMA terminal receive. AT＊DRPW=? : Display a list of displayable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CAOC AT+CAOC ↵ +CAOC : "000024" OK	Display last call cost.
AT+CBC AT+CBC ↵ +CBC : 0,100 OK	Display FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC : <bcs>,<bcl>" format. bcs=0 : Powered by the battery pack bcs=1 : Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2 : Battery pack removed bcs=3 : Power-supply error bcl=0 : No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1-100 : Battery remained AT+CBC=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 *1 AT+CBST=116,1,0 ↵ OK	Set the line to use (Setting of bearer service) n=116 : 64K data communication (default) n=134 : 64K videophone AT+CBST? : Display current settings AT+CBST=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CDIP=<n> *1 AT+CDIP=0 OK	Set whether to notify received sub address. And, subscription status of Multi Number can be confirmed. n=0 : The information of sub address is not displayed. (default) n=1 : The information of sub address is displayed. m=0 : Multi Number not subscribed. m=1 : Multi Number subscribed. AT+CDIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CDIP:<n>,<m>" format AT+CDIP=? : List of the settable values is displayed.
AT+CEER AT+CEER ↵ +CEER : 36 OK	Display the reason of immediate diconnection. Disconnection reason list→P38
AT+CGDCONT *2 →P38	Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.→P38
AT+CGEQMIN *2 →P39	Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.→P39
AT+CGEQREQ *2 →P39	Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.→P39
AT+CGMR AT+CGMR ↵ 1234567890123456 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+CGREG=<n> *1 AT+CGREG=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CGREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of packet service area stat=1 : Within packet service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within packet service area (during international roaming) AT+CGREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CGREG : <n>, <stat>" format AT+CGREG=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CGSN AT+CGSN ↵ 123456789012345 OK	Display FOMA terminal serial No.
AT+CLIP=<n> *1 AT+CLIP=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display sender's caller ID on a PC when receiving 64K data communication. n=0 : Not display result (default) n=1 : Display result m=0 : Network setting not to send caller ID m=1 : Network setting to send caller ID m=2 : Unknown AT+CLIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIP : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIP=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CLIR=<n> *2 AT+CLIR=2 ↵ OK	Set Caller ID notification when sending 64K data communication. n=0 : Use the setting in service agreement n=1 : Not send n=2 : Send (default) m=0 : CLIR not operating (always sends) m=1 : CLIR operating (never sends) m=2 : Unknown m=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) m=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default=sends) AT+CLIR? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIR : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CMEE=<n> *1 AT+CMEE=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display an error report at FOMA terminal. n=0 : Display "ERROR" and no result code (default) n=1 : Use result code, displaying reason as number n=2 : Use result code, displaying reason as alphabetic characters Display reasons in the "+CME ERROR : xxxx" format when n=1 or n=2 is set (xxxx = number or alphabetic characters).→P38 "Error messages list" AT+CMEE? : Display current settings AT+CMEE=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CNUM AT+CNUM ↵ +CNUM : ,"090XXXXXXXX",129 OK	Display FOMA terminal's own phone number in the "+CNUM : ,"<number>",<type>" format. number : Own phone number (With 2in1, display Number A in Dual mode or A mode and Number B in B mode) type=129 : International access code + not included type=145 : International access code + included
AT+COPS=<n>,2,<oper> *2 AT+COPS=0 ↵ OK	Set search method for network operator to connect. n=0 : Auto (default) n=1 : Manual n=3 : No mapping When n=1 is set, set PLMN Number in hexadecimal value for <oper>. AT+COPS? : Display current settings AT+COPS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CPAS AT+CPAS ↵ +CPAS : 0 OK	Display whether FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS : <n>" format. n=0 : Possible n=1 : Impossible n=2 : Status unknown n=3 : Possible and receiving n=4 : Possible and communicating AT+CPAS=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" AT+CPIN="0000" ↵ OK	Enter these commands for entering PIN/PIN2 codes or PUK with PIN code ON. To enter PUK, enter new PIN/PIN2 code in <newpin>. Even if entering in <newpin> when entry of PIN/PIN2 code is request, PIN/PIN2 code cannot be changed. AT+CPIN? : Display the code currently requested in "+CPIN : <n>" format n=READY : Entry of code not requested n=SIM PIN : Entry of PIN code waited n=SIM PIN2 : Entry of PIN2 code waited n=SIM PUK : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN code n=SIM PUK2 : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN2 code
AT+CR=<n> *1 AT+CR=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display the communication type before "CONNECT" is displayed during connection. n=0 : Not display (default) n=1 : Display the communication type in the "+CR : <serv>" format serv=GPRS : Packet communication serv=SYNC : 64K data communication serv=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CR? : Display current settings AT+CR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CRC=<n> *1 AT+CRC=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to use +CRING result codes when communication is received. n=0 : Not use (default) n=1 : Use "+CRING : <type>" result codes type=GPRS "PPP",,,"<APN>" : Packet communication type=SYNC : 64K data communication type=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CRC? : Display current settings AT+CRC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CREG=<n> *1 AT+CREG=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of sound service area stat=1 : Within sound service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within sound service area (during international roaming) AT+CREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CREG=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CUSD=<n>,"<str>" *1 AT+CUSD=0,"012345678" ↵ OK	Set Additional service (Register USSD) of Network Services. Enter Service code provided by DOCOMO in <str>. n=0 : Not answer mid result (default) n=1 : Answer mid result in "+CUSD : <m>, "<str>",0" format m=0 : Information not requested m=1 : Information requested AT+CUSD? : Display current settings AT+CUSD=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+FCLASS=<n> *1 AT+FCLASS=0 ↵ OK	Set communication type supported by FOMA terminal. n=0 : Only data supported (fixed value) AT+FCLASS? : Display current settings AT+FCLASS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+GCAP AT+GCAP ↵ +GCAP : +CGSM,+FCLASS, +W OK	Display the range of AT commands supported by FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP : <n>" format. n=+CGSM : Support GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part) n=+FCLASS : Support +FCLASS commands n=+W : Support +W commands
AT+GMI AT+GMI ↵ FUJITSU OK	Display FOMA terminal manufacturer name.
AT+GMM AT+GMM ↵ FOMA F09A OK	Display model name of FOMA terminal.
AT+GMR AT+GMR ↵ Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+IFC=<n,m> *1 AT+IFC=2,2 ↵ OK	Set how to control local flow between a PC and FOMA terminal. n : DCE by DTE m : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : Perform XON/XOFF flow control 2 : Perform RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Display the current settings in the "+IFC:<n>,<m>" format AT+IFC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+WS46=<n> *1	Display wireless network used when sending communication in n number. When entering AT+WS46=<n>, ERROR is returned because it cannot be changed. n=12 : GSM network n=22 : 3G network (FOMA) n=25 : GSM or 3G network (FOMA) (default) AT+WS46? : Display current settings AT+WS46=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT¥S AT¥S ↵ E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 ・・・(snip)・・・S104=001 OK	Display the currently set commands and S register settings.
AT¥V<n> *1 AT¥V0 ↵ OK	Set whether to use expanded result codes when connection is made. n=0 : Not use expanded result codes (default) n=1 : Use expanded result codes
+++ +++ (not displayed) OK	Move from online data mode to online command mode when entered during a communication. The escape guard interval is 1 second (fixed value).

*1 Registered in FOMA terminal by &W command.

*2 Not reset by &F and Z commands.

*3 When Z command is executed before the &W command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Description
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	The remote device is called but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM
15	SIM wrong	Other than DOCOMO SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

● <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1-10" can be registered in FOMA terminal. An APN "mopera.ne.jp" (PPP connection) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and an APN "mopera.net" (IP connection) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default.
<APN> is an optional string for each connection to indicate dialup connection.

■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**
  Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**
  +CGDCONT= [<cid> [,"<PDP_TYPE>" [,"<APN>"]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid> : 1-10
  <PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP
  <APN> : Optional
- **Example of execution**
  The command used to register an APN named "abc" for PPP connection (when <cid> =2).
  AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc" ↵
  OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGDCONT= : Return all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGDCONT=<cid> : Return the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGDCONT? : Display current settings.
  AT+CGDCONT=? : Display a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**
  Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid> [,,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid> : 1-10
  <Maximum bitrate UL> : None (default) or 384
  <Maximum bitrate DL> : None (default) or 7232
  * For <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL>, the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. If "384" and "7232" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.
- **Example of execution**
  (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
  AT+CGEQMIN=2 ↵
  OK
  (2) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and 7232kbps download (when <cid>=4)
  AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,7232 ↵
  OK
  (3) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
  AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384 ↵
  OK
  (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 7232kbps download (when <cid>=6)
  AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,7232 ↵
  OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQMIN= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays current settings.
  AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- **Outline**
  Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQREQ= [<cid>]
- **Parameter description**
  Only commands that require connection at 64-384kbps upload, 64-7232kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each <cid>.
  <cid> : 1-10
- **Example of execution**
  (when <cid>=3)
  AT+CGEQREQ=3 ↵
  OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQREQ= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays current settings.
  AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

Result codes

● When ATV command is set to n=1 (default), the result code is displayed in alphabetic characters. When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed numerically.→P33

■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	Network restriction in place (The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.)
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

■ Extended result code

• When AT&E is set to n=0

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and base station
122	CONNECT 64000	64000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000bps
133	CONNECT 3648000	3648000bps
135	CONNECT 7232000	7232000bps

• When AT&E is set to n=1

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and a PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800bps

* To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to a PC with a USB cable or Bluetooth function.

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connect via 64K data communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connect via 64K videophone
5	PACKET	Connect via packet communication

■ Display example of result code

When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT￥V command, only "CONNECT" is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
CONNECT

Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
1

When ATX1 is set

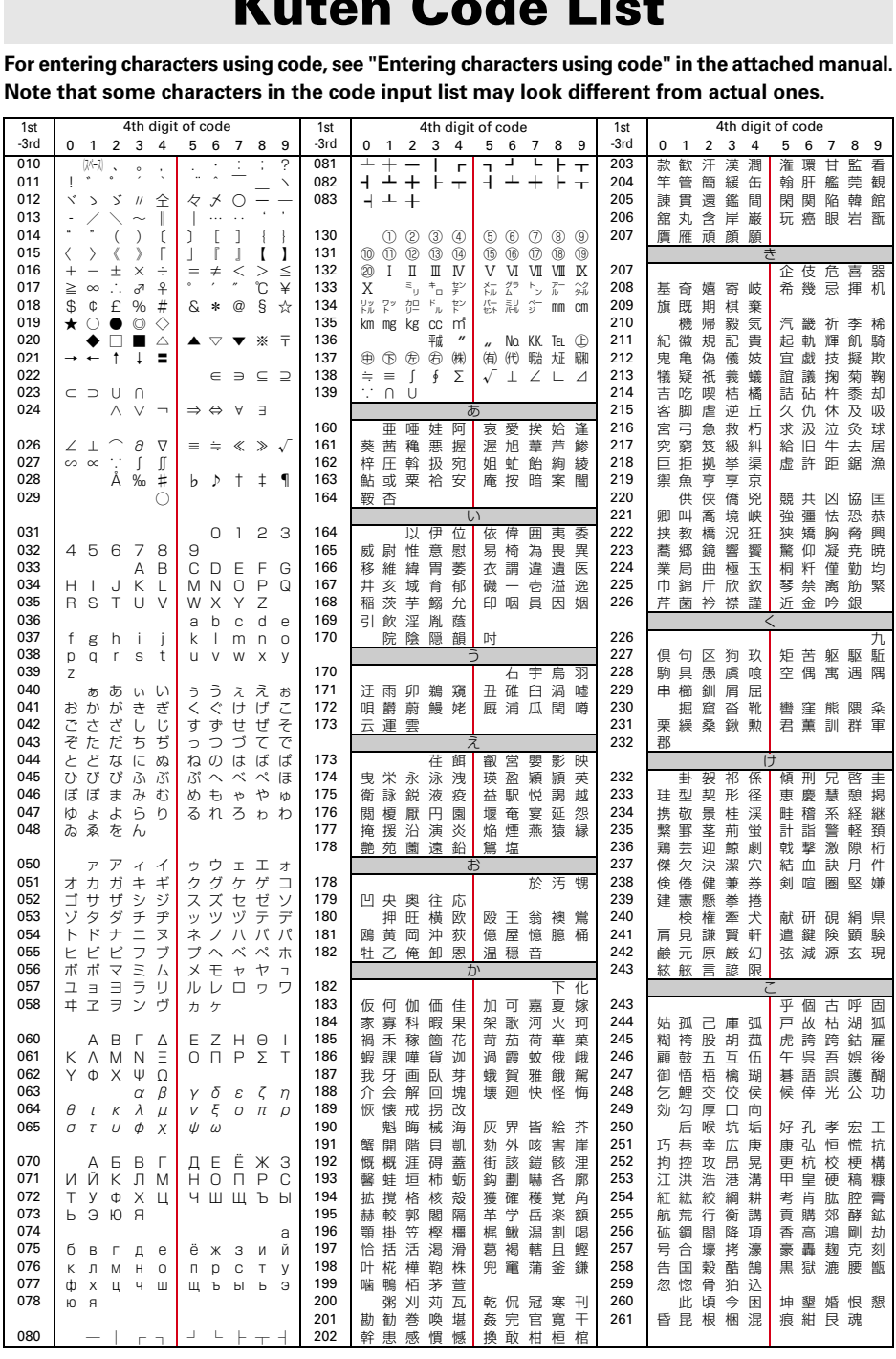
- When ATX1, AT￥V0 (default) is set
  Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format : "CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>".
  Text display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
  CONNECT 460800
  Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
  1 21
- When ATX1, AT￥V1 is set*1
  The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format.
  "CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol> <dialup connection (APN)>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal→radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal←radio base station)>"*2
  Text display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
  CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/384/7232
  (Indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 384kbps and a maximum download speed of 7232kbps.)
  Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊3#
  1 21 5

*1 When ATX1 and AT￥V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only AT￥V0 be used.

*2 When AT￥V1 is set, <dialup connection (APN)> and the following are displayed only when packet is used for connection.

Kuten Code List

For entering characters using code, see "Entering characters using code" in the attached manual.
Note that some characters in the code input list may look different from actual ones.

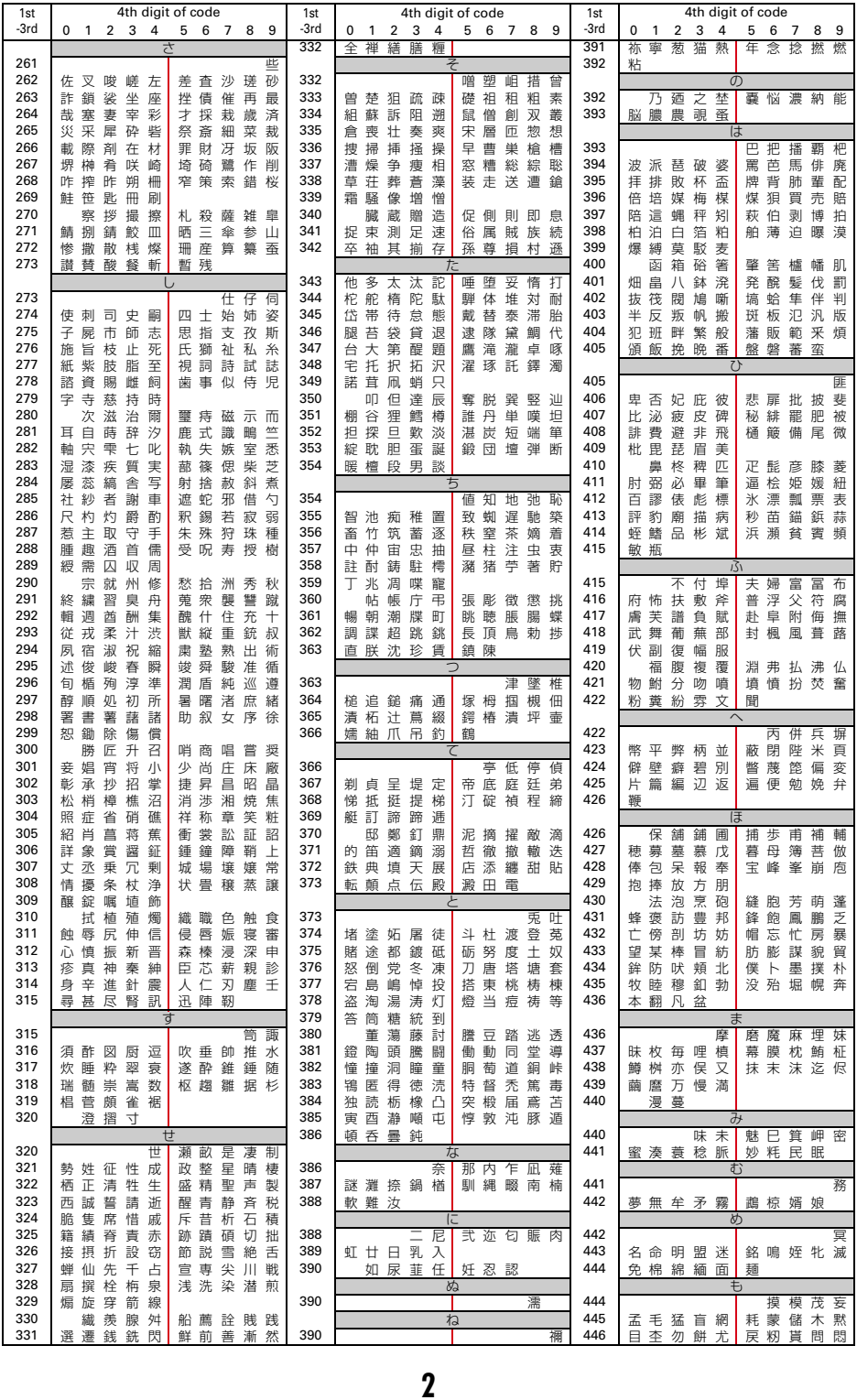


1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(ﾊﾝ-)	、	。	，.	・	：	；	？	
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	_	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	―	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	‘	’
014	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	$	¢	£	%	#	&	*	@	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					○					
031							0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
036						a	b	c	d	e
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y
039	z									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	て	で	と
044	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ	ひ
045	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ	ぼ
046	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ	ゆ
047	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ	ゐ
048	ゑ	を	ん	ゔ	ゕ	ゖ	゙	゚	゛	゜
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	テ	デ	ト
054	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ	ヒ
055	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ	ボ
056	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ	ユ
057	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ	ヰ
058	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ				
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074					а					
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		—		┌	┐	┘	└	┴	┬	┤

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┫
082	┻	╋	┠	┯	┷	┝	┰	┥	┸	┿
083	┑	╀	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ		ミリ	キロ	ドル	セント	パーセント	ドル	ブラン	ページ
134	リットル	アード	カロリー	ドル	セント	パーセント	ミル	ページ	mm	cm
135	km	mg	kg	cc	㎡					
136				平成	〃					
137	㈱	㈲	㈹	㈾	㈱	㈲	㈹	KK	TEL	㈱
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	Σ	√	⊥	∠	└	⊿
139	∵	∩	∪							
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	按	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	酌	案	闇	
164	鞍	杏								
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引		飲	淫	胤	蔭				
170			院	陰	隠	韻	吋			
170					荏	餌	液	営	嬰	影	映
171	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	鋭	駅	円	園	炎	鉛
172	掩	援	沿	演	遠	焔	鴛	塩			
173	艶	苑	薗								
174						截	英	盈	穎	頴	営
175	悦	越	謁	閲	円	園	堰	奄	煙	猿	縁
176	鉛	鉛	厭	演	園	堰	奄	煙	猿		
177	遠	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛		
178	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛	鉛		
178									於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応						
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬	
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	穏	顔	桶	
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温					
182									下	化	
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁	
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂	
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓	
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨	
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕	
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔	
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改						
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥	
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖	
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鈎	骸	各	廓
193	拡	核	殻	郭	覚	角	赫	獲	確	学	楽
194	額	顎	掛	笠	活	括	喝	渇	割	葛	滑
195	褐	轄	且	釜	鎌	赫	隔	橿	渦	株	甘
196	釜	鎌	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱	粥	刈	苅	瓦
197	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊						
198	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干	
199	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺	

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	缶	間	閑	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	館	鑑	観
205	諫	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	享	許	距	魚	虚	
219	漁	虚								
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狭	矯	驚	脅	竟	興
223	鷲	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	僅	勤
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	緊	謹	均
225	巾	斤	衿	襟	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌			謹	近	金	吟	銀	
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
232						傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	憩	掲	携
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	決	潔	月	欠	倦	健	兼
237	倹	剣	拳	軒	幻	結	血	訣	月	件
238	検	見	元	原	現	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	権	険	捲				
240		検	見	拳	軒	犬	献	研	県	絹
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	厳	原	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後	
247	御	悟	梧	檎	碁	語	誤	護	乞	醐
248	鯉	交	佼	口	候	光	公	功		
249	効	勾	厚	喉	坑	向				
250		后	垢	垣	好	孔	孝	宏	工	
251	巧	巷	控	攻	昂	広	恒	慌	抗	
252	拘	杭	皇	肯	荒	更	甲	考	行	構
253	江	紅	洪	浩	港	溝	拝	講	項	糠
254	鉱	絞	行	閤	衡	降	購	酵	腔	膏
255	航	荒	鋼	合	壕	拷	貢	購	郊	鉱
256	砿	号	告	国	穀	骨	頃	今	困	劫
257	忽	惚	込	濠	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	酷
258		此	昆	根	今	困	混	坤	墾	婚
259										
260	恨	懇								
261	昏	痕	紺	艮	魂					

2008.9 (Issue 1)
CA92002-5477


1st -3rd
4th digit of code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
さ
261 些
262 佐 叉 唆 嵯 左 座 差 査 沙 瑳 砂
263 詐 鎖 娑 坐 彩 挫 才 債 採 再 最
264 哉 塞 妻 宰 砕 賄 祭 斎 栽 歳 済
265 災 載 際 剤 有 昨 細 冴 裁 菜
266 載 堺 榊 挿 咋 匙 掃 財 鷲 坂 阪
267 堺 咋 匙 挿 在 咲 捌 冊 撮 擦 削
268 咋 鮭 笹 匙 錆 散 鮫 桟 餐 斬 桜
269 察 資 拶 撮 擦 皿 刷
270 札 晒 珊 燦 殺 薩 傘 雑 阜
271 鯖 撒 散 酸 三 産 算 纂 山 蚕
272 惨 讃 賛 酸 残 暫
273
し
273 仕 仔 伺
274 使 刺 司 史 師 嗣 四 士 始 姉 姿
275 子 屍 市 枝 肢 賜 思 指 支 祉 斯
276 施 旨 止 脂 雌 氏 獅 詞 私 試 糸
277 紙 紫 肢 賜 視 詩 似 誌
278 諮 資 賜 持 歯 事 歯 侍 児
279 字 寺 慈 治 時 爾 壁 鹿 示 而
280 次 滋 時 治 辞 疹 磁 識 竺
281 耳 自 只 滋 辞 七 質 鹿 執 蔀 悉
282 軸 宍 疾 篠 偲 敵 赦 柴 芝
283 湿 凄 蕊 縞 者 舎 射 遮 蛇 邪 借 煮
284 屡 社 釈 抄 杓 謝 写 車 勺
285 灼 杓 取 酒 囚 叱 実 車 酌 弱
286 惹 主 趣 酒 囚 就 守 首 収 州 手 儒 種
287 従 戎 宿 俊 柔 淑 峻 祝 呪 寿 樹
288 腫 綬 俊 橋 殉 準 修 舟 集 渋 縮 儒 償
289 勝 鋤 匠 宵 升 将 召 尚 賞 奨
290 宗 繍 就 習 舎 淳 愁 拾 衆 襲 誓 秋
291 終 順 処 初 諸 所 蔑 什 縦 庶 遵 緒
292 書 署 助 叙 女 序 徐
293 恕 鋤 除 傷 償 哨 少 捷 昇 渉 湘 章 訟 証 詔
294 勝 匠 宵 将 召 小 掌 沼 蝶 焦
295 升 将 召 尚 唱 宮 奨 廠
296 庄 昌 彰 肖 象 蒋 粧
297 宿 俊 橋 殉 準 浄 飾 昇 焼 硝 笑 装 粧
298 俊 橋 殉 浄 飾 蒋 唱 宵 奨 象 蒋 粧
299 瞬 殉 準 飾 蒋 商 宵 奨 象 蒋 粧
300 殉 準 浄 飾 蒋 唱 宮 奨 象 蒋 粧
301 妾 彰 承 梢 症 肖 象 蒋 粧 詔 上 常
302 彰 梢 症 肖 象 蒋 粧 詔 上 常 譲
303 松 照 症 肖 象 蒋 粧 詔 上 常 譲
304 照 症 肖 象 蒋 粧 詔 上 常 譲
305 紹 症 肖 象 蒋 粧 詔 上 常 譲
306 詳 丈 優 錠 剰 冗 状 畳 壌 穣 蒸
307 丈 優 錠 剰 冗 状 畳 壌 穣 蒸 譲
308 情 醸 錠 剰 浄 飾 嘱 植 殖 燭 織
309 錠 拭 辱 植 殖 燭 織 職 唇 娠 触 寝 食 審
310 尻 振 伸 新 信 侵 唇 娠 寝 審
311 蝕 心 疹 浸 森 棲 芯 寝 深 親 塵
312 疹 浸 森 棲 芯 仁 薪 刃
313 身 尋 甚 尽 腎 訊 人 迅 靭
314
す
315 筒 誰
316 須 酢 図 厨 逗 吹 垂 帥 錐 水 随
317 炊 睡 粋 翠 衰 遂 酔 趨 錐 錐 据 杉
318 瑞 髄 崇 嵩 数 枢 雛 裾
319 椙 菅 頗 摺 寸
320 澄
せ
320 世 是 凄 制
321 勢 姓 正 成 征 性 生 瀬 畝 整 政 星 晴 棲
322 栖 正 誠 清 晴 性 誓 逝 盛 精 声 聖 製
323 西 誠 隻 席 誓 惜 責 逝 醒 青 昔 静 析 税
324 脆 隻 績 席 脊 責 設 斥 跡 積 頃 蹟 切 石
325 籍 接 績 損 脊 折 責 設 節 説 専 絶 拙
326 接 損 折 仙 先 栓 宣 洗 尖 染 舌
327 蝉 扇 撰 旋 千 栴 浅 川 潜 戦
328 扇 旋 穿 箭 泉 煎
329 煽 線
330 繊 羨 腺 舛 船 薦 詮 賤 践
331 選 遷 銭 銑 閃 鮮 善 漸 然

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
447	紋	門	匁							
	や									
447				冶	薬	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約		訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
	ゆ									
449				也	油					由
450		諭	輸	唯	有	勇	友	猶	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖		有	湧	雄	融	夕	
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵				
	よ									
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	業	葉	抑	欲	沃	要	遷	踊	陽	
456	養	慾				浴	翌	翼	淀	
	ら									
456										羅
457						雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	藍	蘭	覧		
	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫					
	り									
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		里	裡	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	律	隆	掠	略	劉	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	凌	寮	猟	料	涼	了	瞭	緑
463	両	糧	良	林	遼	涼	陵	領	力	緑
464	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
	る									
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類					
	れ									
466						令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	簾	練	聯	烈		裂		恋
469	連	煉	簾	連	錬					憐
470		蓮								
	ろ									
470				呂	弄	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	老	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	郎			蝋		六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
	わ									
473				倭	和					惑
474				亘	鰐	話	歪	賄	脇	腕
475	枠	鷲	亙			詫	藁	脇	厳	湾
	碗	腕								

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
480		弋	丐	丕	廾	丱	丞	丱	乂	
481	乖	乗	亂	亢	亦	豫	亀	仔	于	亞
482	亟	仁	京	伉	仍	伜	仗	仇	仆	仏
483	伽	佝	伎	佗	佇	侈	佶	侑	佩	佰
484	侑	俑	佯	俚	來	俐	倚	倫	倩	倣
485	倩	倅	俚	倅	俐	倡	倩	倩	倩	修
486	倩	倅	倅	俶	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡
487	倩	倅	倅	俶	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡
488	倩	倅	倅	俶	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡
489	倩	倅	倅	俶	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡	倡
490			僉	價	儼	僧	僊	僞	僕	僣
491	僮	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧
492	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧	僧
493	兢	競	競	兩	冓	冤	冤	冤	冤	冤
494	冏	冂	冑	冥	凖	凉	凍	凛	凩	凪
495	凵	凡	処	凧	凭	刮	剞	剔	刺	刺
496	刽	劒	劫	劉	劔	劑	劭	勠	勁	勃
497	勅	勧	勵	勹	匍	匐	匏	匕	匙	匪
498	匱	匸	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
499	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
500	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
501	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
502	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
503	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
504	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
505	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
506	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
507	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
508	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿
509	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿	匹	匿

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
510		咫	哂	哢	咤	咄	咼	咢	哦	唏
511	唔	唄	唹	哮	啅	哭	啖	啜	喞	喨
512	喙	嗄	喊	喟	喝	喧	嗅	嗟	嗽	嗾
513	嗾	嗽	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
514	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
515	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
516	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
517	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
518	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
519	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾	嗾
520										
521										
522										
523										
524										
525										
526										
527										
528										
529										
530										
531										
532										
533										
534										
535										
536										
537										
538										
539										
540										
541										
542										
543										
544										
545										
546										
547										
548										
549										
550										
551										
552										
553										
554										
555										
556										
557										
558										
559										
560										
561										
562										
563										
564										
565										
566										
567										
568										
569										
570										
571										
572										
573										
574										
575										
576										
577										
578										
579										
580										
581										
582										
583										
584										
585										
586										
587										

1st -3rd	4th digit of code 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
588										
589										
590										
591										
592										
593										
594										
595										
596										
597										
598										
599										
600										
601										
602										
603										
604										
605										
606										
607										
608										
609										
610										
611										
612										
613										
614										
615										
616										
617										
618										
619										
620										
621										
622										
623										
624										
625										
626										
627										
628										
629										
630										
631										
632										
633										
634										
635										
636										
637										
638										
639										
640										
641										
642										
643										
644										
645										
646										
647										
648										
649										
650										
651										
652										
653										
654										
655										
656										
657										
658										
659										
660										
661										
662										
663										
664										
665										

1st-3rd	4th digit of code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
666	瞽	膽	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硫	磌	硼
668	碚	磯	碣	碭	磐	磈	磑	磕	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磚	硫	磊	磬			
670		磧	祀	祟	禪	磴	礙	礒	礎	礬
671	礫	祇	禩	祠	禧	祇	祕	禮	禳	祺
672	禊	禍	齋	禪	禮	禳	稈	稍	稘	禹
673	秕	秧	禀	秬	秡	稂	稍	稘	棋	植
674	稟	票	稱	稻	稼	穉	稷	稻	穗	穠
675	穢	穩	穡	穫	穹	窮	窪	窳	窕	窗
676	窖	窩	竈	窯	竅	竄	竇	竅	竄	竅
677	竊	竭	竚	竡	竢	竝	竝	站	竺	笆
678	竦	竭	竭	竰	笏	笊	竺	笆	笳	笘
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐	筍				
680		筐	筘	筍	笨	筅	筵	筥	筴	筧
681	筧	箝	箴	筑	箸	箝	箘	箭	箍	箋
682	箚	箋	箸	箒	箏	箴	箑	箙	篋	篌
683	篙	篆	篝	篩	篥	篦	篳	篷	簇	簀
684	簇	簍	篷	篾	篳	篝	簣	篋	簀	簷
685	簞	簷	簫	簸	簧	簀	簍	篶	篋	籐
686	籐	籟	籤	籤	籌	籃	籔	籤	籠	籟
687	粭	粲	粨	粡	粨	粳	粱	粲	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糎	糺	糇	糜	糢	糲	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	絆	紜	紕	紱	紊	紉	紮	紲
691	紵	絳	絳	絖	絨	絝	絮	絏	紬	紲
692	經	絖	絛	絳	絕	絽	綛	綮	綣	綜
693	綴	綯	綹	綫	總	綢	綛	綯	綮	綣
694	綱	綃	綵	綴	緇	緲	綢	緦	緇	緜
695	緙	緹	緙	緞	緗	緇	緣	緦	緞	緣
696	緩	緲	緗	緱	緣	緙	緣	緙	緗	緻
697	緡	緦	緙	緡	緻	緙	緗	緻	緙	緻
698	辮	纖	纈	纘	纘	纏	纈	纓	纖	纖
699	纖	纛	纔	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罐	罐	网	罕	罔	罕
701	罟	罠	罹	罩	罹	罰	羈	罹	罽	羈
702	羈	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羯	羲	羹	羹
703	羹	羶	羸	譱	翅	翎	翌	翕	翔	翡
704	翳	翩	翳	翹	翻	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聯	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	胃	胱
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脅	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膓
712	膣	膛	膓	膜	膚	膘	膂	膾	膵	臂
713	臂	臍	臉	臍	臍	臙	臘	臚	臟	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艙	艫	艘
716	艝	艚	艟	艤	艦	艙	艫	艪	艫	艱
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芟	芻	芟	芬	苡	苹
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	荷	荸
719	莒	莇	莒	莔	茉	荳				
720		茵	荅	茲	荏	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	荔	荏	菴	莪	莒	莢	莖
722	莫	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荁	葸	莠	莉
723	莧	菴	萱	菫	菲	萍	菽	萃	菘	萋
724	菁	萇	菠	菲	萍	蒨	葫	莽	萸	蔆
725	萩	葭	萑	萼	萼	蒹	葎	葷	葫	葭
726	葆	葩	葆	萬	葯	葛	蒿	葑	葯	蓋
727	蒿	蒻	蓙	蓄	葛	蓓	蓐	蓼	蓆	蒂
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蓆	蔔
729	蓼	蔣	蔣	蕤	蓉					
730		蓼	蓼	蓯	蓀	蓮	蓿	蓋	蘆	蒭
731	蘺	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蘋	蕾	蔭
732	藉	薺	藏	藶	藪	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘂	蘋	蘗	蘭	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘧	蘿
734	虎	虩	虔	虓	虢	虻	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩
735	蚋	蚌	蛄	蚶	蛆	蛄	蚰	蛉	蠅	蛆
736	蛔	蛋	蛞	蛩	蛭	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜿
737	蜑	蜜	蜕	蜚	蜉	蝠	蜍	蜘	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝣	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝙	蝨	蝮	蝙				
740		蝓	蝣	蝎	蝟	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	蟲	蟑	蟐	蟠	蠅	螯	螻	螳	蟇	蠍
742	蟯	蠱	蠅	蠑	蠍	蟾	蠏	蠍	蟷	蠐

1st-3rd	4th digit of code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠱	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠻	蠻
744	衄	衄	衍	衙	衛	衢	衫	袁	衾	衰
745	袒	衽	袱	袢	袂	袴	袒	裘	祢	裔
746	袍	袤	裹	裒	袖	裎	裼	裝	裨	裱
747	裝	裹	褒	褐	褐	褥	褓	褄	褸	襞
748	褓	褻	襁	褊	褐	褥	褓	褄	襃	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覩	覦	覩	覯	觴	觸
752	覺	覽	覿	覿	觀	觚	觝	觜	觸	觴
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訐	訌	訐	訥	詞	詆
754	訝	詁	詛	詛	詢	詬	詠	詢	誅	誂
755	誨	誄	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誄	誣	誥
756	諚	諫	諛	諮	諧	謔	諤	諱	謔	諢
757	諳	諛	諞	謌	謇	謐	謖	謗	謠	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	譚	譖	譁	譌	譟	譎
759	證	譖	譜	譖	譚	譖	譫	譴	譽	讀
760		讌	讎	讐	譯	譴	譱	讌	讀	讌
761	讓	讖	讙	讙	讚	谿	豸	豁	谿	豈
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豬	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貌	貊	貔	貔	貶	貫	貭	賁	貪
764	貳	貳	貶	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽
765	贈	贊	贔	贊	贇	贏	贍	贖	贅	贓
766	貶	赧	赦	赧	赭	赴	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跳	跚	跚	跖	跋	跛	跪	跫
768	跟	跼	跼	踈	踈	踉	跿	踝	踐	踟
769	踦	踵	踵	踰	踴	蹊				
770		躉	躋	躋	躋	躋	躋	躋	躔	躁
771	躇	躋	躑	躓	躋	躋	躔	躁	躋	躋
772	躊	躋	躑	躑	躔	躊	躇	躉	躋	躔
773	躲	躾	軀	軀	軀	軋	軛	軛	軛	軫
774	軾	軽	軽	軺	軽	軺	軛	軛	軛	軛
775	軺	軺	軺	軺	軺	軺	軺	轂	轅	轄
776	轆	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
777	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
778	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
779	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
780		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
781	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
782	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
783	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
784	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
785	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
786	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
787	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
788	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
789	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
790		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
791	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
792	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
793	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
794	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
795	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
796	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
797	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
798	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
799	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
800		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
801	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
802	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
803	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
804	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
805	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
806	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
807	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
808	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
809	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
810		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
811	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
812	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
813	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
814	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
815	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
816	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
817	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
818	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
819	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎

1st-3rd	4th digit of code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
820		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
821	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
822	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
823	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
824	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
825	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
826	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
827	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
828	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
829	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
830		轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
831	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
832	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
833	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
834	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
835	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
836	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
837	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
838	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
839	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎	轎
840		堯	熙			凜				